

Dell™ C3765dnf Multifunction  
Color Laser Printer  
**User's Guide**

Regulatory Model: C3765dnf





# Contents

Before Beginning . . . . .	21
A Notes, Cautions, and Warnings . . . . .	23
<b>As for RSA BSAFE</b> . . . . .	<b>23</b>
1 Dell™ C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer User's Guide . . . . .	25
<b>Conventions.</b> . . . .	<b>25</b>
2 Finding Information . . . . .	27
3 Product Features . . . . .	31
4 About the Printer . . . . .	33
<b>Front and Rear View</b> . . . . .	<b>33</b>
Front View . . . . .	33
Rear View . . . . .	34
<b>Duplex Automatic Document Feeder (DADF)</b> . . . . .	<b>35</b>
<b>Space Requirements</b> . . . . .	<b>35</b>
<b>Operator Panel</b> . . . . .	<b>36</b>
<b>Additional Components.</b> . . . .	<b>36</b>
Optional Accessories . . . . .	36
Non-bundled Items . . . . .	36
<b>Securing the Printer</b> . . . . .	<b>37</b>
<b>Ordering Supplies</b> . . . . .	<b>37</b>

## Setting up the Printer (Printer Setup) . . . . . 39

### 5 Preparing Printer Hardware . . . . . 41

#### **Removing Tape . . . . . 41**

### 6 Installing Optional Accessories . . . . . 43

#### **Installing the Optional Memory Module . . . . . 43**

##### Updating Your Driver to Detect Memory Module . . . . . 45

#### **Installing the Optional 550-Sheet Feeder . . . . . 48**

##### Updating Your Driver to Detect 550-Sheet Feeder . . . . . 50

#### **Installing the Optional Wireless Adapter . . . . . 53**

##### Verifying the Contents of the Box . . . . . 54

##### Installing the Wireless Adapter Using Video Instructions (Recommended) . . . . . 54

##### Installing the Optional Wireless Adapter . . . . . 55

##### Determining the Wireless Network Settings . . . . . 56

#### **Configuring the Optional Wireless Adapter . . . . . 57**

##### Using Wizard Setup to Configure a Wireless Adapter . . . . . 57

##### Using Advanced Setup to Configure a Wireless Adapter . . . . . 59

#### **Reconfiguring the Wireless Setting . . . . . 63**

#### **Installing the Optional Hard Disk . . . . . 64**

##### Updating Your Driver to Detect Hard Disk . . . . . 67

### 7 Connecting Your Printer . . . . . 71

#### **Connecting Printer to Computer or Network . . . . . 72**

##### Direct Connection . . . . . 72

##### Network Connection . . . . . 73

#### **Connecting the Telephone Line . . . . . 73**

#### **Turning on the Printer . . . . . 75**

#### **Setting Initial Settings on the Operator Panel . . . . . 75**

### 8 Setting the IP Address . . . . . 83

#### **Assigning an IP Address . . . . . 83**

##### When Using the Easy Setup Navigator . . . . . 83

##### When Using the Operator Panel . . . . . 83

When Using the Tool Box . . . . .	84
<b>Verifying the IP Settings</b> . . . . .	<b>85</b>
Verifying the Settings Using Operator Panel . . . . .	85
Verifying the Settings Using System Settings Report. . . . .	85
Verifying the Settings Using Ping Command . . . . .	85
<b>9 Loading Paper</b> . . . . .	<b>87</b>
<b>10 Installing Printer Drivers on Windows® Computers</b> . . . . .	<b>91</b>
<b>Identifying Printer Driver Pre-install Status</b> . . . . .	<b>91</b>
Changing the firewall settings before installing your printer. . . . .	91
<b>Inserting the Software and Documentation Disc</b> . . . . .	<b>91</b>
<b>Direct Connection Setup</b> . . . . .	<b>92</b>
<b>Network Connection Setup</b> . . . . .	<b>95</b>
Network Printer Setup on a Local Network. . . . .	95
Network Printer Setup on a Remote Network . . . . .	99
<b>Setting Up for Shared Printing</b> . . . . .	<b>104</b>
Specifying the Shared Settings of the Printer . . . . .	104
Point and Print. . . . .	105
Peer-to-Peer. . . . .	108
<b>11 Installing Printer Drivers on Macintosh Computers</b> . . . . .	<b>111</b>
<b>Installing the Drivers and Software</b> . . . . .	<b>111</b>
Adding a Printer on Mac OS X 10.5, 10.6, 10.7, or 10.8 . . . . .	111
Adding a Printer on Mac OS X 10.4.11 . . . . .	112
Adding a Printer on Mac OS X 10.3.9 . . . . .	113
Configuring Settings. . . . .	115
<b>12 Installing Printer Drivers on Linux Computers (CUPS)</b> . . . . .	<b>117</b>
<b>Operation on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5/6 Desktop.</b> . . . . .	<b>117</b>
Setup Overview . . . . .	117
Installing the Printer Driver . . . . .	117
Setting Up the Queue . . . . .	117
Setting the Default Queue. . . . .	118
Specifying the Printing Options . . . . .	119
Uninstalling the Printer Driver. . . . .	119

<b>Operation on SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10.</b> . . . . .	<b>120</b>
Setup Overview . . . . .	120
Installing the Printer Driver . . . . .	120
Setting Up the Queue . . . . .	120
Setting the Default Queue . . . . .	121
Specifying the Printing Options . . . . .	121
Setting the Password for Authority as the Printer Administrator . . . . .	122
Uninstalling the Printer Driver . . . . .	122
<b>Operation on SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11.</b> . . . . .	<b>122</b>
Setup Overview . . . . .	122
Installing the Printer Driver . . . . .	123
Setting Up the Queue . . . . .	123
Setting the Default Queue . . . . .	124
Specifying the Printing Options . . . . .	124
Setting the Password for Authority as the Printer Administrator . . . . .	125
Uninstalling the Printer Driver . . . . .	125

## Using Your Printer . . . . . 127

### 13 Operator Panel . . . . . 129

<b>About the Operator Panel.</b> . . . . .	<b>129</b>
<b>About the Main Home Screen</b> . . . . .	<b>130</b>
Message Field . . . . .	130
Toner Status Icon . . . . .	130
Wireless LAN Connection Status Icon . . . . .	130
Data Status Icon . . . . .	130
Function Buttons. . . . .	131
<b>Using the Keyboard Displayed on the Touch Panel</b> . . . . .	<b>131</b>
<b>Using the Number Pad</b> . . . . .	<b>132</b>
Number Pad Numbers . . . . .	132
Changing Numbers or Names . . . . .	132
Inserting a Pause . . . . .	133
<b>Printing a Panel Settings Report</b> . . . . .	<b>133</b>
<b>Changing the Language.</b> . . . . .	<b>133</b>
When Using the Operator Panel. . . . .	133
When Using the Tool Box . . . . .	133
<b>Setting the Power Saver Timer Option</b> . . . . .	<b>133</b>

<b>About the Concurrent Jobs Feature</b> . . . . .	<b>134</b>
<b>14 Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool</b> . . . . .	<b>135</b>
<b>Overview</b> . . . . .	<b>135</b>
<b>Setting Up the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool</b> . . . . .	<b>136</b>
Setting Up From Web Browser . . . . .	136
Setting Up From Operator Panel . . . . .	137
<b>Starting the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool</b> . . . . .	<b>138</b>
<b>Overview of the Menu Items</b> . . . . .	<b>138</b>
Printer Status . . . . .	138
Printer Jobs . . . . .	138
Printer Settings . . . . .	138
Print Server Settings . . . . .	138
Copy Printer Settings . . . . .	139
Print Volume . . . . .	139
Address Book . . . . .	139
Printer Information . . . . .	139
Tray Management . . . . .	139
E-Mail Alert . . . . .	139
Set Password . . . . .	139
Online Help . . . . .	139
Order Supplies at: . . . . .	139
Contact Dell Support at: . . . . .	139
<b>Page Display Format</b> . . . . .	<b>140</b>
Top Frame . . . . .	140
Left Frame . . . . .	141
Right Frame . . . . .	141
<b>Changing the Settings of the Menu Items</b> . . . . .	<b>142</b>
Details of the Menu Items . . . . .	142
Printer Status . . . . .	145
Printer Jobs . . . . .	146
Printer Settings . . . . .	147
Print Server Settings . . . . .	170
Copy Printer Settings . . . . .	193
Print Volume . . . . .	193
Address Book . . . . .	194
Tray Management . . . . .	201

15 Understanding the Tool Box Menus . . . . . 203

**Starting the Tool Box . . . . . 203**

**Printer Setting Reports . . . . . 203**

Printer Information. . . . . 203  
Menu Settings . . . . . 204  
Reports. . . . . 206  
TCP/IP Settings . . . . . 206  
Tray Settings. . . . . 207  
Default Settings . . . . . 207  
Fax Settings . . . . . 209  
Panel Language . . . . . 210

**Printer Maintenance . . . . . 211**

System Settings - General. . . . . 211  
System Settings - Timers . . . . . 213  
System Settings - Output Settings. . . . . 214  
Service Tools. . . . . 215  
Tray Management . . . . . 216  
Panel Language . . . . . 219  
TCP/IP Settings . . . . . 219  
Network Settings . . . . . 220  
Copy Defaults . . . . . 220  
Scan Defaults . . . . . 223  
Fax Defaults . . . . . 224  
USB Direct Print Defaults . . . . . 225  
Fax Settings . . . . . 226

**Diagnosis . . . . . 228**

Chart Print . . . . . 228  
Environment Sensor Info . . . . . 229

**Resetting Defaults . . . . . 229**

When Using the Tool Box . . . . . 229

16 Understanding the Printer Menus . . . . . 231

**Report/ List . . . . . 231**

System Settings . . . . . 231  
Panel Settings . . . . . 231  
PCL Fonts List . . . . . 231  
PCL Macros List . . . . . 231  
PS Fonts List . . . . . 231  
PDF Fonts List . . . . . 231  
Job History. . . . . 231

Error History . . . . .	232
Print Meter . . . . .	232
Color Test Page . . . . .	232
Protocol Monitor . . . . .	232
Speed Dial . . . . .	232
Address Book . . . . .	232
Server Address . . . . .	232
Fax Activity . . . . .	232
Fax Pending . . . . .	232
Stored Documents. . . . .	232
Printing a Report/List Using the Operator Panel . . . . .	233
Printing a Report/List Using the Tool Box . . . . .	233
<b>Admin Settings . . . . .</b>	<b>233</b>
Phone Book . . . . .	233
PCL . . . . .	233
PostScript . . . . .	240
PDF . . . . .	240
Network . . . . .	242
Fax Settings . . . . .	247
System Settings . . . . .	255
Maintenance . . . . .	264
Secure Settings . . . . .	269
USB Settings . . . . .	272
<b>Default Settings. . . . .</b>	<b>273</b>
Copy Defaults . . . . .	273
Scan Defaults . . . . .	274
Fax Defaults . . . . .	275
USB Direct Print Defaults . . . . .	275
<b>Tray Management. . . . .</b>	<b>275</b>
Tray Settings. . . . .	275
<b>Panel Language. . . . .</b>	<b>280</b>
<b>Print Menu . . . . .</b>	<b>280</b>
Private Mailbox . . . . .	280
Public Mailbox. . . . .	281
Proof Print . . . . .	281
Secure Print . . . . .	281
Secure Fax Receive . . . . .	282
<b>Copy Menu . . . . .</b>	<b>282</b>
Copy Tab . . . . .	282
Quality Tab. . . . .	285
Output Tab . . . . .	286

<b>Scan Menu</b> . . . . .	<b>288</b>
Network . . . . .	288
Application. . . . .	288
USB . . . . .	289
Scan Options. . . . .	289
WSD Scan . . . . .	292
<b>E-mail</b> . . . . .	<b>293</b>
<b>Fax Menu</b> . . . . .	<b>293</b>
Fax Tab . . . . .	293
Options Tab . . . . .	295
Polling Receive . . . . .	295
Fax Cover Page . . . . .	295
<b>USB Direct Print Menu</b> . . . . .	<b>295</b>
Select File to Print . . . . .	295
USB Direct Print Tab. . . . .	295
Options Tab . . . . .	298
<b>ID Card Copy</b> . . . . .	<b>298</b>
ID Card Copy Tab. . . . .	298
Quality Tab . . . . .	298
<b>Panel Lock</b> . . . . .	<b>299</b>
Enabling the Panel Lock . . . . .	299
Disabling the Panel Lock . . . . .	299
<b>Resetting Defaults</b> . . . . .	<b>299</b>
When Using the Operator Panel. . . . .	300
<b>17 Print Media Guidelines</b> . . . . .	<b>301</b>
<b>Paper</b> . . . . .	<b>301</b>
Paper Characteristics . . . . .	301
Recommended Paper . . . . .	302
Unacceptable Paper. . . . .	302
Selecting Paper . . . . .	302
Selecting Pre-Printed Media and Letterheads . . . . .	303
Selecting Pre-Punched Paper. . . . .	303
<b>Envelopes</b> . . . . .	<b>303</b>
<b>Labels</b> . . . . .	<b>304</b>
<b>Storing Print Media</b> . . . . .	<b>305</b>
<b>Identifying Print Media and Specifications</b> . . . . .	<b>305</b>

Supported Paper Sizes . . . . .	305
Supported Paper Types . . . . .	306
Paper Type Specifications . . . . .	306
<b>18 Loading Print Media . . . . .</b>	<b>307</b>
<b>Capacity. . . . .</b>	<b>307</b>
<b>Print Media Dimensions . . . . .</b>	<b>307</b>
<b>Loading Print Media in Tray1 and the Optional 550-Sheet Feeder . . . . .</b>	<b>307</b>
Loading Letterhead (Pre-Printed and Pre-Punched Paper) . . . . .	307
<b>Loading Print Media in the MPF . . . . .</b>	<b>308</b>
Loading an Envelope in the MPF . . . . .	310
Envelope #10, Monarch, or DL . . . . .	311
C5 . . . . .	311
<b>Using the MPF . . . . .</b>	<b>312</b>
<b>Linking Trays . . . . .</b>	<b>312</b>
<b>Printing, Copying, Scanning, and Faxing . . . . .</b>	<b>313</b>
<b>19 Printing . . . . .</b>	<b>315</b>
<b>Tips for Successful Printing . . . . .</b>	<b>315</b>
Tips on Storing Print Media . . . . .	315
Avoiding Paper Jams . . . . .	315
<b>Sending a Job to Print . . . . .</b>	<b>315</b>
<b>Canceling a Print Job. . . . .</b>	<b>316</b>
Canceling a Job From the Operator Panel . . . . .	316
Canceling a Job From a Computer Running Windows . . . . .	316
<b>Duplex Printing . . . . .</b>	<b>317</b>
Duplex Printing With Duplex Unit . . . . .	317
Using Booklet Print . . . . .	317
<b>Using the Stored Print Feature . . . . .</b>	<b>318</b>
Overview. . . . .	319
Procedures for Printing Stored Print . . . . .	320
<b>Printing from USB Memory. . . . .</b>	<b>321</b>
Supported File Formats . . . . .	322

Inserting and Removing a USB Memory . . . . .	322
Printing a File in a USB Memory. . . . .	322
<b>Printing With Web Services on Devices (WSD) . . . . .</b>	<b>323</b>
Adding Roles of Printer Services . . . . .	323
Printer Setup. . . . .	323
Installing a Printer Driver Using the Add Printer Wizard . . . . .	324
<b>Printing With AirPrint. . . . .</b>	<b>325</b>
Setting Up AirPrint on Your Printer . . . . .	325
Printing via AirPrint . . . . .	325
<b>Printing With Google Cloud Print™ . . . . .</b>	<b>325</b>
Preparing to Use the Printer with Google Cloud Print. . . . .	325
Registering the Printer to Your Google Account . . . . .	326
Printing via Google Cloud Print . . . . .	326
<b>Printing a Report Page . . . . .</b>	<b>327</b>
<b>Printer Settings . . . . .</b>	<b>327</b>
Using the Operator Panel to Change the Printer Settings. . . . .	327
Using the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool to Change the Printer Settings . . . . .	327
<b>20 Copying . . . . .</b>	<b>329</b>
<b>Loading Paper for Copying . . . . .</b>	<b>329</b>
<b>Selecting Paper Tray . . . . .</b>	<b>329</b>
<b>Preparing a Document . . . . .</b>	<b>329</b>
<b>Making Copies From the Document Glass . . . . .</b>	<b>330</b>
<b>Making Copies From the DADF . . . . .</b>	<b>331</b>
<b>Setting Copy Options . . . . .</b>	<b>332</b>
Output Color . . . . .	332
Select Tray . . . . .	332
Darken / Lighten . . . . .	333
2 Sided Copying . . . . .	333
Original Type . . . . .	334
Sharpness . . . . .	334
Color Saturation . . . . .	334
Auto Exposure . . . . .	334
Collation . . . . .	335
Reduce / Enlarge. . . . .	335
Original Size . . . . .	336
2-Up . . . . .	337

Margin . . . . .	338
<b>Using the ID Card Copy . . . . .</b>	<b>338</b>
<b>Changing the Default Settings . . . . .</b>	<b>339</b>
<b>21 Scanning . . . . .</b>	<b>341</b>
<b>Scanning Overview. . . . .</b>	<b>341</b>
Scanning - With scanner driver . . . . .	341
Scanning - Without scanner driver . . . . .	341
<b>Scanning From the Operator Panel - Scan to Application. . . . .</b>	<b>343</b>
<b>Scanning from the Operator Panel - WSD Scan. . . . .</b>	<b>344</b>
Printer Setup for WSD Scan . . . . .	344
Procedures for WSD Scan . . . . .	345
<b>Scanning Using the TWAIN Driver. . . . .</b>	<b>345</b>
<b>Scan Settings Tool . . . . .</b>	<b>347</b>
IP Address Settings . . . . .	347
Password Setting . . . . .	348
<b>Scanning Using the Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) Driver. . . . .</b>	<b>349</b>
<b>Scanning to a PC or Server via SMB/FTP . . . . .</b>	<b>351</b>
Overview. . . . .	351
Procedures . . . . .	352
Setting a Login Name and a Password (SMB Only) . . . . .	353
Creating a Shared Folder (SMB Only). . . . .	354
Setting a Destination Using an Address Book . . . . .	359
Sending the Scanned File on the Network . . . . .	364
<b>Scanning to a USB Memory . . . . .</b>	<b>364</b>
Types of a USB Memory. . . . .	364
Procedures . . . . .	365
Specifying a Folder to Save the Scanned Image . . . . .	365
<b>Sending an E-Mail With the Scanned Image . . . . .</b>	<b>366</b>
Setting an E-Mail Alert . . . . .	366
Registering a New E-Mail Address . . . . .	367
Sending an E-mail With the Scanned File. . . . .	367
<b>22 Faxing . . . . .</b>	<b>369</b>
<b>Specifying the Fax Initial Settings Using the Easy Setup Navigator . . . . .</b>	<b>369</b>

<b>Setting Your Country</b> . . . . .	<b>370</b>
<b>Setting the Printer ID</b> . . . . .	<b>370</b>
<b>Setting the Time and Date</b> . . . . .	<b>370</b>
<b>Changing the Clock Mode</b> . . . . .	<b>371</b>
<b>Setting Sounds</b> . . . . .	<b>371</b>
Speaker Volume . . . . .	371
Ringer Volume . . . . .	371
<b>Specifying the Fax Settings Options</b> . . . . .	<b>372</b>
Changing the Fax Settings Options . . . . .	372
Available Fax Settings Options . . . . .	372
Advanced Fax Settings . . . . .	376
<b>Sending a Fax</b> . . . . .	<b>377</b>
Loading an Original Document . . . . .	377
Adjusting the Document Resolution . . . . .	378
Adjusting the Document Contrast . . . . .	379
Sending a Fax From Memory . . . . .	379
Sending a Fax Manually . . . . .	380
Confirming Transmissions . . . . .	381
Automatic Redialing . . . . .	381
<b>Sending a Delayed Fax</b> . . . . .	<b>381</b>
<b>Sending a Fax from the Driver (Direct Fax)</b> . . . . .	<b>382</b>
Example . . . . .	382
<b>Receiving a Fax</b> . . . . .	<b>386</b>
About Receiving Modes . . . . .	386
Loading Paper for Receiving Faxes . . . . .	386
Receiving a Fax Automatically in the Fax Mode . . . . .	386
Receiving a Fax Manually in the Telephone Mode . . . . .	387
Receiving a Fax Automatically in the Telephone / Fax or Ans Machine/Fax . . . . .	387
Receiving a Fax Manually Using an External Telephone (Remote Receive) . . . . .	387
Receiving Faxes Using the DRPD . . . . .	388
Receiving Faxes in the Memory . . . . .	388
Polling Receive . . . . .	388
<b>Automatic Dialing</b> . . . . .	<b>388</b>
Speed Dialing . . . . .	388
Setting Speed Dial . . . . .	389
Sending a Fax Using Speed Dial . . . . .	389
Group Dialing . . . . .	390
Setting Group Dial . . . . .	390
Editing Group Dial . . . . .	390

Sending a Fax Using Group Dial (Multi-address Transmission) . . . . .	391
Printing a Speed Dial List . . . . .	391
<b>Phone Book . . . . .</b>	<b>391</b>
<b>Other Ways to Fax . . . . .</b>	<b>392</b>
Using the Secure Receiving Mode . . . . .	392
Using an Answering Machine. . . . .	393
Using a Computer Modem. . . . .	393
<b>Printing a Report . . . . .</b>	<b>394</b>
<b>Changing Setting Options . . . . .</b>	<b>394</b>

## Know Your Printer . . . . . 395

### 23 Understanding Your Printer Software . . . . . 397

<b>Printer Utility Software. . . . .</b>	<b>398</b>
Status Window . . . . .	399
Tool Box . . . . .	399
Updater . . . . .	399
Troubleshooting . . . . .	399
Address Book Editor. . . . .	399
ScanButton Manager . . . . .	399
Dell ScanCenter . . . . .	399
<b>Address Books . . . . .</b>	<b>399</b>
Types of Address Books. . . . .	399
Adding and Editing Entries to the Address Books . . . . .	400
<b>Status Monitor Widget for Macintosh . . . . .</b>	<b>403</b>
Status Monitor Widget Feature . . . . .	403
Before Installing the Status Monitor Widget . . . . .	403
Installing the Status Monitor Widget . . . . .	403
Opening and Closing the Status Monitor Widget . . . . .	403
Printer Status Window . . . . .	404
Order Window . . . . .	405
Preferences . . . . .	406
<b>Status Monitor Console for Linux . . . . .</b>	<b>407</b>
Status Monitor Console Feature . . . . .	407
Before Installing the Status Monitor Console. . . . .	407
Installing the Status Monitor Console. . . . .	407
Starting the Status Monitor Console . . . . .	408
Printer Selection Window. . . . .	408

Printer Status Window. . . . .	409
Dell Supplies Management System Window . . . . .	410
Service Tag Window. . . . .	411
Settings Window. . . . .	411
<b>24 Printing Using ColorTrack (External Authentication) . . . .</b>	<b>413</b>
<b>ColorTrack Settings. . . . .</b>	<b>413</b>
Dell ColorTrack. . . . .	413
Authentication System. . . . .	414
Kerberos Server . . . . .	415
LDAP Server . . . . .	416
LDAP Authentication. . . . .	417
<b>Setting the Printer Driver . . . . .</b>	<b>418</b>
Dell ColorTrack Mode . . . . .	418
Specify Group Name. . . . .	418
Specify Job Owner. . . . .	419
Job Owner Name . . . . .	419
Password . . . . .	419
<b>25 Using the Server Address Book and Server Phone Book</b>	<b>421</b>
<b>Setting Server Address Book and Server Phone Book . . . . .</b>	<b>421</b>
<b>26 Using Digital Certificates . . . . .</b>	<b>423</b>
<b>Managing Certificates . . . . .</b>	<b>423</b>
Preparing to Manage Certificates. . . . .	423
Importing a Digital Certificate . . . . .	425
Setting a Digital Certificate . . . . .	426
Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate . . . . .	426
Deleting a Digital Certificate. . . . .	427
Exporting a Digital Certificate . . . . .	427
<b>Setting the Features. . . . .</b>	<b>428</b>
Setting the Certificate in the IPsec Digital Signature Mode . . . . .	428
Setting the SSL-use Server Certificate (HTTP/IPP) . . . . .	429
Setting LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication . . . . .	429
Setting Server Certificate Verification for LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication. . . . .	429
Setting Client Certificate for LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication . . . . .	430
Setting for Wireless LAN WPA-Enterprise (EAP-TLS). . . . .	430
Setting for Wireless LAN WPA-Enterprise (PEAPV0-MS-CHAPV2, EAP-TTLS PAP, EAP-TTLS CHAP). . . . .	431
Setting Client Certificate for IEEE 802.1x (EAP-TLS). . . . .	433

27 Understanding Fonts . . . . .	435
<b>Typefaces and Fonts</b> . . . . .	435
Weight and Style . . . . .	435
Pitch and Point Size . . . . .	435
<b>Bitmapped and Scalable Fonts</b> . . . . .	436
<b>Resident Fonts</b> . . . . .	437
<b>Symbol Sets</b> . . . . .	441
Symbol Sets for PCL 5/PCL 6 . . . . .	441
28 Understanding Printer Messages . . . . .	443
<b>Error Codes</b> . . . . .	443
<b>Error Messages</b> . . . . .	451
29 Specifications . . . . .	455
<b>Operating System Compatibility</b> . . . . .	455
<b>Power Supply</b> . . . . .	455
<b>Dimensions</b> . . . . .	455
<b>Memory</b> . . . . .	455
<b>Page Description Language (PDL)/Emulation, Operating System, and Interface</b> . . . . .	455
MIB Compatibility . . . . .	456
<b>Environment</b> . . . . .	456
Operation . . . . .	456
Print Quality Guarantee . . . . .	456
Storage . . . . .	456
Altitude . . . . .	456
<b>Cables</b> . . . . .	456
<b>Copier Specifications</b> . . . . .	457
<b>Scanner Specifications</b> . . . . .	458
<b>Facsimile Specifications</b> . . . . .	458
<b>Optional Wireless Adapter</b> . . . . .	459

Maintaining Your Printer . . . . . 461

30 Maintaining Your Printer . . . . . 463

**Determining the Status of Supplies** . . . . . 463

**Conserving Supplies** . . . . . 463

**Ordering Supplies.** . . . . . 463

**Storing Print Media.** . . . . . 464

**Storing Consumables** . . . . . 464

**Replacing the Toner Cartridges.** . . . . . 465

    Removing the Toner Cartridge . . . . . 465

    Installing a Toner Cartridge . . . . . 466

**Replacing the Drum Cartridges.** . . . . . 467

    Removing the Drum Cartridge . . . . . 467

    Installing a Drum Cartridge . . . . . 469

**Replacing the Fusing Unit** . . . . . 473

    Removing the Fusing Unit . . . . . 473

    Installing a Fusing Unit. . . . . 474

**Replacing the Transfer Belt Unit, the 2nd Belt Transfer Roller (2nd BTR), and the Retard Roller** . . . . . 475

    Removing the Transfer Belt Unit. . . . . 475

    Installing a Transfer Belt Unit . . . . . 478

    Removing the 2nd BTR. . . . . 481

    Installing a 2nd BTR . . . . . 481

    Removing the Retard Roller in Tray1. . . . . 482

    Installing a Retard Roller in Tray1 . . . . . 483

**Replacing the Waste Toner Box** . . . . . 484

    Removing the Waste Toner Box . . . . . 484

    Installing a Waste Toner Box . . . . . 485

**Cleaning Inside the Printer** . . . . . 487

    Cleaning the CTD Sensor . . . . . 487

    Cleaning the Raster Optical Scanner (ROS) Window . . . . . 492

**Cleaning the Scanner.** . . . . . 496

**Cleaning the DADF Feed Roller.** . . . . . 498

**Adjusting Color Registration** . . . . . 498

    Printing the Color Registration Chart . . . . . 498

Determining Values . . . . .	499
Entering Values . . . . .	501
<b>31 Removing Options . . . . .</b>	<b>503</b>
<b>Removing the Optional Memory Module. . . . .</b>	<b>503</b>
<b>Removing the Optional 550-Sheet Feeder . . . . .</b>	<b>506</b>
<b>Removing the Optional Wireless Adapter . . . . .</b>	<b>509</b>
<b>Removing the Optional Hard Disk . . . . .</b>	<b>511</b>
<b>32 Clearing Jams . . . . .</b>	<b>513</b>
<b>Avoiding Jams . . . . .</b>	<b>513</b>
<b>Identifying the Location of Paper Jams . . . . .</b>	<b>514</b>
<b>Clearing Paper Jams From the DADF . . . . .</b>	<b>515</b>
<b>Clearing Paper Jams From the MPF . . . . .</b>	<b>517</b>
If error code: 050-112 appears: . . . . .	517
If error code: 050-129 appears: . . . . .	519
<b>Clearing Paper Jams From Tray1 . . . . .</b>	<b>520</b>
<b>Clearing Paper Jams From the Fusing Unit . . . . .</b>	<b>521</b>
If error code: 050-111 appears: . . . . .	521
If error code: 050-129 appears: . . . . .	523
<b>Clearing Paper Jams From the Optional 550-Sheet Feeder . . . . .</b>	<b>527</b>
<b>Troubleshooting . . . . .</b>	<b>529</b>
<b>33 Troubleshooting Guide . . . . .</b>	<b>531</b>
<b>Basic Printer Problems. . . . .</b>	<b>531</b>
<b>Display Problems. . . . .</b>	<b>531</b>
<b>Printing Problems . . . . .</b>	<b>531</b>
<b>Print Quality Problems . . . . .</b>	<b>532</b>
The output is too light . . . . .	533
Toner smears or print comes off . . . . .	534
Random spots/Blurred images . . . . .	535

The entire output is blank . . . . .	536
Streaks appear on the output . . . . .	537
Part or the entire output is black . . . . .	537
Pitched color dots . . . . .	538
Vertical blanks . . . . .	539
Ghosting . . . . .	540
Light-induced fatigue . . . . .	540
Fog . . . . .	541
Bead-Carry-Out (BCO) . . . . .	541
Jagged characters. . . . .	542
Banding . . . . .	543
Auger mark. . . . .	544
Wrinkled/Stained paper . . . . .	544
Damage on the leading edge of paper . . . . .	545
<b>Jam/Alignment Problems . . . . .</b>	<b>545</b>
The top and side margins are incorrect . . . . .	545
Color registration is out of alignment . . . . .	546
Images are skewed . . . . .	547
Tray1/Optional 550-Sheet Feeder Misfeed Jam . . . . .	547
MPF Misfeed Jam . . . . .	548
Regi Jam (Exit Sensor On JAM) . . . . .	549
Exit Jam (Exit Sensor Off JAM) . . . . .	550
Tray1/Optional 550-Sheet Feeder Multi-feed Jam. . . . .	550
MPF Multi-feed Jam . . . . .	551
<b>Noise . . . . .</b>	<b>551</b>
<b>Copy Problem . . . . .</b>	<b>552</b>
<b>Fax Problems . . . . .</b>	<b>552</b>
<b>Scanning Problems . . . . .</b>	<b>554</b>
<b>Digital Certificate Problem . . . . .</b>	<b>556</b>
<b>Problems With Installed Optional Accessories . . . . .</b>	<b>558</b>
<b>Scanner Driver/Printer Utility Problems . . . . .</b>	<b>558</b>
<b>Other Problems . . . . .</b>	<b>559</b>
<b>Contacting Service . . . . .</b>	<b>559</b>

Appendix . . . . .	561
B Appendix . . . . .	563
<b>Dell™ Technical Support Policy</b> . . . . .	<b>563</b>
Online Services . . . . .	563
<b>Warranty and Return Policy</b> . . . . .	<b>564</b>
Recycling Information . . . . .	564
<b>Contacting Dell</b> . . . . .	<b>564</b>
Index . . . . .	565



# Before Beginning

- Notes, Cautions, and Warnings ..... 23
- 1 Dell™ C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer User's Guide....25
- 2 Finding Information ..... 27
- 3 Product Features..... 31
- 4 About the Printer ..... 33



# Notes, Cautions, and Warnings



**NOTE:** A NOTE indicates important information that helps you make better use of your printer.



**CAUTION:** A CAUTION indicates potential damage to hardware or loss of data if instructions are not followed.



**WARNING:** A WARNING indicates a potential for property damage, personal injury, or death.

Information in this document is subject to change without notice.

© 2012 Dell Inc. All rights reserved.

Reproduction of these materials in any manner whatsoever without the written permission of Dell Inc. is strictly forbidden.

Trademarks used in this text: *Dell* and the *DELL* logo are trademarks of Dell Inc.; *Microsoft*, *Windows*, *Windows Server*, *Windows Vista*, and *Active Directory* are either trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries; *Apple*, *Bonjour*, *iPad*, *iPhone*, *iPod touch*, *Macintosh*, *Mac OS*, and *TrueType* are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. *AirPrint* and the *AirPrint* logo are trademarks of Apple Inc.; *Android*, *Google Chrome*, *Gmail*, *Google*, *Google Cloud Print*, and *Google Drive* are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Google Inc.; *Adobe* and *Photoshop* are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries; *Wi-Fi* is a registered trademark of the Wi-Fi Alliance; *Wi-Fi Protected Setup*, *WPA*, and *WPA2* are trademarks of the Wi-Fi Alliance; *Red Hat* and *Red Hat Enterprise Linux* are registered trademarks of Red Hat, Inc. in the U.S. and other countries; *SUSE* is a registered trademark of Novell, Inc., in the United States and other countries.

*XML Paper Specification (XPS)*: This product may incorporate intellectual property owned by Microsoft Corporation. The terms and conditions upon which Microsoft is licensing such intellectual property may be found at <http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=52369>; *DES*: This product includes software developed by Eric Young ([eay@mincom.oz.au](mailto:eay@mincom.oz.au)); *AES*: Copyright (c) 2003, Dr Brian Gladman, Worcester, UK. All rights reserved. This product uses published AES software provided by Dr Brian Gladman under BSD licensing terms; *TIFF (libtiff)*: Copyright (c) 1988-1997 Sam Leffler and Copyright (c) 1991-1997 Silicon Graphics, Inc.; *ICC Profile (Little cms)*: Copyright (c) 1998-2004 Marti Maria.

Other trademarks and trade names may be used in this document to refer to either the entities claiming the marks and names or their products. Dell Inc. disclaims any proprietary interest in trademarks and trade names other than its own.

The printer software uses some of the codes defined by the Independent JPEG Group.

WSD stands for Web Services on Devices.

## As for RSA BSAFE



This printer includes RSA BSAFE® Cryptographic software from EMC Corporation.

## UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT RESTRICTED RIGHTS

This software and documentation are provided with RESTRICTED RIGHTS. Use, duplication or disclosure by the Government is subject to restrictions as set forth in subparagraph (c)(1)(ii) of the Rights in Technical Data and Computer Software clause at DFARS 252.227-7013 and in applicable FAR provisions: Dell Inc., One Dell Way, Round Rock, Texas, 78682, USA.


November 2012 Rev. A02



# Dell™ C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer

## User's Guide

Click the links to the left for information on the features, options, and operation of your Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer. For information on other documentation included with your Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer, see "Finding Information."

 **NOTE:** In this manual, Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer is referred to as the "printer."

### Conventions

The following describe the meaning of the symbols and fonts used in this manual:

- |  |   |  |
|--|---|--|
| <b>Bold texts</b>                      | : | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Names of hardware button on the operator panel.</li> <li>• Screen and tab names on the touch panel.</li> <li>• Menus, commands, windows, or dialog boxes displayed on the computer screen.</li> </ul> |
| Texts in <code>Courier New</code> font | : | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Menus and messages displayed on the touch panel.</li> <li>• Characters entered from the computer.</li> <li>• Directory paths.</li> </ul>  |
| < >                                    | : | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Key on the keyboard of the computer.</li> </ul>   |
| →                                      | : | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicates a path to a certain item within a procedure on a computer.</li> </ul>   |
| " "                                    | : | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cross references in this manual.</li> <li>• Characters entered from the operator panel.</li> <li>• Messages displayed on the computer screen.</li> </ul>  |



## Finding Information

What are you looking for?	Find it here
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Drivers for my printer</li> <li>• My <i>User's Guide</i></li> </ul>	<p><i>Software and Documentation</i> disc</p> <div> </div> <p>The <i>Software and Documentation</i> disc contains setup video, documentation, and drivers for your printer. You can use the <i>Software and Documentation</i> disc to install drivers or access your setup video and documentation.</p> <p>Readme files may be included on your <i>Software and Documentation</i> disc to provide last-minute updates about technical changes to your printer or advanced technical reference material for experienced users or technicians.</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• How to use my printer</li> </ul>	<p><i>Quick Reference Guide</i></p> <div> </div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> <i>Quick Reference Guide</i> may not be included in the package for some regions.</p>

---

**What are you looking for?**

- Safety information
- Warranty information

**Find it here**

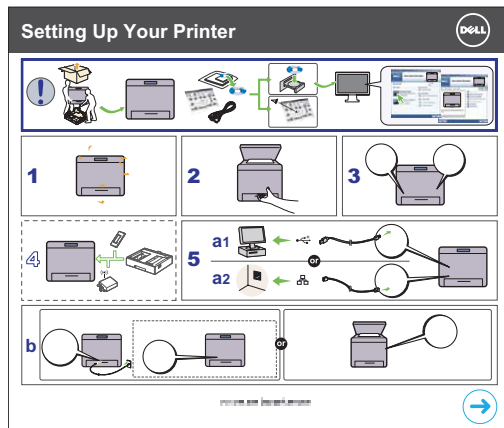
*Product Information Guide*



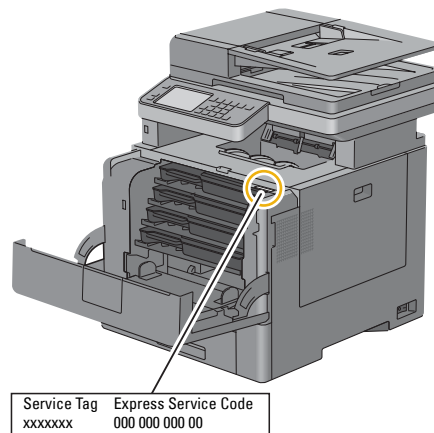
**⚠ WARNING:** Read and follow all safety instructions in the *Product Information Guide* prior to setting up and operating your printer.

- 
- How to set up my printer

*Setup diagram*



- 
- Express Service Code and Service Tag



The Express Service Code and Service Tag are located inside the front cover of your printer.

- 
- Latest drivers for my printer
  - Documentation for my printer

Go to [support.dell.com](http://support.dell.com).

---

<b>What are you looking for?</b>	<b>Find it here</b>
• Answers to technical service and support questions	<p><b>support.dell.com</b> provides several online tools, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Solutions — Troubleshooting hints and tips, articles from technicians, and online courses</li><li>• Upgrades — Upgrade information for components, such as the printer drivers</li><li>• Customer Care — Contact information, order status, warranty, and repair information</li><li>• Downloads — Drivers</li><li>• Manuals— Printer documentation and product specifications</li></ul> <p>Go to <b>support.dell.com</b>. Select your region, and fill in the requested details to access help tools and information.</p>

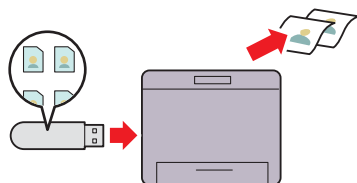
---



## Product Features

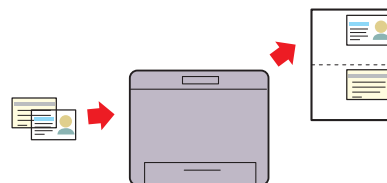
This chapter describes the product features and indicates their links.

### Printing from USB Memory (USB Direct Print)



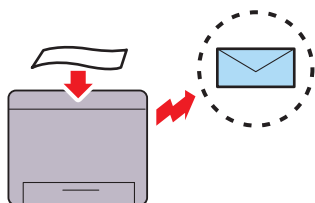
The USB Direct Print feature enables you to print files directly from a USB memory without requiring you to start your computer and an application.

### Using the ID Card Copy (ID Card Copy)



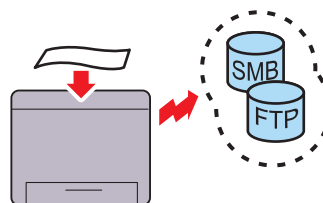
You can copy both sides of an ID card on one side of a single sheet of paper in its original size by selecting ID Card Copy on the touch panel. This feature helps to show both sides of an ID card in one page in its original size.

### Sending an E-Mail With the Scanned Image (Scan to E-mail)



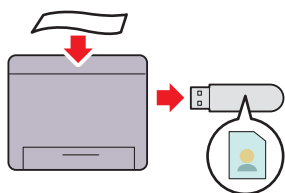
When you want to send scanned data by e-mail, use the Scan to E-mail feature. You can directly send the data scanned as an e-mail attachment. You can choose destination e-mail addresses from the address book on the printer or server. Or, you can enter the address from the touch panel on the printer's operator panel.

### Scanning to a PC or Server via SMB/FTP (Scan to Network)



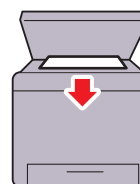
You can transfer data scanned to a PC or a server via SMB or FTP without service software. Although prior registration of the destination FTP server or PC on the address book is required, it helps save your time.

### Scanning to a USB Memory (Scan to USB Memory)



With the Scan to USB Memory feature, you don't need a PC to connect a USB memory. You can specify the USB memory inserted into the printer's port as a data saving location when you scan data.

### Making Copies From the Document Glass (Scan From Document Glass)



You can scan the pages of a book or a brochure from the document glass. When you scan documents using the document glass, place them facing down.

### **Making Copies From the DADF (Scan From DADF)**



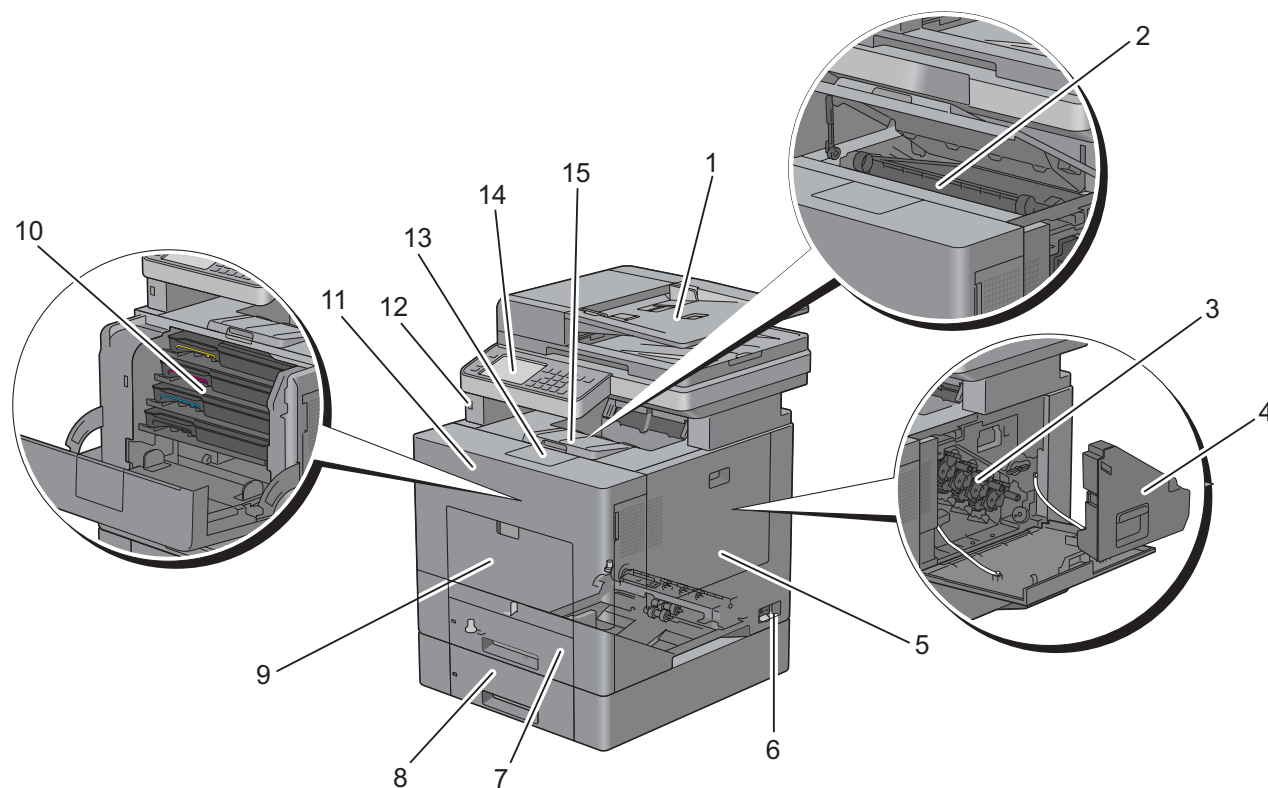
You can scan pieces of unbound paper using the duplex automatic document feeder (DADF). When you scan documents using the DADF, load them facing up.

## About the Printer

This chapter provides an overview of your Dell™ C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer.

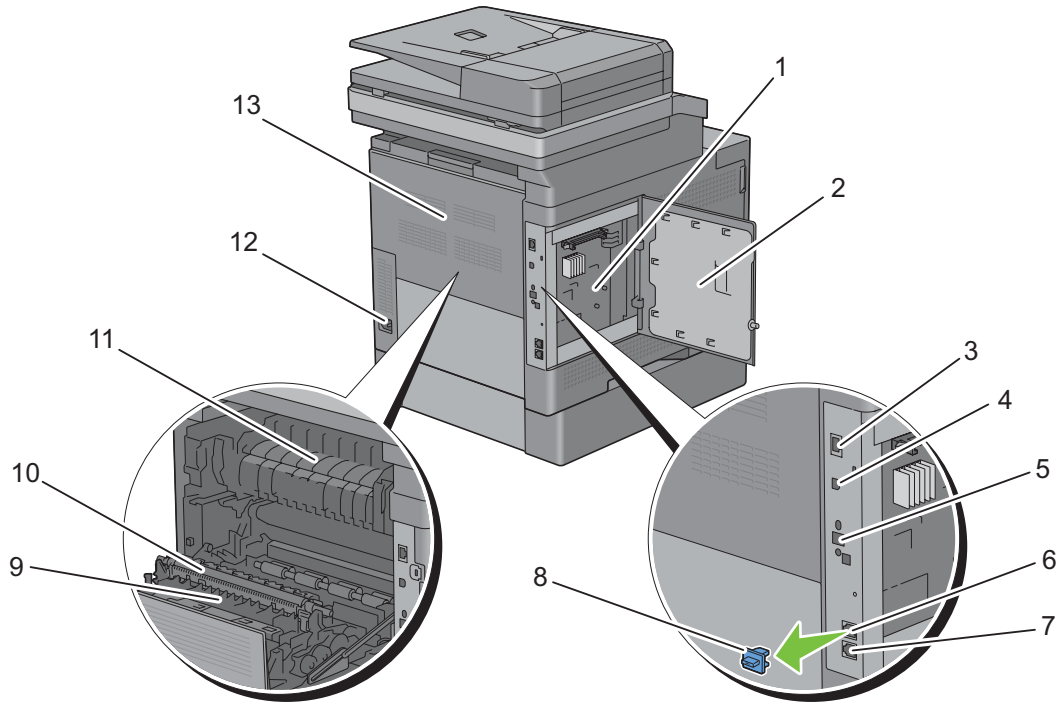
### Front and Rear View

#### Front View



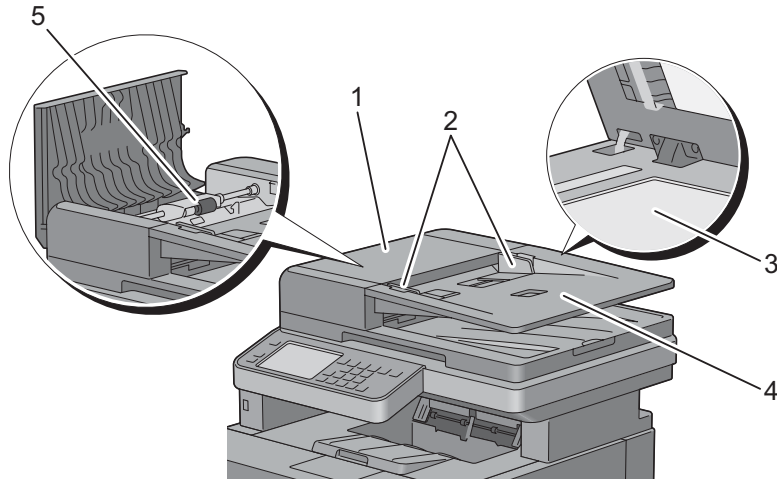
1	Duplex Automatic Document Feeder (DADF)	9	Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)
2	Transfer Belt Unit	10	Toner Cartridges
3	Drum Cartridges	11	Front Cover
4	Waste Toner Box	12	Front USB Port
5	Right Side Cover	13	Output Tray Extension
6	Power Switch	14	Operator Panel
7	Tray1	15	Top Cover
8	Optional 550-Sheet Feeder (Tray2)		

## Rear View



1	Control Board	8	"Blue" Plug
2	Left Side Cover	9	Duplex Unit
3	Ethernet Port	10	2nd Belt Transfer Roller (2nd BTR)
4	USB Port	11	Fusing Unit
5	Wireless Adapter Socket	12	Power Connector
6	Phone Connector	13	Rear Cover
7	Wall Jack Connector		

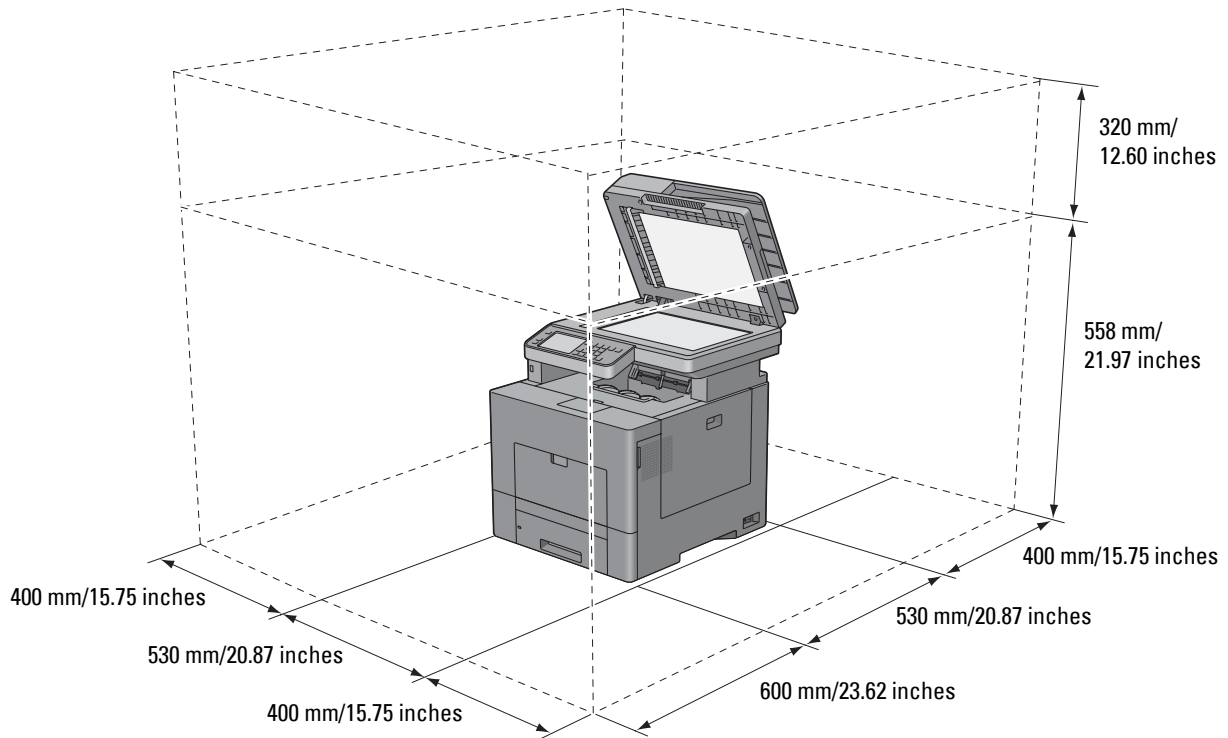
# Duplex Automatic Document Feeder (DADF)



1	DADF Cover	4	Document Feeder Tray
2	Document Guides	5	DADF Feed Roller
3	Document Glass		

## Space Requirements

Provide enough room to open the printer trays, covers, and optional accessories, and for proper ventilation.



## Operator Panel




For more information on the operator panel, see "About the Operator Panel."

## Additional Components

### Optional Accessories

The following optional accessories are available for the printer.

 **NOTE:** Each accessory can be purchased separately except for the wireless adapter and the hard disk, which can only be purchased together as a bundled kit.

- Wireless adapter
- 512MB memory module
- Hard disk
- Optional 550-sheet feeder

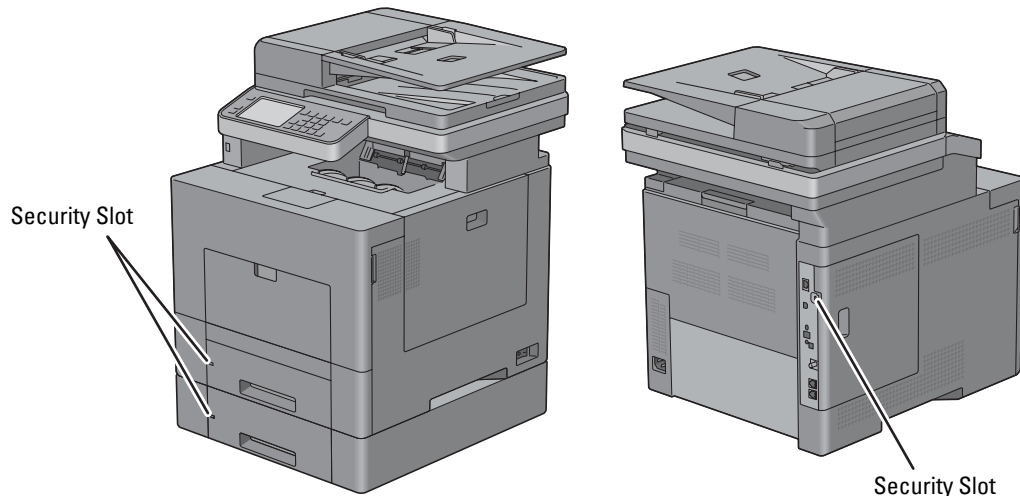
### Non-bundled Items

The following items are required for connecting the printer to a computer or a network. Please purchase them as needed.

- USB cable
- Ethernet cable

## Securing the Printer

To protect your printer from theft, you can use the optional Kensington lock. Attach the Kensington lock to the security slot on your printer.




For details, see the operating instructions supplied with the Kensington lock.

## Ordering Supplies

You can order consumables from Dell online when using a networked printer. Enter the IP address of your printer in your web browser, launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, and click the web address under **Order Supplies at:** to order toner or supplies for your printer.

You can also order replacement toner cartridges or supplies from Dell by using the **Dell Supplies Management System**:

 **NOTE:** For Macintosh, start the Status Monitor Widget, and then select **Order Supplies** button to open **Order** window.

- 1 Double-click the icon on your desktop.



If you cannot find the icon on your desktop:

- a Right-click **DLRMM.EXE** under `x:\abc\Dell Printers\Additional Color Laser Software\Reorder`, where `x:\abc` is the location where the printer software is installed.
- b Choose **Send To** from the drop-down menu, and then click **Desktop (create shortcut)** on the submenu.

The **Dell Supplies Management System** window appears.

You can also launch the Dell Supplies Management System by clicking **Start** → **All Programs** → **Dell Printers** → **Additional Color Laser Software** → **Dell Supplies Management System**.

- 2 Click the **Visit Dell printer supplies ordering web site link** ([www.dell.com/supplies](http://www.dell.com/supplies)), or order Dell printer supplies by phone.

To ensure that you get the best service, have your Dell printer's Service Tag ready.

For information regarding locating your Service Tag, see "Express Service Code and Service Tag."



# Setting up the Printer (Printer Setup)

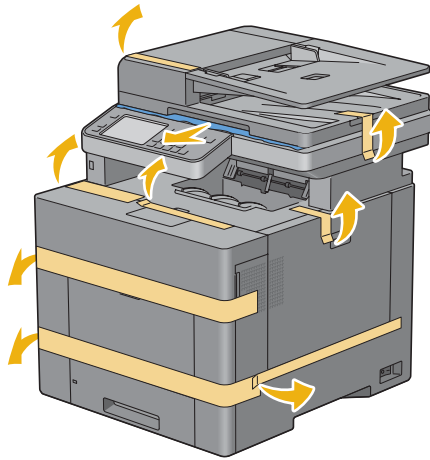
5	Preparing Printer Hardware.....	41
6	Installing Optional Accessories.....	43
7	Connecting Your Printer .....	71
8	Setting the IP Address .....	83
9	Loading Paper.....	87
10	Installing Printer Drivers on Windows <sup>®</sup> Computers .....	91
11	Installing Printer Drivers on Macintosh Computers.....	111
12	Installing Printer Drivers on Linux Computers (CUPS) .....	117



# Preparing Printer Hardware

## Removing Tape

- 1 Remove tapes and the protective sheet from the printer.



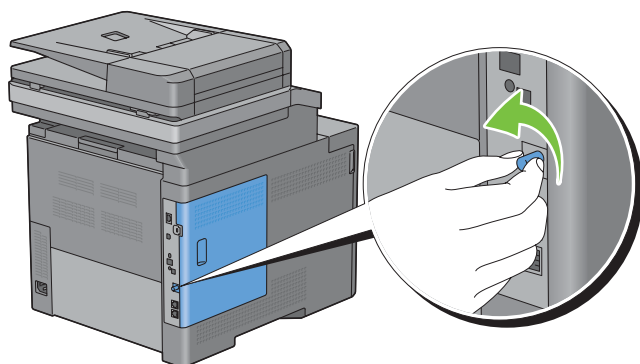


## Installing Optional Accessories

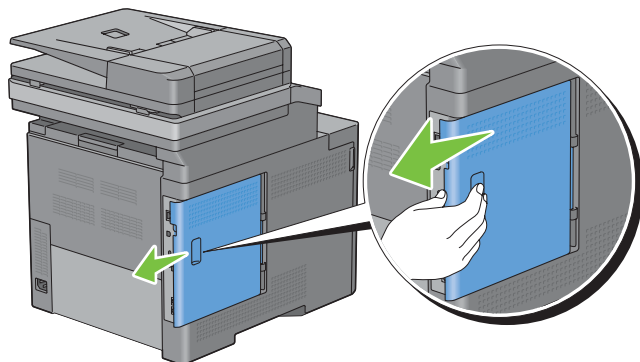
You can make the printer more functional by installing the optional accessories. This chapter describes how to install the printer's options such as the 512 MB memory module, optional 550-sheet feeder (tray2), wireless adapter, and hard disk.

### Installing the Optional Memory Module

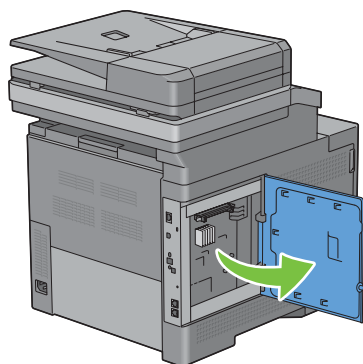
- 1 Ensure that the printer is turned off.
- 2 Turn the screw on the left side cover counterclockwise.



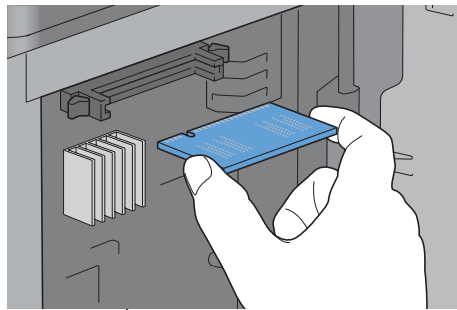
- 3 Slide the left side cover towards the back of the printer.



- 4 Open the left side cover completely.

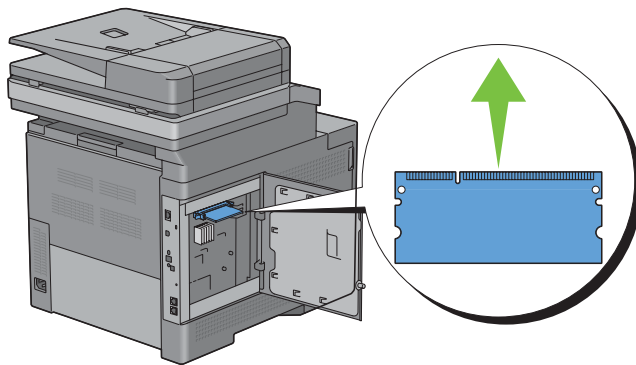


- 5 Hold the edge of the memory module and face its connector toward the slot with the notch on the connector positioned on left.

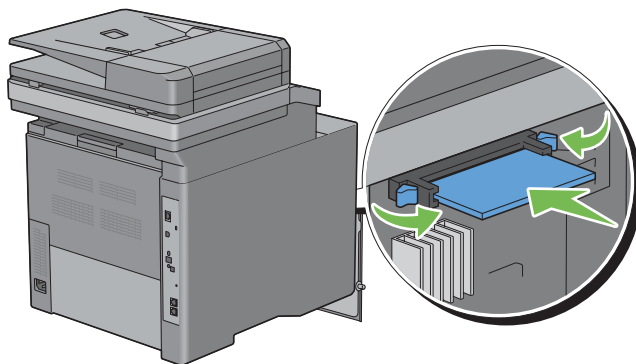



notch

- 6 Align the connector of the memory module with the slot and insert the memory module into the slot.

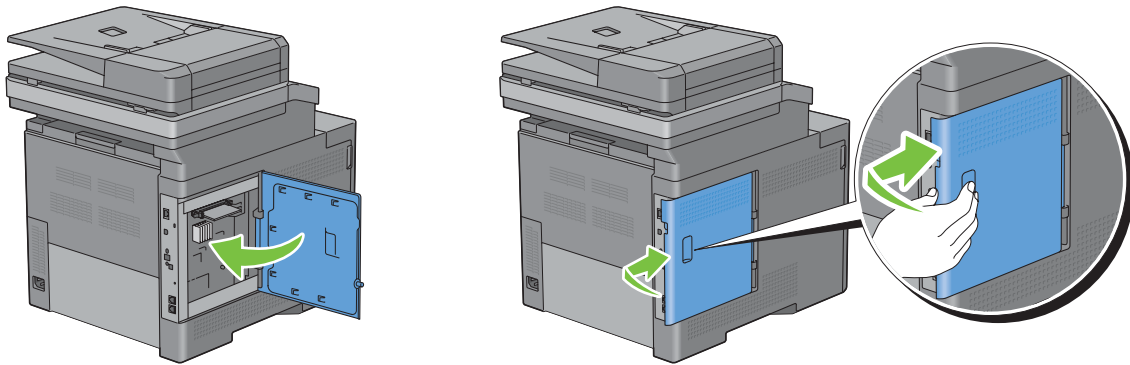


- 7 Push the memory module firmly into the slot.

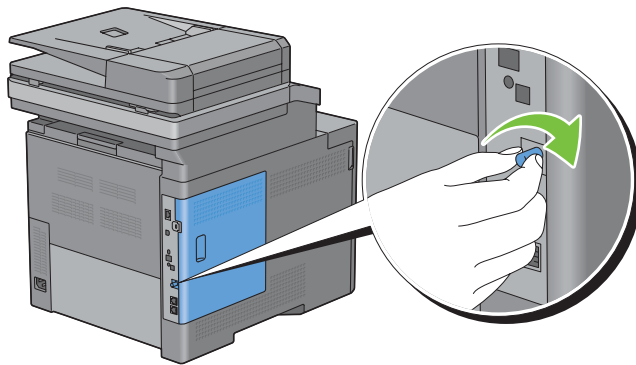


 **NOTE:** Ensure that the memory module is firmly fixed in the slot and does not move easily.

- 8 Close the left side cover, and then slide it towards the front of the printer.




- 9 Turn the screw clockwise.



- 10 Turn on the printer.
- 11 Print the system settings report to confirm that the newly installed memory is detected by the printer.  
For details about how to print a system settings report, see "Report / List."
- 12 Confirm the amount of **Memory Capacity** listed in the system settings report under **General**.  
If the memory capacity has not increased, turn off the printer, unplug the power cable, and re-install the memory module.
- 13 If you installed the optional memory module after installing the printer driver, update your driver by following the instructions for the operating system you are using. If the printer is on a network, update the driver for each client.

### Updating Your Driver to Detect Memory Module

 **NOTE:** When you use XPS driver, driver updating is not required.

#### When Using PCL Driver

Microsoft® Windows® 8/  
Windows 8 x64/  
Windows Server® 2012

- 1 Under Desktop mode, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** (**Hardware** for Windows Server 2012) → **Devices and Printers**.
- 2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell™ C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer, and then select **Printer properties**.
- 3 Click the **Options** tab, and then select **Get Information from Printer**.
- 4 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.
- 5 Close the **Devices and Printers** dialog box.

Windows 7/ 7 x64/ Server 2008 R2 x64	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Click <b>Start</b> → <b>Devices and Printers</b>.</li> <li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell™ C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer, and then select <b>Printer properties</b>.</li> <li>3 Click the <b>Options</b> tab, and then select <b>Get Information from Printer</b>.</li> <li>4 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>5 Close the <b>Devices and Printers</b> dialog box.</li> </ol>
Windows Vista®/Vista x64	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Click <b>Start</b> → <b>Control Panel</b> → <b>Hardware and Sound</b> → <b>Printers</b>.</li> <li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer, and then select <b>Properties</b>.</li> <li>3 Click the <b>Options</b> tab, and then select <b>Get Information from Printer</b>.</li> <li>4 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>5 Close the <b>Printers</b> dialog box.</li> </ol>
Windows Server 2008/ Server 2008 x64	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Click <b>Start</b> → <b>Control Panel</b> → <b>Printers</b>.</li> <li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer, and then select <b>Properties</b>.</li> <li>3 Click the <b>Options</b> tab, and then select <b>Get Information from Printer</b>.</li> <li>4 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>5 Close the <b>Printers</b> dialog box.</li> </ol>
Windows XP/XP x64/ Server 2003/ Server 2003 x64	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Click <b>start</b> → <b>Printers and Faxes</b>.</li> <li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer, and then select <b>Properties</b>.</li> <li>3 Click the <b>Options</b> tab, and then select <b>Get Information from Printer</b>.</li> <li>4 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>5 Close the <b>Printers and Faxes</b> dialog box.</li> </ol>

If the printer information is not updated automatically after clicking **Get Information from Printer**, follow these steps:

- 1 Click the **Options** tab, and then select **Memory Capacity** in the **Items** list box.
- 2 Select the total amount of the installed printer memory in the **Memory Capacity** drop-down menu in **Change Setting for**.
- 3 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.
- 4 Close the **Printers and Faxes** (**Printers**, or **Devices and Printers**) dialog box.

#### When Using PS Driver

Windows 8/ Windows 8 x64/ Windows Server 2012	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Under Desktop mode, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click <b>Control Panel</b> → <b>Hardware and Sound</b> (<b>Hardware</b> for Windows Server 2012) → <b>Devices and Printers</b>.</li> <li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer, and then select <b>Printer properties</b>.</li> <li>3 Click the <b>Configuration</b> tab, and then select <b>Bi-Directional Setup</b>.</li> <li>4 Select <b>Get Information from Printer</b> and then click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>5 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>6 Close the <b>Devices and Printers</b> dialog box.</li> </ol>
---	---

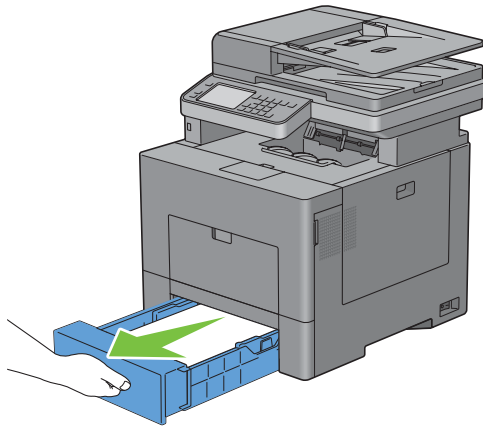
Windows 7/ 7 x64/ Server 2008 R2 x64	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Click <b>Start</b> → <b>Devices and Printers</b>.</li> <li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer, and then select <b>Printer properties</b>.</li> <li>3 Click the <b>Configuration</b> tab, and then select <b>Bi-Directional Setup</b>.</li> <li>4 Select <b>Get Information from Printer</b> and then click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>5 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>6 Close the <b>Devices and Printers</b> dialog box.</li> </ol>
Windows Vista/Vista x64	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Click <b>Start</b> → <b>Control Panel</b> → <b>Hardware and Sound</b> → <b>Printers</b>.</li> <li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer, and then select <b>Properties</b>.</li> <li>3 Click the <b>Configuration</b> tab, and then select <b>Bi-Directional Setup</b>.</li> <li>4 Select <b>Get Information from Printer</b> and then click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>5 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>6 Close the <b>Printers</b> dialog box.</li> </ol>
Windows Server 2008/ Server 2008 x64	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Click <b>Start</b> → <b>Control Panel</b> → <b>Printers</b>.</li> <li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer, and then select <b>Properties</b>.</li> <li>3 Click the <b>Configuration</b> tab, and then select <b>Bi-Directional Setup</b>.</li> <li>4 Select <b>Get Information from Printer</b> and then click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>5 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>6 Close the <b>Printers</b> dialog box.</li> </ol>
Windows XP/XP x64/ Server 2003/ Server 2003 x64	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Click <b>Start</b> → <b>Printers and Faxes</b>.</li> <li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer, and then select <b>Properties</b>.</li> <li>3 Click the <b>Configuration</b> tab, and then select <b>Bi-Directional Setup</b>.</li> <li>4 Select <b>Get Information from Printer</b> and then click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>5 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>6 Close the <b>Printers and Faxes</b> dialog box.</li> </ol>
<p>If the printer information is not updated automatically after clicking <b>Get Information from Printer</b>, follow these steps:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Click the <b>Configuration</b> tab, and then select <b>Installable Options</b>.</li> <li>2 Select <b>Memory Capacity</b> in the <b>Items</b> list box.</li> <li>3 Select the total amount of the installed printer memory in the <b>Memory Capacity</b> drop-down menu under <b>Setting for</b>.</li> <li>4 Click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>5 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>6 Close the <b>Printers and Faxes (Printers, or Devices and Printers)</b> dialog box.</li> </ol>	
Mac OS® X 10.7.x/10.8.x	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Select the <b>Print &amp; Scan</b> in <b>System Preferences</b>.</li> <li>2 Select the printer in <b>Printers</b> list, and click <b>Options &amp; Supplies</b>.</li> <li>3 Select <b>Driver</b>, select the options that have been installed on the printers, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol>
Mac OS X 10.5.x/10.6.x	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Select the <b>Print &amp; Fax</b> in <b>System Preferences</b>.</li> <li>2 Select the printer in <b>Printers</b> list, and click <b>Options &amp; Supplies</b>.</li> <li>3 Select <b>Driver</b>, select the options that have been installed on the printers, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol>

- 1 Select the printer from the **Printer List** screen in **Print Center** (or **Printer Setup Utility**).
- 2 Click **Printers** on the **Print Center** (or **Printer Setup Utility**) menu bar, and select **Show Info**.
- 3 Select **Installable Options**, and select the options that have been installed on the printer, and then click **Apply Changes**.

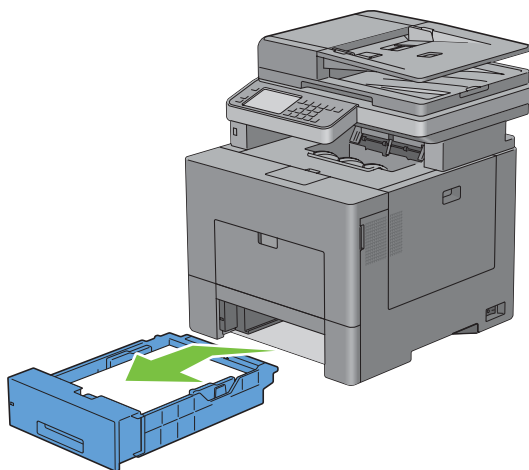
## Installing the Optional 550-Sheet Feeder

**⚠ WARNING:** If you install the optional 550-sheet feeder after setting up the printer, be sure to turn off the printer, unplug the power cable, and disconnect all cables from the back of the printer before starting this task.

- 1 Ensure that the printer is turned off, and then disconnect all cables from the back of the printer.
- 2 Remove the tape and the bag holding the screws.
- ✍ NOTE:** Do not lose the screws because you will need them later.
- 3 Place the optional 550-sheet feeder in the same location that the printer is located.
- 4 Pull tray1 out of the printer about 200 mm.



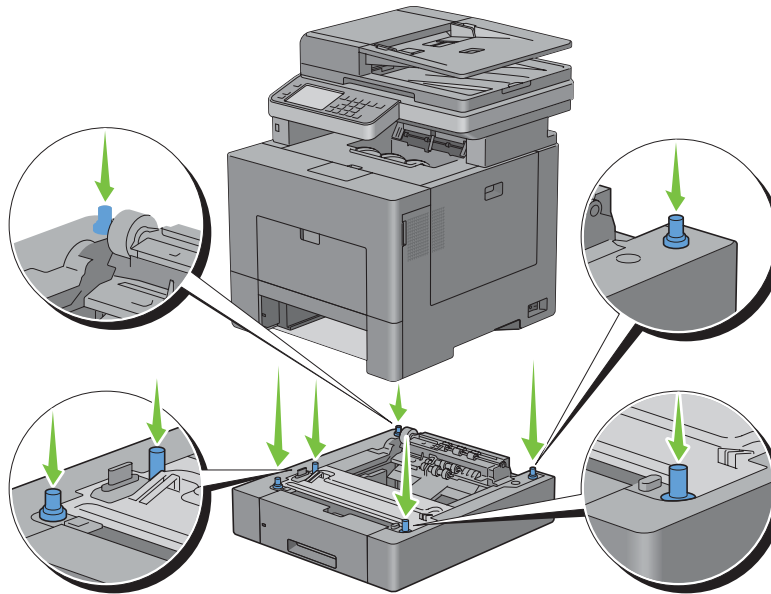
- 5 Hold tray1 with both hands, and remove it from the printer.



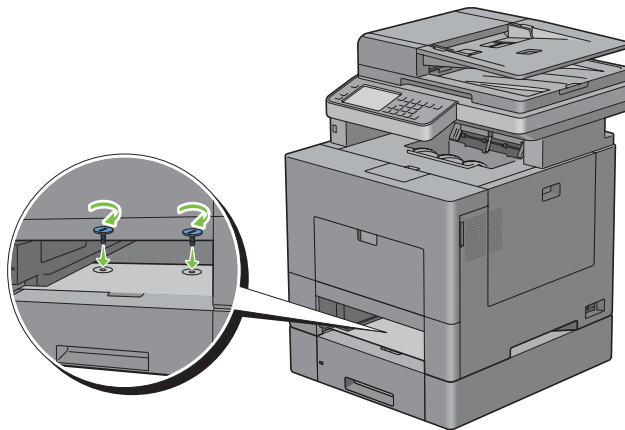
- 6 Lift the printer and align the five guide pins of the optional 550-sheet feeder with the holes at the bottom of the printer. Gently lower the printer onto the optional 550-sheet feeder.

 **WARNING: Two people are required to lift the printer.**

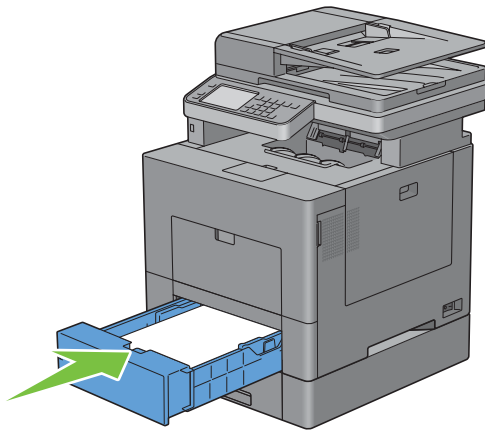
 **WARNING: Be careful not to pinch your fingers when lowering the printer onto the optional 550-sheet feeder.**



- 7 Secure the optional 550-sheet feeder to the printer by tightening the two screws provided with the feeder, using a coin or similar object.



- 8 Insert tray1 into the printer, and push until it stops.



- 9 Re-connect all cables into the back of the printer, and turn on the printer.  
**NOTE:** The printer will automatically detect the attached tray but will not detect the paper type.
- 10 Print the system settings report to confirm that the optional 550-sheet feeder is installed correctly.  
For details about how to print a system settings report, see "Report / List."
- 11 Confirm **Tray2 (550 Sheet Feeder)** is listed in the system settings report under **Printer Options**.  
If the feeder is not listed, turn off the printer, unplug the power cable, and re-install the optional 550-sheet feeder.
- 12 After loading paper in the optional 550-sheet feeder, specify the paper type from the printer touch panel.
  - a Press the **i** (**Information**) button.
  - b Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Tray Management**.
  - c Select **Tray Settings**.
  - d Select **Tray2**.
  - e Select **Type**.
  - f Select  until the desired paper type appears, and then select the desired paper type.
  - g Select **OK**.
- 13 If you installed the optional 550-sheet feeder after installing the printer driver, update your driver by following the instructions for each operating system. If the printer is on a network, update the driver for each client.

## Updating Your Driver to Detect 550-Sheet Feeder

### When Using PCL Driver

Windows 8/  
Windows 8 x64/  
Windows Server 2012

- 1 Under Desktop mode, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel → Hardware and Sound (Hardware for Windows Server 2012) → Devices and Printers**.
- 2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer, and then select **Printer properties**.
- 3 Click the **Options** tab, and then select **Get Information from Printer**.
- 4 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.
- 5 Close the **Devices and Printers** dialog box.

Windows 7/ 7 x64/ Server 2008 R2 x64	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Click <b>Start</b> → <b>Devices and Printers</b>.</li> <li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer, and then select <b>Printer properties</b>.</li> <li>3 Click the <b>Options</b> tab, and then select <b>Get Information from Printer</b>.</li> <li>4 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>5 Close the <b>Devices and Printers</b> dialog box.</li> </ol>
Windows Vista/Vista x64	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Click <b>Start</b> → <b>Control Panel</b> → <b>Hardware and Sound</b> → <b>Printers</b>.</li> <li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer, and then select <b>Properties</b>.</li> <li>3 Click the <b>Options</b> tab, and then select <b>Get Information from Printer</b>.</li> <li>4 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>5 Close the <b>Printers</b> dialog box.</li> </ol>
Windows Server 2008/ Server 2008 x64	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Click <b>Start</b> → <b>Control Panel</b> → <b>Printers</b>.</li> <li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer, and then select <b>Properties</b>.</li> <li>3 Click the <b>Options</b> tab, and then select <b>Get Information from Printer</b>.</li> <li>4 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>5 Close the <b>Printers</b> dialog box.</li> </ol>
Windows XP/XP x64/ Server 2003/ Server 2003 x64	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Click <b>start</b> → <b>Printers and Faxes</b>.</li> <li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer, and then select <b>Properties</b>.</li> <li>3 Click the <b>Options</b> tab, and then select <b>Get Information from Printer</b>.</li> <li>4 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>5 Close the <b>Printers and Faxes</b> dialog box.</li> </ol>

If the printer information is not updated automatically after clicking **Get Information from Printer**, follow these steps:

- 1 Click the **Options** tab, and then select **Paper Tray Configuration** in the **Items** list box.
- 2 Select **Tray2** in the **Paper Tray Configuration** drop-down menu in **Change Setting for**.
- 3 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.
- 4 Close the **Printers and Faxes** (**Printers**, or **Devices and Printers**) dialog box.

#### When Using PS Driver

Windows 8/ Windows 8 x64/ Windows Server 2012	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Under Desktop mode, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click <b>Control Panel</b> → <b>Hardware and Sound</b> (<b>Hardware</b> for Windows Server 2012) → <b>Devices and Printers</b>.</li> <li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer, and then select <b>Printer properties</b>.</li> <li>3 Click the <b>Configuration</b> tab, and then select <b>Bi-Directional Setup</b>.</li> <li>4 Select <b>Get Information from Printer</b> and then click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>5 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>6 Close the <b>Devices and Printers</b> dialog box.</li> </ol>
---	---

Windows 7/ 7 x64/ Server 2008 R2 x64	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Click <b>Start</b> → <b>Devices and Printers</b>.</li> <li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer, and then select <b>Printer properties</b>.</li> <li>3 Click the <b>Configuration</b> tab, and then select <b>Bi-Directional Setup</b>.</li> <li>4 Select <b>Get Information from Printer</b> and then click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>5 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>6 Close the <b>Devices and Printers</b> dialog box.</li> </ol>
Windows Vista/Vista x64	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Click <b>Start</b> → <b>Control Panel</b> → <b>Hardware and Sound</b> → <b>Printers</b>.</li> <li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer, and then select <b>Properties</b>.</li> <li>3 Click the <b>Configuration</b> tab, and then select <b>Bi-Directional Setup</b>.</li> <li>4 Select <b>Get Information from Printer</b> and then click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>5 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>6 Close the <b>Printers</b> dialog box.</li> </ol>
Windows Server 2008/ Server 2008 x64	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Click <b>Start</b> → <b>Control Panel</b> → <b>Printers</b>.</li> <li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer, and then select <b>Properties</b>.</li> <li>3 Click the <b>Configuration</b> tab, and then select <b>Bi-Directional Setup</b>.</li> <li>4 Select <b>Get Information from Printer</b> and then click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>5 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>6 Close the <b>Printers</b> dialog box.</li> </ol>
Windows XP/XP x64/ Server 2003/ Server 2003 x64	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Click <b>Start</b> → <b>Printers and Faxes</b>.</li> <li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer, and then select <b>Properties</b>.</li> <li>3 Click the <b>Configuration</b> tab, and then select <b>Bi-Directional Setup</b>.</li> <li>4 Select <b>Get Information from Printer</b> and then click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>5 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>6 Close the <b>Printers and Faxes</b> dialog box.</li> </ol>
<p>If the printer information is not updated automatically after clicking <b>Get Information from Printer</b>, follow these steps:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Click the <b>Configuration</b> tab, and then select <b>Installable Options</b>.</li> <li>2 Select <b>Paper Tray Configuration</b> in the <b>Items</b> list box.</li> <li>3 Select <b>Tray2</b> in the <b>Paper Tray Configuration</b> drop-down menu in <b>Setting for</b>.</li> <li>4 Click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>5 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>6 Close the <b>Printers and Faxes (Printers, or Devices and Printers)</b> dialog box.</li> </ol>	
Mac OS X 10.7.x/10.8.x	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Select the <b>Print &amp; Scan</b> in <b>System Preferences</b>.</li> <li>2 Select the printer in <b>Printers</b> list, and click <b>Options &amp; Supplies</b>.</li> <li>3 Select <b>Driver</b>, select the options that have been installed on the printers, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol>
Mac OS X 10.5.x/10.6.x	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Select the <b>Print &amp; Fax</b> in <b>System Preferences</b>.</li> <li>2 Select the printer in <b>Printers</b> list, and click <b>Options &amp; Supplies</b>.</li> <li>3 Select <b>Driver</b>, select the options that have been installed on the printers, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol>

Mac OS X 10.3.x/10.4.x	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Select the printer from the <b>Printer List</b> screen in <b>Print Center</b> (or <b>Printer Setup Utility</b>).</li> <li>2 Click <b>Printers</b> on the <b>Print Center</b> (or <b>Printer Setup Utility</b>) menu bar, and select <b>Show Info</b>.</li> <li>3 Select <b>Installable Options</b>, and select the options that have been installed on the printer, and then click <b>Apply Changes</b>.</li> </ol>
------------------------	--

### When Using XPS Driver



**NOTE:** The XPS driver does not support Windows XP, XP x64, and Windows Server 2003.

Windows 8/ Windows 8 x64/ Windows Server 2012	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Under Desktop mode, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click <b>Control Panel</b> → <b>Hardware and Sound</b> (<b>Hardware</b> for Windows Server 2012) → <b>Devices and Printers</b>.</li> <li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer, and then select <b>Printer properties</b>.</li> <li>3 Click the <b>Device Setting</b> tab, and then select <b>Available</b> in <b>Tray2</b> drop-down menu.</li> <li>4 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>5 Close the <b>Devices and Printers</b> dialog box.</li> </ol>
Windows 7/ 7 x64/ Server 2008 R2 x64	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Click <b>Start</b> → <b>Devices and Printers</b>.</li> <li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer, and then select <b>Printer properties</b>.</li> <li>3 Click the <b>Device Setting</b> tab, and then select <b>Available</b> in <b>Tray2</b> drop-down menu.</li> <li>4 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>5 Close the <b>Devices and Printers</b> dialog box.</li> </ol>
Windows Vista/Vista x64	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Click <b>Start</b> → <b>Control Panel</b> → <b>Hardware and Sound</b> → <b>Printers</b>.</li> <li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer, and then select <b>Properties</b>.</li> <li>3 Click the <b>Device Setting</b> tab, and then select <b>Available</b> in <b>Tray2</b> drop-down menu.</li> <li>4 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>5 Close the <b>Printers</b> dialog box.</li> </ol>
Windows Server 2008/ Server 2008 x64	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Click <b>Start</b> → <b>Control Panel</b> → <b>Printers</b>.</li> <li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer, and then select <b>Properties</b>.</li> <li>3 Click the <b>Device Setting</b> tab, and then select <b>Available</b> in <b>Tray2</b> drop-down menu.</li> <li>4 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>5 Close the <b>Printers</b> dialog box.</li> </ol>

## Installing the Optional Wireless Adapter

The wireless adapter allows you to use the printer with wireless network connection.

The specifications of the wireless adapter are described below.


Item	Specification
Connectivity Technology	Wireless
Compliant Standards	IEEE 802.11b, 802.11g, and 802.11n
Bandwidth	2.4 GHz

Item	Specification
Data Transfer Rate	IEEE 802.11n: 65 Mbps IEEE 802.11g: 54, 48, 36, 24, 18, 12, 9, and 6 Mbps IEEE 802.11b: 11, 5.5, 2, and 1 Mbps
Security	64 (40-bit key)/128 (104-bit key) WEP, WPA-PSK (TKIP, AES), WPA2-PSK (AES), WPA-Enterprise (TKIP, AES) <sup>*1*2</sup> , WPA2-Enterprise (AES) <sup>*1*2</sup>
Wi-Fi Protected Setup <sup>®</sup> (WPS) <sup>*3</sup>	Push-Button Configuration (PBC), Personal Identification Number (PIN)

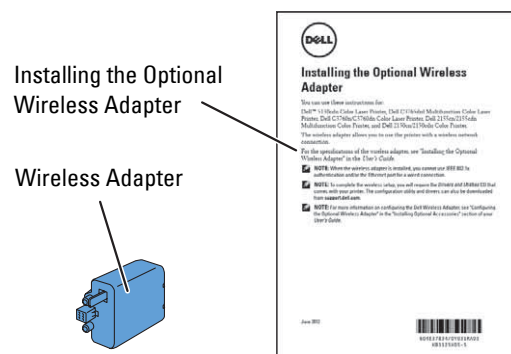
<sup>\*1</sup> This item is available only when the optional hard disk is installed.


<sup>\*2</sup> EAP method supports PEAPv0, EAP-TLS, EAP-TTLS PAP, and EAP-TTLS CHAP.

<sup>\*3</sup> WPS 2.0 compliant. WPS 2.0 works on access points with the following encryption types: Mixed mode PSK, WPA-PSK AES, WPA2-PSK AES, WPA-PSK TKIP, Open (No Security)

 **NOTE:** When the wireless adapter is installed, you cannot use IEEE 802.1x authentication and/or the Ethernet port for a wired connection.

## Verifying the Contents of the Box



 **NOTE:** To complete wireless installation, you require the corresponding *Software and Documentation* disc that comes with your printer, which can also be downloaded from [support.dell.com](http://support.dell.com).

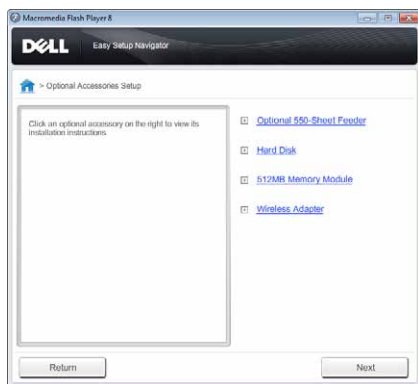
## Installing the Wireless Adapter Using Video Instructions (Recommended)

To install the wireless adapter, perform the following method.

- 1 Insert the *Software and Documentation* disc in your computer. The *Easy Setup Navigator* file launches automatically.
- 2 Select **Optional Accessories Setup** on the *Easy Setup Navigator* window.




3 Click **Wireless adapter**.



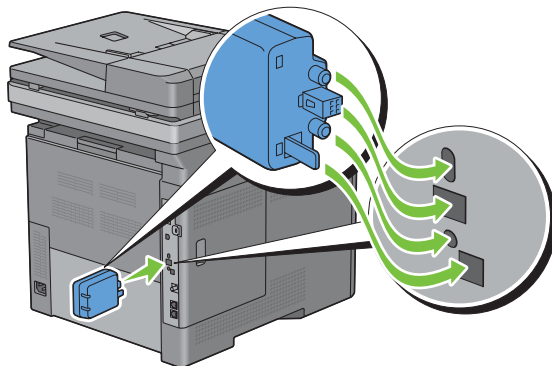
The instruction video starts.


Follow the on-screen instructions to configure wireless settings.

### Installing the Optional Wireless Adapter

 **NOTE:** You can also install the wireless adapter by following the instructions described in *Installing the Optional Wireless Adapter* provided with the wireless adapter.

- 1 Ensure that the printer is turned off.
- 2 Align the connector and the three protrusions of the wireless adapter with the four holes and insert the adapter.



 **NOTE:** Ensure that the adapter is fully inserted and secured.

3 Turn on the printer.



**NOTE:** If a message displays telling you to make initial setup on the touch panel, always do as instructed.

4 Print the system settings report to confirm that the wireless adapter is installed correctly.

For details about how to print a system settings report, see "Report / List."

5 Confirm that the **Network (Wireless)** section exists.



6 Configure the wireless adapter to connect to a wireless network. For details, see "Configuring the Optional Wireless Adapter."

### Determining the Wireless Network Settings

You need to know the settings for the wireless network to set up the wireless printer. For details of the settings, contact your network administrator.

Wireless Settings	SSID	Specifies the name that identifies the wireless network with up to 32 alphanumeric characters.
	Network Mode	Specifies the network mode from Ad-hoc or Infrastructure.
Security Settings	Security	Selects the encryption type from No Security, Mixed mode PSK*, WPA-PSK-TKIP, WPA2-PSK-AES, and WEP.
	Transmit Key	Specifies the transmit key from the list.
	WEP Key	Specifies the WEP key used through the wireless network only when WEP is selected as the encryption type.
	Pass Phrase	Specifies the pass phrase of alphanumeric characters from 8 to 63 bytes long only when Mixed mode PSK*, WPA-PSK-TKIP, or WPA2-PSK-AES is selected as the encryption type.
* Mixed mode PSK automatically selects an available encryption type from WPA-PSK-TKIP, WPA-PSK-AES, or WPA2-PSK-AES.		

## Configuring the Optional Wireless Adapter

This section describes how to configure a wireless adapter through Easy Setup Navigator.


You can select a method to configure a wireless adapter from the following:


Wizard Setup through USB Cable(recommended)	WPS-PBC <sup>*1*3</sup>
	WPS-PIN <sup>*2*3</sup>
Advanced Setup through	Operator Panel
	Ethernet Cable
	Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool


\*1 WPS-PBC (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Push Button Configuration) is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration, by pressing the button provided on the access point via wireless routers, and then performing WPS-PBC setting on the operator panel. This setting is available only when the access point supports WPS.

\*2 WPS-PIN (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Personal Identification Number) is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration, by entering PIN assignments in the printer and computer. This setting, performed through access point, is available only when the access points of your wireless router supports WPS.

\*3 WPS 2.0 compliant. WPS 2.0 works on access points with the following encryption types: Mixed mode PSK, WPA-PSK AES, WPA2-PSK AES, WPA-PSK TKIP, Open (No Security)

 **NOTE:** The optional wireless adapter must be installed on the printer. For information on how to install a wireless adapter, see "Installing the Optional Wireless Adapter."

 **NOTE:** If the Panel Lock Control is set to Enable, you need to enter the four digit password to enter the Admin Settings menu.

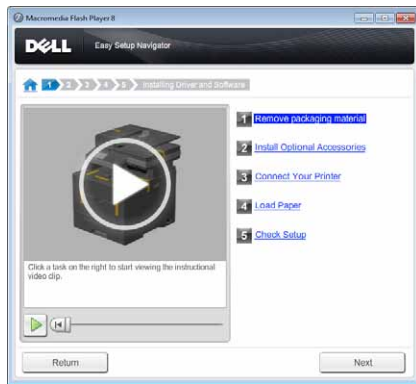
 **NOTE:** For details about using WPA-Enterprise-AES, WPA2-Enterprise-AES, or WPA-Enterprise-TKIP, see "Using Digital Certificates."

### Using Wizard Setup to Configure a Wireless Adapter

- 1 Insert the *Software and Documentation* disc provided with the printer in your computer. The **Easy Setup Navigator** file launches automatically.
- 2 Click **Start Setup**.



**3** Click **Connect Your Printer**.



**4** Click **Wireless Connection**.



**5** Click **Wizard**.



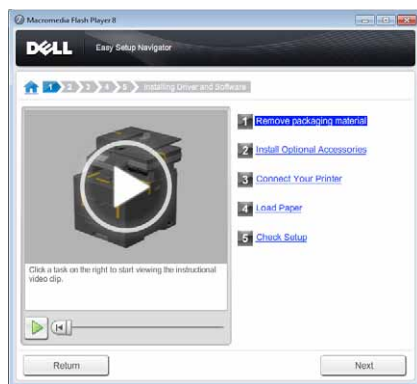
Follow the on-screen instructions to configure wireless settings.

## Using Advanced Setup to Configure a Wireless Adapter

You can configure the wireless adapter with the following connection methods:

- WPS-PBC
- WPS-PIN
- Operator Panel
- Ethernet Cable
- Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

- 1 Insert the *Software and Documentation* disc provided with the printer in your computer. The **Easy Setup Navigator** file launches automatically.
- 2 Click **Start Setup**.
- 3 Click **Connect Your Printer**.



- 4 Click **Wireless Connection**.



- 5 Select **Advanced**, and then select a connection method from **WPS-PBC**, **WPS-PIN**, **Operator Panel**, **Ethernet Cable**, or **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

For **Ethernet Cable**:


- a Select **Ethernet Cable**, and then click **Next**.

Follow the on-screen instructions to configure wireless settings, and then click **Next**.

The **Advanced Configuration Tool** starts.


- b Select the printer, and then click **Next**.

**Wireless Network Settings** screen appears.

 **NOTE:** If the printer is not listed, click **Enter IP Address** and enter the IP address of your printer, and then click **OK**.

- c Set the wireless network settings, and then click **Next**.

**IP Address Settings** screen appears.

 **NOTE:** For details on each item, see "Assigning an IP Address."

- d Set the IP address settings of the printer, and then click **Next**.

**Confirm the settings** screen appears.

- e Confirm the settings, and then click **Apply**.

**Complete configuration** screen appears.


- f Click **Next**.





For **WPS-PBC**, **WPS-PIN**, **Operator Panel**, and **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, follow the on-screen instructions to configure wireless settings.


To configure wireless settings without using the video instructions, see the following instructions.

## WPS-PIN

The PIN code of WPS-PIN can only be configured from the operator panel.

 **NOTE:** WPS-PIN (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Personal Identification Number) is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration by entering PIN assignments to a printer and computer. This setting, performed through an access point, is available only when the access points of your wireless router supports WPS.


- 1 Press the  (**Information**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Admin Settings**.
- 3 Select  until **Network** appears, and then select **Network**.
- 4 Select  until **Wireless** appears, and then select **Wireless**.
- 5 Select  until **WPS Setup** appears, and then select **WPS Setup**.
- 6 Select **PIN Code**.
- 7 Write down the displayed 8-digit PIN code or select **Print PIN Code**. The PIN code is printed.
- 8 Select **Start Configuration**.
- 9 Ensure that the message **Setting WPS** is displayed, and enter the PIN code displayed on step 7 into the wireless LAN access point (Registrar).


 **NOTE:** For WPS operation on the wireless LAN access point, refer to the manual supplied with the wireless LAN access point.





- 10 When the WPS operation is successful and the printer is rebooted, wireless LAN connection setting is completed.

## WPS-PBC

You can start Push Button Control only from the operator panel.

 **NOTE:** WPS-PBC (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Push Button Configuration) is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration by pressing the button provided on the access point via wireless routers, and then performing WPS-PBC setting on the operator panel. This setting is available only when the access point supports WPS.

 **NOTE:** Before starting WPS-PBC, confirm the position of the WPS button (button name may vary) on the wireless LAN access point. For information about WPS operation on the wireless LAN access point, refer to the manual supplied with the wireless LAN access point.





- 1 Press the  (**Information**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Admin Settings**.
- 3 Select  until **Network** appears, and then select **Network**.
- 4 Select  until **Wireless** appears, and then select **Wireless**.
- 5 Select  until **WPS Setup**, and then select **WPS Setup**.
- 6 Select **Push Button Control**.
- 7 Select **Start Configuration**.

Ensure that the message **Setting WPS** is displayed, and start the WPS-PBC on the wireless LAN access point (Registrar) within two minutes.


- 8 When the WPS operation is successful and the printer is rebooted, wireless LAN connection setting is completed.

## Operator Panel


### Auto SSID Setup

- 1 Press the  (**Information**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Admin Settings**.
- 3 Select  until **Network** appears, and then select **Network**.
- 4 Select  until **Wireless** appears, and then select **Wireless**.
- 5 Select  until **Wireless Setup Wizard** appears, and then select **Wireless Setup Wizard**.

The printer automatically searches the access points on wireless network.

- 6 Select  until the desired access point appears, and then select the access point.

If the desired access point does not appear, go to "Manual SSID Setup."

 **NOTE:** Some hidden SSID may not be displayed. If the SSID is not detected turn on SSID broadcast from the router.

- 7 Select **Next**.
- 8 Enter the **WEP Key** or pass phrase.

When the encryption type of the selected access point is WEP in step 6:

- a Select the **WEP Key** text box, and then enter the WEP key.
- b Select **OK**.





When the encryption type of the selected access point is WPA, WPA2 or Mixed in step 6:

- a Select the **Pass Phrase** text box, and then enter the pass phrase.
- b Select **OK**.

- 9 The **Restart System** screen appears.
- 10 Turn off the printer, and turn it on again to apply the settings.

Wireless LAN connection setting is complete.

### **Manual SSID Setup**


- 1** Press the  (**Information**) button.
- 2** Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Admin Settings**.
- 3** Select  until **Network** appears, and then select **Network**.
- 4** Select  until **Wireless** appears, and then select **Wireless**.
- 5** Select  until **Wireless Setup Wizard** appears, and then select **Wireless Setup Wizard**.
- 6** Select the **Manual SSID Setup** check box, and then select **Next**.
- 7** Enter the SSID, and then select **Next**.
- 8** Select the network mode from **Infrastructure** and **Ad-hoc** depending on your environment, and then select **Next**.

If you select **Infrastructure**, proceed to step 9.


If you select **Ad-hoc**, proceed to step 10.

- 9** Select the encryption type from **No Security**, **Mixed mode PSK**, **WPA-PSK-TKIP**, **WPA2-PSK-AES**, or **WEP**.


If you do not set security for your wireless network:

- a** Select  until **No Security** appears, and then select **No Security**.
- b** Select **OK**.

To use **Mixed mode PSK**, **WPA-PSK-TKIP**, or **WPA2-PSK-AES** encryption:

- a** Select  until **Mixed mode PSK**, **WPA-PSK-TKIP**, or **WPA2-PSK-AES** appears, and then select the desired encryption type.
- b** Select the **Pass Phrase** text box, and then enter the pass phrase.
- c** Select **OK**.


To use **WEP** encryption:

- a** Select  until **WEP** appears, and then select **WEP**.
- b** Select the **WEP Key** text box, and then enter the WEP key.
- c** Select **Transmit Key**, and then select the desired transmit key from **Auto** or **WEP Key 1** to **WEP Key 4**.
- d** Select **OK**.


Proceed to step 11.

- 10** Select the encryption type from **No Security** or **WEP**.

If you do not set security for your wireless network:

- a** Select  until **No Security** appears, and then select **No Security**.
- b** Select **OK**.



To use **WEP** encryption:

- a** Select  until **WEP** appears, and then select **WEP**.
- b** Select the **WEP Key** text box, and then enter the WEP key.
- c** Select **Transmit Key**, and then select the desired transmit key from **Auto** or **WEP Key 1** to **WEP Key 4**.
- d** Select **OK**.

- 11** The **Restart System** screen appears.





- 12 Turn off the printer, and turn it on again to apply the settings.  
Wireless LAN connection setting is complete.

### Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

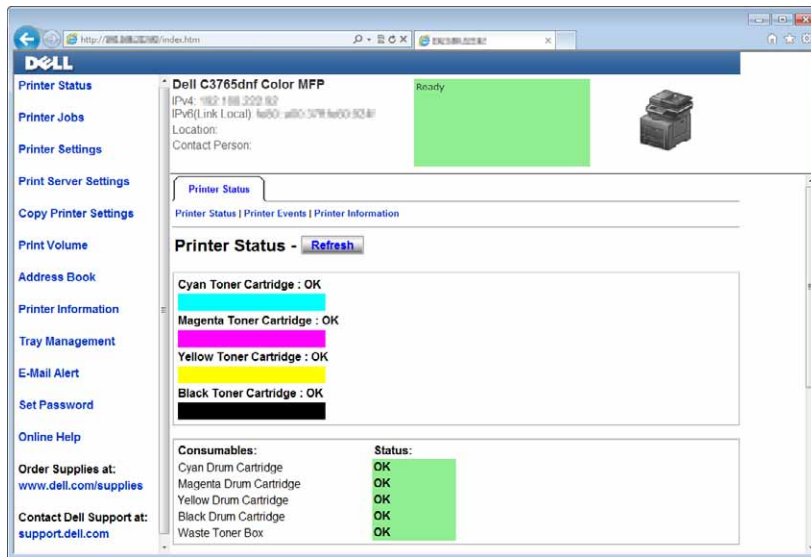
-  **NOTE:** For details about using WPA-Enterprise-AES, WPA2-Enterprise-AES, or WPA-Enterprise-TKIP, see "Using Digital Certificates."
- 1 Ensure that the printer is turned off and the wireless adapter is connected to the printer.
  - 2 Connect the printer to the network with an Ethernet cable.  
For details about how to connect the Ethernet cable, see "Connecting Printer to Computer or Network."
  - 3 Turn on the printer.
  - 4 Launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** by entering the IP address of the printer in your web browser.
  - 5 Click **Print Server Settings**.
  - 6 Click **Print Server Settings** tab.
  - 7 Click **Wireless LAN**.
  - 8 Enter the SSID in the **SSID** text box.
  - 9 Select **Ad-Hoc** or **Infrastructure** in the **Network Type** drop-down list box.
  - 10 Select the encryption type from **No Security**, **WEP**, **WPA-PSK-TKIP**, **WPA-PSK-AES/WEP2-PSK AES**, and **Mixed Mode PSK** in the **Encryption** drop-down list box, and then set each item for the encryption type selected.  
 **NOTE:** For details on each item, see "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."
  - 11 Click **Apply New Settings** to apply the settings.
  - 12 Turn off the printer, disconnect the Ethernet cable and turn it on again.  
Wireless LAN connection setting is complete.

## Reconfiguring the Wireless Setting


To change the wireless setting through an Ethernet or wireless connection from your computer, perform the following.

-  **NOTE:** To change the wireless setting through wireless connection, ensure that the wireless connection setting is completed in "Configuring the Optional Wireless Adapter."
-  **NOTE:** The following settings are available when the network mode is set to infrastructure in "Configuring the Optional Wireless Adapter."
- 1 Check the IP address of the printer.
    - a Press the  (**Information**) button.
    - b Select **About This MFP**.
    - c Select the **Network** tab.
    - d Select  button until **IP (v4) Address** appears, and then check the IP address displayed in the **IP (v4) Address**.

- 2 Launch the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool by entering the IP address of the printer in your web browser.

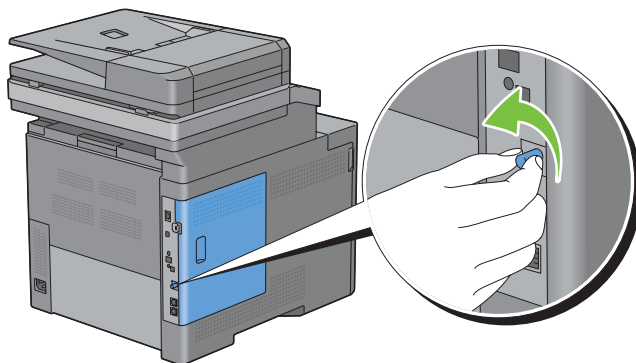


- 3 Click Print Server Settings.
- 4 Click Print Server Settings tab.
- 5 Click Wireless LAN.
- 6 Change the wireless setting of the printer.
- 7 Reboot the printer.
- 8 Change the wireless settings on your computer or access point accordingly.

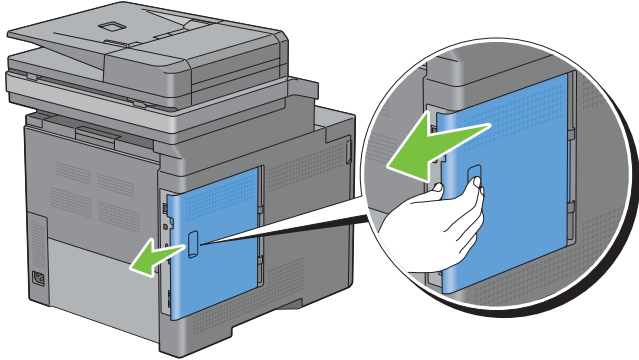
 **NOTE:** To change the wireless settings on your computer, refer to the manuals provided with the wireless adapter or if your computer provides a wireless adapter tool, change the wireless settings using that tool.

## Installing the Optional Hard Disk

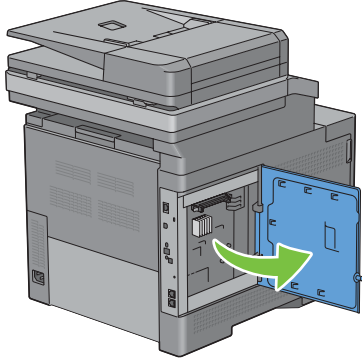
- 1 Ensure that the printer is turned off.
- 2 Turn the screw on the control board counterclockwise.



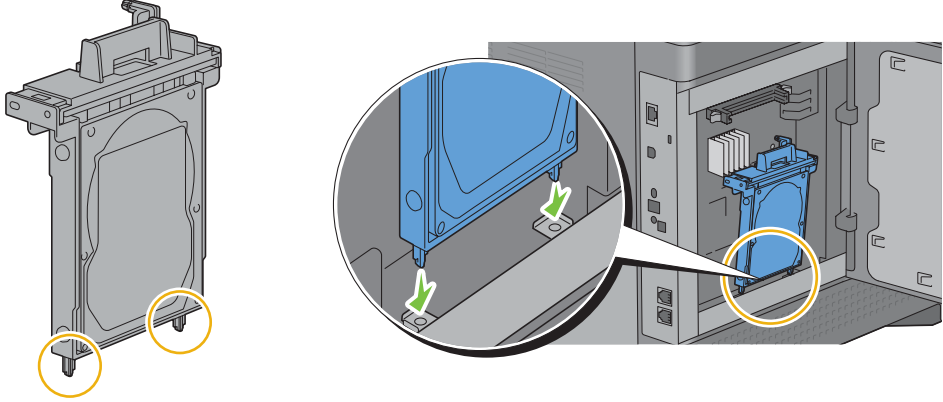
3 Slide the left side cover towards the back of the printer.



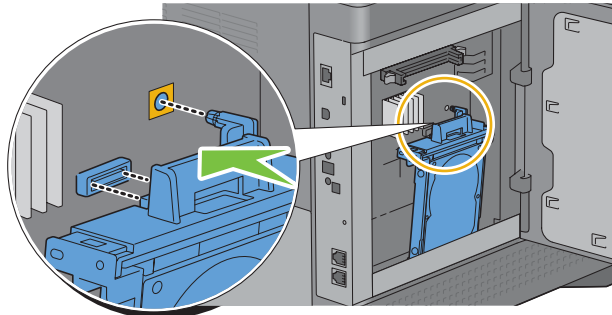
4 Open the left side cover completely.



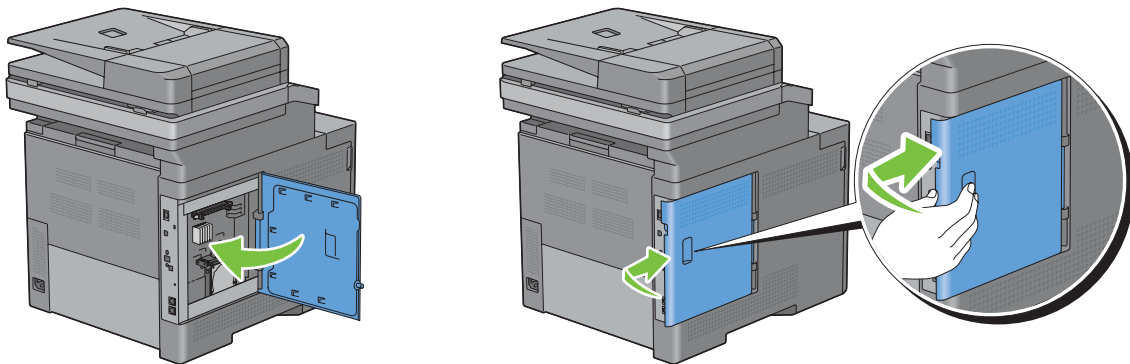
5 Insert the two plastic pins on the hard disk into the metal casing holes.



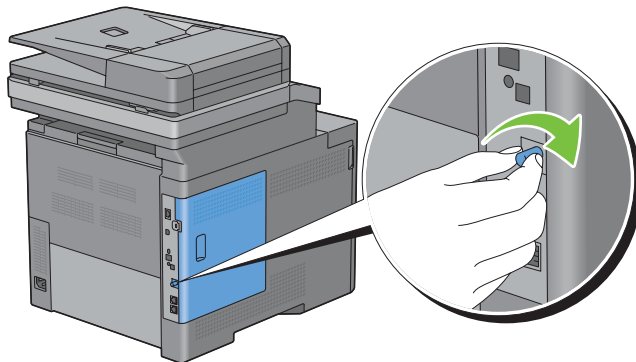
- 6 Attach the plastic pin and the connector to the control board, and push the hard disk firmly into place.



- 7 Close the left side cover, and then slide it towards the front of the printer.



- 8 Turn the screw clockwise.



- 9 Turn on the printer.
- 10 Print the system settings report to confirm that the newly installed hard disk is detected by the printer. For details about how to print a system settings report, see "Report / List."
- 11 Confirm the amount of **Hard Disk** listed in the system settings report under **Printer Options**. If the hard disk is not listed, turn off the printer, unplug the power cable, and re-install the hard disk.
- 12 If you installed the hard disk after installing the printer driver, update your driver by following the instructions for the operating system you are using. If the printer is on a network, update the driver for each client. Hard disk can be specified on the printer driver only when hard disk or RAM disk is available on the printer driver.

## Updating Your Driver to Detect Hard Disk

 **NOTE:** When you use XPS driver, driver updating is not required.

### When Using PCL Driver

Windows 8/ Windows 8 x64/ Windows Server 2012	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Under Desktop mode, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click <b>Control Panel</b> → <b>Hardware and Sound</b> (<b>Hardware</b> for Windows Server 2012) → <b>Devices and Printers</b>.</li><li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer, and then select <b>Printer properties</b>.</li><li>3 Click the <b>Options</b> tab, and then select <b>Get Information from Printer</b>.</li><li>4 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li><li>5 Close the <b>Devices and Printers</b> dialog box.</li></ol>
Windows 7/ 7 x64/ Server 2008 R2 x64	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Click <b>Start</b> → <b>Devices and Printers</b>.</li><li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer, and then select <b>Printer properties</b>.</li><li>3 Click the <b>Options</b> tab, and then select <b>Get Information from Printer</b>.</li><li>4 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li><li>5 Close the <b>Devices and Printers</b> dialog box.</li></ol>
Windows Vista/ Vista x64	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Click <b>Start</b> → <b>Control Panel</b> → <b>Hardware and Sound</b> → <b>Printers</b>.</li><li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer, and then select <b>Properties</b>.</li><li>3 Click the <b>Options</b> tab, and then select <b>Get Information from Printer</b>.</li><li>4 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li><li>5 Close the <b>Printers</b> dialog box.</li></ol>
Windows Server 2008/ Server 2008 x64	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Click <b>Start</b> → <b>Control Panel</b> → <b>Printers</b>.</li><li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer, and then select <b>Properties</b>.</li><li>3 Click the <b>Options</b> tab, and then select <b>Get Information from Printer</b>.</li><li>4 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li><li>5 Close the <b>Printers</b> dialog box.</li></ol>
Windows XP/XP x64/ Server 2003/ Server 2003 x64	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Click <b>start</b> → <b>Printers and Faxes</b>.</li><li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer, and then select <b>Properties</b>.</li><li>3 Click the <b>Options</b> tab, and then select <b>Get Information from Printer</b>.</li><li>4 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li><li>5 Close the <b>Printers and Faxes</b> dialog box.</li></ol>

If the printer information is not updated automatically after clicking **Get Information from Printer**, follow these steps:

- 1 Click the **Options** tab, and then select **Hard Disk** in the **Items** list box.
- 2 Select **Available** in the **Hard Disk** drop-down menu in **Change Setting for**.
- 3 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.
- 4 Close the displayed active dialog box.

## When Using PS Driver

---

Windows 8/ Windows 8 x64/ Windows Server 2012	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Under Desktop mode, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click <b>Control Panel</b> → <b>Hardware and Sound</b> (<b>Hardware</b> for Windows Server 2012) → <b>Devices and Printers</b>.</li><li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer, and then select <b>Printer properties</b>.</li><li>3 Click the <b>Configuration</b> tab, and then select <b>Bi-Directional Setup</b>.</li><li>4 Select <b>Get Information from Printer</b> and then click <b>OK</b>.</li><li>5 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li><li>6 Close the <b>Devices and Printers</b> dialog box.</li></ol>
Windows 7/ 7 x64/ Server 2008 R2 x64	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Click <b>Start</b> → <b>Devices and Printers</b>.</li><li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer, and then select <b>Printer properties</b>.</li><li>3 Click the <b>Configuration</b> tab, and then select <b>Bi-Directional Setup</b>.</li><li>4 Select <b>Get Information from Printer</b> and then click <b>OK</b>.</li><li>5 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li><li>6 Close the <b>Devices and Printers</b> dialog box.</li></ol>
Windows Vista/ Vista x64	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Click <b>Start</b> → <b>Control Panel</b> → <b>Hardware and Sound</b> → <b>Printers</b>.</li><li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer, and then select <b>Properties</b>.</li><li>3 Click the <b>Configuration</b> tab, and then select <b>Bi-Directional Setup</b>.</li><li>4 Select <b>Get Information from Printer</b> and then click <b>OK</b>.</li><li>5 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li><li>6 Close the <b>Printers</b> dialog box.</li></ol>
Windows Server 2008/Server 2008 x64	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Click <b>Start</b> → <b>Control Panel</b> → <b>Printers</b>.</li><li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer, and then select <b>Properties</b>.</li><li>3 Click the <b>Configuration</b> tab, and then select <b>Bi-Directional Setup</b>.</li><li>4 Select <b>Get Information from Printer</b> and then click <b>OK</b>.</li><li>5 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li><li>6 Close the <b>Printers</b> dialog box.</li></ol>
Windows XP/XP x64/Server 2003/Server 2003 x64	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Click <b>Start</b> → <b>Printers and Faxes</b>.</li><li>2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer, and then select <b>Properties</b>.</li><li>3 Click the <b>Configuration</b> tab, and then select <b>Bi-Directional Setup</b>.</li><li>4 Select <b>Get Information from Printer</b> and then click <b>OK</b>.</li><li>5 Click <b>Apply</b>, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li><li>6 Close the <b>Printers and Faxes</b> dialog box.</li></ol>

---

If the printer information is not updated automatically after clicking **Get Information from Printer**, follow these steps:

- 1 Click the **Configuration** tab, and then select **Installable Options**.
- 2 Select **Hard Disk** in the **Items** list box.
- 3 Select **Available** in the **Hard Disk** drop-down menu in **Setting for**.
- 4 Click **OK**.
- 5 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

**6** Close the **Printers and Faxes (Printers, or Devices and Printers)** dialog box.

---

Mac OS X 10.7.x/10.8.x	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Select the <b>Print &amp; Scan</b> in <b>System Preferences</b>.</li><li>2 Select the printer in <b>Printers</b> list, and click <b>Options &amp; Supplies</b>.</li><li>3 Select <b>Driver</b>, select the options that have been installed on the printers, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li></ol>
Mac OS X 10.5.x/10.6.x	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Select the <b>Print &amp; Fax</b> in <b>System Preferences</b>.</li><li>2 Select the printer in <b>Printers</b> list, and click <b>Options &amp; Supplies</b>.</li><li>3 Select <b>Driver</b>, select the options that have been installed on the printers, and then click <b>OK</b>.</li></ol>
Mac OS X 10.3.x/10.4.x	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Select the printer from the <b>Printer List</b> screen in <b>Print Center</b> (or <b>Printer Setup Utility</b>).</li><li>2 Click <b>Printers</b> on the <b>Print Center</b> (or <b>Printer Setup Utility</b>) menu bar, and select <b>Show Info</b>.</li><li>3 Select <b>Installable Options</b>, and select the options that have been installed on the printer, and then click <b>Apply Changes</b>.</li></ol>

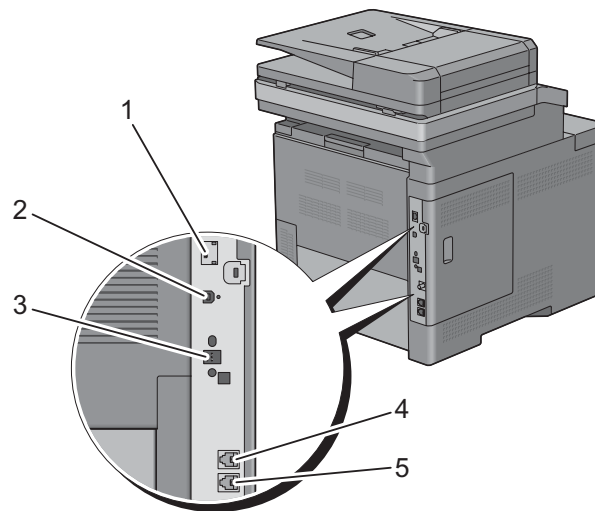
---



## Connecting Your Printer

Your Dell™ C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer interconnection cable must meet the following requirements:

Connection type	Connection specifications
Ethernet	10 Base-T/100 Base-TX/1000 Base-T
USB	USB 2.0
Wireless (optional)	IEEE 802.11b/802.11g/802.11n
Phone connector	RJ11
Wall jack connector	RJ11



1 Ethernet port



2 USB port



3 Wireless adapter socket



4 Phone connector

PHONE



5 Wall jack connector

LINE



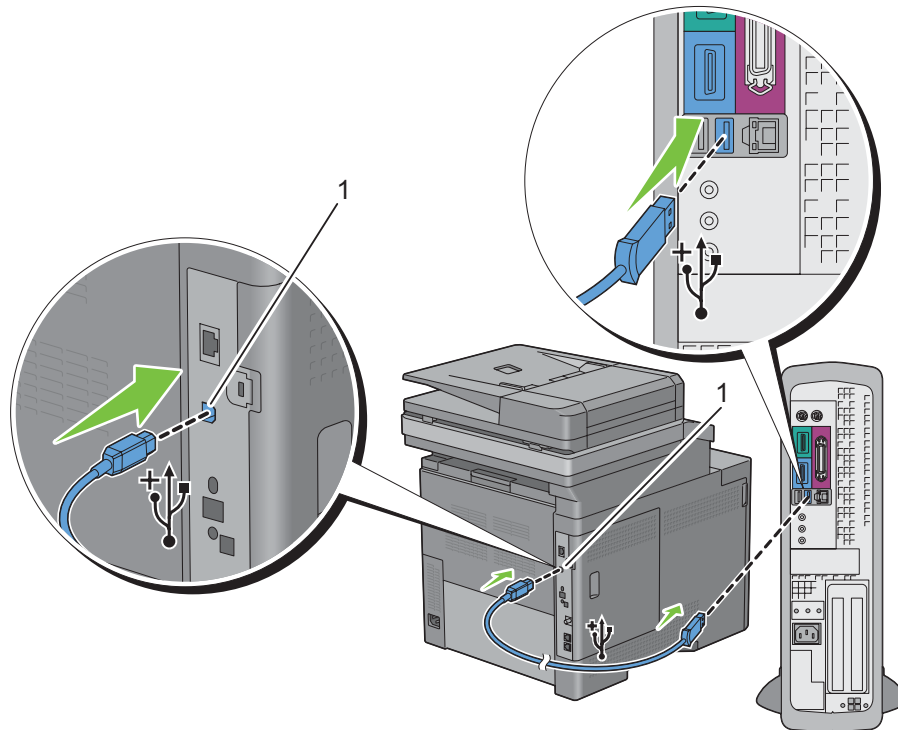
# Connecting Printer to Computer or Network

## Direct Connection



A local printer is a printer which is directly connected to your computer using the USB cable. If your printer is connected to a network instead of your computer, skip this section and go to "Network Connection."

To connect the printer to a computer:

- 1 Connect the smaller USB connector into the USB port at the back of the printer.



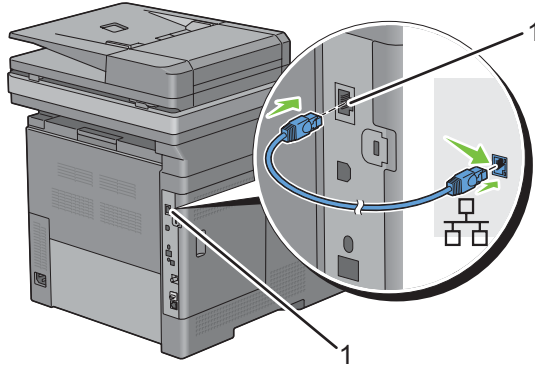
1 USB port

-  **NOTE:** Ensure that you match the USB symbol on the cable to the USB symbol on the printer.
- 2 Connect the other end of the cable into a USB port of the computer.
-  **CAUTION:** Do not connect the printer USB cable to the USB port available on the keyboard.

## Network Connection

To connect the printer to a network:

- 1 Connect the Ethernet cable.




---

1 Ethernet port


---

To connect the printer to the network, connect one end of an Ethernet cable into the Ethernet port on the rear of the printer, and the other end to a LAN drop or hub. To setup a wireless connection, insert the wireless adapter into the wireless adapter socket on the back of the printer.

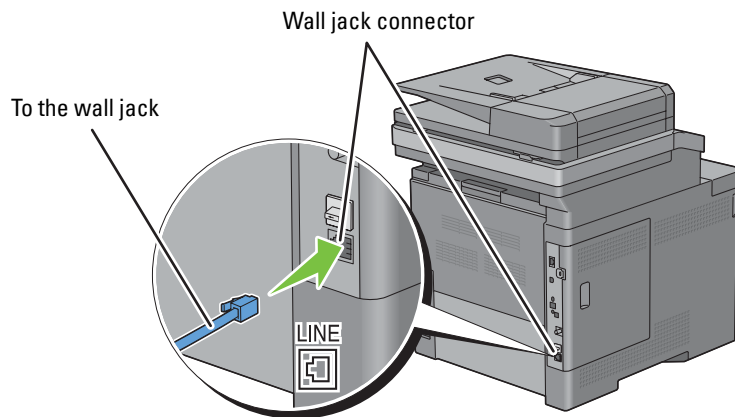
For a wireless connection, see "Installing the Optional Wireless Adapter."

 **NOTE:** To use the wireless adapter, be sure to disconnect the Ethernet cable.

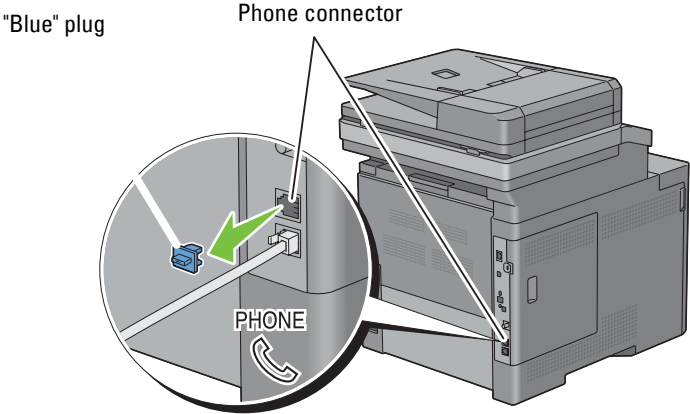
## Connecting the Telephone Line

 **CAUTION:** Do not connect your printer directly to a Digital Subscriber Line (DSL). This may damage the printer. To use a DSL, you will need to use an appropriate DSL filter. Contact your service provider for the DSL filter.

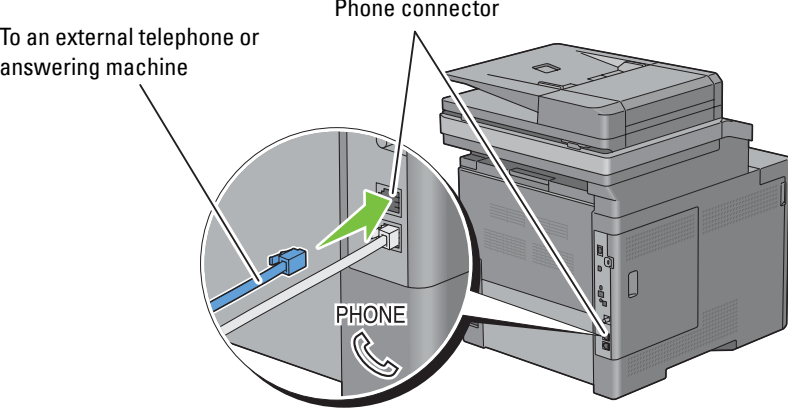
- 1 Connect one end of a telephone line cord into the wall jack connector and the other end into an active wall jack.



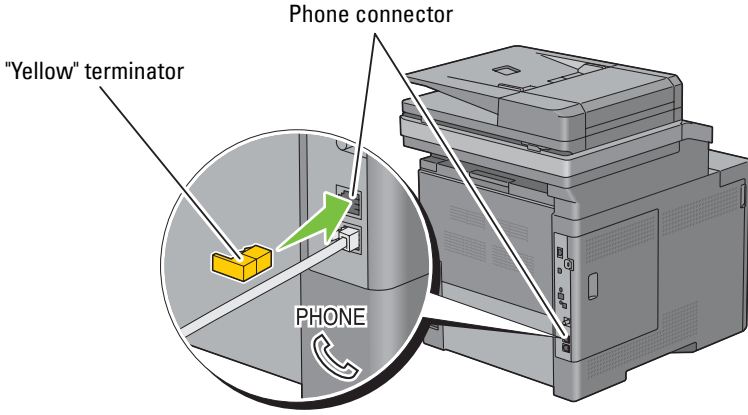
2 Remove the "Blue" plug from the phone connector.




3 To connect a telephone and/or answering machine to your printer, Connect the telephone or answering machine line cord into the phone connector (PHONE).



If the phone communication is serial in your country (such as Germany, Sweden, Denmark, Austria, Belgium, Italy, France and Switzerland), and that you are supplied with a "Yellow" terminator, insert the "Yellow" terminator into the phone connector (PHONE).

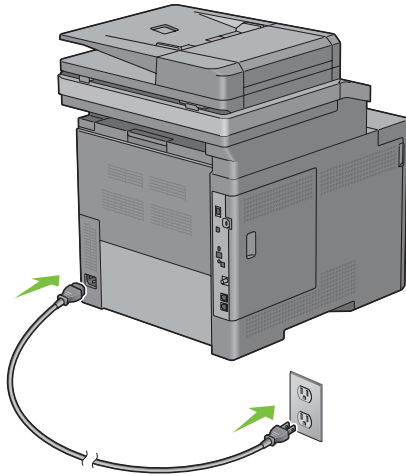


## Turning on the Printer

 **WARNING:** Do not use extension cords or power strips.

 **WARNING:** The printer should not be connected to an Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS) system.

- 1 Connect the power cable to the power connector on the rear of the printer, and then to a power source.




- 2 Turn on the printer. When the printer is connected via a USB (Uninterruptible Power Supply) cable, the USB driver is automatically installed.

## Setting Initial Settings on the Operator Panel


You need to set the printer language, country, clock date, time, and fax settings when you turn on printer for the first time.

When you turn the printer on, the wizard screen to perform the initial setup appears on the touch panel. Follow the steps below to set the initial settings.

 **NOTE:** If you do not start configuring the initial settings, the printer automatically restarts in three minutes, and the **Main Home** screen appears on the touch panel. After that, you can set the following initial setup by enabling **Power on Wizard** on the touch panel or **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** if needed.

For more information on operator panel, see "Operator Panel."

For more information on **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, see "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."

- 1 The **Select Your Language** screen appears.
  - a Select  until desired language appears, and then select the desired language.

---

English

---

Français

---

Italiano

---

Deutsch

---

Español

---

Dansk

---

Nederlands

---

---

Norsk

---

Svenska


---

**b** Select Next.

**2** The **Date/Time** screen appears.

**a** Select **Time Zone**.

**b** Select  until the desired geographic region appears, and then select the desired geographic region.

**c** Select  until the desired time zone appears, and then select the desired time zone.

Geographic Region	Time Zone
Africa	(UTC) Accra, Bamako, Dakar, Nouakchott
	(UTC) Casablanca
	(UTC +01:00) Algiers, Douala, Libreville, Luanda
	(UTC +01:00) Tunis
	(UTC +01:00) Windhoek
	(UTC +02:00) Cairo
	(UTC +02:00) Harare, Johannesburg, Kinshasa, Tripoli
	(UTC +03:00) Addis Ababa, Khartoum, Mogadishu, Nairobi
Americas	(UTC -10:00) Adak
	(UTC -09:00) Alaska
	(UTC -08:00) Pacific Time (US & Canada)
	(UTC -08:00) Tijuana
	(UTC -07:00) Arizona, Dawson Creek, Sonora
	(UTC -07:00) Chihuahua, Mazatlan
	(UTC -07:00) Mountain Time (US & Canada)
	(UTC -06:00) Cancun, Mexico City, Monterrey
	(UTC -06:00) Central America
	(UTC -06:00) Central Time (US & Canada)
	(UTC -06:00) Saskatchewan
	(UTC -05:00) Atikokan, Resolute
	(UTC -05:00) Bogota, Lima, Panama, Quito
	(UTC -05:00) Cayman Islands, Jamaica, Port-au-Prince
	(UTC -05:00) Eastern Time (US & Canada)
	(UTC -05:00) Grand Turk
	(UTC -05:00) Havana
	(UTC -04:30) Caracas
	(UTC -04:00) Asuncion
	(UTC -04:00) Atlantic Time (Canada)
(UTC -04:00) Blanc-Sablon	
(UTC -04:00) Caribbean Islands	
(UTC -04:00) Cuiaba	




Geographic Region	Time Zone
Americas	(UTC -04:00) Georgetown, La Paz, Manaus
	(UTC -04:00) Thule
	(UTC -03:30) St. John's
	(UTC -03:00) Brasilia, Cayenne, Paramaribo
	(UTC -03:00) Buenos Aires
	(UTC -03:00) Greenland
	(UTC -03:00) Miquelon
	(UTC -03:00) Montevideo
	(UTC -02:00) Noronha
Antarctica	(UTC -04:00) Palmer Archipelago, Santiago
	(UTC -03:00) Rothera
	(UTC +03:00) Syowa
	(UTC +06:00) Mawson, Vostok
	(UTC +07:00) Davis
	(UTC +08:00) Casey
	(UTC +10:00) Dumont d'Urville
	(UTC +12:00) McMurdo
Asia	(UTC +02:00) Amman
	(UTC +02:00) Beirut
	(UTC +02:00) Damascus
	(UTC +02:00) Jerusalem
	(UTC +02:00) Nicosia
	(UTC +02:00) Palestine
	(UTC +03:00) Aden, Baghdad, Qatar, Riyadh
	(UTC +03:30) Tehran
	(UTC +04:00) Baku
	(UTC +04:00) Dubai, Muscat, Tbilisi
	(UTC +04:00) Yerevan
	(UTC +04:30) Kabul
	(UTC +05:00) Aqtau, Aqtobe, Ashgabat, Samarkand
	(UTC +05:00) Ekaterinburg
	(UTC +05:00) Karachi
	(UTC +05:30) Colombo, Kolkata
	(UTC +05:45) Kathmandu
	(UTC +06:00) Almaty, Bishkek, Dhaka, Thimphu
	(UTC +06:00) Novosibirsk, Omsk
	(UTC +06:30) Yangon (Rangoon)
	(UTC +07:00) Bangkok, Ho Chi Minh, Hovd, Jakarta
	(UTC +07:00) Krasnoyarsk
	(UTC +08:00) Chongqing, Hong Kong, Shanghai
	(UTC +08:00) Irkutsk

Geographic Region	Time Zone
Asia	(UTC +08:00) Kuala Lumpur, Makassar, Manila, Singapore
	(UTC +08:00) Taipei
	(UTC +08:00) Ulaan Baatar
	(UTC +09:00) Dili, Jayapura
	(UTC +09:00) Pyongyang
	(UTC +09:00) Seoul
	(UTC +09:00) Tokyo
	(UTC +09:00) Yakutsk
	(UTC +10:00) Sakhalin, Vladivostok
	(UTC +11:00) Magadan
(UTC +12:00) Anadyr, Kamchatka	
Atlantic Ocean	(UTC -04:00) Bermuda
	(UTC -04:00) Stanley
	(UTC -02:00) South Georgia Island
	(UTC -01:00) Azores, Scoresbysund
	(UTC -01:00) Cape Verde
	(UTC) Reykjavik
Australia	(UTC +08:00) Perth
	(UTC +08:45) Eucla
	(UTC +09:30) Adelaide
	(UTC +09:30) Darwin
	(UTC +10:00) Brisbane, Lindeman
	(UTC +10:00) Hobart, Melbourne, Sydney
(UTC +10:30) Lord Howe Island	
Europe	(UTC) Dublin, Edinburgh, Lisbon, London
	(UTC +01:00) Amsterdam, Berlin, Rome, Stockholm, Vienna
	(UTC +01:00) Belgrade, Bratislava, Budapest, Prague
	(UTC +01:00) Brussels, Copenhagen, Madrid, Paris
	(UTC +01:00) Sarajevo, Skopje, Warsaw, Zagreb
	(UTC +02:00) Athens, Bucharest, Istanbul
	(UTC +02:00) Helsinki, Kiev, Riga, Sofia
	(UTC +02:00) Kaliningrad, Minsk
	(UTC +03:00) Moscow
	(UTC +04:00) Samara
Indian Ocean	(UTC +03:00) Antananarivo, Comoro Islands, Mayotte
	(UTC +04:00) Mahe, Reunion
	(UTC +04:00) Mauritius
	(UTC +05:00) Kerguelen, Maldives
	(UTC +06:00) Chagos
	(UTC +06:30) Cocos Islands
(UTC +07:00) Christmas Island	

Geographic Region	Time Zone
Pacific Ocean	(UTC -11:00) Midway Island, Niue, Samoa
	(UTC -10:00) Cook Islands, Hawaii, Tahiti
	(UTC -09:30) Marquesas Islands
	(UTC -09:00) Gambier Islands
	(UTC -08:00) Pitcairn Islands
	(UTC -06:00) Easter Island
	(UTC -06:00) Galapagos Islands
	(UTC +09:00) Palau
	(UTC +10:00) Guam, Port Moresby, Saipan
	(UTC +11:00) Efate, Guadalcanal, Kosrae
	(UTC +11:30) Norfolk Island
	(UTC +12:00) Auckland
	(UTC +12:00) Fiji, Marshall Islands
	(UTC +12:45) Chatham
	(UTC +13:00) Tongatapu
(UTC +14:00) Kiritimati	

- d** Select OK.
- e** Select Date.
- f** Select a data format from the menu displayed by selecting Format.

YYYY/MM/DD
DD/MM/YYYY
MM/DD/YYYY

- g** After selecting the box under Year, select  or , or use the number pad to enter the desired value. Repeat this step to enter the desired value for Month and Day.
  - h** Select OK.
  - i** Select Time.
  - j** Select the time format from 12 Hour or 24 Hour. If you select 12 Hour, select AM or PM.
  - k** After selecting the box under Hour, use the number pad to enter the desired value. Repeat this step to enter the desired value for Minute.
  - l** Select OK.
  - m** Select Next.
- 3** The Fax (Do you want to setup Fax Now?) screen appears.
- To set Fax settings, select Yes, Setup FAX and follow the procedure below. To end the settings, select No, I'll Do It Later and proceed to Step 4.
- a** Enter the fax number of the printer using the number pad.
  - b** Select Country.
  - c** Select  until the desired country appears, and then select the desired country.  
The default paper size is automatically set when you select a country.

Algeria	A4
Australia	A4
Austria	A4
Belgium	A4
Bulgaria	A4
Canada	Letter
Colombia	Letter
Costa Rica	Letter
Cyprus	A4
Czech Republic	A4
Denmark	A4
Dominican Republic	Letter
Egypt	A4
Estonia	A4
Finland	A4
France	A4
Germany	A4
Greece	A4
Guatemala	Letter
Hungary	A4
Iceland	A4
Ireland	A4
Italy	A4
Jamaica	Letter
Jordan	A4
Latvia	A4
Liechtenstein	A4
Lithuania	A4
Luxembourg	A4
Malta	A4
Mexico	Letter
Netherlands	A4
New Zealand	A4
Nicaragua	Letter
Norway	A4
Panama	Letter
Poland	A4
Portugal	A4
Puerto Rico	Letter
Romania	A4
Russia	A4

Saudi Arabia	A4
Slovakia	A4
Slovenia	A4
South Africa	A4
Spain	A4
Sweden	A4
Switzerland	A4
Tunisia	A4
Turkey	A4
U.A.E.	A4
United Kingdom	A4
United States	Letter
Unknown	Letter

**d** Select Next.

**4** The Setup Complete (Congratulations, setup is complete.) screen appears.

**5** Select Done.

The printer automatically restarts after selecting Done.



# Setting the IP Address

## Assigning an IP Address

An IP address is a unique number that consists of four sections that are delimited by a period and can include up to three digits in each section, for example, 111 . 222 . 33 . 44.

You can select the IP mode from Dual Stack, IPv4, and IPv6. If your network supports both IPv4 and IPv6, select Dual Stack.

Select the IP mode of your environment, and then set IP address, subnet mask (for IPv4 only), and gateway address.

**CAUTION:** Assigning an IP address that is already in use can cause network performance issues.

**NOTE:** Assigning an IP address is considered as an advanced function and is normally done by a system administrator.

**NOTE:** When you assign an IP address manually in IPv6 mode, use the **Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool**. To display the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, use the link-local address. To confirm the link-local address, print a system settings report and check the **Link-Local Address** under **Network (Wired)** or **Network (Wireless)**. For details about how to print a system settings report, see "Report / List."

**NOTE:** If the Panel Lock Control is set to Enable, you need to enter the four digit password to enter the Admin Settings menu.

## When Using the Easy Setup Navigator

- 1 Insert the *Software and Documentation* disc provided with the printer in your computer. The **Easy Setup Navigator** file launches automatically.
- 2 Click **Advanced Tools** on the **Easy Setup Navigator** window. The **Advanced Tools** window opens.



- 3 Click **IP Configuration**.
- 4 Follow the instructions displayed on the screen.

## When Using the Operator Panel

For more information on using the operator panel, see "Operator Panel."

- 1 Press the **i** (**Information**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Admin Settings**.
- 3 Select **Network**.

- 4 Do either of the following:

*When connecting to network with the Ethernet cable:*


Select Ethernet.



*When connecting to network with the wireless adapter:*

Select Wireless.

- 5 Select IP Mode.
- 6 Select IPv4 Mode, and then select OK.
- 7 Select TCP / IP.
- 8 Select Get IP Address.
- 9 Select Panel, and then select OK.
- 10 Select IP Address.

The cursor is located at the first octet of the IP address.


- 11 Use the number pad to enter the first octet of the IP address, and then select  .  
The cursor moves to the next digit.

 **NOTE:** You can only enter one octet at a time and must select  after entering each octet.

- 12 Enter the rest of the octets, and then select OK.
- 13 Select Subnet Mask.
- 14 Repeat steps 11 and 12 to set Subnet Mask.
- 15 Select Gateway Address.
- 16 Repeat steps 11 and 12 to set Gateway Address.
- 17 Turn off the printer, and then turn it on again.

### When Using the Tool Box

- 1 Click Start→ All Programs→ Dell Printers→ Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer→ Tool Box.

 **NOTE:** For details about starting the **Tool Box**, see "Starting the Tool Box."

The **Tool Box** opens.


- 2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.
- 3 Select **TCP/IP Settings** from the list at the left side of the page.  
The **TCP/IP Settings** page appears.
- 4 Select the mode from **IP Address Mode**, and then enter the values in IP Address, Subnet Mask, and Gateway Address.
- 5 Click **Apply New Settings** to take effect.

You can also assign the IP address to the printer when installing the printer drivers with the installer. When you use the **Network Installation** feature, and the **Get IP Address** is set to **AutoIP** or **DHCP** on the printer, you can set the IP address from 0.0.0.0 to the desired IP address on the printer selection window.

## Verifying the IP Settings

You can confirm the settings by using the operator panel, printing the system settings report, or using the ping command.

### Verifying the Settings Using Operator Panel

- 1 Press the  (Information) button.
- 2 Select `About This MFP`.
- 3 Select the `Network` tab.
- 4 Select `IP (v4) Address`, and then verify the IP address displayed in `IP (v4) Address`.

### Verifying the Settings Using System Settings Report

- 1 Print the system settings report.  
For details about how to print a system settings report, see "Report / List."
- 2 Verify the correct IP address, subnet mask, and gateway address are listed in the system settings report under `Network (Wired)` or `Network (Wireless)`.  
If the IP address shows `0 . 0 . 0 . 0` (the factory default), an IP address has not been assigned. To assign one for your printer, see "Assigning an IP Address."

### Verifying the Settings Using Ping Command


Ping the printer and verify that it responds. For example, at a command prompt on a network computer, type ping followed by the new IP address (for example, 192.168.0.11):

```
ping 192.168.0.11
```

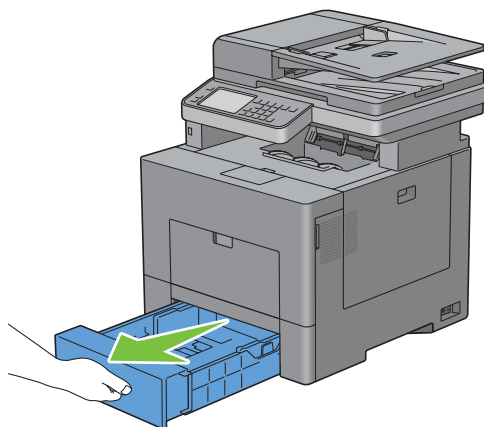
If the printer is active on the network, you will receive a reply.



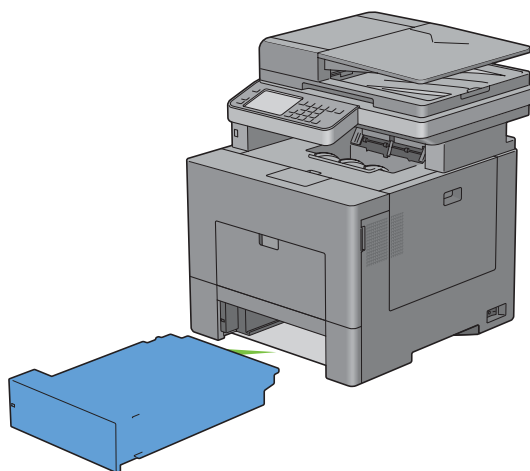
## Loading Paper

 **NOTE:** To avoid paper jams, do not remove the tray while printing is in progress.

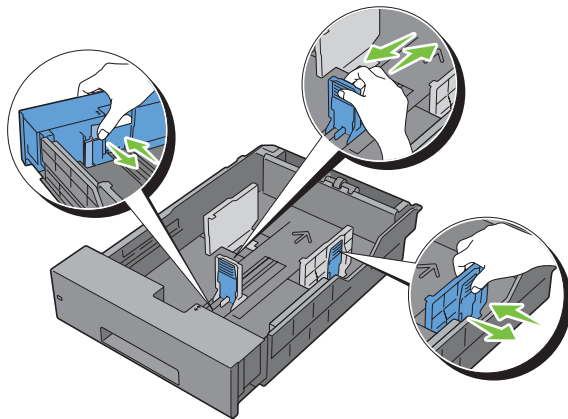
- 1 Pull the tray out of the printer about 200 mm.




- 2 Hold the tray with both hands, and remove it from the printer.

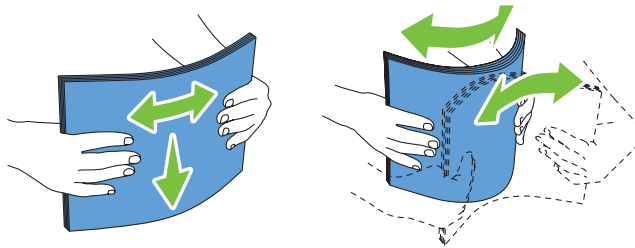


- 3 Adjust the paper guides.




 **NOTE:** Extend the front side of the tray when you load Legal size paper.

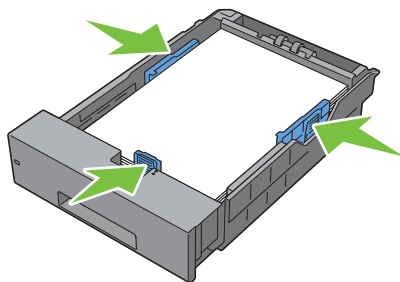
- 4 Before loading the print media, flex the sheets and fan them. Straighten the edges of the stack on a level surface.




- 5 Load the print media into the tray with the recommended print side facing up.

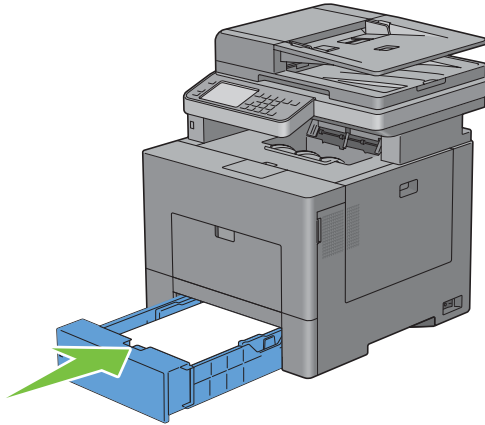
 **NOTE:** Do not exceed the maximum fill line in the tray. Overfilling the tray may cause paper jams.

- 6 Align the width guides against the edges of the paper.

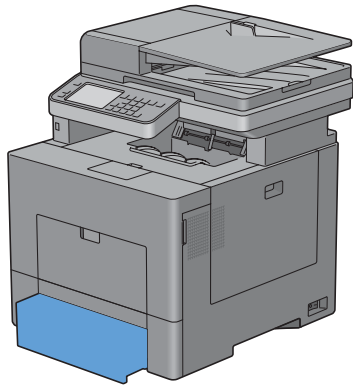


 **NOTE:** When loading user-specified print media, adjust the width guides and slide the extendable part of the tray by pinching the length guide and sliding it until it rests lightly against the edge of the paper.

- 7 After confirming that the guides are securely adjusted, insert the tray into the printer.



**NOTE:** If the front side of the tray is extended, the tray protrudes when it is inserted into the printer.



- 8 On the touch panel, select Size.
- 9 Select  until the desired paper size appears, and then select the desired paper size.
- 10 Select Type.
- 11 Select  until the desired paper type appears, and then select the desired paper size.
- 12 Select OK.



# Installing Printer Drivers on Windows® Computers


## Identifying Printer Driver Pre-install Status

Before installing the printer driver on your computer, check the IP address of your printer by performing one of the procedures in "Verifying the IP Settings."

### Changing the firewall settings before installing your printer

If you are running one of the following operating systems, you must change the firewall settings before installing the Dell printer software:

- Microsoft® Windows XP
- Windows Vista®
- Windows 7
- Windows 8
- Windows Server® 2008
- Windows Server 2008 R2
- Windows Server 2012


 **NOTE:** For Windows XP, Service Pack 2 or 3 must be installed.

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

- 1 Insert the *Software and Documentation* disc into your computer.
- 2 Click **Start** → **Control Panel**.
- 3 Select **System and Security**.
- 4 Click **Allow a program through Windows Firewall**.
- 5 Click **Change settings** → **Allow another program**.
- 6 Check **Browse**.
- 7 `D:\setup_assist.exe` (where D is the drive letter of the optical drive) in the **File name** text box, and then click **Open**.
- 8 Click **Add**, and then click **OK**.

## Inserting the Software and Documentation Disc

- 1 Insert the *Software and Documentation* disc into your computer and click `setup_assist.exe` to start **Easy Setup Navigator**.

 **NOTE:** If the *Software and Documentation* disc does not launch automatically, follow the procedure below.

For Windows XP, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Server 2008 R2

Click **Start** → **Run**, enter `D:\setup_assist.exe` (where D is the drive letter of the optical drive) in the **Run** dialog box, and then click **OK**.

For Windows Vista and Windows 7

Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Accessories** → **Run**, enter `D:\setup_assist.exe` (where D is the drive letter of the optical drive) in the **Run** dialog box, and then click **OK**.

For Windows 8 and Windows Server 2012


Point to the top or bottom right corner of the screen, and then click **Search** → Type **Run** in the search box, click **Apps**, and then click **Run** → Type `D:\setup_assist.exe` (where D is the drive letter of the optical drive), and then click **OK**.

## Direct Connection Setup

### For installing PCL, PS and Fax printer driver

- 1 In the Easy Setup Navigator window, click **Installing Driver and Software** to launch the installation software.
- 2 Select **Personal Installation**, and then click **Next**.
- 3 Follow the on-screen instructions to connect the computer and the printer with a USB cable, and then turn the printer on.

The Plug and Play installation starts and the installation software proceeds to the next page automatically.


 **NOTE:** If the installation software does not automatically proceed to the next page, click **Install**.


- 4 Select either **Typical Installation (recommended)** or **Custom Installation** from the installation wizard, and then click **Install**. If you select **Custom Installation**, you can select the specific software you want to install.
- 5 Click **Finish** to exit the wizard when the **Congratulations!** screen appears.

### *Personal Installation*

A personal printer is a printer connected to your computer or a print server using a USB. If your printer is connected to a network and not your computer, see "Network Connection Setup."

### For installing XML Paper Specification (XPS) printer driver

 **NOTE:** XPS driver is supported on the following operating systems: Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, and Windows Server 2012.

 **NOTE:** If you are using Windows Vista or Windows Server 2008, you need to install Service Pack 2 or later, and then the Windows Platform Update (KB971644). The update (KB971644) is available for download from Windows Update.

#### Windows Vista or Windows Vista 64-bit Edition


- 1 Extract the following zip file to your desired location.  
D:\Drivers\XPS\Win\_7Vista\XPS\_3765.zip (where D is the drive letter of the optical drive)
- 2 Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **Hardware and Sound**→ **Printers**.
- 3 Click **Add a printer**.
- 4 Click **Add a local printer**.
- 5 Select the port connected to this product, and then click **Next**.
- 6 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
- 7 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted folder in step 1.
- 8 Click **OK**.
- 9 Select your printer name and click **Next**.
- 10 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**. To use this printer as the default printer, select the check box displayed under the **Printer name**, and then click **Next**.  
Installation starts.

If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Continue**.

 **NOTE:** If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Continue**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.

- 11 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.
- 12 Click **Finish**.

#### Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

 **NOTE:** You must log in as an administrator.

- 1 Extract the following zip file to your desired location.  
D:\Drivers\XPS\Win\_7Vista\XPS\_3765.zip (where D is the drive letter of the optical drive)
- 2 Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **Hardware and Sound**→ **Printers**.
- 3 Click **Add a printer**.
- 4 Click **Add a local printer**.
- 5 Select the port connected to this product, and then click **Next**.
- 6 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
- 7 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted folder in step 1.
- 8 Click **OK**.
- 9 Select your printer name and click **Next**.
- 10 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.  
To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box, and then click **Next**.


- 11 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**. If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.
- 12 Click **Next**.  
Installation starts.
- 13 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.
- 14 Click **Finish**.

#### Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, or Windows Server 2008 R2

- 1 Extract the following zip file to your desired location.  
D:\Drivers\XPS\Win\_7Vista\XPS\_3765.zip (where D is the drive letter of the optical drive)
- 2 Click **Start**→ **Devices and Printers**.
- 3 Click **Add a printer**.

When you use Windows Server 2008 R2, click **Add a local or network printer as an administrator**.

If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Yes**.

 **NOTE:** If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Yes**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.


- 4 Click **Add a local printer**.
- 5 Select the port connected to this product, and then click **Next**.
- 6 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
- 7 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted folder in step 1.
- 8 Click **OK**.
- 9 Select your printer name and click **Next**.
- 10 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.  
To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box, and then click **Next**.
- 11 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**. If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.
- 12 Click **Next**.  
Installation starts.
- 13 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.
- 14 Click **Finish**.

#### Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, or Windows Server 2012

- 1 Extract the zip file you downloaded to your desired location.
- 2 Under Desktop mode, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel**.
- 3 Click **Hardware and Sound** (**Hardware** for Windows Server 2012) → **Devices and Printers** → **Add a printer**.
- 4 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
- 5 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted folder in step 1.
- 6 Click **OK**.
- 7 Select your printer name and click **Next**.
- 8 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**. Installation starts.

- 9 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**. If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**. Click **Next**.
- 10 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page. To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.
- 11 Click **Finish**.

## Network Connection Setup


 **NOTE:** To use this printer in a Linux environment, you need to install a Linux driver. For more information on how to install and use these, see "Installing Printer Drivers on Linux Computers (CUPS)."


### Network Printer Setup on a Local Network

#### For installing PCL, PS and Fax printer driver

- 1 In the **Easy Setup Navigator** window, click **Installing Driver and Software** to launch the installation software.
- 2 Select **Network Installation**, and then click **Next**.
- 3 Select **Local Installation**, and then click **Next**.
- 4 Select the printer you want to install from the printer list, and then click **Next**. If the target printer is not displayed on the list, click **Refresh** to refresh the list or click **Add Printer** to add a printer to the list manually. You may specify the IP address and port name at this point.


If you have installed this printer on the server computer, select the **I am setting up this printer on a server** check box.

 **NOTE:** When using AutoIP, 0 . 0 . 0 . 0 is displayed in the installer. Before you can continue, you must enter a valid IP address.

 **NOTE:** In some cases, **Windows Security Alert** is displayed in this step when you use Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2012. In this case, select **Unblock (Allow access for Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7)**, and then continue the procedure.

- 5 Specify the printer settings, and then click **Next**.
  - a Enter the printer name.
  - b If you want other users on the network to access the printer, select **Share this printer with other computers on the network**, and then enter a share name that users can identify.
  - c If you want to set the printer as the default printer, select the **Set this printer as default** check box.
  - d If you want to restrict color printing, select the appropriate **Dell™ ColorTrack** option. Enter the password when **Color-Password Enabled** is selected for **Dell ColorTrack**.
  - e If you want to install the Fax Driver, select the **FAX Driver** check box.  
If you want to install the PostScript printer driver, select the **PostScript Driver** check box.
- 6 Select the software and documentation you want to install, and then click **Next**. If you want to change the installation destination, click **Browse** and specify a new location.
- 7 Click **Install**.
- 8 Click **Finish** to exit the wizard when the **Congratulations!** screen appears.

## For installing XML Paper Specification (XPS) printer driver

 **NOTE:** XPS driver is supported on the following operating systems: Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, and Windows Server 2012.

### Windows Vista or Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

- 1 Extract the following zip file to your desired location.  
D:\Drivers\XPS\Win\_7Vista\XPS\_3765.zip (where D is the drive letter of the optical drive)
- 2 Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **Hardware and Sound**→ **Printers**.
- 3 Click **Add a printer**.
- 4 Click **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.
- 5 Select printer or click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.
- 6 Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or host name**, and then click **Next**.
- 7 Select **TCP/IP Device** from **Device type**, and enter the IP address for **Hostname or IP address**, and then click **Next**.

If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Continue**.

 **NOTE:** If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Continue**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.

- 8 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
- 9 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted folder in step 1.
- 10 Click **OK**.
- 11 Select your printer name and click **Next**.
- 12 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.  
To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box, and then click **Next**.  
Installation starts.
- 13 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.
- 14 Click **Finish**.

### Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

 **NOTE:** You must log in as an administrator.

- 1 Extract the following zip file to your desired location.  
D:\Drivers\XPS\Win\_7Vista\XPS\_3765.zip (where D is the drive letter of the optical drive)
- 2 Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **Hardware and Sound**→ **Printers**.
- 3 Click **Add a printer**.
- 4 Click **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.
- 5 Select printer or click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.  
When you select your printer, go to step 8.  
When you click **The printer that I want isn't listed**, go to step 6.
- 6 Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or host name**, and then click **Next**.
- 7 Select **TCP/IP Device** from **Device type**, and enter the IP address for **Hostname or IP address**, and then click **Next**.



If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Continue**.




**NOTE:** If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Continue**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.

- 8 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
- 9 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted folder in step 1.
- 10 Click **OK**.
- 11 Select your printer name and click **Next**.
- 12 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.  
To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box, and then click **Next**.
- 13 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**. If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.
- 14 Click **Next**.  
Installation starts.
- 15 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.
- 16 Click **Finish**.

#### Windows Server 2008 R2

- 1 Extract the following zip file to your desired location.  
D:\Drivers\XPS\Win\_7Vista\XPS\_3765.zip (where D is the drive letter of the optical drive)
- 2 Click **Start**→ **Devices and Printers**.
- 3 Click **Add a printer**.
- 4 Click **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.
- 5 Select printer or click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.  
 **NOTE:** When you click **The printer that I want isn't listed**, **Find a printer by name or TCP/IP address** screen appears. Find your printer on the screen.  
If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Continue**.  
 **NOTE:** If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Continue**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.
- 6 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
- 7 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted folder in step 1.
- 8 Click **OK**.
- 9 Select your printer name and click **Next**.
- 10 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.  
To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box, and then click **Next**.
- 11 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**. If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.
- 12 Click **Next**.  
Installation starts.
- 13 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.
- 14 Click **Finish**.

## Windows 7 or Windows 7 64-bit Edition


- 1 Extract the following zip file to your desired location.  
D:\Drivers\XPS\Win\_7Vista\XPS\_3765.zip (where D is the drive letter of the optical drive)
  - 2 Click **Start**→ **Devices and Printers**.
  - 3 Click **Add a printer**.
  - 4 Click **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.
  - 5 Select printer or click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.  
When you select your printer, go to step 8.  
When you click **The printer that I want isn't listed**, go to step 6.
  - 6 Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or host name**, and then click **Next**.
  - 7 Select **TCP/IP Device** from **Device type**, and enter the IP address for **Hostname or IP address**, and then click **Next**.  
If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Yes**.
-  **NOTE:** If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Yes**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.
- 8 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
  - 9 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted folder in step 1.
  - 10 Click **OK**.
  - 11 Select your printer name and click **Next**.
  - 12 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.  
To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box, and then click **Next**.
  - 13 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**. If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.
  - 14 Click **Next**.  
Installation starts.
  - 15 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.
  - 16 Click **Finish**.

## Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, or Windows Server 2012

- 1 Extract the zip file you downloaded to your desired location.
- 2 Under Desktop mode, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel**.
- 3 Click **Hardware and Sound** (**Hardware** for Windows Server 2012) → **Devices and Printers** → **Add a printer**.
- 4 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
- 5 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted folder in step 1.
- 6 Click **OK**.
- 7 Select your printer name and click **Next**.
- 8 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**. Installation starts.
- 9 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**. If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**. Click **Next**.

- 10 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page. To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.
- 11 Click **Finish**.

Use the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** to monitor the status of your network printer without leaving your desk. You can view and/or change the printer settings, monitor toner level, and acknowledge the timing of ordering replacement consumables. You can click the Dell supplies link for ordering supplies.

 **NOTE:** The **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** is not available when the printer is directly connected to a computer or a print server.

To launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, type the printer's IP address in your web browser. The printer configuration appears on the screen.

You can set up the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** to send you an e-mail when the printer needs supplies or intervention.

To set up e-mail alerts:

- 1 Launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.
- 2 Click **E-Mail Alert** link.
- 3 Under **E-Mail Server Settings**, enter the **Primary SMTP Gateway**, **Reply Address**, and your or key operator's e-mail address in the e-mail list box.
- 4 Click **Apply New Settings**.


 **NOTE:** **Connection pending until printer sends an alert** is displayed on the SMTP server until an error occurs.

## Network Printer Setup on a Remote Network

### Before Installation

Before you start remote installation, perform the following procedures.

#### ***Allow Print Spooler to Accept Client Connections***

 **NOTE:** This procedure is required for Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition, Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, and Windows 7 64-bit Edition.

For Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Vista, and Windows Server 2008:

- 1 Open the Run dialog box.  
For Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, click **start**→ **All Programs** → **Accessories** → **Run**.  
For Windows Vista, click **Start**→ **Run**.
- 2 Type `gpedit.msc`, and then click **OK**.
- 3 Click **Computer Configuration**→ **Administrative Templates**→ **Printers**.
- 4 Right-click **Allow Print Spooler to accept client connections** and select **Properties**.
- 5 On the **Setting** tab, select **Enabled**, and then click **OK**.
- 6 Restart the computer.

For Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7:

- 1 Open the Run dialog box.  
For Windows Server 2008 R2, click **Start**→ **Run**.  
For Windows 7, click **Start**→ **All Programs**→ **Accessories**→ **Run**.

- 2 Type `gpedit.msc`, and then click **OK**.
- 3 Click **Computer Configuration**→**Administrative Templates**→**Printers**.
- 4 Right-click **Allow Print Spooler to accept client connections** and select **Edit**.
- 5 Select **Enabled**, and then click **OK**.
- 6 Restart the computer.

#### ***Change the Firewall Setting to Share File and Printer***



**NOTE:** This procedure is required for Windows XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, and Windows 7 64-bit Edition.

For Windows XP:

- 1 Click **start**→**Control Panel**.
- 2 Select **Security Center**.
- 3 Click **Windows Firewall**.
- 4 On the **Exceptions** tab, select the **File and Printer Sharing** check box, and then click **OK**.

For Windows Vista:

- 1 Click **Start**→**Control Panel**.
- 2 Select **Security**.
- 3 Click **Windows Firewall**.
- 4 Click **Change settings**.
- 5 Click **Continue**.
- 6 On the **Exceptions** tab, select the **File and Printer Sharing** check box, and then click **OK**.


For Windows Server 2008:

- 1 Click **Start**→**Control Panel**.
- 2 Double-click **Windows Firewall**.
- 3 Click **Change settings**.
- 4 On the **Exceptions** tab, select the **File and Printer Sharing** check box, and then click **OK**.

For Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7:

- 1 Click **Start**→**Control Panel**.
- 2 Select **System and Security**.
- 3 Click **Windows Firewall**.
- 4 Click **Allow a program or feature through Windows Firewall**.
- 5 If the check boxes under **Allowed programs and features**: are dimmed, click **Change settings**.
- 6 Select the **File and Printer Sharing** check box. **Home/Work (Private)** or **Public** check box is automatically selected according to your settings.  
If the **File and Printer Sharing Properties** dialog box appears, click **OK**.
- 7 Click **OK**.

### ***Start Remote Registry***

 **NOTE:** This procedure is required for Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows 7, and Windows 7 64-bit Edition.

- 1 Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**.
- 2 Select **System and Maintenance** (System and Security for Windows 7).
- 3 Click **Administrative Tools**.
- 4 Double-click **Services**.
- 5 Click **Continue** (for Windows Vista only).
- 6 Right-click **Remote Registry** and select **Start**.
- 7 Right-click **Remote Registry** and select **Properties**.
- 8 Change **Startup** type to **Automatic**, and then click **OK**.

### ***Disable User Account Control***

 **CAUTION:** Disabling the User Account Control might leave the system vulnerable to virus attacks.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is required for Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, and Windows 7 64-bit Edition.

For Windows Vista:

- 1 Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**.
- 2 Select **User Accounts and Family Safety**.
- 3 Click **User Accounts**.
- 4 Click **Turn User Account Control on or off**.
- 5 Click **Continue**.
- 6 Clear the **Use User Account Control (UAC) to help protect your computer** check box.
- 7 Restart the computer.

For Windows Server 2008:

- 1 Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**.
- 2 Double-click **User Accounts**.
- 3 Click **Turn User Account Control on or off**.
- 4 Clear the **Use User Account Control (UAC) to help protect your computer** check box.
- 5 Click **OK**.
- 6 Restart the computer.

For Windows Server 2008 R2:


- 1 Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**.
- 2 Select **User Accounts**.
- 3 Click **Change User Account Control Settings**.
- 4 Move the slider to the bottom, and then click **OK**.
- 5 Restart the computer.

For Windows 7:

- 1 Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**.
- 2 Select **User Accounts and Family Safety**.
- 3 Click **User Accounts**.


- 4 Click **Change User Account Control Settings**.
- 5 Move the slider to the bottom, and then click **OK**.
- 6 Click **Yes** in the **User Account Control** dialog box.
- 7 Restart the computer.

### ***Enable Network Discovery and File Sharing for all Public Networks***

 **NOTE:** This procedure is required when you use Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, and Windows 7 64-bit Edition for the server computer.


- 1 Click **Start**→ **Network** (**Start**→ your user name→ **Network** for Windows 7).
- 2 Click **Network discovery and file sharing are turned off**. Network computers and devices are not visible. Click to change.
- 3 Click **Turn on network discovery and file sharing**.
- 4 Click **Yes, turn on network discovery and file sharing for all public networks**.

### **Disable Simple File Sharing**


 **NOTE:** This procedure is required for Windows XP, and Windows XP 64-bit Edition.

- 1 Click **start**→ **Control Panel**.
- 2 Select **Appearance and Themes**.
- 3 Select **Folder Options**.
- 4 On the **View** tab, clear the **Use simple file sharing (Recommended)** check box, and then click **OK**.
- 5 Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**.
- 6 Select **Performance and Maintenance**.
- 7 Select **Administrative Tools**.
- 8 Click **Local Security Policy**.
- 9 Click **Local Policies**→ **Security Options**.
- 10 Right-click **Network access: Sharing and security model for local accounts** and select **Properties**.
- 11 Ensure **Classic - local users authenticate as themselves** is selected.


### **Installing the Printer Driver**

 **NOTE:** Installation is not supported on Windows XP Home Edition, Windows Vista Home Basic, Windows Vista Home Premium, Windows Vista Home Basic 64-bit Edition, Windows Vista Home Premium 64-bit Edition, Windows 7 Starter, Windows 7 Home Basic, Windows 7 Home Premium, Windows 7 Home Basic 64-bit Edition, Windows 7 Home Premium 64-bit Edition, Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, Windows 8 Pro, Windows 8 Pro 64-bit Edition, and Windows Server 2012.

- 1 In the **Easy Setup Navigator** window, click **Software Installation** to launch the installation software.
- 2 Select **Network Installation**, and then click **Next**.
- 3 Select **Remote Installation**, and then click **Next**.
  - a Enter the computer name, user ID, and password, and then click **Add**.
  - b Click **Next**.


 **NOTE: Windows Security Alert** may appear on Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, or Windows 7 64-bit Edition. In this case, select **Unblock** (Allow access for Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7), and then continue the procedure.

- 4 Select a printer from the printer list, and then click **Next**. If the target printer is not displayed on the list, click **Refresh** to refresh the list or click **Add Printer** to add a printer to the list manually. You may specify the IP address and port name at this point.

 **NOTE:** When using AutoIP, 0 . 0 . 0 . 0 is displayed in the installer. Before you continue, you must enter a valid IP address.

- 5 Specify the printer settings, and then click **Next**.
  - a Enter the printer name.
  - b If you want other users on the network to access this printer, select the **Share this printer with other computers on the network**, and then enter a share name that users can identify.
  - c If you want to set the printer as default, select the **Set this printer as default** check box.
  - d If you want to restrict color printing, select the appropriate **Dell ColorTrack** option. Enter the password when **Color-Password Enabled** is selected for **Dell ColorTrack**.
  - e If you want to install the Fax Driver, select the **FAX Driver** check box.
- 6 Select the software and documentation you want to install, and then click **Next**.  
If you want to change the installation destination, click **Input** and specify a new location.
- 7 Click **Install**.
- 8 Click **Finish** to exit the wizard when the **Congratulations!** screen appears.

Use the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** to monitor the status of your network printer without leaving your desk. You can view and/or change the printer settings, monitor toner level, and acknowledge the timing of ordering replacement consumables. You can click the Dell supplies link for ordering supplies.

 **NOTE:** The **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** is not available when the printer is directly connected to a computer or a print server.

To launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, type the printer's IP address in your web browser. The printer configuration appears on the screen.

You can set up the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** to send you an e-mail when the printer needs supplies or intervention.

To set up e-mail alerts:


- 1 Launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.
- 2 Click **E-Mail Alert** link.
- 3 Under **E-Mail Server Settings**, enter the **Primary SMTP Gateway**, **Reply Address**, and your or key operator's e-mail address in the e-mail list box.
- 4 Click **Apply New Settings**.

 **NOTE:** **Connection pending until printer sends an alert** is displayed on the SMTP server until an error occurs.

## Setting Up for Shared Printing

You can share your new printer on the network using the *Software and Documentation* disc that comes with your printer, or using Microsoft® point-and-print or peer-to-peer method. However, if you use one of the Microsoft methods, some features, such as the status monitor and other printer utilities, installed with the *Software and Documentation* disc, may not be available.

If you want to use the printer on a network, share the printer and install its drivers on all the computers on the network.

 **NOTE:** You need to purchase an Ethernet cable for shared printing.

### Specifying the Shared Settings of the Printer

#### Windows XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003, or Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition

- 1 Click start→ Printers and Faxes.
- 2 Right-click the printer icon and select **Properties**.
- 3 On the Sharing tab, select the **Share this printer** check box, and then type a name in the **Share name** text box.
- 4 Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients that print to the printer.
- 5 Click **OK**.

If you are missing files, you are prompted to insert the server operating system CD.

#### Windows Vista or Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

- 1 Click Start→ Control Panel→ Hardware and Sound→ Printers.
- 2 Right-click the printer icon and select **Sharing**.
- 3 Click **Change sharing options**.  
The message *Windows needs your permission to continue* appears.
- 4 Click **Continue**.
- 5 Select the **Share this printer** check box, and then type a name in the **Share name** text box.
- 6 Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients that print to the printer.
- 7 Click **OK**.

#### Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

- 1 Click Start→ Control Panel→ Printers.
- 2 Right-click the printer icon and select **Sharing**.
- 3 Click **Change Sharing Options** if exists.
- 4 Select the **Share this printer** check box, and then type a name in the **Share name** text box.
- 5 Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients that print to the printer.
- 6 Click **OK**.

#### Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, or Windows Server 2008 R2

- 1 Click Start→ Devices and Printers.
- 2 Right-click the printer icon and select **Printer properties**.
- 3 On the **Sharing** tab, click **Change Sharing Options** if exists.  
Select the **Share this printer** check box, and then type a name in the **Share name** text box.

- 4 Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients that print to the printer.
- 5 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

### **Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, or Windows Server 2012**

- 1 Under Desktop mode, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** (**Hardware** for Windows Server 2012) → **Devices and Printers**.
- 2 Right-click the printer icon and select **Printer properties**.
- 3 On the **Sharing** tab, click **Change Sharing Options** if exists.
- 4 Select the **Share this printer** check box, and then type a name in the **Share name** text box.
- 5 Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients using this printer.
- 6 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

To confirm that the printer is properly shared:

- Ensure that the printer object in the **Printers, Printers and Faxes, or Devices and Printers** folder is shared. The shared icon is shown under the printer icon.
- Browse **Network** or **My Network Places**. Find the host name of the server and the shared name you assigned to the printer.

Now that the printer is shared, you can install the printer on network clients using the point and print method or the peer-to-peer method.



**NOTE:** If the OS bit editions (32/64 bit edition) differ between a print server and a client computer, you need to manually add the printer driver for the client computer edition on the server. Otherwise, the printer driver cannot be installed on the client computer using the point and print or peer-to-peer method. For example, if the print server runs on Windows XP 32-bit edition, while the client computer runs on Windows 7 64-bit edition, follow the procedures below to additionally install the printer driver for 64-bit client on the 32-bit server.

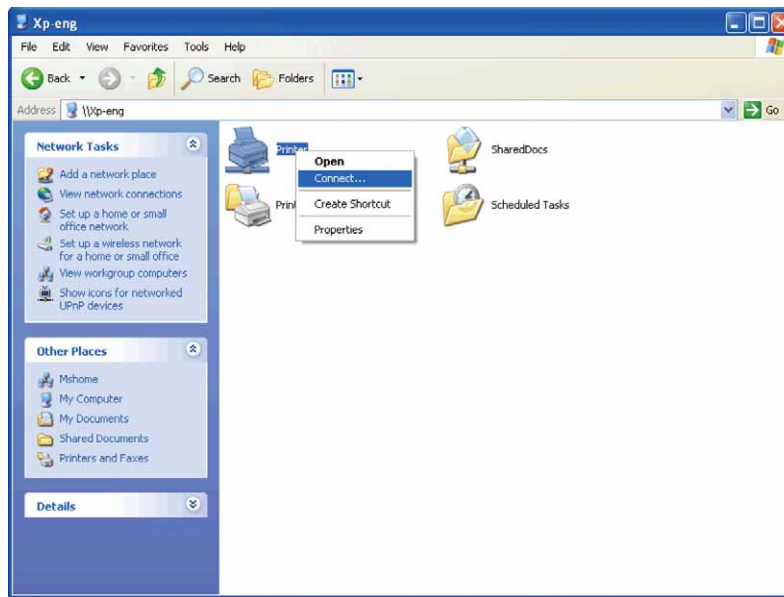
- a Click **Additional Drivers** on the screen for sharing printers.  
For details about how to display this screen, see "Specifying the Shared Settings of the Printer."
- b Select the **x64** check box, and then click **OK**.
- c Insert the *Software and Documentation* disc into your computer.
- d Click **Browse** to specify the folder that contains the 64-bit OS driver, and then click **OK**.  
Installation starts.

### **Point and Print**

Point and Print is a Microsoft Windows technology that allows you to connect to a remote printer. This feature automatically downloads and installs the printer driver.

### **Windows XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003, or Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition**

- 1 On the Windows desktop of the client computer, double-click **My Network Places**.
- 2 Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.
- 3 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.



Wait for the driver information to be copied from the server computer to the client computer, and for a new printer object to be added to the **Printers and Faxes** folder. The copy time varies, based on network traffic and other factors.

- 4 Close **My Network Places**.
- 5 Print a test page to verify installation.
  - a Click **start**→ **Printers and Faxes**.
  - b Select the printer you just created.
  - c Click **File**→ **Properties**.
  - d On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.

When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

#### **Windows Vista or Windows Vista 64-bit Edition**

- 1 On the Windows desktop of the client computer, click **Start**→ **Network**.
- 2 Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.
- 3 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.
- 4 Click **Install driver**.
- 5 Click **Continue** in the **User Account Control** dialog box.
- 6 Wait for the driver information to be copied from the server computer to the client computer, and for a new printer object to be added to the **Printers** folder. The time this takes varies, based on network traffic and other factors.
- 7 Print a test page to verify installation.
  - a Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **Hardware and Sound**.
  - b Select **Printers**.
  - c Right-click the printer you just created and click **Properties**.
  - d On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.

When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

### **Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition**

- 1** On the Windows desktop of the client computer, click **Start**→ **Network**.
- 2** Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.
- 3** Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.
- 4** Click **Install driver**.
- 5** Wait for the driver information to be copied from the server computer to the client computer, and for a new printer object to be added to the **Printers** folder. The time this takes varies, based on network traffic and other factors.
- 6** Print a test page to verify installation.
  - a** Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**.
  - b** Select **Printers**.
  - c** Right-click the printer you just created and select **Properties**.
  - d** On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

### **Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, or Windows Server 2008 R2**

- 1** On the Windows desktop of the client computer, click **Start**→ your user name→ **Network** (**Start**→ **Network** for Windows Server 2008 R2).
- 2** Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.
- 3** Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.
- 4** Click **Install driver**.
- 5** Wait for the driver information to be copied from the server computer to the client computer, and for a new printer object to be added to the **Devices and Printers** folder. The time this takes varies, based on network traffic and other factors.
- 6** Print a test page to verify installation.
  - a** Click **Start**→ **Devices and Printers**.
  - b** Right-click the printer you just created and select **Printer properties**.
  - c** On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

### **Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, or Windows Server 2012**

- 1** Point to the top or bottom right corner of the screen, and then click **Search** → Type **Network** in the search box, click **Apps**, and then click **Network**.
- 2** Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.
- 3** Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.
- 4** Click **Install driver**.
- 5** Wait for the driver information to be copied from the server computer to the client computer, and for a new printer object to be added to the **Devices and Printers** folder. The time this takes varies, based on network traffic and other factors.
- 6** Print a test page to verify installation.
  - a** Under Desktop mode, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** (**Hardware** for Windows Server 2012) → **Devices and Printers**.
  - b** Right-click the printer you just created and select **Printer properties**.

- c On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.

When a test page is printed successfully, installation is complete.

### Peer-to-Peer

If you use the peer-to-peer method, the printer driver is fully installed on each client computer. Network clients retain control of driver modifications. The client computer handles the print job processing.

#### Windows XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003, or Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition

- 1 Click **start**→ **Printers and Faxes**.
- 2 Click **Add a Printer**.
- 3 Click **Next**.
- 4 Select **A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer**, and then click **Next**. If the printer is not listed, type the path to the printer in the text box.



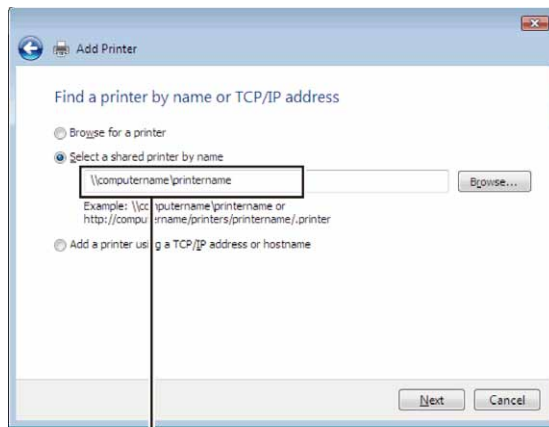
For example: \\<server host name>\<shared printer name>

The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it on the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

- 5 Click **Browse for a printer**, and then click **Next**.  
If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a printer driver. If no system driver is available, you need to specify the path to available drivers.
- 6 Select **Yes** if you want this printer to be set as the default printer, and then click **Next**.  
If you want to verify installation, click **Yes** to print a test page.
- 7 Click **Finish**.  
When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

### Windows Vista or Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

- 1 Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **Hardware and Sound**→ **Printers**.
- 2 Click **Add a Printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.
- 3 Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**, and then click **Next**. If the printer is listed, select the printer and click **Next**, or select **The printer that I want isn't listed** and type in the path of the printer in the **Select a shared printer by name** text box and click **Next**.



For example: \\<server host name>\<shared printer name>

The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it on the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a printer driver. If no system driver is available, you need to specify the path to available drivers.

- 4 Select **Yes** if you want this printer to be set as the default printer, and then click **Next**.
- 5 If you want to verify installation, click **Print a test page**.
- 6 Click **Finish**.

When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

### Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

- 1 Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **Printers**.
- 2 Click **Add a Printer**.
- 3 Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**, and then click **Next**. If the printer is listed, select the printer and click **Next**, or select **The printer that I want isn't listed** and type the path to the printer in the **Select a shared printer by name** text box and click **Next**.

For example: \\<server host name>\<shared printer name>

The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it on the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a printer driver. If no system driver is available, then you will need to provide a path to available drivers.

- 4 Select **Yes** if you want this printer to be set as the default printer, and then click **Next**.
- 5 Click **Print a test page** if you want to verify installation.
- 6 Click **Finish**.

When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

### **Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, or Windows Server 2008 R2**

- 1 Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.
- 2 Click **Add a Printer**.
- 3 Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**. If the printer is listed, select the printer and click **Next**, or select **The printer that I want isn't listed**. Click **Select a shared printer by name** and type in the path of the printer in the text box, and then click **Next**.

For example: \\<server host name>\<shared printer name>

The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it to the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a printer driver. If no system driver is available, then you will need to provide the path to the available driver.

- 4 Confirm the printer name, and then click **Next**.
- 5 Select **Yes** if you want this printer to be set as the default printer, and then click **Next**.
- 6 Click **Print a test page** if you want to verify installation.
- 7 Click **Finish**.

When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

### **Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, or Windows Server 2012**

- 1 Under Desktop mode, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound (Hardware for Windows Server 2012)** → **Devices and Printers**.
- 2 Click **Add a Printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.
- 3 If the printer is listed, select the printer and click **Next**, or select **The printer that I want isn't listed**. Click **Select a shared printer by name** and type in the path of the printer in the text box, and then click **Next**.

For example: \\<server host name>\<shared printer name>

The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it to the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a printer driver. If no system driver is available, then you will need to provide the path to the available driver.

- 4 Confirm the printer name, and then click **Next**.
- 5 Select **Yes** if you want this printer to be set as the default printer, and then click **Next**.
- 6 Click **Print a test page** if you want to verify installation.
- 7 Click **Finish**.

When a test page is printed successfully, installation is complete.

# Installing Printer Drivers on Macintosh Computers

## Installing the Drivers and Software

- 1 Run the *Software and Documentation* disc on the Macintosh computer.
- 2 Double-click the **Dell C3765 Installer** icon, and then click **Continue**.
- 3 When the popup dialog box prompts you for confirming the program included in the installation package, click **Continue**.
- 4 Click **Continue** on the **Important Information** screen.
- 5 Select a language for the Software License Agreement.
- 6 After reading the Software License Agreement, click **Continue**.
- 7 If you agree to the terms of the Software License Agreement, click **Agree** to continue the installation process.
- 8 Confirm the installation location.
- 9 Click **Install** to perform the standard installation.  
If you want to select a custom installation, click **Customize** to select items that you want to install.
  - Dell C3765 Printer Driver
  - Dell C3765 Fax Driver
  - Dell C3765 Scan Driver
  - Dell Printer Status Monitor
- 10 Type the administrator's name and password, and then click **Install Software**.
- 11 Click **Continue Installation** to continue the installation.
- 12 When the message **The installation was successful.** appears, click **Log Out** to complete installation.


## Adding a Printer on Mac OS X 10.5, 10.6, 10.7, or 10.8

### When Using a USB connection

- 1 Turn on the printer.
- 2 Connect the USB cable between the printer and the Macintosh computer.  
The printer is automatically added to your Macintosh computer.

### When Using IP Printing

- 1 Turn on the printer.
- 2 Ensure that Macintosh computer and the printer are connected.  
If you use wired connection, connect the LAN cable between the printer and the network.  
If you use wireless connection, ensure that wireless connection is configured properly on your Macintosh computer and the printer.
- 3 Open the **System Preferences**, and click **Print & Fax** (**Print & Scan** for Mac OS X 10.7 and Mac OS X 10.8).
- 4 Click the Plus (+) sign, and click **IP**.
- 5 Select **Line Printer Daemon - LPD** for Protocol.
- 6 Type the IP address for the printer in the **Address** area.


- 7 Select **Dell C3765dnf Color MFP** for **Print Using** (Use for Mac OS X 10.8).  
 **NOTE:** When printing is set up using IP printing, the queue name is displayed as blank. You do not need to specify it.
- 8 Click **Add**.
- 9 Specify the options that have been installed on the printer, and then click **Continue**.
- 10 Confirm that the printer is displayed in the **Print & Fax** (**Print & Scan** for Mac OS X 10.7 and Mac OS X 10.8) dialog box.

#### **When Using Bonjour**

- 1 Turn on the printer.
- 2 Ensure that Macintosh computer and the printer are connected.  
If you use wired connection, connect the LAN cable between the printer and the network.  
If you use wireless connection, ensure that wireless connection is configured properly on your Macintosh computer and the printer.
- 3 Open the **System Preferences**, and click **Print & Fax** (**Print & Scan** for Mac OS X 10.7 and Mac OS X 10.8).
- 4 Click the Plus (+) sign, and click **Default**.
- 5 Select the printer connected via Bonjour from the **Printer Name** list.
- 6 **Name** and **Print Using** (Use for Mac OS X 10.8) are automatically entered.
- 7 Click **Add**.
- 8 Specify the options that have been installed on the printer, and then click **Continue**.
- 9 Confirm that the printer is displayed in the **Print & Fax** (**Print & Scan** for Mac OS X 10.7 and Mac OS X 10.8) dialog box.

#### **Adding a Printer on Mac OS X 10.4.11**

##### **When Using a USB Connection**


- 1 Turn on the printer.
- 2 Connect the USB cable between the printer and the Macintosh computer.
- 3 Start **Printer Setup Utility**.  
 **NOTE:** You can find **Printer Setup Utility** in the **Utilities** folder in **Applications**.
- 4 Click **Add**.
- 5 Click **Default Browser** in the **Printer Browser** dialog box.
- 6 Select the printer connected via USB from the Printer list.
- 7 **Name** and **Print Using** are automatically entered.
- 8 Click **Add**.


##### **When Using IP Printing**

- 1 Turn on the printer.
- 2 Ensure that Macintosh computer and the printer are connected.  
If you use wired connection, connect the LAN cable between the printer and the network.  
If you use wireless connection, ensure that wireless connection is configured properly on your Macintosh computer and the printer.
- 3 Start **Printer Setup Utility**.

 **NOTE:** You can find **Printer Setup Utility** in the **Utilities folder** in **Applications**.

- 4 Click **Add**.
- 5 Click **IP Printer** in the **Printer Browser** dialog box.
- 6 Select **Line Printer Daemon - LPD** for **Protocol**.
- 7 Type the IP address for the printer in the **Address** area.
- 8 Select **Dell C3765dnf Color MFP** for **Print Using**.

 **NOTE:** When printing is set up using IP printing, the queue name is displayed as blank. You do not need to specify it.

 **NOTE:** Entry of **Location** is optional.

- 9 Click **Add**.

#### **When Using Bonjour**

- 1 Turn on the printer.
- 2 Ensure that Macintosh computer and the printer are connected.

If you use wired connection, connect the LAN cable between the printer and the network.

If you use wireless connection, ensure that wireless connection is configured properly on your Macintosh computer and the printer.

- 3 Start the **Printer Setup Utility**.

 **NOTE:** You can find **Printer Setup Utility** in the **Utilities folder** in **Applications**.

- 4 Click **Add**.
- 5 Click **Default Browser** in the **Printer Browser** dialog box.
- 6 Select the printer connected via Bonjour from the **Printer Name** list.
- 7 **Name** and **Print Using** are automatically entered.
- 8 Click **Add**.
- 9 Specify the options installed to the printer, and then click **Continue**.
- 10 Confirm that the printer is displayed on the **Printer** list dialog box.

#### **Adding a Printer on Mac OS X 10.3.9**

##### **When Using a USB connection**

- 1 Turn on the printer.
- 2 Connect the USB cable between the printer and the Macintosh computer.
- 3 Start **Printer Setup Utility**.

 **NOTE:** You can find **Printer Setup Utility** in the **Utilities folder** in **Applications**.

- 4 Click **Add**.
- 5 Select **USB** from the menu.  
The **Printer Model** is automatically selected.
- 6 Click **Add**.

### When Using IP Printing

1 Turn on the printer.

2 Ensure that Macintosh computer and the printer are connected.

If you use wired connection, connect the LAN cable between the printer and the network.

If you use wireless connection, ensure that wireless connection is configured properly on your Macintosh computer and the printer.

3 Start **Printer Setup Utility**.

 **NOTE:** You can find **Printer Setup Utility** in the **Utilities folder** in **Applications**.


4 Click **Add** in the **Printer List** dialog box.

5 Select **IP Printing** from the menu.

6 Select **LPD/LPR** for **Printer Type**.

7 Type the IP address for the printer in the **Address** area.

8 Select **Dell** for **Printer Model**, and select **Dell C3765dnf Color MFP**.

 **NOTE:** When printing is set up using IP printing, the queue name is displayed as blank. You do not need to specify it.

9 Click **Add**.

### When Using Rendezvous (Bonjour)

1 Turn on the printer.

2 Ensure that Macintosh computer and the printer are connected.

If you use wired connection, connect the LAN cable between the printer and the network.

If you use wireless connection, ensure that wireless connection is configured properly on your Macintosh computer and the printer.

3 Start **Printer Setup Utility**.

 **NOTE:** You can find **Printer Setup Utility** in the **Utilities folder** in **Applications**.

4 Click **Add** in the **Printer List** dialog box.

5 Select **Rendezvous** from the menu.

6 Select **Dell** for **Printer Model**, and select **Dell C3765dnf Color MFP**.

7 Click **Add**.

## Configuring Settings

All the optional accessories are verified as installed.

### Mac OS X 10.5, 10.6, 10.7, or 10.8

- 1 Open the **System Preferences**, and click **Print & Fax** (**Print & Scan** for Mac OS X 10.7 and Mac OS X 10.8).
- 2 Select the printer in the **Printer Name** list, and click **Options & Supplies**.
- 3 Select **Driver**, and select the options that have been installed in the printer, and then click **OK**.

### Mac OS X 10.3.9 or 10.4.11

- 1 Start **Printer Setup Utility**.
- 2 Select the printer in the **Printer List** dialog box, and click **Show Info**.
- 3 Select **Installable Options**, and select the options that have been installed in the printer, and then click **Apply Changes**.



# Installing Printer Drivers on Linux Computers (CUPS)

This section provides information for installing or setting up the printer driver with CUPS (Common UNIX Printing System) on Red Hat® Enterprise Linux® 5/6 Desktop or SUSE® Linux Enterprise Desktop 10/11.

## Operation on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5/6 Desktop

### Setup Overview

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5/6 Desktop:

- 1 Install the printer driver.
- 2 Set up the print queue.
- 3 Specify the default queue.
- 4 Specify the printing options.

### Installing the Printer Driver

 **CAUTION:** Before you install the printer driver on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5, confirm that Update 6 or higher is applied to your operating system. Consult your Linux distributor for the upgrade of your system.

- 1 Select Applications→ System Tools (Accessories for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Desktop)→ Terminal.
- 2 Type the following command in the terminal window.

```
su
(Type the administrator password)
rpm -ivh (Type the file path)/Dell-C3765-Color-
MFP-x.x-x.noarch.rpm
```

The printer driver is installed.

### Setting Up the Queue

To execute printing, you must set up the print queue on your workstation.

For Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Desktop:

- 1 Open the URL "http://localhost:631" using a web browser.
- 2 Click **Administration**.
- 3 Click **Add Printer**.

Type the name of the printer in the **Name** box in the **Add New Printer** window, and click **Continue**.

You can optionally specify the location and description of the printer for further information.

For network connections:

- a Select **LPD/LPR Host or Printer** from the **Device** menu, and click **Continue**.
- b Type the IP address of the printer in **Device URI**, and click **Continue**.  
Format: lpd://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx (the IP address of the printer)

For USB connections:

- a** Select **Dell C3765dnf Color MFP USB #1** or **Dell C3765dnf Color MFP** from the **Device** menu, and click **Continue**.
- 4** Select **Dell C3765dnf Color MFP PS vx.x (en)** from the **Model** menu, and click **Add Printer**.
- 5** Type **root** as the user name, type the administrator password, and click **OK**.  
The message **Printer xxx has been added successfully.** appears.  
The setup is complete.

For Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Desktop:

- 1** Open the URL "**http://localhost:631**" using a web browser.
- 2** Click **Administration**.
- 3** Click **Add Printer**.
- 4** Type **root** as the user name, type the administrator password, and click **OK**.

For network connections:

- a** Select **LPD/LPR Host or Printer** from the **Other Network Printers** menu, and click **Continue**.
- b** Type the IP address of the printer in **Connection**, and click **Continue**.  
Format: **lpd://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx** (the IP address of the printer)

For USB connections:

- a** Select **Dell C3765dnf Color MFP** from the **Local Printers** menu, and click **Continue**.
- 5** Type the name of the printer in the **Name** box in the **Add Printer** window, and click **Continue**.  
You can optionally specify the location and description of the printer for further information.
- 6** Select **Dell C3765dnf Color MFP PS vx.x (en)** from the **Model** menu, and click **Add Printer**.  
The setup is complete.

### Printing From the Applications

When you have finished setting up the queue, you can print jobs from the applications. Start the print job from the application, and specify the queue in the print dialog box.

However, sometimes you can print only from the default queue depending on the application (for example Mozilla). In these cases, before you start printing, set queue you want to print to as the default queue. For information on specifying the default queue, see "Setting the Default Queue."

### Setting the Default Queue

- 1** Select **Applications**→**System Tools** (**Accessories** for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Desktop)→**Terminal**.
- 2** Type the following command in the terminal window.

```
su
(Type the administrator password)
lpadmin -d (Type the queue name)
```

## Specifying the Printing Options

You can specify the printing options such as color mode.

For Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Desktop:

- 1 Open the URL "<http://localhost:631>" using a web browser.
- 2 Click **Administration**.
- 3 Click **Manage Printers**.
- 4 Click **Set Printer Options** of the printer for which you want to specify the printing options.
- 5 Specify the required settings, and click **Set Printer Options**.
- 6 Type **root** as the user name, and type the administrator password.  
The message **Printer xxx has been configured successfully.** appears.  
The setting is complete.

For Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Desktop:

- 1 Open the URL "<http://localhost:631>" using a web browser.
- 2 Click **Administration**.
- 3 Click **Manage Printers**.
- 4 Click the queue name for which you want to specify the printing options.
- 5 Select **Set Default Options** from the **Administration** menu.
- 6 Click the desired setting item, specify the required settings, and click **Set Default Options**.  
The message **Printer xxx default options have been set successfully.** appears.  
The setting is complete.

## Uninstalling the Printer Driver

- 1 Select **Applications**→**System Tools** (Accessories for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Desktop)→**Terminal**.
- 2 Type the following command in the terminal window to delete the print queue.

```
su
(Type the administrator password)
/usr/sbin/lpadmin -x (Type the print queue name)
```

- 3 Repeat the command above for all queues for the same model.
- 4 Type the following command in the terminal window.

```
su
(Type the administrator password)
rpm -e Dell-C3765-Color-MFP
```

The printer driver is uninstalled.

# Operation on SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10

## Setup Overview

SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10:

- 1 Install the printer driver.
- 2 Set up the print queue.
- 3 Specify the default queue.
- 4 Specify the printing options.

## Installing the Printer Driver

- 1 Select **Computer**→**More Applications...** and select **Gnome Terminal** on the Application Browser.
- 2 Type the following command in the terminal window.

```
su
(Type the administrator password)
rpm -ivh (Type the file path)/Dell-C3765-Color-
MFP-x.x-x.noarch.rpm
```

The printer driver is installed.


## Setting Up the Queue

To execute printing, you must set up the print queue on your workstation.

- 1 Select **Computer**→**More Applications...** and select **YaST** on the Application Browser.
- 2 Type the administrator password, and click **Continue**.  
YaST Control Center is activated.
- 3 Select **Hardware** on **YaST Control Center**, and select **Printer**.

The **Printer Configuration** dialog box appears.

For network connections:

- a Click **Add**.
  - b Select **Network Printers** as **Printer Type**, and click **Next**.
  - c Select **Print via LPD-Style Network Server** as **Network Printers**, and click **Next**.
  - d Type the IP address of the printer in **Hostname of the Print Server**.
  - e Type the name of the printer queue in **Print Queue Name**, and click **Next**.
  - f Type the printer name in **Name for Printing**.
-  **NOTE:** **Printer Description** and **Printer Location** do not have to be specified.
- g Select the **Do Local Filtering** check box, and click **Next**.
  - h Select **DELL** as **Manufacturer**. Select **C3765dnf Color MFP** as **Model**, and click **Next**.
  - i Confirm the settings in **Configuration**, and click **OK**.

For USB connections:

- a Select **Dell C3765dnf Color MFP on USB** (`//Dell/C3765dnf%20Color%20MFP` or `/dev/usb/lp*`) as **Available are**, and click **Configure...**
  - b Confirm the settings in **Edit configuration**, and click **OK**.
- 4 Click **Finish**.

### Printing From the Applications

When you have finished setting up the queue you can print jobs from the applications. Start the print job from the application, and specify the queue in the print dialog box.

However, sometimes you can print only from the default queue depending on the application (for example Mozilla). In these cases, before you start printing, set queue you want to print to as the default queue. For information on specifying the default queue, see "Setting the Default Queue."

### Setting the Default Queue

- 1 To activate the **Printer setup: Autodetected printers**, do the following.
  - a Select **Computer**→**More Applications...** and select **YaST** on the Application Browser.
  - b Type the administrator password, and click **Continue**.  
**YaST Control Center** is activated.
  - c Select **Hardware** on **YaST Control Center**, and select **Printer**.
- 2 Select the printer you want to set to default on the **Printer Configuration**, and select **Set Default** in the **Other** button menu.
- 3 Click **Finish**.

### Specifying the Printing Options

You can specify the printing options such as color mode.

- 1 Open a web browser.
- 2 Type `http://localhost:631/admin` in **Location**, and press **<Enter>**.
- 3 Type **root** as the user name, and type the administrator password.  
The **CUPS** window appears.



**NOTE:** Set the password for authority as the printer administrator before setting the printer queue. If you have not set it, go to "Setting the Password for Authority as the Printer Administrator."

- 4 Click **Manage Printers**.
- 5 Specify the required settings, and click **Continue**.  
The message **Printer xxx has been configured successfully** appears.  
The setting is complete. Execute printing from the application.

## Setting the Password for Authority as the Printer Administrator

You must set the password for authority as the printer administrator to do operations as the printer administrator.

- 1 Select **Computer**→**More Applications...** and select **Gnome Terminal** on the Application Browser.
- 2 Type the following command in the terminal window.

```
su
(Type the administrator password)
lppasswd -g sys -a root
(Type the password for authority as the printer administrator after
the Enter password prompt.)
(Retype the password for authority as the printer administrator after
the Enter password again prompt.)
```

## Uninstalling the Printer Driver

- 1 Select **Computer**→**More Applications...** and select **Gnome Terminal** on the Application Browser.
- 2 Type the following command in the terminal window to delete the print queue.

```
su
(Type the administrator password)
/usr/sbin/lpadm -x (Type the printer queue name)
```

- 3 Repeat the command above for all queues for the same model.
- 4 Type the following command in the terminal window.

```
su
(Type the administrator password)
rpm -e Dell-C3765-Color-MFP
```

The printer driver is uninstalled.

# Operation on SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11

## Setup Overview

SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11:

- 1 Install the printer driver.
- 2 Set up the print queue.
- 3 Specify the default queue.
- 4 Specify the printing options.

## Installing the Printer Driver

- 1 Select **Computer**→**More Applications...** and select **GNOME Terminal** on the Application Browser.
- 2 Type the following command in the terminal window.

```
su
(Type the administrator password)
rpm -ivh (Type the file path)/Dell-C3765-Color-
MFP-x.x-x.noarch.rpm
```

The printer driver is installed.

## Setting Up the Queue


To execute printing, you must set up the print queue on your workstation.

- 1 Select **Computer**→**More Applications...**, and select **YaST** on the Application Browser.
- 2 Type the administrator password, and click **Continue**.  
**YaST Control Center** is activated.
- 3 Select **Hardware** on **YaST Control Center**, and select **Printer**.

The **Printer Configurations** dialog box opens.

For network connections:


- a Click **Add**.  
The **Add New Printer Configuration** dialog box opens.
- b Click **Connection Wizard**.  
The **Connection Wizard** dialog box opens.
- c Select **Line Printer Daemon (LPD) Protocol** from **Access Network Printer or Printserver Box** via.
- d Type the IP address of the printer in **IP Address or Host Name**:
- e Select **Dell** in the **Select the printer manufacturer**: drop-down menu.
- f Click **OK**.  
The **Add New Printer Configuration** dialog box appears.
- g Select **Dell C3765dnf Color MFP PS vx.x [Dell/Dell\_C3765dnf\_Color\_MFP.ppd.gz]** from the **Assign Driver** list.

 **NOTE:** You can specify the printer name in **Set Name**:

- h Confirm the settings, and click **OK**.

For USB connections:

- a Click **Add**.  
The **Add New Printer Configuration** dialog box opens.  
The printer name is displayed in the **Determine Connection** list.
- b Select **Dell C3765dnf Color MFP PS vx.x. [Dell/Dell\_C3765dnf\_Color\_MFP.ppd.gz]** from the **Assign Driver** list.

 **NOTE:** You can specify the printer name in **Set Name**:

- c Confirm the settings, and click **OK**.

## Printing From the Applications

When you have finished setting up the queue you can print jobs from the applications. Start the print job from the application, and specify the queue in the print dialog box.

However, sometimes you can print only from the default queue depending on the application (for example Mozilla). In these cases, before you start printing, set queue you want to print to as the default queue. For information on specifying the default queue, see "Setting the Default Queue."

## Setting the Default Queue

You can set the default queue when you add the printer.

- 1 Select **Computer**→**More Applications...**, and select **YaST** on the Application Browser.
- 2 Type the administrator password, and click **Continue**.  
**YaST Control Center** is activated.
- 3 Select **Hardware** on **YaST Control Center**, and select **Printer**.  
The **Printer Configurations** dialog box opens.
- 4 Click **Edit**.  
A dialog box to modify the specified queue opens.
- 5 Confirm that the printer you want to set is selected in the **Connection** list.
- 6 Select the **Default Printer** check box.
- 7 Confirm the settings, and click **OK**.

## Specifying the Printing Options

You can specify the printing options such as color mode.

- 1 Open a web browser.
- 2 Type `http://localhost:631/admin` in **Location**, and press <Enter>.
- 3 Click **Manage Printers**.
- 4 Click **Set Printer Options** of the printer for which you want to specify the printing options.
- 5 Specify the required settings, and click **Set Printer Options**.
- 6 Type **root** as the user name, type the administrator password, and click **OK**.



**NOTE:** Set the password for authority as the printer administrator before setting the printer queue. If you have not set it, go to "Setting the Password for Authority as the Printer Administrator."

The message **Printer xxx has been configured successfully.** appears.

The setting is complete. Execute printing from the application.

## Setting the Password for Authority as the Printer Administrator

You must set the password for authority as the printer administrator to do operations as the printer administrator.

- 1 Select **Computer**→**More Applications...** and select **GNOME Terminal** on the Application Browser.
- 2 Type the following command in the terminal window.

```
su
(Type the administrator password)
lppasswd -g sys -a root
(Type the password for authority as the printer administrator after
the Enter password prompt.)
(Retype the password for authority as the printer administrator after
the Enter password again prompt.)
```

## Uninstalling the Printer Driver

- 1 Select **Computer**→**More Applications...** and select **GNOME Terminal** on the Application Browser.
- 2 Type the following command in the terminal window to delete the print queue.

```
su
(Type the administrator password)
/usr/sbin/lpadm -x (Type the printer queue name)
```

- 3 Repeat the command above for all queues for the same model.
- 4 Type the following command in the terminal window.

```
su
(Type the administrator password)
rpm -e Dell-C3765-Color-MFP
```

The printer driver is uninstalled.



# Using Your Printer

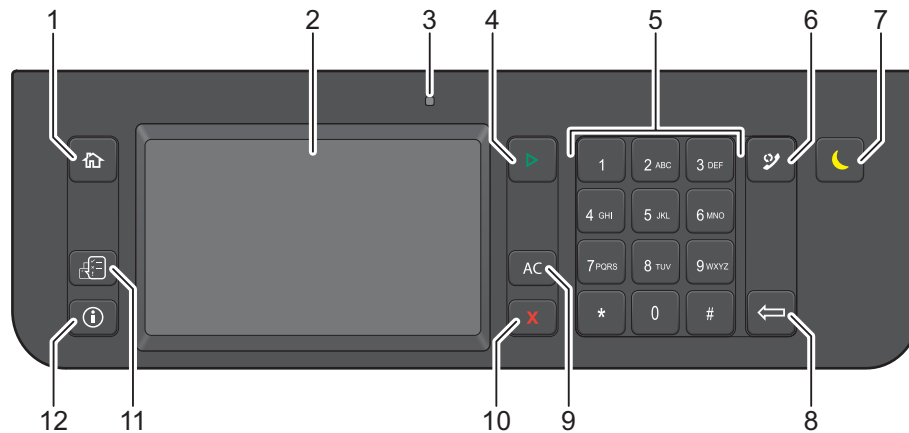
13 Operator Panel .....	129
14 Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool.....	135
15 Understanding the Tool Box Menus.....	203
16 Understanding the Printer Menus.....	231
17 Print Media Guidelines.....	301
18 Loading Print Media .....	307










# Operator Panel


## About the Operator Panel

The operator panel has a touch panel, a status LED, control buttons, and a number pad, which allows you to control the printer.




- 1  (Home) button
  - Moves to the **Main Home** screen.
- 2 Touch Panel
  - Specifies the settings by directly touching the screen.
  - Displays various settings, instructions, and error messages.
- 3 Status LED (Ready / Error)
  - Shows a green light when the printer is ready and a blinking green light when data is being received.
  - Shows an amber light when an error occurs and a blinking amber light when an unrecoverable print error occurs.
- 4  (Start) button
  - Starts a job.
- 5 Number Pad
  - Enters numbers and characters.
- 6  (Redial / Pause) button
  - Re-dials a telephone number.
  - Inserts a pause into a telephone number.
- 7  (Power Saver) button
  - Enters or exits the Power Saver mode. When the machine is not used for a while, it enters the Power Saver mode to reduce power consumption. When the Power Saver mode is active, the Power Saver button blinks.
- 8  (Delete) button
  - Deletes numbers and characters.

- 9 AC (All Clear) button
  - Resets the current setting, and returns to the top menu.
- 10 X (Cancel) button
  - Cancels active or pending jobs.
- 11  (Job Status) button
  - Moves to the **Job Status** screen. From this screen, you can check or cancel active jobs and also access **Secure Print** and **Secure Fax receive**.
- 12  (Information) button
  - Moves to the **Information** screen. You can access various information and menus, check consumable levels, and print various types of reports and lists.

 **NOTE:** Moving to a different menu or returning to a previous screen cancels the current entry or setting. Make sure to select **OK** to save the current entry or setting.

## About the Main Home Screen

This section describes the fields and buttons on the **Main Home** screen which is displayed by pressing the  (Home) button. This is the default screen that appears when the printer is turned on.



### Message Field

Displays the printer status, error message, and IP address assigned to the printer.

### Toner Status Icon

Displays the condition of toner in 6 levels. (The toner level for each color: 100%, 80%, 60%, 40%, 20%, 0%) Selecting this icon moves to the **Supplies** tab.

### Wireless LAN Connection Status Icon


Displays the intensity of wireless signal when the wireless adapter is connected to the printer.

### Data Status Icon

Displays when the print data or fax data is stored in the printer. While receiving fax data, this icon blinks on and off. When wireless LAN connection status icon is not displayed, the position of the data status icon is right-justified.

## Function Buttons

Allows you to set the features for functions such as Copy, E-mail, Scan Menu, Fax, Print Menu, and ID Card Copy.

 **NOTE:** Functions that are disabled do not appear on this screen. For details about enabling and disabling functions, see "Function Enabled."

### Copy

You can set the features for the Copy function.

For more information, see "Copying."

### E-mail

You can scan documents and send the scanned data as an e-mail attachment.

For more information, see "Sending an E-Mail With the Scanned Image."

### Scan Menu

You can set the features for the Scan Menu function.

For more information, see "Scanning."

### Fax

You can set the features for the Fax function.

For more information, see "Faxing."

### Print Menu

You can set the features for the Print Menu function.

For more information, see "Printing."

### ID Card Copy

You can set the features for the ID Card Copy function.







For more information, see "Using the ID Card Copy."

## Using the Keyboard Displayed on the Touch Panel

During operations, a keyboard for entering text sometimes appears. The following describes how to enter text.



You can enter the following characters: numbers, alphabets, and symbols.

Item	Description
Changing keyboards	Select  to change the keyboard layout on the touch panel. Select from QWERTY, AZERTY, or QWERTZ.
Entering alphabets	To enter uppercase letters, select  . To return to the lowercase letters, select  again.
Entering numbers and symbols	Select  .
Entering a space	Select Space or  .
Deleting characters	Select  to delete one character at a time.

## Using the Number Pad


As you perform various tasks, you may need to enter numbers. For example, when you specify the quantity of copies or when you enter fax number directly.




### Number Pad Numbers

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
0
*
#

### Changing Numbers or Names

If you make a mistake while entering a number, press the  (Delete) button to delete the last digit or character. Then enter the correct number or character.

## Inserting a Pause

For some telephone systems, it is necessary to dial an access code and listen for a second dial tone. A pause must be entered in order for the access code to function. For example, enter the access code 9 and then press the  (Redial/Pause) button before entering the telephone number. "-" appears on the display to indicate when a pause is entered.



## Printing a Panel Settings Report

The panel settings report shows current settings for the printer menus. For details about how to print a panel settings report, see "Report / List."

## Changing the Language


To change the language used on the touch panel:

### When Using the Operator Panel

- 1 Press the  (Information) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Panel Language**.
- 3 Select the  until the desired language appears, and then select the desired language.
- 4 Select **OK**.

### When Using the Tool Box

- 1 Click **Start**→ **All Programs**→ **Dell Printers**→ **Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer**→ **Tool Box**.


 **NOTE:** For details about starting the Tool Box, see "Starting the Tool Box."

The **Tool Box** opens.





- 2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.
- 3 Select **Panel Language** from the list at the left side of the page.  
The **Panel Language** page appears.
- 4 Select the desired language from **Panel Language**, and then click **Apply New Settings**.



## Setting the Power Saver Timer Option

You can set the power saver timer for the printer. The printer enters the power saver mode when the printer is not used for a certain period of time.

 **NOTE:** If the **Panel Lock Control** is set to **Enable**, you need to enter the four digit password to enter the **Admin Settings** menu.



To set the power saver timer:

- 1 Press the  (Information) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Admin Settings**.
- 3 Select  until **System Settings** appears, and then select **System Settings**.
- 4 Select  until **General** appears, and then select **General**.
- 5 Select  until **Power Saver Timer** appears, and then select **Power Saver Timer**.
- 6 Select **Sleep** or **Deep Sleep**.

- 7 Select  or , or use the number pad to enter the desired value.  
You can specify from 1 to 60 minutes for Sleep or 1 to 60 minutes for Deep Sleep.  
To return to the Information screen, press the AC (All Clear) button.


## About the Concurrent Jobs Feature

This feature enables you to start a concurrent job while a fax job is running. This is done by temporarily displaying the Main Home screen and switching to a different function that can be run concurrently such as copy or scan.

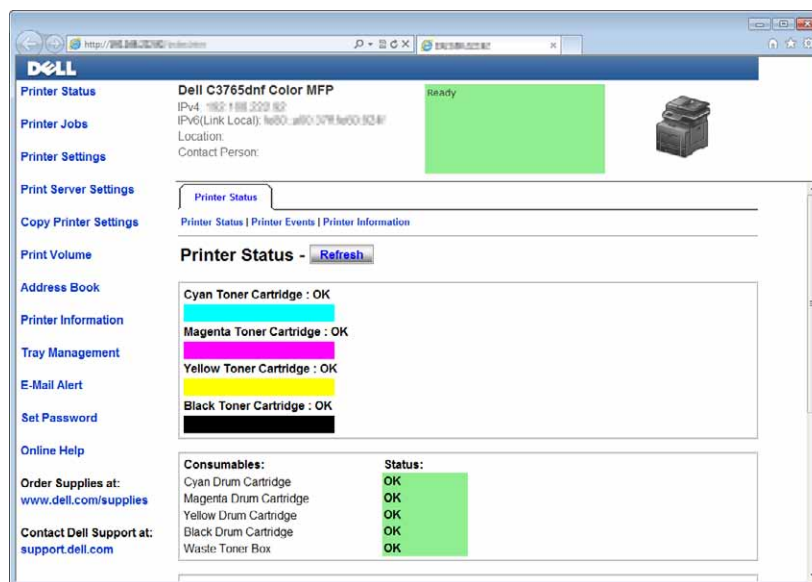
- 1 While the printer is sending or receiving a fax, press the  (Home) button.
- 2 Select Copy or Scan Menu.
- 3 After setting the copy or scan options, press the  (Start) button.  
For details about Copy or Scan Menu, see "Copying" or "Scanning."

# Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool

## Overview

 **NOTE:** This web tool is available only when the printer is connected to a network using an Ethernet cable or the wireless printer adapter.

One of the features of the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool is E-Mail Alert Setup, which sends e-mail to you or the key operator when the printer needs supplies or intervention.




To fill out printer inventory reports requiring the asset tag number of all the printers in your area, use the **Printer Information** feature in the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool. Enter the IP address of each printer on the network to display the asset tag number.

The Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool feature also allows you to change the printer settings and keep track of printing trends. If you are a network administrator, you can copy the printer settings to one or all printers on the network using your web browser.

# Setting Up the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

Ensure that you activate JavaScript in your browser before using the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.

Follow the procedures below to configure both the environment settings of your web browser and the EWS setting on the operator panel before using the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.

 **NOTE:** The Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool pages may be displayed unreadable if the pages were configured by the language different from the language of your web browser.

## Setting Up From Web Browser

### For Internet Explorer®

#### Setting Up the Display Language

- 1 Select **Internet Options** from **Tools** on the menu bar.
- 2 Select **Languages** in the **General** tab.
- 3 Specify the display language in order of preference in the **Language** list.

For example:

- Italian (Italy) [it-IT]
- Spanish (Traditional Sort) [es-ES tradnl]
- German (Germany) [de-DE]
- French (France) [fr-FR]
- English (United States) [en-US]
- Danish [da-DK]
- Dutch (Netherlands) [nl-NL]
- Norwegian (Bokmal) [no]
- Swedish [sv-SE]

#### Setting the IP Address of the Printer to Non-Proxy

- 1 Select **Internet Options** from the **Tools** menu.
- 2 Click **LAN Settings** under **Local Area Network (LAN) Settings** in the **Connections** tab.
- 3 Do either of the following:
  - Clear the **Use a proxy server for your LAN** check box under **Proxy server**.
  - Click **Advanced**, and then specify the IP address of the printer in the **Do not use proxy server for addresses beginning with** field under **Exceptions**.

### For Firefox 2.0 or Later

#### Setting Up the Display Language

- 1 Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu.
- 2 Click **Advanced**.
- 3 If you are using Firefox 2.0, click **Choose** in the **General** tab. If you are using Firefox 3.0, click **Choose** in the **Content** tab.

- 4 Specify the display language in order of preference in the **Languages in order of preference** list menu.

For example:

- **English** [en] or **English/United States** [en-us]
- **Italian** [it]
- **Spanish** [es]
- **German** [de]
- **French** [fr]
- **Dutch** [nl]
- **Norwegian** [no]
- **Swedish** [sv]
- **Danish** [da]

#### **Setting the IP Address of the Printer to Non-Proxy**

- 1 Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu.
- 2 Click **Advanced** tab.
- 3 Click **Network** on the **Options** dialog box.
- 4 Click **Connection** → **Settings**.
- 5 If you are using Firefox 2.0, do one of the following:
  - Select the **Direct connection to the Internet** check box.
  - Select the **Auto-detect proxy settings for this network** check box.
  - Select the **Manual proxy configuration** check box, and then enter the IP address of the printer in the **No Proxy for edit** box.
  - Select the **Automatic proxy configuration URL** check box.

If you are using Firefox 3.0, do one of the following:

- Select the **No Proxy** check box, if you do not want to use a proxy.
- Select the **Auto-detect proxy settings for this network** check box.
- Select the **Manual proxy configuration** check box, and then enter a hostname and a port number if you have a list of one or more proxy servers. If you have an IP address that does not use a proxy, enter the IP address of the printer in the **No Proxy for edit** box.
- Select the **Automatic proxy configuration URL** check box.

#### **Setting Up From Operator Panel**

You can launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** only when **EWS** is set to **Enable** (the factory default) on the operator panel. Confirm the operator panel setting if you cannot launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. For more information, see "Understanding the Printer Menus."

## Starting the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

To launch the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool, enter the IP address of your printer in your web browser.



If you do not know the IP address of your printer, print the system settings report or display the **TCP/IP Settings** page, which lists the IP address. For details about how to find your printer's IP address, see "Verifying the IP Settings."

## Overview of the Menu Items

The Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool consists of the following menus:

- Printer Status
- Printer Jobs
- Printer Settings
- Print Server Settings
- Copy Printer Settings
- Print Volume
- Address Book
- Printer Information
- Tray Management
- E-Mail Alert
- Set Password
- Online Help
- Order Supplies at:
- Contact Dell Support at:

### Printer Status

Use the **Printer Status** menu to get immediate feedback on the printer supply status. When a toner cartridge is running low, click the order supplies link on the first screen to order a new toner cartridge.

### Printer Jobs

Use the **Printer Jobs** menu to contain information on the **Job List** page and **Completed Jobs** page.

These pages show the details of the status regarding each protocol or job.

### Printer Settings


Use the **Printer Settings** menu to change the printer settings and to view the settings in the operator panel remotely.

### Print Server Settings

Use the **Print Server Settings** menu to change the type of printer interface and the necessary conditions for communications.

## Copy Printer Settings

Use the **Copy Printer Settings** menu to copy the printer settings to another printer or printers on the network by typing the IP address of each printer.


 **NOTE:** You must log in as an administrator to use this feature.

## Print Volume

Use the **Print Volume** menu to check the history of printing, such as paper usage, the types of jobs being printed, limit to which users can use the color mode, and the maximum number of pages they can print.

## Address Book

Use the **Address Book** menu to view or edit the e-mail address, server address, and fax number entries in the Address Book, or to register new entries.

 **NOTE:** You must log in as an administrator to use this feature.

## Printer Information

Use the **Printer Information** menu to get information on service calls, inventory reports, or the status of current memory and engine code levels.

## Tray Management


Use the **Tray Management** menu to get information about the paper type and size for each tray.

## E-Mail Alert

Use the **E-Mail Alert** menu to receive e-mail when the printer needs supplies or intervention. To be notified, type your name or the name of the key operator in the e-mail list box. Set **E-mail Alert** also when using the Scan to E-mail or forwarding fax to e-mail feature.

## Set Password

Use the **Set Password** menu to lock the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** with a password so that other users do not inadvertently change the printer settings that you have selected.

 **NOTE:** You must log in as an administrator to use this feature.

## Online Help

Click **Online Help** to visit the Dell Support website.

## Order Supplies at:

[www.dell.com/supplies](http://www.dell.com/supplies)

## Contact Dell Support at:

[support.dell.com](http://support.dell.com)

## Page Display Format

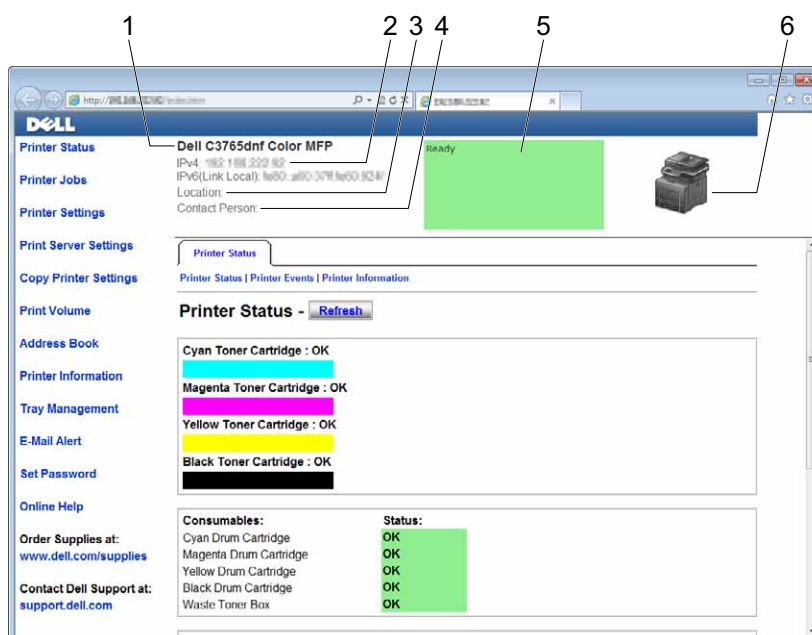
The layout of the page is divided into three sections listed below:

- Top Frame
- Left Frame
- Right Frame

### Top Frame

The top frame is located at the top of all pages. When the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** is activated, the current status and specifications of the printer are displayed in the top frame on every page.

The following items are displayed in the top frame.

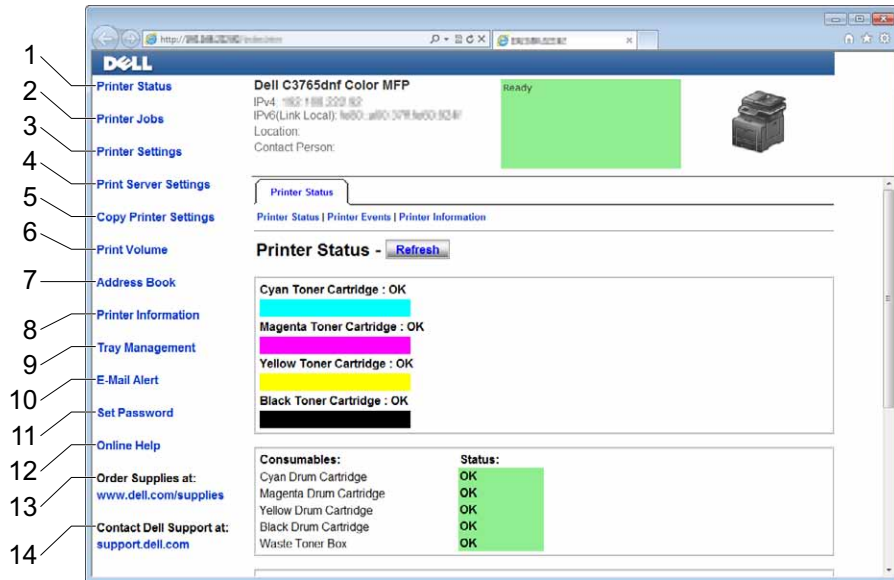


1	Dell C3765dnf Color MFP	Displays the product name of the printer.
2	IPv4 IPv6	Displays the IP address of the printer.
3	Location	Displays location of the printer. The location can be changed in the <b>Basic Information</b> section on the <b>Print Server Settings</b> page.
4	Contact Person	Displays the name of the printer administrator. The name can be changed in the <b>Basic Information</b> section on the <b>Print Server Settings</b> page.
5	Event Panel	Displays the indicator for the condition of the printer.
6	Machine image	Shows the bitmap image of the printer. The <b>Printer Status</b> menu appears in the right frame when you click on the image.

## Left Frame

The left frame is located on the left side of all the pages. The menu titles displayed in the left frame are linked to corresponding menus and pages. You can go to the corresponding page by clicking their characters.

The following menus are displayed in the left frame.

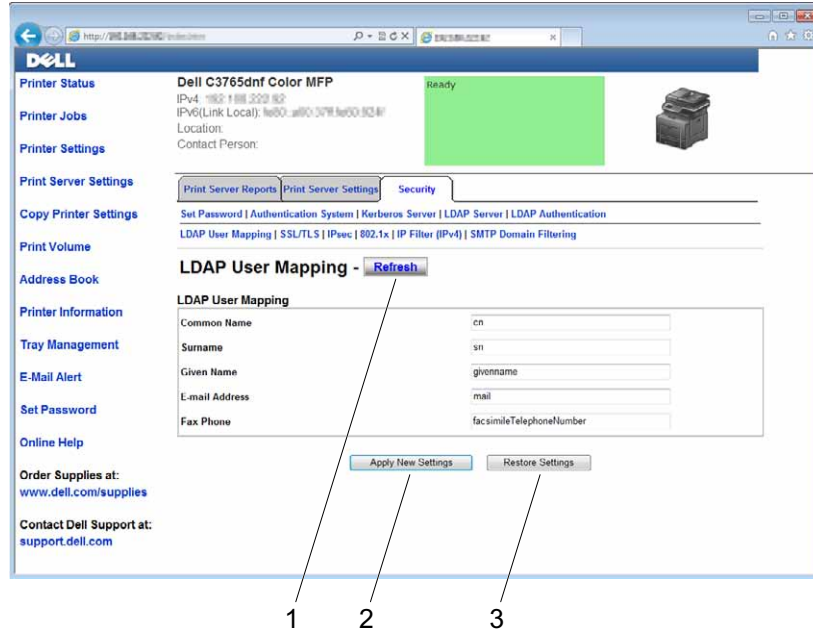


1	Printer Status	Links to the <b>Printer Status</b> menu.
2	Printer Jobs	Links to the <b>Printer Jobs</b> menu.
3	Printer Settings	Links to the <b>Printer Settings Report</b> menu.
4	Print Server Settings	Links to the <b>Print Server Reports</b> menu.
5	Copy Printer Settings	Links to the <b>Copy Printer Settings</b> menu.
6	Print Volume	Links to the <b>Print Volume</b> menu.
7	Address Book	Links to the <b>E-Mail Address</b> menu.
8	Printer Information	Links to the <b>Printer Status</b> menu.
9	Tray Management	Links to the <b>Tray Management</b> menu.
10	E-Mail Alert	Links to the <b>Print Server Settings</b> menu.
11	Set Password	Links to the <b>Security</b> menu.
12	Online Help	Links to the Dell Support website.
13	Order Supplies at: <a href="http://www.dell.com/supplies">www.dell.com/supplies</a>	Links to the Dell web page.
14	Contact Dell Support at: <a href="http://support.dell.com">support.dell.com</a>	Links to the Dell support page web address: <a href="http://support.dell.com">http://support.dell.com</a>

## Right Frame

The right frame is located on the right side of all the pages. The contents of the right frame correspond to the menu that you select in the left frame. For details on the items displayed in the right frame, see "Details of the Menu Items."

## Buttons in the Right Frame



1	Refresh Button	Receives the current printer configuration and updates the latest information in the right frame.
2	Apply New Settings Button	Submits new settings made on the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool to the printer. The new settings replace the old settings of the printer.
3	Restore Settings Button	Restores the old settings that existed before any changes were made. New settings will not be submitted to the printer.

## Changing the Settings of the Menu Items

Some menus allow you to change the printer settings through the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. When you access these menus, the authentication window appears on the screen. Type a user name and password for the printer administrator by following the prompts displayed in the dialog box.

The default user name is **admin**, and the default password is left blank (NULL). You can change only the password in the **Set Password** page in the **Security** menu. The user name cannot be changed. See "Set Password" for more information.

### Details of the Menu Items

"Printer Status"	"Printer Status"	"Printer Status"
		"Printer Events"
		"Printer Information"
"Printer Jobs"	"Printer Jobs"	"Job List"
		"Completed Jobs"

"Printer Settings"	"Printer Settings Report"	"Menu Settings"
		"Reports"
"Printer Settings"		"System Settings"
		"Network Settings"
		"USB Settings"
		"PCL Settings"
		"PostScript Settings"
		"PDF Settings"
		"Secure Settings"
		"Copy Defaults"
		"Copy Color Balance"
		"Copy Settings"
		"Fax Defaults"
		"Fax Settings"
		"Scan Defaults"
	"USB Direct Print Defaults"	
"Printer Maintenance"		"Paper Density"
		"Adjust Transfer Belt Unit"
		"Adjust 2nd BTR"
		"Adjust Fusing Unit"
		"Auto Registration Adjustment"
		"Color Registration Adjustments"
		"Reset Defaults"
		"Initialize PrintMeter"
		"Storage"*1
		"Non-Dell Toner"
		"Adjust Altitude"
		"Clock Settings"
		"Web Link Customization"

"Print Server Settings"	"Print Server Reports"	"Print Server Setup Page"
		"E-Mail Alert Setup Page"
	"Print Server Settings"	"Basic Information"
		"Port Settings"
		"TCP/IP"
		"SMB"
		"E-Mail Alert"
		"Bonjour (mDNS)"
		"SNMP"
		"Scan to PC"
		"SNTP"
		"Wireless LAN" <sup>*2</sup>
		"AirPrint"
		"Google Cloud Print"
		"Proxy Server"
"Reset Print Server"		
"Print Server Settings"	"Security"	"Set Password"
		"Authentication System"
		"Kerberos Server"
		"LDAP Server"
		"LDAP Authentication"
		"LDAP User Mapping"
		"SSL/TLS"
		"IPsec"
		"802.1x" <sup>*3</sup>
		"IP Filter (IPv4)"
		"SMTP Domain Filtering"
"Copy Printer Settings"	"Copy Printer Settings"	"Copy Printer Settings"
		"Copy Printer Settings Report"
"Print Volume"	"Print Volume"	"Print Volume"
		"Dell ColorTrack"
"Address Book"	"E-Mail Address"	"E-Mail Address"
		"E-Mail Group"
		"Default Setup"
	"Server Address"	"Server Address"
	"Phone Book"	"FAX Speed Dial"
		"FAX Group"
"Tray Management"	"Tray Management"	
<sup>*1</sup> This item is available only when <b>RAM Disk</b> is enabled.		
<sup>*2</sup> This item is available only when the printer is connected using the wireless network.		
<sup>*3</sup> This item is available only when the printer is connected using an Ethernet cable.		

## Printer Status

Use the **Printer Status** menu to check the status of consumables, hardware, and specifications of the printer. The following pages are displayed in the **Printer Status** menu.

### Printer Status

#### Purpose:

To check the status of the consumables, trays, and covers.

#### Values:

Cyan Toner Cartridge		OK	Indicates that there is enough amount of toner for use.
Magenta Toner Cartridge		Replace Soon	Indicates that the toner needs to be replaced soon.
Yellow Toner Cartridge		Replace Now	Indicates that the toner needs to be replaced now.
Black Toner Cartridge			
Consumables	Status	OK	Indicates that the status of the drum cartridge and/or waste toner box is OK for use.
		Replace Soon	Indicates that the drum cartridge and/or waste toner box needs to be replaced soon.
		Replace Now	Indicates that the drum cartridge and/or waste toner box needs to be replaced now.
Paper Trays	Status	OK	Indicates that there is some paper in the tray but the quantity is unknown.
		Add Paper	Indicates that there is no paper in the tray.
	Capacity		Displays the maximum capacity of the paper tray.
	Size		Displays the size of paper in the tray.
Output Tray	Status	OK	Indicates that the tray is available.
		Full	Indicates that the tray is not available.
	Capacity		Displays the maximum capacity of the paper tray.
Cover	Status	Closed	Indicates that the cover is closed.
		Open	Indicates that the cover is open.
Printer Type			Displays the type of the printer. <b>Color Laser</b> is displayed normally.
Printing Speed			Displays the printing speed.

### Printer Events

#### Purpose:

When faults occur, such as *Out of Paper* or *Cover is open*, the details of all alerts or indications of faults are displayed in the **Printer Events** page.

#### Values:

Location	Displays the location where a fault occurred.
Details	Displays the details of the fault.

## Printer Information

### Purpose:

To verify the printer details such as the hardware configuration and software version. This page can also be displayed by clicking on the **Printer Information** tab in the left frame.

### Values:

Dell Service Tag Number	Displays Dell service tag number.	
Express Service Code	Displays Dell express service code.	
Asset Tag Number	Displays the asset tag number of the printer.	
Printer Serial Number	Displays the serial number of the printer.	
Memory Capacity	Displays the memory capacity.	
Hard Disk* <sup>1</sup>	Displays information on the printer's hard disk.	
Processor Speed	Displays the processing speed.	
Printer Revision Levels	Firmware Version	Displays the revision date (revision level).
	Network Firmware Version	Displays the revision date (revision level).

\*<sup>1</sup> This item is available only when the optional hard disk drive is installed.

## Printer Jobs

The **Printer Jobs** menu contains information on the **Job List** and **Completed Jobs** pages. These pages show the details of the status regarding each protocol or job.

### Job List

#### Purpose:

To confirm the jobs that are being processed. Click the **Refresh** button to update the screen.

#### Values:

ID	Displays the job ID.
Job Name	Displays the file name of the job being processed.
Owner	Displays the name of the job owner.
Host Name	Displays the name of the host computer.
Job Status	Displays the status of the job being processed.
Job Type	Displays the type of the job.
Host I/F	Displays the status of the host interface.
Job Submitted Time	Displays the date when the job was submitted.

### Completed Jobs

#### Purpose:

To check the completed jobs. Up to the last 20 jobs are displayed. Click the **Refresh** button to update the screen.

#### Values:

ID	Displays the job ID.
Job Name	Displays the file name of the completed job.
Owner	Displays the name of the job owner.

Host Name	Displays the name of the host computer.
Output Result	Displays the status of the completed job.
Job Type	Displays the type of the job.
Impression Number	Displays the total number of pages for the job.
No. of Sheets	Displays the total number of sheets for the job.
Host I/F	Displays the status of the host interface.
Job Submitted Time	Displays the date when the job was submitted.

## Printer Settings

Use the **Printer Settings** menu to display the **Printer Settings Report**, **Printer Settings**, and **Printer Maintenance** tabs and to configure the printer settings.

The following tabbed pages are displayed at the top of the right frame.

### Printer Settings Report

The **Printer Settings Report** tab includes the **Menu Settings** and **Reports** pages.

#### **Menu Settings**

##### **Purpose:**

To display the current settings of the printer menus.

##### **Values:**

System Settings	<b>Power Saver Time - Sleep</b>	Displays the time taken by the printer to enter Sleep mode after it finishes a job.
	<b>Power Saver Time - Deep Sleep</b>	Displays the time taken by the printer to enter Deep Sleep mode after it has entered Sleep mode.
	<b>mm / inch</b>	Displays the measurement unit that is used on the touch panel.
	<b>Display Brightness</b>	Displays the brightness level of the touch panel screen.
	<b>Control Panel Tone</b>	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the operator panel input is correct. <b>Off</b> indicates that the tone is disabled.
	<b>Invalid Key Tone</b>	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the operator panel input is incorrect. <b>Off</b> indicates that the tone is disabled.
	<b>Machine Ready Tone</b>	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the printer becomes ready. <b>Off</b> indicates that the tone is disabled.
	<b>Copy Completed Tone</b>	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when a copy job is complete. <b>Off</b> indicates that the tone is disabled.
	<b>Job Completed Tone</b>	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when a job other than a copy job is complete. <b>Off</b> indicates that the tone is disabled.
	<b>Fault Tone</b>	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when a job ends abnormally. <b>Off</b> indicates that the tone is disabled.
	<b>Alert Tone</b>	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when a problem occurs. <b>Off</b> indicates that the tone is disabled.
	<b>Out of Paper Tone</b>	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the printer runs out of paper. <b>Off</b> indicates that the tone is disabled.
	<b>Low Toner Alert Tone</b>	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the toner is low. <b>Off</b> indicates that the tone is disabled.

	<b>Auto Clear Alert Tone</b>	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted 5 seconds before the printer performs auto clear. <b>Off</b> indicates that the tone is disabled.
	<b>All Tones</b>	Displays the volume of all the alert tones. <b>Off</b> indicates that all the tones are disabled.
	<b>Low Toner Alert Message</b>	Displays whether to show the alert message when the toner is low.
	<b>OffHook Wake Up</b>	Displays whether to wake up from Sleep or Deep Sleep mode when you pick up the handset of the external telephone.
	<b>Auto Log Print</b>	Displays whether to automatically print a job history report after every 20 jobs.
	<b>RAM Disk<sup>*1</sup></b>	Displays whether to allocate RAM for the file system for the Secure Print, Proof Print, Private Mail Box Print, and Public Mail Box Print features.
	<b>Panel Language</b>	Displays the language used on the touch panel.
	<b>Auto Reset</b>	Displays the amount of time before the printer automatically resets its settings to the defaults when no additional settings are made.
	<b>Fault Time-out</b>	Displays the amount of time the printer waits before canceling a job that stops abnormally.
	<b>Job Time-out</b>	Displays the amount of time the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer.
	<b>Default Paper Size</b>	Displays the default print paper size.
	<b>Print ID</b>	Displays where to print a user ID on the output paper.
	<b>Print Text</b>	Displays whether the printer outputs PDL (Page Description Language) data (which is not supported by the printer) as text when the printer receives it.
	<b>Banner Sheet Insert Position</b>	Displays where to insert a banner sheet in the output paper.
	<b>Banner Sheet Specify Tray</b>	Displays the tray to feed a banner sheet.
	<b>Substitute Tray</b>	Displays if paper of another size has to be used when the paper that is loaded in the specified tray does not match the paper size setting for the current job.
	<b>Letterhead 2 Sided</b>	Displays whether to print both sides on letterhead.
	<b>A4&lt;&gt;Letter Switch</b>	Displays whether to print A4 size jobs on Letter size paper if A4 is not available in the paper trays and vice versa (Letter size job on A4 size paper).
	<b>Report 2 Sided Print</b>	Displays whether to print reports on both sides a sheet of paper.
	<b>Use Another Tray</b>	Displays whether to show a message to select another tray when the specified paper is not available in the paper tray.
<b>Network Settings</b>	<b>Adobe Protocol</b>	Displays PostScript communication protocol for each interface.
<b>USB Settings</b>	<b>USB Port</b>	Displays whether to enable the USB interface.
	<b>Adobe Protocol</b>	Displays PostScript communication protocol for each interface.
<b>PCL Settings</b>	<b>Paper Tray</b>	Displays the paper input tray.
	<b>Paper Size</b>	Displays the paper size setting.
	<b>Custom Paper Size - Y</b>	Displays the length of custom size paper.
	<b>Custom Paper Size - X</b>	Displays the width of custom size paper.
	<b>Orientation</b>	Displays how text and graphics are oriented on the page.
	<b>2 Sided Print</b>	Displays whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.

	<b>Font</b>	Displays the selected font from the list of registered fonts.
	<b>Symbol Set</b>	Displays a symbol set for the specified font.
	<b>Font Size</b>	Displays the font size for scalable typographic fonts.
	<b>Font Pitch</b>	Displays the font pitch for scalable mono spaced fonts.
	<b>Form Line</b>	Displays the number of lines in a page.
	<b>Quantity</b>	Displays the number of copies to print.
	<b>Image Enhance</b>	Displays whether to enable the Image Enhancement feature.
	<b>Hex Dump</b>	Displays whether to enable the Hex Dump feature.
	<b>Draft Mode</b>	Displays whether to print in the draft mode.
	<b>Line Termination</b>	Displays whether to set the line termination.
	<b>Default Color</b>	Displays the color mode setting.
	<b>Ignore Form Feed</b>	Displays whether to ignore blank pages that only contain Form Feed control codes.
<b>PostScript Settings</b>	<b>PS Error Report</b>	Displays whether the printer outputs error contents for a PostScript error.
	<b>PS Job Time-out</b>	Displays the execution time for one PostScript job.
	<b>Paper Select Mode</b>	Displays the tray that is selected in the PostScript printing.
	<b>Default Color</b>	Displays the color mode setting.
<b>PDF Settings</b>	<b>Quantity</b>	Displays the number of copies to print.
	<b>2 Sided Print</b>	Displays whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	<b>Print Mode</b>	Displays the print mode setting.
	<b>Collation</b>	Displays whether to sort a job.
	<b>Output Size</b>	Displays the output paper size.
	<b>Layout</b>	Displays the output layout.
	<b>Default Color</b>	Displays the color mode setting.
<b>Secure Settings</b>	<b>Panel Lock Control</b>	Displays whether to lock Admin Settings with a password.
	<b>Copy</b>	Displays whether to lock the Copy function with a password.
	<b>E-mail</b>	Displays whether to lock the Scan to E-mail function with a password.
	<b>Fax</b>	Displays whether to lock the Fax function with a password.
	<b>Fax Driver</b>	Displays whether to lock the Fax Driver function with a password.
	<b>Scan To Network</b>	Displays whether to lock the Scan To Network function with a password.
	<b>Scan To Application</b>	Displays whether to lock the Scan To Application function with a password.
	<b>PC Scan</b>	Displays whether to lock the PC Scan function with a password.
	<b>Scan To USB</b>	Displays whether to lock the Scan To USB function with a password.
	<b>USB Direct Print</b>	Displays whether to lock the USB Direct Print function with a password.
	<b>ID Card Copy</b>	Displays whether to lock the ID Card Copy function with a password.
	<b>USB Services - Show When Inserted</b>	Displays whether to show a USB Drive Detected screen when a USB memory is inserted into the printer.
	<b>USB Services - Hide Until Inserted</b>	Displays whether to hide menus concerning USB memory until a USB memory is inserted into the printer.
	<b>Secure Receive Set</b>	Displays whether a password is required to receive faxes.

	<b>Edit E-mail From Fields</b>	Displays whether to enable editing of the transmission source when you use the Scan to E-mail function.
	<b>Reconfirm Recipients</b>	Displays whether to reconfirm before sending fax or scan jobs.
	<b>Software Download</b>	Displays whether to enable download of firmware updates.
	<b>Display of Network Information</b>	Displays whether to show network information in the message field of the <b>Main Home</b> screen.
	<b>Encryption</b>	Displays whether to encrypt the data.
	<b>Hard Disk Over Write*<sup>2</sup></b>	Displays whether to overwrite the hard disk drive.
	<b>Login Error</b>	Displays how many times an administrator can attempt to log in to <b>Panel Lock, Function Enabled, and Secure Receive</b> .
	<b>Expiration Mode*<sup>3</sup></b>	Displays whether to set the date to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk or the hard disk drive.
	<b>Expiration Time*<sup>3</sup></b>	Displays the time to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk or the hard disk drive.
	<b>Recurrence*<sup>3</sup></b>	Displays the period to repeat the setting.
	<b>Weekly Settings*<sup>3</sup></b>	Displays the day of the week to repeat the setting.
	<b>Monthly Settings*<sup>3</sup></b>	Displays the day of the month to repeat the setting.
<b>Secure Settings - Copy/Scan/Fax/Print</b>	<b>Set Available Time</b>	Displays whether to set the available time period for the Print, Copy, Fax, and Scan functions, respectively.
	<b>Start Time</b>	Displays the start time of the available time period for the Print, Copy, Fax, and Scan functions, respectively.
	<b>End Time</b>	Displays the end time of the available time period for the Print, Copy, Fax, and Scan functions, respectively.
	<b>Recurrence</b>	Displays the day of the week to repeat the setting.
<b>Copy Defaults</b>	<b>Output Color</b>	Displays whether to make copies in color or in black and white.
	<b>Select Tray</b>	Displays the default input tray.
	<b>Collation</b>	Displays whether to sort a copy job.
	<b>Reduce/Enlarge</b>	Displays the default copy reduction/enlargement ratio.
	<b>Original Size</b>	Displays the paper size of the original.
	<b>Original Type</b>	Displays the type of the original.
	<b>Darken/Lighten</b>	Displays the default copy density.
	<b>Sharpness</b>	Displays the default sharpness level.
	<b>Color Saturation</b>	Displays the default color saturation level.
	<b>Auto Exposure</b>	Displays whether to suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.
	<b>Auto Exposure Level</b>	Displays the background suppression level.

Copy Color Balance	Yellow Low Density	Displays the color balance level of low density yellow.
	Yellow Medium Density	Displays the color balance level of medium density yellow.
	Yellow High Density	Displays the color balance level of high density yellow.
	Magenta Low Density	Displays the color balance level of low density magenta.
	Magenta Medium Density	Displays the color balance level of medium density magenta.
	Magenta High Density	Displays the color balance level of high density magenta.
	Cyan Low Density	Displays the color balance level of low density cyan.
	Cyan Medium Density	Displays the color balance level of medium density cyan.
	Cyan High Density	Displays the color balance level of high density cyan.
	Black Low Density	Displays the color balance level of low density black.
	Black Medium Density	Displays the color balance level of medium density black.
	Black High Density	Displays the color balance level of high density black.
Copy Settings	2 Sided Copying	Displays whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	Binding of Original	Displays the binding position for the 2-sided copying.
	2-Up	Displays whether the Multiple-Up feature is enabled.
	Margin Top/Bottom	Displays the value of the top and bottom margins.
	Margin Left/Right	Displays the value of the left and right margins.
	Margin Middle	Displays the value of the middle margin.
Fax Defaults	Resolution	Displays the resolution level to be used for fax transmission.
	2 Sided Scanning	Displays whether to scan both sides of a document.
	Binding of Original	Displays the binding position for the 2-sided scanning.
	Darken/Lighten	Displays the density level to be used for fax transmission.
	Delayed Send	Displays the fax transmission start time.
Fax Settings	Fax Number	Displays the fax number of the printer, which will be printed on the header of faxes.
	Country	Displays the country where the printer is used.
	Fax Header Name	Displays the name of the sender that will be printed on the header of faxes.
	Line Type	Displays the line type; PSTN or PBX.
	Line Monitor	Displays the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.
	DRPD Pattern	Displays the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) setting.
	Receive Mode	Displays the fax receiving mode.
	Ring Tone Volume	Displays the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when <b>Receive Mode</b> is set to <b>Telephone/Fax</b> .
	Auto Receive Fax	Displays the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call.
	Auto Receive Tel/Fax	Displays the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call.
	Auto Receive Answer/Fax	Displays the interval at which the printer goes into the fax mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call.
	Junk Fax Setup	Displays whether to reject faxes sent from unwanted stations.
	Sent Fax Forward	Displays whether to forward incoming faxes to a specified destination.

Forwarding Number	Displays the fax number of the destination to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.
Forwarding E-mail Address 1	Displays the e-mail address to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.
Forwarding E-mail Address 2	Displays the e-mail address to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.
Forwarding E-mail Address 3	Displays the e-mail address to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.
Forwarding E-mail Address 4	Displays the e-mail address to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.
Forwarding E-mail Address 5	Displays the e-mail address to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.
2 Sided Printing	Displays whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
Remote Receive	Displays whether to receive faxes by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.
Remote Receive Tone	Displays the 2-digit remote receive code when <b>Remote Receive</b> is <b>On</b> .
Discard Size	Displays whether to delete text or images at the bottom of a fax page when the entire page does not fit onto the output paper.
Redial Attempts	Displays the number of redial attempts to make if the destination fax number is busy.
Interval of Redial	Displays the interval between redial attempts.
Resend Delay	Displays the interval between re-send attempts.
Tone/Pulse	Displays whether to use tone or pulse dialing.
Prefix Dial	Displays whether to set a prefix dial number.
Prefix Dial Number	Displays a prefix dial number. This number dials before any auto dial number is started. It is useful for accessing the Private Automatic Branch Exchange (PABX).
Fax Cover Page	Displays whether to attach a cover page to faxes.
Fax Header	Displays whether to print the information of the sender on the header of faxes.
ECM	Displays whether the Error Correction Mode (ECM) is enabled.
Modem Speed	Displays the modem speed.
Display Manual Fax Recipients	Displays whether to show the fax number of the recipient on the <b>Sending Fax</b> screen when manually sending a fax.
Fax Activity	Displays whether to automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.

Scan Defaults	File Format	Displays the file format in which scanned documents are to be saved.
	Output Color	Displays whether to scan in color or in black and white.
	Resolution	Displays the default scan resolution.
	Original Size	Displays the paper size of the original.
	2 Sided Scanning	Displays whether to scan both sides of a document.
	Binding of Original	Displays the binding position for the 2-sided scanning.
	Darken/Lighten	Displays the default scan density level.
	Sharpness	Displays the default sharpness level.
	Contrast	Displays the default contrast level.
	Auto Exposure	Displays whether to suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the scan.
	Auto Exposure Level	Displays the background suppression level.
	Margin Top/Bottom	Displays the value of the top and bottom margins.
	Margin Left/Right	Displays the value of the left and right margins.
	Margin Middle	Displays the value of the middle margin.
	TIFF File Format	Displays the selected TIFF file format; TIFF V6 or TTN2.
	Image Compression	Displays the image compression level.
	Max E-mail Size	Displays the maximum size of e-mail that can be sent.
	File Naming Mode	Displays the mode used to name scanned documents.
	Prefix/Suffix String	Displays the text string that will be added to the file name.
Create Folder	Displays the folder to which scanned documents are to be saved.	
USB Direct Print Defaults	Output Color	Displays whether to print in color or in black and white.
	Select Tray	Displays the default input tray.
	2 Sided Printing	Displays whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	Multiple-Up	Displays whether to print two or more pages on one side of a sheet of paper.
	Collation <sup>*2</sup>	Displays whether to sort a job.
Paper Density	Plain	Displays the paper density of plain paper.
	Label	Displays the paper density of labels.
Adjust Transfer Belt Unit	K Offset	Displays the value for black ghost image.
	YMC Offset	Displays the value for color ghost image.
Adjust 2nd BTR	Plain	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller (-5 to 10) for plain paper.
	Plain Thick <sup>*4</sup>	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller (-5 to 10) for thick plain paper.
	Covers (106-163g/m <sup>2</sup> )	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller (-5 to 10) for cover paper.
	Covers Thick <sup>*4</sup> (164-216g/m <sup>2</sup> )	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller (-5 to 10) for thick cover paper.
	Coated (106-163g/m <sup>2</sup> )	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller (-5 to 10) for coated paper.
	Coated Thick <sup>*4</sup> (164-216g/m <sup>2</sup> )	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller (-5 to 10) for thick coated paper.
	Label	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller (-5 to 10) for labels.

	Envelope	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller (-5 to 10) for envelopes.
	Recycled	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller (-5 to 10) for recycled paper.
Adjust Fusing Unit	Plain	Displays the temperature setting of the fusing unit (-3 to 3) for plain paper.
	Plain Thick <sup>*4</sup>	Displays the temperature setting of the fusing unit (-3 to 3) for thick plain paper.
	Covers (106-163g/m <sup>2</sup> )	Displays the temperature setting of the fusing unit (-3 to 3) for cover paper.
	Covers Thick <sup>*4</sup> (164-216g/m <sup>2</sup> )	Displays the temperature setting of the fusing unit (-3 to 3) for thick cover paper.
	Coated (106-163g/m <sup>2</sup> )	Displays the temperature setting of the fusing unit (-3 to 3) for coated paper.
	Coated Thick <sup>*4</sup> (164-216g/m <sup>2</sup> )	Displays the temperature setting of the fusing unit (-3 to 3) for thick coated paper.
	Label	Displays the temperature setting of the fusing unit (-3 to 3) for labels.
	Envelope	Displays the temperature setting of the fusing unit (-3 to 3) for envelopes.
	Recycled	Displays the temperature setting of the fusing unit (-3 to 3) for recycled paper.
Auto Registration Adjustment		Displays whether to automatically perform color registration adjustment.
Adjust Altitude		Displays the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.
Non-Dell Toner		Displays whether to use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.
Clock Settings	Date Format	Displays the default date format.
	Time Format	Displays the default time format; 24H or 12H.
	Time Zone	Displays the default time zone.
	Set Date	Displays the date setting.
	Set Time	Displays the time setting.
Web Link Customization	Select Reorder URL	Displays a link used for ordering consumables, which can be accessed from <b>Order Supplies at:</b> in the left frame.
	Regular	Displays the regular URL ( <a href="http://accessories.us.dell.com/sna">http://accessories.us.dell.com/sna</a> ) that can be linked to <b>Order Supplies at:</b> .
	Premier	Displays the premier URL ( <a href="http://premier.dell.com">http://premier.dell.com</a> ) that can be linked to <b>Order Supplies at:</b> .
Dell ColorTrack	ColorTrack Mode	Displays whether to enable the ColorTrack.
	Non Registered User	Displays whether to permit the printing of data without authentication information.
	Auto Color To Mono Print	Displays whether to print all print jobs in black and white even when color print is specified.
	ColorTrack Error Report	Displays whether to print the error report on the ColorTrack mode.

Tray Management	MPF Use Driver Settings for Print Job	Displays whether to use the printer driver settings for the size and type of paper loaded in the multipurpose feeder (MPF).
	MPF Paper Size <sup>*5</sup>	Displays the paper size setting of the MPF.
	MPF Paper Type <sup>*5</sup>	Displays the paper type setting of the MPF.
	MPF Custom Paper Size - Y <sup>*5</sup>	Displays the length of custom size paper loaded in the MPF.
	MPF Custom Paper Size - X <sup>*5</sup>	Displays the width of custom size paper loaded in the MPF.
	MPF Display Tray Prompt <sup>*5</sup>	Displays whether to show a popup menu that prompts the user to set the paper size and type when the paper is loaded in the MPF.
	Tray 1 Paper Size	Displays the paper size setting of tray1.
	Tray 1 Paper Type	Displays the paper type setting of tray1.
	Tray 1 Custom Paper Size - Y	Displays the length of custom size paper loaded in tray1.
	Tray 1 Custom Paper Size - X	Displays the width of custom size paper loaded in tray1.
	Tray 1 Display Tray Prompt	Displays whether to show a popup menu that prompts the user to set the paper size and type when the paper is loaded in tray1.
	Tray 2 Paper Size <sup>*6</sup>	Displays the paper size setting of the optional 550-sheet feeder (tray2).
	Tray 2 Paper Type <sup>*6</sup>	Displays the paper type setting of the optional 550-sheet feeder.
	Tray 2 Custom Paper Size - Y <sup>*6</sup>	Displays the length of custom size paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.
	Tray 2 Custom Paper Size - X <sup>*6</sup>	Displays the width of custom size paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.
	Tray 2 Display Tray Prompt <sup>*6</sup>	Displays whether to show a popup menu that prompts the user to set the paper size and type when the paper is loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.
	1st Priority	Displays the paper source to be used as the first priority.
	2nd Priority	Displays the paper source to be used as the second priority.
3rd Priority <sup>*6</sup>	Displays the paper source to be used as the third priority.	

- \*1 This item is not available when the optional hard disk is installed.  
 \*2 This item is available only when the optional hard disk is installed.  
 \*3 This item is available only when **RAM Disk** is enabled or the optional hard disk is installed.  
 \*4 For paper weight specifications, see "Paper Type Specifications."  
 \*5 This item is available only when **Off** in **MPF Use Driver Settings for Print Job** is selected.  
 \*6 This item is available only when the optional 550-sheet feeder is installed.

### Reports

#### Purpose:

To print various types of reports and lists.

#### Values:

System Settings	Click <b>Start</b> to print the System Settings page.
Panel Settings	Click <b>Start</b> to print the Panel Settings page.
PCL Fonts List	Click <b>Start</b> to print the PCL (Hewlett-Packard Printer Control Language) Fonts List.
PCL Macros List	Click <b>Start</b> to print the PCL Macro List.

PS Fonts List	Click <b>Start</b> to print the PS Fonts List.
PDF Fonts List	Click <b>Start</b> to print the PDF Fonts List.
Job History	Click <b>Start</b> to print the Job History report.
Error History	Click <b>Start</b> to print the Error History report.
Print Meter	Click <b>Start</b> to print the Print Meter report.
Color Test Page	Click <b>Start</b> to print the Color Test Page.
Protocol Monitor	Click <b>Start</b> to print the Protocol Monitor report.
Speed Dial	Click <b>Start</b> to print the Speed Dial report.
Address Book	Click <b>Start</b> to print the Address Book report.
Server Address	Click <b>Start</b> to print the Server Address report.
Fax Activity	Click <b>Start</b> to print the Fax Activity report.
Fax Pending	Click <b>Start</b> to print the Fax Pending report.
Stored Documents <sup>*1</sup>	Click <b>Start</b> to print the Stored Documents list.

<sup>\*1</sup> This item is available only when **RAM Disk** is enabled or the optional hard disk is installed.

### Printer Settings

The **Printer Settings** tab includes **System Settings**, **Network Settings**, **USB Settings**, **PCL Settings**, **PostScript Settings**, **PDF Settings**, **Secure Settings**, **Copy Defaults**, **Copy Color Balance**, **Copy Settings**, **Fax Defaults**, **Fax Settings**, **Scan Defaults**, and **USB Direct Print Defaults** pages.

#### **System Settings**

##### **Purpose:**

To configure the basic printer settings.

##### **Values:**

Power Saver Time - Sleep	Sets the time taken by the printer to enter Sleep mode after it finishes a job.
Power Saver Time - Deep Sleep	Sets the time taken by the printer to enter Deep Sleep mode after it has entered Sleep mode.
mm / inch	Sets the measurement unit to be used on the touch panel as either mm or inches.
Display Brightness	Sets the brightness level of the touch panel screen.
Control Panel Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when the operator panel input is correct, or disables the tone.
Invalid Key Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when the operator panel input is incorrect, or disables the tone.
Machine Ready Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when the printer becomes ready, or disables the tone.
Copy Completed Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when a copy job is complete, or disables the tone.
Job Completed Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when a job other than a copy job is complete, or disables the tone.
Fault Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when a job ends abnormally, or disables the tone.
Alert Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when a problem occurs, or disables the tone.

Out of Paper Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when the printer runs out of paper, or disables the tone.
Low Toner Alert Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when the toner is low, or disables the tone.
Auto Clear Alert Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted 5 seconds before the printer performs auto clear, or disables the tone.
All Tones	Sets the volume of all the alert tones, or disables all the tones.
Low Toner Alert Message	Alerts you if the toner is low.
OffHook Wake Up	Sets whether to wake up from Sleep or Deep Sleep mode when you pick up the handset of the external telephone.
Auto Log Print	Sets if a job history needs to be printed after every 20 jobs.
RAM Disk <sup>*1</sup>	Sets whether to allocate RAM for the file system for the Secure Print, Proof Print, Private Mail Box Print, and Public Mail Box Print features.
Panel Language	Used to set the language on the touch panel.
Auto Reset	Sets the amount of time before the printer automatically resets its settings to the defaults when no additional settings are made.
Fault Time-out	Sets the amount of time the printer waits before canceling a job that stops abnormally.
Job Time-out	Sets the amount of time the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer.
Default Paper Size	Sets the default print paper size.
Print ID	Sets where to print the user ID on the output paper.
Print Text	Sets whether the printer outputs PDL data (which is not supported by the printer) as text when the printer receives it.
Banner Sheet Insert Position	Sets where to insert a banner sheet in the output.
Banner Sheet Specify Tray	Sets from which tray a banner sheet is fed.
Substitute Tray	Sets whether to use another size paper when the paper that is loaded in the specified tray does not match the paper size settings for the current job.
Letterhead 2 Sided	Sets whether to print on both sides of letterhead.
A4<>Letter Switch	Sets whether to print A4 size jobs on Letter size paper if A4 is not available in the paper trays and vice versa (Letter size job on A4 size paper).
Report 2 Sided Print	Sets whether to print reports on both sides a sheet of paper.
Use Another Tray	Sets whether to show a message to select another tray when the specified paper is not available in the paper tray.

<sup>\*1</sup> This item is not available when the optional hard disk is installed.

### **Network Settings**

#### **Purpose:**

To Specify the PostScript communication protocol for this printer.

#### **Values:**

Adobe Protocol	Sets PostScript communication protocol for each interface.
----------------	--

### **USB Settings**

#### **Purpose:**

To change USB settings on your printer.

Values:

USB Port	Enables the USB interface on your printer.
Adobe Protocol	Sets PostScript communication protocol for each interface.

### ***PCL Settings***

**Purpose:**

To change the PCL settings.

**Values:**

Paper Tray	Sets the paper input tray.
Paper Size	Sets the paper size.
Custom Paper Size - Y	Sets the length of custom size paper. The available range is from 127 mm (5.0 inch) to 355 mm (14.0 inch).
Custom Paper Size - X	Sets the width of custom size paper. The available range is from 77 mm (3.0 inch) to 215 mm (8.5 inch).
Orientation	Sets how text and graphics are oriented on the page.
2 Sided Print	Sets duplexing as the default for all print jobs.
Font	Sets the font from the list of registered fonts.
Symbol Set	Sets a symbol set for the specified font.
Font Size	Sets the font size for scalable typographic fonts.
Font Pitch	Sets the font pitch for scalable mono spaced fonts.
Form Line	Sets the number of lines in a page.
Quantity	Sets the number of copies to print.
Image Enhance	Sets whether to enable the Image Enhancement feature.
Hex Dump	Sets whether to help isolate the source of a print job problem. With Hex Dump selected, all data sent to the printer is printed in hexadecimal and character representation. Control codes are not executed.
Draft Mode	Sets whether to print in the draft mode.
Line Termination	Sets how to handle line terminations.
Default Color	Sets the print color mode as <b>Color</b> or <b>Black</b> . This setting is used for print jobs without a specified color print mode.
Ignore Form Feed	Sets whether to ignore blank pages that only contain Form Feed control codes.

### ***PostScript Settings***

**Purpose:**

To change printer settings that only affect jobs using the PostScript emulation printer language.

**Values:**

PS Error Report	Sets whether the printer outputs error contents for a PostScript error.
PS Job Time-out	Sets the execution time for one PostScript job.
Paper Select Mode	Sets the way to select the tray for the PostScript mode.
Default Color	Sets the default color mode for the PostScript mode.

### **PDF Settings**

#### **Purpose:**

To change the PDF settings.

#### **Values:**

Quantity	Sets the number of copies.
2 Sided Print	Sets whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
Print Mode	Sets a print mode.
PDF Password	Sets a password.
Re-enter PDF Password	Confirms the set password.
Collation	Sets whether to sort the output.
Output Size	Sets the output paper size.
Layout	Sets the output layout.
Default Color	Sets the output color.

### **Secure Settings**

#### **Panel Lock**

#### **Purpose:**

To set a limited access to Admin Settings with a password, and to set or change the password.

#### **Values:**

Panel Lock Control <sup>*1</sup>	Enables/Disables password protection for the Admin Settings.
New Password	Sets a password that is required to access the Admin Settings.
Re-enter Password	Confirms the set password.

<sup>\*1</sup> Some setting items in the Secure Settings are displayed only when this setting item is enabled.



**NOTE:** You can set the password for the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** from **Set Password** in **Print Server Settings**.

#### **Function Enabled**

#### **Purpose:**

To specify whether to lock the Copy, Scan, Fax, and Print functions with a password, and to set or change the password.

#### **Values:**

Copy	Sets whether to lock the Copy function with a password.
E-mail	Sets whether to lock the Scan to E-mail function with a password.
Fax	Sets whether to lock the Fax function with a password.
Fax Driver	Sets whether to lock the Fax Driver function with a password.
Scan To Network	Sets whether to lock the Scan To Network function with a password.
Scan To Application	Sets whether to lock the Scan To Application function with a password.
PC Scan	Sets whether to lock the PC Scan function with a password.
Scan To USB	Sets whether to lock the Scan To USB function with a password.
USB Direct Print	Sets whether to lock the USB Direct Print function with a password.
ID Card Copy	Sets whether to lock the ID Card Copy function with a password.

USB Services - Show When Inserted	Sets whether to show a <b>USB Drive Detected</b> screen when a USB memory is inserted into the printer.
USB Services - Hide Until Inserted	Sets whether to hide menus concerning USB memory until a USB memory is inserted into the printer.
New Password	Sets a password that is required to access the Copy, Scan, Fax, and Print functions.
Re-enter Password	Confirms the set password.

 **NOTE:** You can set the password for the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** from **Set Password** in **Print Server Settings**.

#### Secure Receive

##### Purpose:

Allows you to password protect all the incoming faxes. When the Secure Receive feature is enabled, the printer stores incoming faxes and prints them when the correct password is entered on the operator panel.

##### Values:

Secure Receive Set	Enables/Disables password protection for all incoming faxes.
New Password	Sets a password for incoming faxes.
Re-enter Password	Confirms the set password.

 **NOTE:** You can set the password for the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** from **Set Password** in **Print Server Settings**.

#### Edit E-mail From Fields

##### Purpose:

To set whether to enable editing of the transmission source when you use the Scan to E-mail function.

#### Reconfirm Recipients

##### Purpose:

To set whether to reconfirm before sending fax or scan jobs.

#### Software Download

##### Purpose:

To set whether to enable download of firmware updates.

#### Display of Network Information

##### Purpose:

To set whether to show network information in the message field of the **Main Home** screen.


#### Data Encryption

##### Purpose:


To set whether to encrypt the data.

##### Values:

Data Encryption	Encryption	Sets whether to encrypt the data.
	Encryption Key	Sets a key that is required to encrypt.
	Re-enter Encryption Key	Enter the new key again to confirm.

 **NOTE:** You can enter only characters from 0 to 9, a to z, A to Z, and NULL values for encryption key.

### Hard Disk Over Write

 **NOTE:** Hard Disk Over Write feature is available only when the optional hard disk is installed.

#### Purpose:

To set whether to overwrite the hard disk drive.

#### Values:

---

Hard Disk Over Write	Sets whether to overwrite the hard disk drive.
----------------------	--

---

### Login Error

#### Purpose:

To specify how many times an administrator can attempt to log in to **Panel Lock**, **Function Enabled**, and **Secure Receive**.

#### Values:

---

Login Error	Displays how many times an administrator can attempt to log in to <b>Panel Lock</b> , <b>Function Enabled</b> , and <b>Secure Receive</b> .
-------------	---

---

### Set Available Time - Copy/Scan/Fax/Print

#### Purpose:

To specify the time to enable the secure setting for the Copy, Scan, Fax, and Print functions.


#### Values:

---

Set Available Time	Allows you to set the available time period for the Copy, Scan, Fax, and Print functions.
Start Time	Sets the start time of the available time period for the Copy, Scan, Fax, and Print functions.
End Time	Sets the end time of the available time period for the Copy, Scan, Fax, and Print functions.
Recurrence	Sets the day of the week to repeat the setting.

---

### Secure Job Expiration

 **NOTE:** Secure Job Expiration feature is available only when **RAM Disk** is enabled or the optional hard disk is installed.

#### Purpose:

To specify the date and time to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk or the optional hard disk drive.

#### Values:

---

Expiration Mode	Allows you to set the date to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk or the optional hard disk drive.
Expiration Time	Sets the time to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk or the optional hard disk drive.
Recurrence	Sets the period to repeat the setting.
Weekly Settings	Sets the day of the week to repeat the setting.
Monthly Settings	Sets the day of the month to repeat the setting.

---

### ***Copy Defaults***

#### **Purpose:**

To create your own default Copy settings.

#### **Values:**

Output Color	Sets whether to print in color or in black and white.
Select Tray	Sets the default input tray.
Collation	Sets whether to sort a copy job.
Reduce/Enlarge	Sets the default reduction/enlargement ratio.
Custom Reduce/Enlarge	Sets the custom reduction/enlargement ratio.
Original Size	Sets the paper size of the original.
Original Type	Sets the type of the original.
Darken/Lighten	Sets the default copy density.
Sharpness	Sets the default sharpness level.
Color Saturation	Adjusts the saturation of colors to make the colors lighter or darker than the original.
Auto Exposure	Sets whether to suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.
Auto Exposure Level	Sets the background suppression level.

### ***Copy Color Balance***

#### **Purpose:**

To specify the copy color balance.

#### **Values:**

Yellow Low Density	Sets the color balance level of low density yellow.
Yellow Medium Density	Sets the color balance level of medium density yellow.
Yellow High Density	Sets the color balance level of high density yellow.
Magenta Low Density	Sets the color balance level of low density magenta.
Magenta Medium Density	Sets the color balance level of medium density magenta.
Magenta High Density	Sets the color balance level of high density magenta.
Cyan Low Density	Sets the color balance level of low density cyan.
Cyan Medium Density	Sets the color balance level of medium density cyan.
Cyan High Density	Sets the color balance level of high density cyan.
Black Low Density	Sets the color balance level of low density black.
Black Medium Density	Sets the color balance level of medium density black.
Black High Density	Sets the color balance level of high density black.

### ***Copy Settings***

#### **Purpose:**

To configure the Copy settings.



**NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (\*) are the factory default menu settings.

Values:

2 Sided Copying	Sets whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.	
Binding of Original	Sets the binding position for the 2-sided copying.	
2-Up	Off*	Does not perform multiple-up printing.
	Auto	Automatically reduces the original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.
	Manual	Prints the original pages onto one sheet of paper in the size specified for <b>Reduce/Enlarge</b> .
Margin Top/Bottom	Sets the value of the top and bottom margins within the range of 0 mm (0.0 inch) to 50 mm (2.0 inch).	
Margin Left/Right	Sets the value of the left and right margins within the range of 0 mm (0.0 inch) to 50 mm (2.0 inch).	
Margin Middle	Sets the value of the middle margin within the range of 0 mm (0.0 inch) to 50 mm (2.0 inch).	

### ***Fax Defaults***

Purpose:

To create your own default Fax settings.



**NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (\*) are the factory default menu settings.

Values:

Resolution	Standard*	Suitable for documents with normal sized characters.
	Fine	Suitable for documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
	Super Fine	Suitable for documents containing extremely fine detail. The super fine mode is enabled only if the remote machine also supports the Super Fine resolution.
	Photo	Suitable for documents containing photographic images.
2 Sided Scanning	Sets whether to scan both sides of a document.	
Binding of Original	Sets the binding position for the 2-sided scanning.	
Darken/Lighten	Sets the default density to fax your documents lighter or darker.	
Delayed Send	Sets the fax transmission start time when sending a fax at a specified time.	

### ***Fax Settings***

Purpose:

To configure the Fax settings.



**NOTE:** You cannot set up the items on the **Fax Settings** page unless you set up the country code under **Country**.



**NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (\*) are the factory default menu settings.

Values:

Fax Number	Allows you to enter the fax number of the printer, which will be printed on the header of faxes.
Country	Sets the country where the printer is used.
Fax Header Name	Allows you to enter a name that will be printed on the header of faxes.
Line Type	Sets the default line type; PSTN or PBX.
Line Monitor	Sets the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.

DRPD Pattern	Sets the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) setting from <b>Pattern1</b> to <b>Pattern7</b> . DRPD is a service provided by some telephone companies.	
Receive Mode	Fax*	Automatically receives faxes.
	Telephone	Automatic fax reception is turned off. You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external telephone and then pressing a remote receive code, or by selecting <b>Manual Receive</b> in <b>On Hook</b> and then pressing the <b>▶ (Start)</b> button. For details about <b>Manual Receive</b> , see "Receiving a Fax Manually in the Telephone Mode."
	Telephone/Fax	When the printer receives an incoming fax, the external telephone rings for the time specified in <b>Auto Receive Tel/Fax</b> , and then the printer automatically receives a fax. If an incoming call is not a fax, the printer beeps from the internal speaker indicating that the call is a telephone call.
	Ans Machine/Fax	The printer can share a telephone line with an answering machine. In this mode, the printer will monitor the fax signal and pick up the line if there are fax tones. If the telephone communication in your country is serial, this mode is not supported.
	DRPD	Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) option, a distinctive ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. After the telephone company has provided a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern, configure the fax setup to monitor for that specific ring pattern.
Ring Tone Volume	Sets the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when <b>Receive Mode</b> is set to <b>Telephone/Fax</b> .	
Auto Receive Fax	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after answering an incoming call.	
Auto Receive Tel/Fax	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call.	
Auto Receive Answer/Fax	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call.	
Junk Fax Setup	Sets whether to reject unwanted faxes by accepting only the faxes from the numbers registered in the Phone Book	
Sent Fax Forward	Sets whether to forward incoming faxes to a specified destination.	
Forwarding Number	Allows you to enter the fax number of the destination to which incoming faxes will be forwarded.	
Forwarding E-mail Address 1	Allows you to enter the e-mail address to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.	
Forwarding E-mail Address 2	Allows you to enter the e-mail address to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.	
Forwarding E-mail Address 3	Allows you to enter the e-mail address to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.	
Forwarding E-mail Address 4	Allows you to enter the e-mail address to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.	
Forwarding E-mail Address 5	Allows you to enter the e-mail address to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.	
2 Sided Printing	Sets whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.	
Remote Receive	Sets whether to receive a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.	
Remote Receive Tone	Sets a 2-digit remote receive code when <b>Remote Receive</b> is <b>On</b> .	
Discard Size	Sets whether to delete text or images at the bottom of a fax page when the entire page does not fit onto the output paper. Selecting <b>Auto Reduction</b> automatically reduces the fax page to fit it onto the output paper, and does not discard any images or text at the bottom of the page.	

<b>Redial Attempts</b>	Sets the number of redial attempts (0–13) to make if the destination fax number is busy. If you enter 0, the printer will not redial.
<b>Interval of Redial</b>	Sets the interval (1–15 minutes) between redial attempts.
<b>Resend Delay</b>	Sets the interval (3–255 seconds) between re-send attempts.
<b>Tone/Pulse</b>	Sets whether to use tone or pulse dialing.
<b>Prefix Dial</b>	Sets whether to set a prefix dial number.
<b>Prefix Dial Number</b>	Sets a prefix dial number of up to five digits. This number dials before any auto dial number is started. It is useful for accessing the Private Automatic Branch Exchange (PABX).
<b>Fax Cover Page</b>	Sets whether to attach a cover page to faxes.
<b>Fax Header</b>	Sets whether to print the information of the sender on the header of faxes.
<b>ECM</b>	Sets whether to enable the Error Correction Mode (ECM). To use the ECM, the remote machines must also support the ECM.
<b>Modem Speed</b>	Allows you to adjust the fax modem speed when a fax transmission or reception error occurs.
<b>Display Manual Fax Recipients</b>	Sets whether to show the fax number of the recipient on the <b>Sending Fax</b> screen when manually sending a fax.
<b>Fax Activity</b>	Sets whether to automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.
<b>Fax Transmit</b>	Sets whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.
<b>Fax Broadcast</b>	Sets whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission to multiple destinations or only when an error occurs.
<b>Fax Protocol</b>	Sets whether to print the protocol monitor report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.

### ***Scan Defaults***

#### **Purpose:**

To create your own default Scan settings.

#### **Values:**

<b>File Format</b>	Sets the file format in which scanned documents are to be saved.
<b>Output Color</b>	Sets whether to scan in color or in black and white.
<b>Resolution</b>	Sets the default scan resolution.
<b>Original Size</b>	Sets the paper size of the original.
<b>2 Sided Scanning</b>	Sets whether to scan both sides of a document.
<b>Binding of Original</b>	Sets the binding position for the 2-sided scanning.
<b>Darken/Lighten</b>	Sets the default scan density.
<b>Sharpness</b>	Sets the default sharpness level.
<b>Contrast</b>	Sets the default contrast level.
<b>Auto Exposure</b>	Sets whether to suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.
<b>Auto Exposure Level</b>	Sets the default background suppression level.
<b>Margin Top/Bottom</b>	Sets the value of the top and bottom margins within the range of 0 mm (0.0 inch) to 50 mm (2.0 inch).
<b>Margin Left/Right</b>	Sets the value of the left and right margins within the range of 0 mm (0.0 inch) to 50 mm (2.0 inch).
<b>Margin Middle</b>	Sets the value of the middle margin within the range of 0 mm (0.0 inch) to 50 mm (2.0 inch).
<b>TIFF File Format</b>	Sets the TIFF file format to TIFF V6 or TTN2.

Image Compression	Sets the image compression level.
Max E-mail Size	Sets the maximum size of e-mail that can be sent, within the range of 50 K bytes to 16384 K bytes.
File Naming Mode	Sets the detailed settings of File Naming Mode to Auto, Add Prefix or Add Suffix.
Prefix/Suffix String	Sets the texts that are added when Add Prefix or Add Suffix are selected.
Create Folder	Sets whether to create a folder when saving scanned documents.

### **USB Direct Print Defaults**

#### **Purpose:**

To create your own USB Direct Print Defaults setting.

#### **Values:**

Output Color	Sets whether to print in color or in black and white.
Select Tray	Sets the default input tray.
2 Sided Printing	Sets whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
Multiple-Up	Sets whether to print two or more pages on one side of a sheet of paper.
Collation	Sets whether to sort the output.
PDF Password	Sets a password.
Re-enter PDF Password	Confirms the set password.

### **Printer Maintenance**

The Printer Maintenance tab includes the Paper Density, Adjust Transfer Belt Unit, Adjust 2nd BTR, Adjust Fusing Unit, Auto Registration Adjustment, Color Registration Adjustments, Reset Defaults, Initialize PrintMeter, Storage, Non-Dell Toner, Adjust Altitude, Clock Settings, and Web Link Customization pages.

#### **Paper Density**

#### **Purpose:**

To specify the paper density.

#### **Values:**

Plain	Sets the density of plain paper to Light or Normal.
Label	Sets the density of labels to Light or Normal.

#### **Adjust Transfer Belt Unit**

#### **Purpose:**

To adjust the transfer bias when ghosting occur. (The ghost image may be the image of the previous page, or a part of the page currently printing.)

#### **Values:**

K Offset	If faint black colored ghosts appear, try to decrease the value.
YMC Offset	If faint ghosts in color (yellow, magenta, or cyan) appear, try to decrease the value.

#### **Adjust 2nd BTR**

#### **Purpose:**

To specify the optimum voltage settings for printing for the 2nd Belt Transfer Roller (2nd BTR). To lower the voltage, set negative values. To increase, set positive values.

The default settings may not give the best output on all paper types. If you see mottles on the print output, try to increase the voltage. If you see white spots on the print output, try to decrease the voltage.

 **CAUTION:** The print quality changes depending on the setting values you select for this item.

Values:

Plain	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for plain paper within the range of -5 to 10.
Plain Thick	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for thick plain paper within the range of -5 to 10.
Covers	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for cover paper within the range of -5 to 10.
Covers Thick	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for thick cover paper within the range of -5 to 10.
Coated	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for coated paper within the range of -5 to 10.
Coated Thick	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for thick coated paper within the range of -5 to 10.
Label	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for labels within the range of -5 to 10.
Envelope	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for envelopes within the range of -5 to 10.
Recycled	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for recycled paper within the range of -5 to 10.

### ***Adjust Fusing Unit***

Purpose:

To specify the optimum temperature settings for printing for the fusing unit. To lower the temperature, set negative values. To increase, set positive values.

The default settings may not give the best output on all paper types. When the printed paper has curled, try to lower the temperature. When the toner does not fuse on the paper properly, try to increase the temperature.

 **NOTE:** The print quality changes depending on the setting values you select for this item.

Values:

Plain	Sets the temperature settings for the fusing unit for plain paper within the range of -3 to 3.
Plain Thick	Sets the temperature settings for the fusing unit for thick plain paper within the range of -3 to 3.
Covers	Sets the temperature settings for the fusing unit for cover paper within the range of -3 to 3.
Covers Thick	Sets the temperature settings for the fusing unit for thick cover paper within the range of -3 to 3.
Coated	Sets the temperature settings for the fusing unit for coated paper within the range of -3 to 3.
Coated Thick	Sets the temperature settings for the fusing unit for thick coated paper within the range of -3 to 3.
Label	Sets the temperature settings for the fusing unit for labels within the range of -3 to 3.
Envelope	Sets the temperature settings for the fusing unit for envelopes within the range of -3 to 3.
Recycled	Sets the temperature settings for the fusing unit for recycled paper within the range of -3 to 3.

### ***Auto Registration Adjustment***

Purpose:


To specify whether to automatically perform color registration adjustment.

### ***Color Registration Adjustments***

Purpose:

To specify whether to manually perform color registration adjustment.

Manual Color Registration Adjustments are required such as when the printer is initially installed and after the printer is moved.

 **NOTE:** The **Color Registration Adjustments** feature can be configured when **Auto Registration Adjustment** is set to **Off**.

Values:

<b>Auto Correct</b>	Click <b>Start</b> to automatically perform color registration correction.
<b>Color Regi Chart</b>	Click <b>Start</b> to print a color registration chart. The color registration chart prints a lattice pattern of yellow, magenta, and cyan lines. On the chart, look at the values on the right side that are next to the line that is perfectly straight for each of the three colors. If the value for this line is 0, color registration adjustment is not required. If the value for this line is any value other than 0, specify the adjustment values under <b>Color Registration Adjustments</b> .
<b>Color Registration Adjustments</b>	Sets lateral (perpendicular to paper feed direction) and process (paper feed direction) color adjustment values individually for Yellow, Magenta, and Cyan within the range of -9 to 9.

### **Reset Defaults**

#### **Purpose:**

To initialize the non-volatile (NV) memory. After executing this function and rebooting the printer, all the menu parameters are reset to their default values.

Reset Defaults	Reset Defaults User Fax Section and restart printer.	Click <b>Start</b> to reset the fax number entries in the Address Book.
	Reset Defaults User Scan Section and restart printer.	Click <b>Start</b> to reset the e-mail and server address entries in the Address Book.
	Reset Defaults System Section and restart printer.	Click <b>Start</b> to reset the system parameters.
Power On Wizard	Power On Wizard	Click <b>Start</b> to perform the initial setup for the printer.

### **Initialize PrintMeter**

#### **Purpose:**

To initialize the print meter of the printer. When the print meter is initialized, the meter count is reset to 0.

### **Storage**



**NOTE:** Storage feature is available only when **RAM Disk** is enabled or the optional hard disk is installed.

#### **Purpose:**

To clear all files stored in the RAM disk or the optional hard disk, or format the optional hard disk.

#### **Values:**

Clear Storage* <sup>1</sup>	All Clear	Click <b>Start</b> to clear all files stored as Secure Print, Proof Print, Private Mail Box Print, and Public Mail Box Print in the RAM disk or the optional hard disk.
	Secure Document	Click <b>Start</b> to clear all files stored as Secure Print, Proof Print, Private Mail Box Print, and Public Mail Box Print in the RAM disk or the optional hard disk.
	Stored Document	Click <b>Start</b> to clear all files stored in the RAM disk or the optional hard disk.
Format Hard Disk* <sup>2</sup>	Format Hard Disk	Click <b>Start</b> to format the optional hard disk. All fonts, forms and files for Secure Print, Proof Print, Private Mail Box Print, and Public Mail Box Print stored in the optional hard disk are cleared.

\*<sup>1</sup> This item is available only when **RAM Disk** is enabled or the optional hard disk is installed.

\*<sup>2</sup> This item is available only when the optional hard disk is installed.

### **Non-Dell Toner**

#### **Purpose:**

To use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.



**WARNING:** Using a non-Dell toner cartridge may severely damage your printer. The warranty does not cover damages caused by using non-Dell toner cartridges.

### **Adjust Altitude**

#### **Purpose:**

To specify the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.

The discharge phenomenon for charging the photo conductor varies with barometric pressure. Adjustments are performed by specifying the altitude of the location where the printer is being used.

### ***Clock Settings***

**Purpose:**

To specify the clock settings.

**Values:**

Date Format	Sets the date format; YYYY/MM/DD, MM/DD/YYYY, or DD/MM/YYYY.
Time Format	Sets the time format; 24 Hour Clock or 12 Hour Clock.
Time Zone	Sets the time zone.
Set Date	Sets the current date.
Set Time	Sets the current time.

### ***Web Link Customization***

**Purpose:**

To specify a link used for ordering consumables, which can be accessed from **Order Supplies at:** in the left frame.

**Values:**

Select Reorder URL	Sets a URL to be linked to <b>Order Supplies at:</b>
Regular	Displays the regular URL ( <a href="http://accessories.us.dell.com/sna">http://accessories.us.dell.com/sna</a> ) that can be linked to <b>Order Supplies at:</b> .
Premier	Displays the premier URL ( <a href="http://premier.dell.com">http://premier.dell.com</a> ) that can be linked to <b>Order Supplies at:</b> .

### **Print Server Settings**

Use the **Print Server Settings** menu to set the type of printer interface and the necessary conditions for communication.

The following tabbed pages are displayed in the top of the right frame.

#### **Print Server Reports**

The **Print Server Reports** tab includes the **Print Server Setup Page** and the **E-Mail Alert Setup Page**.

#### ***Print Server Setup Page***

**Purpose:**

To verify the current settings of TCP/IP (Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol) protocol and printing ports. On this page, you can only verify the settings of items. If you want to change the settings, go to the pages in the **Print Server Settings** tab.

**Values:**

Ethernet <sup>*1</sup>	Ethernet Settings	Displays the current settings of Ethernet transmission rate and the duplex settings.
	Current Ethernet Settings	Displays the current Ethernet settings.
	MAC Address	Displays the Media Access Control (MAC) address of the printer.

Wireless Settings <sup>*2</sup>	SSID	Displays the name that identifies the network.		
	Network Type	Displays the network type from either the Ad-Hoc or Infrastructure mode.		
	MAC Address	Displays the MAC address of the wireless adapter.		
	Link Channel	Displays the channel number of the connection.		
	Link Quality	Displays the quality of the connection.		
TCP/IP Settings	IP Mode	Displays the IP mode.		
	Host Name	Displays the host name.		
	IPv4 <sup>*3</sup>	IP Address Mode	Displays the IP address mode.	
		IP Address	Displays the IP address.	
		Subnet Mask	Displays the subnet mask.	
		Gateway Address	Displays the gateway address.	
	IPv6 <sup>*4</sup>	Enable Stateless Address	Displays whether to enable the stateless address.	
		Use Manual Address	Displays whether to set the IP address manually.	
		Get IP Address from DHCP	Displays whether to automatically set the IP address via DHCP.	
		Manual Address <sup>*5</sup>	Displays the IP address.	
		Stateless Address 1-3 <sup>*6</sup>	Displays the stateless addresses.	
		Stateful Address 1-3	Displays the stateful addresses.	
		Link Local Address <sup>*6</sup>	Displays the link local address.	
		Manual Gateway Address <sup>*5</sup>	Displays the gateway address.	
		Auto Configure Gateway Address <sup>*6</sup>	Displays the gateway address.	
DNS	IPv4 <sup>*3</sup>	Get DNS Server Address from DHCP	Displays whether to automatically set the DNS server address via DHCP.	
		Current DNS Server Address	Displays the current DNS server address.	
	IPv6 <sup>*4</sup>	Get DNS Server Address from DHCPv6-lite	Displays if the printer receives the DNS server address automatically from the DHCPv6-lite server.	
		Current DNS Server Address	Displays the current DNS server address.	
		DNS Dynamic Update (IPv4)	Displays the status of the DNS Dynamic Update feature.	
		DNS Dynamic Update (IPv6)	Displays the status of the DNS Dynamic Update feature.	
		Auto Generate Search List	Displays whether to automatically generate a search list.	
		Search Domain Name	Displays the search domain name.	
		Time-out	Displays the time-out period.	
		Priority to IPv6 DNS Name Resolution <sup>*7</sup>	Displays whether to use the DNS Name Resolution feature.	

WINS* <sup>3</sup>	WINS Mode	Displays whether to automatically set the primary and secondary WINS server addresses via DHCP.
	WINS Primary Server	Displays the primary WINS server address.
	WINS Secondary Server	Displays the secondary WINS server address.
LPD	Port Status	Displays the port status of the Line Printer Daemon (LPD) protocol.
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.
Port9100	Port Status	Displays the port status.
	Port Number	Displays the port number.
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.
IPP	Port Status	Displays the port status.
	Printer URI	Displays the printer URI.
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.
	Port Number	Displays the port number.
	Maximum Sessions	Displays the maximum number of connections received simultaneously by the client.
WSD	WSD Scan	Displays whether to use WSD for scanning.
	WSD Print	Displays whether to use WSD for printing.
	Port Number	Displays the WSD port number.
	Receive Time-Out	Displays the receive time-out period.
	Notification Time-Out	Displays the notification time-out period.
	Maximum Number of TTL	Displays the maximum number of TTLs.
	Maximum Number of Notification	Displays the maximum number of notifications.
Network TWAIN	Port Status	Displays the port status.
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.
FTP	Port Status	Displays the port status.
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.
HTTP	Port Status	Displays the port status.
	Port Number	Displays the port number.
	Simultaneous Connections	Displays the maximum number of simultaneous connections.
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.
SMB	Port Status	Displays the port status.
	Host Name	Displays the host name.
	Workgroup	Displays the workgroup.
	Maximum Sessions	Displays the maximum number of sessions.
	Unicode Support	Displays whether to notify the host name and workgroup name in Unicode characters during SMB transmission.
	Auto Master Mode	Displays whether to enable the Auto Master Mode.
	Encrypt Password	Displays whether to encrypt the password during SMB transmission.
	Job Time-Out	Displays the job time-out period.
Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.	

Bonjour (mDNS)	Port Status	Displays the port status.
	Host Name	Displays the host name.
	Printer Name	Displays the printer name.
	Wide-Area Bonjour	Displays the status of the Wide-Area Bonjour feature.
Telnet	Port Status	Displays the port status.
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.
SNMP	Port Status	Displays the port status.
	Enable SNMP v1/v2c Protocol	Displays the status of the SNMP v1/v2c feature.
	Enable SNMP v3 Protocol	Displays the status of the SNMP v3 feature.
Update Address Book	Port Status	Displays the port status.
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.
FTP Client	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.
	FTP Passive	Displays whether to enable the FTP Passive mode.
SMB Client	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.
SNTP	Port Status	Displays the port status.
	IP Address / Host Name	Displays the IP address or the host name of the SNTP server.
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.
	Time Synchronization Interval	Displays the interval for performing time synchronization using SNTP.
AirPrint	Port Status	Displays the port status.
	Name	Displays the name of AirPrint.
	Location	Displays the location of the printer.
	Geo-Location	Displays the physical location of the printer.
Google Cloud Print	Port Status	Displays the port status.
	Registration state	Displays the registration state.
Proxy Server	Use Proxy Server	Displays the status of proxy server.
	Address to Bypass Proxy Server	Displays the address of the bypass proxy server.
	Server Name	Displays the server name.
	Port Number	Displays the port number.
	Authentication	Displays the status of authentication feature.
Authentication System	Authentication System Settings (for ColorTrack PRO)	Displays the authentication method.
	Authentication System Settings (for Server Address/Phone Book)	Displays the authentication method.

SSL/TLS	HTTP - SSL/TLS Communication	Displays the status of the HTTP - SSL/TLS Communication.
	HTTP - SSL/TLS Communication Port Number	Displays HTTP - SSL/TLS Communication Port Number.
	LDAP - SSL/TLS Communication <sup>*8</sup>	Displays the status of the LDAP - SSL/TLS Communication.
	Verify Remote Server Certificate <sup>*8</sup>	Displays the status of the Verify Remote Server Certificate.
IPsec Settings	Protocol	Displays the protocol status.
	IKE	Displays IKE authentication.
802.1x <sup>*1</sup>	Enable IEEE 802.1x	Displays the status of IEEE 802.1x.
	Authentication Method	Displays the setting of authentication method for IEEE 802.1x.
IP Filter (IPv4) <sup>*9</sup>	Access List	Displays the list of IP addresses that are permitted or denied access to the printer.
SMTP Domain Filtering	Domain Filtering	Displays whether to enable Domain Filtering.
	Allow Domain List	Displays the domains allowed for sending e-mails.
<p><sup>*1</sup> This item is available only when the printer is connected using an Ethernet cable.</p> <p><sup>*2</sup> This item is available only when the printer is connected using the wireless network.</p> <p><sup>*3</sup> This item is displayed when <b>IPv4 Mode</b> or <b>Dual Stack</b> in <b>IP Mode</b> is selected.</p> <p><sup>*4</sup> This item is displayed when <b>IPv6 Mode</b> or <b>Dual Stack</b> in <b>IP Mode</b> is selected.</p> <p><sup>*5</sup> This item is displayed only when <b>Use Manual Address</b> is set to <b>Enable</b>.</p> <p><sup>*6</sup> This item is displayed only when an IP address has been assigned.</p> <p><sup>*7</sup> This item is available only when using IPv6 dual mode.</p> <p><sup>*8</sup> This item is displayed only when the optional hard disk is installed and is set to On for encryption.</p> <p><sup>*9</sup> This item is available only for <b>LPD</b> or <b>Port9100</b>.</p>		

### ***E-Mail Alert Setup Page***

#### **Purpose:**

To verify the current settings of SMTP/POP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol/Post Office Protocol) used for the Scan to E-mail feature, forwarding fax to e-mail feature, and E-Mail Alert feature. In this page, you can only verify the settings of items. If you want to change the settings, go to the pages in the **Print Server Settings** tab.

#### **Values:**

E-Mail Server Settings	Port Status	Displays the port status.
	Primary SMTP Gateway	Displays the primary SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol) gateway.
	SMTP Port Number	Displays the SMTP port number.
	E-Mail Send Authentication	Displays the authentication method for outgoing e-mail.
	POP3 Server Address	Displays the POP3 (Post Office Protocol 3) server address.
	POP3 Port Number	Displays the POP3 port number.
	Reply Address	Displays the IP address of servers connected with SMTP protocol when data is incoming.
	SMTP Server Connection	Displays the status of the SMTP server connection.

E-Mail Alert Settings	E-Mail List 1		Displays the acceptable e-mail addresses for the E-Mail Alert feature specified in <b>E-Mail List 1</b> .
	Select Alerts for List 1	Supplies Alerts	Displays the e-mail alert receive status for consumables.
		Paper Handling Alerts	Displays the e-mail alert receive status for paper handling.
		Service Call	Displays the e-mail alert receive status for service calls.
	E-Mail List 2		Displays the acceptable e-mail addresses for the E-Mail Alert feature specified in <b>E-Mail List 2</b> .
	Select Alerts for List 2	Supplies Alerts	Displays the e-mail alert receive status for consumables.
		Paper Handling Alerts	Displays the e-mail alert receive status for paper handling.
		Service Call	Displays the e-mail alert receive status for service calls.

### Print Server Settings

The **Print Server Settings** tab includes the **Basic Information**, **Port Settings**, **TCP/IP**, **SMB**, **E-Mail Alert**, **Bonjour (mDNS)**, **SNMP**, **Scan to PC**, **SNTP**, **Wireless LAN**, **AirPrint**, **Google Cloud Print**, **Proxy Server**, and **Reset Print Server** pages.

#### **Basic Information**

##### **Purpose:**

To configure basic information of the printer.

##### **Values:**

System Settings	Printer Name	Sets the name of the printer.
	Location	Sets the location of the printer.
	Contact Person	Sets the contact name, number, and other information of the printer administrator and service center.
	Administrator E-Mail Address	Sets the contact address of the printer administrator and service center.
	Asset Tag Number	Enters the asset tag number for the printer.
EWS Settings	Auto Refresh	Automatically refreshes the contents of the status display pages.
	Auto Refresh Interval	Sets the time interval for refreshing the contents of the status display pages automatically from 15 to 600 seconds.



**NOTE:** The **Auto Refresh** feature is effective for the contents of the top frame, **Printer Status** page, **Job List** page, and **Completed Jobs** page.

#### **Port Settings**


##### **Purpose:**

To enable or disable printing ports and management protocol features.

Values:

Ethernet <sup>*1</sup>	Ethernet Settings	Auto	Detects the Ethernet transmission rate and the duplex settings automatically.
		10Base-T Half-Duplex	Selects 10Base-T Half-Duplex as the default value.
		10Base-T Full-Duplex	Selects 10Base-T Full-Duplex as the default value.
		100Base-TX Half-Duplex	Selects 100Base-TX Half-Duplex as the default value.
		100Base-TX Full-Duplex	Selects 100Base-TX Full-Duplex as the default value.
		1000Base-T Full-Duplex	Selects 1000Base-T Full-Duplex as the default value.
		Current Ethernet Settings	Displays the current settings of the Ethernet.
	MAC Address	Displays the MAC address of the printer.	
Port Status	LPD	Sets whether to enable LPD.	
	Port9100	Sets whether to enable Port9100.	
	IPP	Sets whether to enable IPP.	
	WSD Print	Sets whether to enable WSD Print.	
	WSD Scan	Sets whether to enable WSD Scan.	
	Network TWAIN	Sets whether to enable Network TWAIN	
	FTP	Sets whether to enable FTP.	
	SMB	Sets whether to enable SMB.	
	Bonjour (mDNS)	Sets whether to enable Bonjour (mDNS).	
	E-Mail Alert	Sets whether to enable E-Mail Alert.	
	Telnet	Sets whether to enable Telnet.	
	SNMP	Sets whether to enable SNMP.	
	Update Address Book	Sets whether to enable Update Address Book.	
	SNTP	Sets whether to enable SNTP.	
Google Cloud Print	Sets whether to enable Google Cloud Print.		

<sup>\*1</sup> This item is available only when the printer is connected using an Ethernet cable.

 **NOTE:** The settings in the **Port Settings** page will be valid only when the printer is rebooted. When you change or configure the settings, click the **Apply New Settings** button to apply the new settings.

### TCP/IP

#### Purpose:

To configure the IP address, subnet mask, and gateway address of the printer.

Values:

TCP/IP Settings	IP Mode	Sets the IP mode.
	Host Name	Sets the host name.
IPv4	IP Address Mode	Sets the method for acquiring the IP address.
	Manual IP Address	When an IP address is being set manually, the IP is allocated to the printer using the format nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn. Each octet that makes up nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn is a value in the range of 0 to 254. 127 and any value in the range of 224 to 254 cannot be specified for the first octet of a gateway address.
	Manual Subnet Mask	When an IP address is being set manually, the subnet mask is specified using the format nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn. Each octet that makes up nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn is a value in the range of 0 to 255. 255.255.255.255 cannot be specified as the subnet mask.
	Manual Gateway Address	When an IP address is being set manually, the gateway address is specified using the format nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn. Each octet that makes up nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn is a value in the range of 0 to 254. 127 and any value in the range of 224 to 254 cannot be specified for the first octet of a gateway address.
	IPv6	Enable Stateless Address
	Use Manual Address	Select the check box to set the IP address manually.
	Get IP Address from DHCP	Allows you to enable or disable the automatic setting of the IP address via DHCP.
	Manual Address	Sets the IP address. To specify an IPv6 address, enter the address followed by a slash (/) and then "64". For details, consult your system administrator.
	Manual Gateway Address	Sets the gateway address.

DNS	<b>DNS Domain Name</b>	Sets the DNS domain name.	
	<b>IPv4</b>	<b>Get DNS Server Address from DHCP</b>	Allows you to enable or disable the automatic setting of the DNS server address via DHCP.
		<b>Manual DNS Server Address</b>	Manually sets the DNS server address in xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx format when <b>Get DNS Server Address from DHCP</b> is not selected.
	<b>IPv6</b>	<b>Get DNS Server Address from DHCPv6-lite</b>	Select the check box to get the DNS server address automatically from the DHCPv6-lite server.
		<b>Manual DNS Server Address</b>	Sets the DNS server address.
		<b>DNS Dynamic Update (IPv4)</b>	Select the check box to enable dynamic updates to DNS.
		<b>DNS Dynamic Update (IPv6)</b>	Select the check box to enable dynamic updates to DNS.
		<b>Auto Generate Search List</b>	Select the check box to automatically generate the search list.
		<b>Search Domain Name</b>	Sets the search domain name. Up to 255 alphanumeric characters, periods, and hyphens can be used. If you need to specify more than one domain name, separate them using a comma or semicolon.
		<b>Time-out</b>	Sets the time-out period between 1 and 60 seconds.
<b>Priority to IPv6 DNS Name Resolution</b>	Select the check box to enable the DNS Name Resolution feature.		
WINS	<b>WINS Mode</b>	Allows you to enable or disable the automatic setting of the primary and secondary WINS server addresses via DHCP.	
	<b>WINS Primary Server</b>	Manually sets the primary WINS server address in xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx format when <b>WINS Mode</b> is not selected.	
	<b>WINS Secondary Server</b>	Manually sets the secondary (backup) WINS server address in xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx format when <b>WINS Mode</b> is not selected.	
LPD	<b>Connection Time-Out</b>	Sets the connection time-out period from 1 to 3,600 seconds.	
	<b>IP Filter (IPv4)</b>	Click <b>IP Filter (IPv4)</b> to set the IP Filter settings on the <b>IP Filter (IPv4)</b> page.	
Port9100	<b>Port Number</b>	Sets the port number from 9,000 to 9,999.	
	<b>Connection Time-Out</b>	Sets the connection time-out period between 1 and 1,000 seconds.	
	<b>IP Filter (IPv4)</b>	Click <b>IP Filter (IPv4)</b> to set the IP filter settings on the <b>IP Filter (IPv4)</b> page.	
IPP	<b>Printer URI</b>	Displays the printer URI.	
	<b>Connection Time-Out</b>	Sets the connection time-out period from 1 to 1,000 seconds.	
	<b>Port Number</b>	Displays the port number for receiving requests from the client.	
	<b>Maximum Sessions</b>	Displays the maximum number of connections received simultaneously by the client.	

WSD	Port Number	Sets the port number to 80 or from 8,000 to 9,999.
	Receive Time-Out	Sets the receive time-out period from 1 to 65,535 seconds.
	Notification Time-Out	Sets the notification time-out period from 1 to 60 seconds.
	Maximum Number of TTL	Sets the maximum number of TTL from 1 to 10.
	Maximum Number of Notification	Sets the maximum number of notifications from 10 to 20.
Network TWAIN	Connection Time-Out	Sets the connection time-out period between 1 and 65,535 seconds.
FTP	Password	Sets the password for FTP.
	Re-enter Password	Enter the password again to confirm it.
	Connection Time-Out	Sets the connection time-out period from 1 to 1000 seconds.
HTTP	Port Number	Sets the port number to 80 or from 8,000 to 9,999.
	Simultaneous Connections	Displays the maximum number of simultaneous connections.
	Connection Time-Out	Sets the connection time-out period from 1 to 255 seconds.
Telnet	Password	Sets the password for Telnet.
	Re-enter Password	Confirms the set password.
	Connection Time-Out	Sets the connection time-out period from 1 to 1,000 seconds.
Update Address Book	Connection Time-Out	Sets the connection time-out period from 1 to 65,535 seconds.

To configure the IP Filter feature, enter an IP address to be filtered in the Address field and the subnet mask in the Address Mask field. Enter a numeric value between 0 and 255 in each field. "\*" is appended to the current value.

### IP Filter Setup Procedure

You can set up to a maximum of five items and the first item set takes priority. When setting multiple filters, enter the shortest address first followed by a slightly longer address, a longer address and so on.

#### Enabling Printing From a Specified User

The following describes the procedure to enable printing only from the "192.168.100.10" IP address.

- 1 Click the first column of the **Access List** row 1.
- 2 Enter "192.168.100.10" in the **Address** field and "255.255.255.255" in the **Address Mask** field.
- 3 Select **Accept**.
- 4 Click **Apply New Settings**.

#### Disabling Printing From a Specified User

The following describes the procedure to disable printing only from the "192.168.100.10" IP address.

- 1 Click the first column of the **Access List** row 1.
- 2 Enter "192.168.100.10" in the **Address** field and "255.255.255.255" in the **Address Mask** field.
- 3 Select **Reject**.
- 4 Click the first column of the **Access List** row 2.

- 5 Enter "0 . 0 . 0 . 0" in the **Address** field and "0 . 0 . 0 . 0" in the **Address Mask** field.
- 6 Select **Accept**.
- 7 Click **Apply New Settings**.

#### Enabling and Disabling Printing from Network Addresses

You can enable printing from the "192 . 168" network address and disable printing from the "192 . 168 . 200" network address.

The example below describes how to enable printing from the "192 . 168 . 200 . 10" IP address.

- 1 Click the first column of the **Access List** row 1.
- 2 Enter "192 . 168 . 200 . 10" in the **Address** field and "255 . 255 . 255 . 255" in the **Address Mask** field.
- 3 Select **Accept**.
- 4 Click the first column of the **Access List** row 2.
- 5 Enter "192 . 168 . 200 . 0" in the **Address** field and "255 . 255 . 255 . 0" in the **Address Mask** field.
- 6 Select **Reject**.
- 7 Click the first column of the **Access List** row 3.
- 8 Enter "192 . 168 . 0 . 0" in the **Address** field and "255 . 255 . 0 . 0" in the **Address Mask** field.
- 9 Select **Accept**.
- 10 Click **Apply New Settings**.

#### **SMB**

##### **Purpose:**

To specify the setting of the Server Message Block (SMB) protocol.

##### **Values:**

<b>Host Name</b>	Sets the host name of the server computer.
<b>Workgroup</b>	Sets the workgroup.
<b>Maximum Sessions</b>	Sets the maximum number of sessions.
<b>Unicode Support</b>	Sets whether to notify the host name and workgroup name in Unicode characters during SMB transmission.
<b>Auto Master Mode</b>	Sets whether to enable the Auto Master Mode.
<b>Encrypt Password</b>	Sets whether to encrypt the password.
<b>Job Time-Out</b>	Sets the job time-out period between 60 and 3,600 seconds.
<b>Connection Time-Out</b>	Sets the connection time-out period between 60 and 3,600 seconds.

#### **E-Mail Alert**

##### **Purpose:**

To configure detailed settings of **E-Mail Alert**. This page can also be displayed by clicking the **E-Mail Alert** in the left frame.

##### **Values:**

<b>E-Mail Server Settings</b>	<b>Primary SMTP Gateway</b>	Sets the primary SMTP gateway.
	<b>SMTP Port Number</b>	Sets the SMTP port number. This must be 25, 587 or between 5,000 and 65,535.

	<b>E-Mail Send Authentication</b>	Sets the authentication method for outgoing e-mail.	
	<b>SMTP Login User</b>	Sets the SMTP login user. Up to 63 alphanumeric characters, periods, hyphens, underscores, and at symbols (@) can be used. If specifying more than one address, separate them using commas.	
	<b>SMTP Login Password</b>	Sets the SMTP account password using up to 31 alphanumeric characters.	
	<b>Re-enter SMTP Login Password</b>	Confirms the set SMTP account password.	
	<b>POP3 Server Address<sup>*1</sup></b>	Sets the POP3 server address in IP address format of "aaa.bbb.ccc.ddd" or as a DNS host name using up to 63 characters.	
	<b>POP3 Port Number<sup>*1</sup></b>	Sets the POP3 server port number. This must be 110 or between 5,000 and 65,535.	
	<b>POP User Name<sup>*1</sup></b>	Sets the POP3 account user name. Up to 63 alphanumeric characters, periods, hyphens, underscores, and at symbols (@) can be used. If specifying more than one address, separate them using commas.	
	<b>POP User Password<sup>*1</sup></b>	Sets the POP3 account password using up to 31 alphanumeric characters.	
	<b>Re-enter POP User Password<sup>*1</sup></b>	Confirms the set password.	
	<b>Reply Address</b>	Designates the reply e-mail address sent with each E-mail Alert.	
	<b>SMTP Server Connection</b>	Displays the status of the SMTP server connection.	
<b>E-Mail Alert Settings</b>	<b>E-Mail List 1</b>	Sets acceptable e-mail addresses for the E-Mail Alert feature using up to 255 alphanumeric characters.	
	<b>Select Alerts for List 1</b>	<b>Supplies Alerts</b>	Select the check box to receive an E-Mail Alert for consumables.
		<b>Paper Handling Alerts</b>	Select the check box to receive an E-Mail Alert for paper handling.
		<b>Service Call</b>	Select the check box to receive an E-Mail Alert for Service Calls.
	<b>E-Mail List 2</b>	Sets acceptable e-mail addresses for the E-Mail Alert feature using up to 255 alphanumeric characters.	
	<b>Select Alerts for List 2</b>	<b>Supplies Alerts</b>	Select the check box to receive an E-Mail Alert for consumables.
		<b>Paper Handling Alerts</b>	Select the check box to receive an E-Mail Alert for paper handling.
		<b>Service Call</b>	Select the check box to receive an E-Mail Alert for Service Calls.

<sup>\*1</sup> This item is available only when **POP before SMTP (Plain)** or **POP before SMTP (APOP)** for **E-Mail Send Authentication** is selected.

### ***Bonjour (mDNS)***

#### **Purpose:**

To configure the detailed settings of Bonjour.

#### **Values:**

<b>Host Name</b>	Sets the host name up to 63 alphanumeric characters and "-" (dash). The original setting will remain valid if no input is made.
<b>Printer Name</b>	Sets the printer name up to 63 alphanumeric characters and symbol sets. The original setting will remain valid if no input is made.
<b>Wide-Area Bonjour</b>	Select the check box to enable the Wide-Area Bonjour protocol.

### ***SNMP***

#### **Purpose:**

To configure the detailed settings of SNMP.

#### **Values:**

<b>SNMP Configuration</b>	<b>Enable SNMP v1/v2c Protocol</b>	Select the check box to enable the SNMP v1/v2c protocol.
	<b>Edit SNMP v1/v2c Properties</b>	Click to display the <b>SNMP v1/v2c</b> page and to edit the setting of SNMP v1/v2c protocol from the page.
	<b>Enable SNMP v3 Protocol</b>	Select the check box to enable the SNMP v3 protocol.
	<b>Edit SNMP v3 Properties</b>	Click to display the <b>SNMP v3</b> page and to edit the setting of SNMP v3 protocol from the page. You can click this item only when SSL communication is enabled.

### ***SNMP v1/v2c***

#### **Purpose:**

To edit the detailed settings of SNMP v1/v2 protocol.

To enter this page, click **Edit SNMP v1/v2 Properties** in the **SNMP** page.

Values:

Community Name	Community Name (Read only) <sup>*1</sup>	Sets the community name to access (read only) data using up to 31 alphanumeric characters. The original setting will remain valid if no input is made. Characters entered for community name in the previous settings will not be displayed on the screen. The default Read Community is public.
	Re-enter Community Name (Read only) <sup>*1</sup>	Enters the community name to access (read only) data again to confirm it.
	Community Name (Read/Write) <sup>*1</sup>	Sets the community name to access (read and write) data using up to 31 alphanumeric characters. The original setting will remain valid if no input is made. Characters entered for community name in the previous settings will not be displayed on the screen. The default Read/Write Community is private.
	Re-enter Community Name (Read/Write) <sup>*1</sup>	Enters the community name to access (read and write) data again to confirm it.
	Community Name (Trap) <sup>*1</sup>	Sets the community name used for trap up to 31 alphanumeric characters. The original setting will remain valid if no input is made. Characters entered for Community Name (Trap) in the previous settings will not be displayed on the screen. The default Trap Community is "" (NULL).
	Re-enter Community Name (Trap) <sup>*1</sup>	Enters the community name used for trap again to confirm it.
Trap Notification 1-4	Trap Address Type	Select the check boxes to notify trap occurrence. In this case, specify the IP address and IP socket in the following format:
	Trap Address Port Number Notify	IPv4 Specify the IP address and IP socket in the nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn:mmmmm format. Each section of "nnn" is a variable value between 0 and 255. Note that values 127 and 224-254 are not valid for the first three-digits only. IP socket mmmmm is a variable value between 0 and 65,535. IPv6 Specify the IP address and IP socket in the xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:mmmmm format. Each section of "xxxx" is a hexadecimal variable value between 0 and ffff. IP socket mmmmm is a variable value between 0 and 65,535.
Authenticate Error Trap		Select the check box to notify Authenticate Error Trap.

<sup>\*1</sup> The default value can be changed by using **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

### SNMP v3

#### Purpose:

To edit the detailed settings of SNMP v3 protocol.

To enter this page, click **Edit SNMP v3 Properties** in the **SNMP** page.

Values:

Administrator Account	Account Enabled	Select the check box to enable the administrator account.
	User Name	Enters the user name of the administrator account.
	Authentication Password	Sets the authentication password of the administrator account using 8 to 32 alphanumeric characters.
	Re-enter Authentication Password	Confirms the set password.
	Privacy Password	Sets the privacy password of the administrator account using 8 to 32 alphanumeric characters.
	Re-enter Privacy Password	Confirms the set password.
Print Drivers / Remote Client Account	Account Enabled	Select the check box to enable the print drivers and remote client account.
	Reset to default Password	Click to reset the password for the print drivers and remote client account to default.

### **Scan to PC**

Purpose:

To specify the client when scanning data.

Values:

FTP Client	Connection Time-Out	Sets the connection time-out period from 1 to 60 seconds.
	FTP Passive	Sets whether to enable the FTP Passive mode.
SMB Client	Connection Time-Out	Sets the connection time-out period from 1 to 60 seconds.

### **SNTP**

Purpose:

To configure the SNTP server settings in order to perform time synchronization through SNTP.

Values:

SNTP	IP Address / Host Name	Sets the IP address or the host name of the SNTP server.
	Connection Time-Out	Sets the connection time-out period from 1 to 120 seconds.
	Time Synchronization Interval	Sets the interval for performing time synchronization using SNTP.
	Last Connection Time	Displays the last date and time when your printer was connected to the SNTP server.
	Connection Status	Displays the status of the connections between the SNTP server and your printer.

### **Wireless LAN**



**NOTE:** Wireless LAN feature is available only when the printer is connected using the wireless network.

Purpose:

To configure the detailed setting for the wireless network.

To use the wireless adapter, be sure to disconnect the Ethernet cable.



**NOTE:** Once wireless LAN is activated, wired LAN protocol will be disabled.

Values:

Wireless Settings	SSID	Sets the name that identifies the wireless network. Up to 32 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
	Network Type	Sets the network type from either <b>Ad-Hoc</b> or <b>Infrastructure</b> .
	MAC Address	Displays the MAC address of the wireless adapter for the printer.
	Link Channel	Displays the channel number of the wireless connection for the printer.
	Link Quality	Displays the quality of the wireless network connection for the printer.
Security Settings	Encryption	Select the encryption type from the list.
	No Security	Sets No Security to configure the wireless setting without specifying an encryption type from WEP, WPA-PSK, and WPA-Enterprise.
	WEP	Sets the WEP to use through the wireless network.
	WPA-PSK TKIP <sup>*1, 2</sup>	Sets the WPA-PSK TKIP to use through the wireless network.
	WPA-PSK AES/WPA2-PSK AES <sup>*1, 2</sup>	Sets the WPA-PSK AES/WPA2-PSK AES to use through the wireless network.
	WPA-Enterprise TKIP <sup>*2, 3, 4</sup>	Sets the WPA-Enterprise TKIP to use through the wireless network.
	WPA-Enterprise AES/WPA2-Enterprise AES <sup>*2, 3, 4</sup>	Sets the WPA-Enterprise AES/WPA2-Enterprise AES to use through the wireless network.
	Mixed Mode PSK <sup>*1, 2</sup>	Sets the Mixed Mode PSK to use through the wireless network. Mixed Mode PSK automatically selects the encryption type from either WPA-PSK TKIP, WPA-PSK AES, or WPA2-PSK AES.
Mixed Mode Enterprise <sup>*2, 3, 4</sup>	Sets the Mixed Mode Enterprise to use through the wireless network. Mixed Mode Enterprise automatically selects the encryption type from either WPA-Enterprise TKIP, WPA-Enterprise AES, or WPA2-Enterprise AES.	
WEP	Encryption	Select the WEP key code from either <b>Hex</b> or <b>Ascii</b> .
	WEP Key 1	Sets the WEP key set used through the wireless network only when <b>WEP 128bit</b> or <b>WEP 64bit</b> is selected for <b>Encryption</b> .
	Re-enter WEP Key 1	Enters the WEP key 1 again to confirm it.
	WEP Key 2	Sets the WEP key set used through the wireless network only when <b>WEP 128bit</b> or <b>WEP 64bit</b> is selected for <b>Encryption</b> .
	Re-enter WEP Key 2	Enters the WEP key 2 again to confirm it.
	WEP Key 3	Sets the WEP key set used through the wireless network only when <b>WEP 128bit</b> or <b>WEP 64bit</b> is selected for <b>Encryption</b> .
	Re-enter WEP Key 3	Enters the WEP key 3 again to confirm it.
	WEP Key 4	Sets the WEP key set used through the wireless network only when <b>WEP 128bit</b> or <b>WEP 64bit</b> is selected for <b>Encryption</b> .
	Re-enter WEP Key 4	Enters the WEP key 4 again to confirm it.
Transmit Key <sup>*6</sup>	Sets the transmit key type from the list.	

WPA-PSK	Pass Phrase	Sets the pass phrase.
	Re-enter Pass Phrase	Enters the pass phrase again to confirm it.
WPA-Enterprise <sup>*4, 5</sup>	EAP-Identity	Sets the EAP-Identity for the authentication.
	Authentication Method	Shows the authentication method.
	Login Name	Sets the login name for the authentication.
	Password	Sets the password.
	Re-enter Password	Enters the password again to confirm it.

\*1 For encryption, AES or TKIP method is used.

\*2 This item is available only when **Infrastructure** is selected for **Network Type**.

\*3 For authentication and encryption by digital certificate, AES or TKIP method is used.

\*4 This item is displayed only when the optional hard disk is installed and is set to On for encryption.

\*5 To activate the setting, import a certificate which supports wireless LAN (server/client) on the **SSL/TLS** pages, and enable the relevant certificate in advance.

\*6 When **Auto** is selected for **Transmit Key**, the key set specified for **WEP Key 1** is used.

### **AirPrint**

#### **Purpose:**

To configure the detailed setting of AirPrint.

#### **Values:**

AirPrint	Enable AirPrint	Click to enable the printer for AirPrint.
	Name	Enters the name that is to be displayed as an AirPrint printer.
	Location	Sets the location of the printer.
	Geo-Location	Sets the physical location of the printer.
Supply Levels	Cyan Toner Cartridge	Displays the cyan toner level.
	Magenta Toner Cartridge	Displays the magenta toner level.
	Yellow Toner Cartridge	Displays the yellow toner level.
	Black Toner Cartridge	Displays the black toner level.

### **Google Cloud Print**

#### **Purpose:**

To register the printer to Google Cloud Print.

#### **Values:**

Google Cloud Print <sup>*1</sup>	(Registration state)	Displays the Google Cloud Print registration state.
	Register This Device to Google Cloud Print	Click to register the printer to Google Cloud Print.

\*1 Google Cloud Print can only be used when the machine is using IPv4.

### **Proxy Server**

#### **Purpose:**

To configure the Proxy Server settings.

Values:

Proxy Server	Use Proxy Server	Sets whether to enable the use of a proxy server.
	Address to Bypass Proxy Server	Sets the address to bypass proxy server.
	Server Name	Sets the name of the proxy server.
	Port Number	Sets the port number from 1 to 65535.
	Authentication	Sets whether to enable authentication.
	Login Name	Sets the login name for the proxy server.
	Password	Sets the login password for the proxy server.
Retype Password	Confirms the set password.	

### ***Reset Print Server***

Purpose:

To initialize NVRAM (non-volatile RAM) for the network feature and reboot the printer. You can also initialize NVRAM of the printer from **Reset Defaults** in the **Printer Settings** menu.

Values:

Initialize NIC NVRAM Memory and restart printer.	Click <b>Start</b> to initialize NVRAM, revert network settings to the factory default settings, and reboot the network capability.
Restart Printer	Click <b>Start</b> to reboot the printer.

### **Security**

The Security tab includes **Set Password**, **Authentication System**, **Kerberos Server**, **LDAP Server**, **LDAP Authentication**, **LDAP User Mapping**, **SSL/TLS**, **IPsec**, **802.1x**, **IP Filter (IPv4)**, and **SMTP Domain Filtering**.

#### ***Set Password***

Purpose:

To set or change the password that is required to access the setup parameters of the printer from the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. This page can also be displayed by clicking **Set Password** in the left frame.



**NOTE:** To restore the password to the default (NULL), initialize the non-volatile memory (NVM).



**NOTE:** You can set the password for access to Admin Settings from **Panel Lock** in **Printer Settings**.

Values:

Administrator Password	Sets the password using up to 128 alphanumeric characters.
Re-enter Administrator Password	Confirms the set password.
Access denial by the authentication failure of the Administrator	Sets the amount of time the administrator should wait for the access to the printer setup from <b>Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool</b> . Sets the time period from 5 to 255 seconds. The access is denied if the time-out time is exceeded. If you set 0, this mode is disabled.

#### ***Authentication System***

Purpose:

To specify the server authentication type, the server response time-out, or the search time-out.

Values:

Authentication Type (for ColorTrack PRO)	Authentication System Settings	Select the authentication system from the list.
Authentication Type (for Server Address/Phone Book) <sup>*1</sup>	Authentication System Settings	Select the authentication system from the list.
Optional Information	Server Response Time-Out	Sets the amount of time the printer should wait for response from the server. Sets the time period from 1 to 75 seconds.
	Search Time-Out	Sets the amount of time the printer should wait for searching for the server. Sets the time period from 5 to 120 seconds.

<sup>\*1</sup> If **Off** or **Internal Mode** is selected for **ColorTrack Mode**, be sure to select **LDAP**. For details about **ColorTrack Mode**, see "Dell ColorTrack."

### ***Kerberos Server***

**Purpose:**

To specify the settings for the Kerberos server.

**Values:**

Kerberos Server (for ColorTrack PRO)	IP Address / Host Name & Port	Sets the IP address or host name, and the port address. The port address must be 88 or between 5,000 and 65,535.
	Domain Name	Enter the domain name.
Kerberos Server (for Server Address/Phone Book)	IP Address / Host Name & Port	Sets the IP address or host name, and the port address. The port address must be 88 or between 5,000 and 65,535.
	Domain Name	Enter the domain name.
	Login Name	Enter the login name.
	Password	Enter the login password.
	Re-enter Password	Enter the login password again to confirm it.

### ***LDAP Server***

**Purpose:**


To specify the settings of the LDAP server.


**Values:**

Server Information (for ColorTrack PRO)	IP Address / Host Name & Port	Sets IP address or the host name, and the port address. The port address must be 389, 3268, or between 5,000 and 65,535. <sup>*1</sup>
	LDAP Server	Displays the current software information of the LDAP server.
Optional Information (for ColorTrack PRO)	Search Directory Root	Enters the search directory root.
	Login Name	Enters the login name.
	Password	Enters the login password using 1 to 127 alphanumeric characters. If the password is left blank (NULL), you cannot log in to a server.
	Re-enter Password	Enters the login password again to confirm it.
	Search Time-Out	Select <b>Wait LDAP Server Limit</b> to follow the time specified by the LDAP server. Select <b>Wait</b> to specify the time between 5 and 120 seconds.
Server Information (for Server Address/Phone Book)	IP Address / Host Name & Port	Sets IP address or the host name, and the port address. The port address must be 389, 3268, or between 5,000 and 65,535. <sup>*1</sup>
	LDAP Server	Displays the current software information of the LDAP server.

Optional Information (for Server Address/Phone Book)	Search Directory Root	Enters the search directory root.
	Login Name	Enters the login name.
	Password	Enters the login password using 1 to 127 alphanumeric characters. If the password is left blank (NULL), you cannot log in to a server.
	Re-enter-Password	Enters the login password again to confirm it.
	Search Time-Out	Select <b>Wait LDAP Server Limit</b> to follow the time specified by the LDAP server. Select <b>Wait</b> to specify the time between 5 and 120 seconds.
	Search Name Order	Sets the search order.
	Server Address Book	Select the check box to enable the server address book.
Server Phone Book	Select the check box to enable the server phone book.	

\*1 When the optional hard disk is installed, 636 and 3269 also can be specified as the port address.

 **NOTE:** Server Address Book must be set to **On** before you can use the server address book for the Scan to E-mail feature.

 **NOTE:** Server Phone Book must be set to **On** before you can use the server phone book for the Fax function.

### **LDAP Authentication**

#### **Purpose:**

To specify the LDAP server authentication method.

#### **Values:**

LDAP Authentication (for ColorTrack PRO)	Authentication Method	Shows the authentication method.
	Use Added Text String	Select whether to use the added text string from the list.
	Text String Added to User Name	Enter the added text string.
LDAP Authentication (for Server Address/ Phone Book)	Authentication Method	Shows the authentication method.
	Use Added Text String	Select whether to use the added text string from the list.
	Text String Added to User Name	Enter the added text string.

### **LDAP User Mapping**

#### **Purpose:**

To specify the settings of the LDAP user mapping.

#### **Values:**

Common Name	Sets the attribute type of the common name set for the LDAP server.
Surname	Sets the attribute type of the surname set for the LDAP server.
Given Name	Sets the attribute type of the given name set for the LDAP server.
E-mail Address	Sets the attribute type of the e-mail address set for the LDAP server.
Fax Phone	Sets the attribute type of the fax phone number set for the LDAP server.

### **SSL/TLS**

#### **Purpose:**

To specify the settings for the SSL encryption communication to the printer, and set/delete the certificate used for IPsec, LDAPS, or Wireless LAN.

Values:

HTTP-SSL/TLS Communication <sup>*1</sup>	Select the check box to enable the HTTP-SSL/TLS Communication.
HTTP-SSL/TLS Communication Port Number	Sets the port number, which is not identical with that of HTTP for SSL/TLS. This must be 443 or between 8000 and 9999.
LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication <sup>*1, 2</sup>	Select the check box to enable the LDAP, and access is established using SSL/TLS communication.
Verify Remote Server Certificate <sup>*2</sup>	Select the check box to enable the <b>Verify Remote Server Certificate</b> function.
Generate Self-Signed Certificate <sup>*3</sup>	Click to display the <b>Generate Self-Signed Certificate</b> page and to create a security certification from the page. The Generate Self-Signed Certificate button is available only when the self-signed certificate is not generated.
<b>Public Key Method</b>	Select the public key method of the self-signed certificate.
<b>Size of Public Key</b>	Select the size of public key.
<b>Issuer</b>	Sets the issuer of SSL self-signed certificate.
<b>Generate Signed Certificate</b>	Click to generate the SSL self-signed certificate.
Upload Signed Certificate <sup>*3, 4</sup>	Click to display the <b>Upload Signed Certificate</b> page and to upload the certificate file to the device from the page.
<b>Password</b>	Enter the password to upload the certificate file.
<b>Re-enter Password</b>	Enter the password again for confirmation.
<b>File Name</b>	Click <b>Browse</b> to browse the file name to upload to the device.
<b>Import</b>	Click <b>Import</b> to upload the certificate file to the device.
Certificate Management <sup>*3, 4</sup>	Click to display the <b>Certificate Management</b> page and to manage a security certification from the page.
<b>Category</b>	Select the device to certificate.
<b>Certificate Purpose</b>	Select the connection to certificate.
<b>Certificate Order</b>	Select the order to certificate.
<b>Display the List</b>	Click to display the <b>Certificate List</b> page.
Certificate List <sup>*3</sup>	
<b>Category</b>	Displays the device to certificate selected at the <b>Certificate Management</b> page.
<b>Certificate Purpose</b>	Displays the connection to certificate selected at the <b>Certificate Management</b> page.
<b>Issued To</b>	Displays the list of certificate order.
<b>Validity</b>	Displays whether certificate is valid or not.
<b>Certificate Details</b>	Click to display the <b>Certificate Details</b> page. The <b>SSL/TLS</b> page is displayed when no item in the <b>Issued To</b> column is selected.

Certificate Details <sup>*3</sup>	Category	Displays the device to certificate selected at the Certificate Management page or SSL/TLS page.
	Issued To	Displays the device to certificate.
	Issuer	Displays the issuer to certificate.
	Serial Number	Displays the serial number of the device.
	Public Key Method	Displays the public key method.
	Size of Public Key	Displays the size of public key.
	Valid From	Displays the time the certificate is valid.
	Valid Until	Displays the time the certificate is invalid.
	Status	Displays whether certificate is valid or not.
	Certificate Purpose	Displays the purpose of certificate.
	Certificate Selection Status	Displays the type of device certificate you selected.
	E-mail Address	Displayed only when an e-mail address is specified in the certificate.
	Use this certificate <sup>*2</sup>	Click to apply this certificate to the device.
	Delete	Click to delete this certificate.
Export This Certificate <sup>*2</sup>	Click to export the certificate to the other device.	

\*1 This item is available only when the self-signed certificate has been generated.

\*2 This item is displayed only when the optional hard disk is installed and is set to On for encryption.

\*3 This item is effective only when connected via SSL/TLS (https). Only the administrator is allowed to display the pages.

\*4 This item is displayed only when the optional hard disk is installed and is set to On for encryption. If not, **Certificate Details** is displayed.

### **IPsec**

#### **Purpose:**

To specify the Security Architecture settings for Internet Protocol (IPsec) for encrypted communication to the printer.


#### **Values:**

IPsec Settings	Protocol	Select the check box to enable the protocol.
	IKE	Sets IKE authentication. <b>Device Certificate</b> is displayed on the list only when an effective digital signature is set up.
	Pre-Shared Key	Sets a shared key. Up to 255 alphanumeric characters, periods, and hyphens can be used.
	Re-enter Pre-Shared Key	Enters the shared key again to confirm it.
	Device Certificate <sup>*1</sup>	Displays the device certificate.
	IKE SA Lifetime	Sets the lifetime for IKE SA from 5 to 28,800 minutes.
	IPsec SA Lifetime	Sets the lifetime for IPsec SA from 5 to 2,880 minutes.
	DH Group	Sets the DH group.
	PFS	Select the check box to enable the PFS setting.
	Remote peers IPv4 address	Sets the IP address to connect to.
	Remote peers IPv6 address	Sets the IP address to connect to.
	Non IPsec communication policy	Allows communication with a device which does not support IPsec.

---

\*1 This item is effective only when the optional hard disk is installed and is set to On for encryption.

---

 **NOTE:** If IPsec is enabled with incorrect settings, you must disable it using the **IPsec** menu on the operator panel.

### **802.1x**

#### **Purpose:**

To specify the settings for IEEE 802.1x authentication for encrypted communication to the printer.

#### **Values:**

Configure 802.1x	<b>Enable IEEE 802.1x</b>	Select the check box to enable IEEE 802.1x authentication.
	<b>Authentication Method</b>	<b>EAP-MD5</b> Selects the authentication method to use for IEEE 802.1x authentication. <b>EAP-MS-CHAPv2</b> <b>PEAP/MS-CHAPv2</b> <b>EAP-TLS<sup>*1, 2</sup></b>
	<b>Login Name: (Device Name)</b>	Sets the login name (device name) for IEEE 802.1x authentication using up to 128 alphanumeric characters.
	<b>Password</b>	Sets the login password for IEEE 802.1x authentication using up to 128 alphanumeric characters.
	<b>Re-enter Password</b>	Confirms the set login password.
	<b>Certificate Validation</b>	Select the check box to enable Certificate Validation.

\*1 This item is displayed only when the optional hard disk is installed and is set to On for encryption.

\*2 When this item is selected, **Password** and **Re-enter Password** need not to be specified.

---

### **IP Filter (IPv4)**

#### **Purpose:**

To specify the IP address and subnet mask to be permitted or denied access to the printer.


#### **Values:**

Access List	<b>Address</b>	Sets the IP addresses that are permitted or denied access to the printer. Enter a numeric value between 0 and 255 in each field.	
	<b>Address Mask</b>	Sets the subnet mask that are permitted or denied access to the printer. Enter a numeric value between 0 and 255 in each field.	
	<b>Active Mode</b>	<b>Reject</b>	Rejects printing from specified network address.
		<b>Accept</b>	Permits printing from specified network address.
<b>Off</b>		Disables the IP Filter feature for the specified IP address.	

### **SMTP Domain Filtering**

#### **Purpose:**

To specify whether to restrict sending e-mails to specific domains only.

 **NOTE:** This feature does not restrict sending e-mails through the E-Mail Alert feature.

Values:

SMTP Domain Filtering	Domain Filtering	Select the check box to enable Domain Filtering.
	Allow Domain List	Allows you to register up to five domains allowed for sending e-mails.

## Copy Printer Settings

The Copy Printer Settings menu includes the Copy Printer Settings and Copy Printer Settings Report pages.


### Copy Printer Settings

**Purpose:**

To copy the printer settings to one or more of the same model of the printer.

To copy the settings to another printer, specify the IP address and password of the printer to which the settings are copied in the **IP Address** text box and **Password** text box. Then, click the **Copy the settings to the Host in the above list** button. Copying the settings is complete. The connection time-out period is 60 seconds. After that, you can check whether the settings were copied to this page. And you need to check the **Copy the settings to the Host in the above list and reboot the printer** menu of the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** in the destination printer to verify if the settings were actually copied or not.


If the settings can be copied but the printer configuration is different, the settings of only the same items are copied. Printer settings are simultaneously copied to printers of up to 10 IP addresses.

 **NOTE:** You cannot copy the Address Book when the destination printer has a fax job.

### Copy Printer Settings Report

**Purpose:**

To verify whether the printer setting is copied to other printers successfully.

 **NOTE:** The history is cleared by turning off the printer.

## Print Volume

The Printer Volume menu includes the Print Volume and Dell ColorTrack pages.

### Print Volume

**Purpose:**

To verify the number of printed pages. This page can also be displayed by clicking **Print Volume** in the left frame.

Values:

Printer Page Count	Displays the total number of pages printed since the printer was shipped from the factory.
Paper Used	Displays the number of pages printed for each paper size.

### Dell ColorTrack

**Purpose:**

To specify which users have access to color printing and to limit print volume per user.

Values:

ColorTrack Mode	Off	Enables to print the data with no authentication information.
	Internal Mode	Restricts printing based on the print user information registered in the internal server.
	External Mode	Restricts printing based on the print user information registered in the external server.
Non Registered User	Sets whether to permit the printing of data with no authentication information. To permit the printing for non-account user, select the check box.	
Non Registered User Password <sup>*1</sup>	Sets the password to be used for non-account user using 1 to 127 alphanumeric characters. If the password is left blank (NULL), you cannot log in to a server.	
Re-enter Non Registered User Password <sup>*1</sup>	Enter the password again to confirm it.	
ColorTrack Error Report	Sets whether to automatically print error-related information if printing using ColorTrack results in an error.	
Auto Color To Mono Print	Sets whether to print all print jobs in black and white even when color print is specified.	
User Registration <sup>*2</sup>	<p>Click <b>Edit User Registration</b> to display the <b>Edit Print User Registration</b> page.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To register a user, click <b>Create</b> to open the <b>Print User Settings</b> page.</li> <li>To delete a user, click <b>Delete</b> to open the <b>Delete User</b> page. Clicking <b>Back</b> returns the screen to the status prior to deleting the user.</li> <li>To confirm or change the registered user, click <b>Confirm / Change</b> to open the <b>Print User Settings</b> page.</li> </ul>	
User Registration No.	Displays the user registration number. The <b>Delete User</b> button is displayed when the user is already registered.	
User Name	Sets the user name.	
Password	Sets the user password using 4 to 12 alphanumeric characters.	
Re-enter password	Enter the password again to confirm it.	
Color Mode Limitation	Sets whether to limit color printing.	
Upper Limit for Color Print	Sets the maximum number of pages allowed for color printing.	
Cumulative Color Page Count	Displays the cumulative number of pages printed for color printing.	
Upper Limit for Monochrome Print	Sets the maximum number of pages allowed for monochrome printing.	
Cumulative Monochrome Page Count	Displays the cumulative number of pages printed for monochrome printing.	
Setup Remote Authentication <sup>*3</sup>	Click to display the <b>Authentication System</b> page.	

<sup>\*1</sup> The password must be set when **External Mode** is selected for **ColorTrack Mode** and **Non Registered User** is set to on.

<sup>\*2</sup> This item is displayed only when **ColorTrack Mode** is **Internal Mode**.

<sup>\*3</sup> This item is displayed only when **ColorTrack Mode** is **External Mode**.

## Address Book

The **Address Book** menu includes the **E-Mail Address**, **Server Address**, and **Phone Book** pages.

E-Mail Address	E-Mail Address	Allows you to view, edit, or create e-mail address entries.
	E-Mail Group	Allows you to view, edit, or create e-mail group entries.
	Default Setup	Allows you to view, edit, or set the default e-mail subject and message.
Server Address	Server Address	Allows you to view, edit, or create server address entries.
Phone Book	FAX Speed Dial	Allows you to view, edit, or create speed dial entries.
	FAX Group	Allows you to view, edit, or create fax group entries.

### **E-Mail Address**

The E-mail Address page includes the following subpages.

E-Mail Address	Allows you to view, edit, or create e-mail address entries.
E-Mail Group	Allows you to view, edit, or create e-mail group entries.
Default Setup	Allows you to view, edit, or set the default e-mail subject and message.

### ***E-Mail Address***

#### **Purpose:**

To view the e-mail address entries registered on the **E-Mail Address** page.

#### **Values:**

Address List to:	Selecting each button displays a list of entries for the group of user IDs indicated on the button.
ID	Displays the user ID.
Name	Displays the user name. ( <b>Not in Use</b> ) is displayed when there is no registration.
Address	Displays the e-mail address of the user.
Delete	Deletes the entry for the selected user ID.
Confirm / Change	Displays a dialog box where you can edit the entry of the selected user ID.
Create	Displays a dialog box where you can create a new entry under the selected user ID.

### ***E-Mail Address (Confirm/Change, Create)***

#### **Purpose:**

To view or edit the e-mail address entries on the **E-Mail Address** page, or create a new entry. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click **Confirm / Change** or **Create** on the **E-Mail Address** top page.

#### **Values:**

ID	Displays the selected user ID.
Name	Allows you to view or edit the name of the user registered under the user ID, or enter a name for the new entry.
Address	Allows you to view or edit the e-mail address of the user, or enter an e-mail address for the new entry.
Delete <sup>*1</sup>	Click this button to delete the selected user.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Restore Settings	Click this button to restore the previous settings.
Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

<sup>\*1</sup> This item is available only when you click **Confirm / Change**.

### ***E-Mail Address (Delete)***

#### **Purpose:**

To delete the e-mail address entries registered on the **E-Mail Address** page. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click **Delete** on the **E-Mail Address** top page.

#### **Values:**

<b>ID</b>	Displays the selected user ID.
<b>Name</b>	Displays the name of the user registered under the selected user ID.
<b>Address</b>	Displays the e-mail address of the user.
<b>Apply New Settings</b>	Click this button to apply the new settings.
<b>Back</b>	Click this button to return to the top page.

### ***E-Mail Group***

#### **Purpose:**

To view the e-mail address entries registered on the **E-Mail Group** page.

#### **Values:**

<b>GroupID</b>	Displays the group ID.
<b>Name</b>	Displays the assigned group name. ( <b>Not in Use</b> ) is displayed when there is no registration.
<b>Delete</b>	Deletes the entry for the selected group ID.
<b>Confirm / Change</b>	Displays a dialog box where you can edit the entry for the selected group ID.
<b>Create</b>	Displays a dialog box where you can create a new entry under the selected group ID.

### ***E-Mail Group (Confirm/Change, Create)***

#### **Purpose:**

To view or edit the e-mail address group entries on the **E-Mail Group** page, or create a new entry. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click **Confirm / Change** or **Create** on the **E-Mail Group** top page.

#### **Values:**

<b>E-Mail Group</b>	<b>ID</b>	Displays the selected group ID.
	<b>Name</b>	Allows you to view or edit the name assigned for the group ID, or enter a new group name.
	<b>Delete</b> <sup>*1</sup>	Click this button to delete the current entry.
<b>E-Mail Address</b>	<b>Address List to:</b>	Selecting each button displays a list of entries for the group of IDs indicated on the button.
	<b>ID</b>	Displays the user ID. Select the check box on the left to create the group.
	<b>Name</b>	Displays the user name. <b>(Not in Use)</b> is displayed when there is no registration.
	<b>Address</b>	Allows you to view or edit the e-mail address of an entry registered under the selected user ID, or enter an e-mail address for the new entry.
	<b>Apply New Settings</b>	Click this button to apply the new settings.
	<b>Restore Settings</b>	Click this button to restore the previous settings.
	<b>Back</b>	Click this button to return to the top page.

<sup>\*1</sup> This item is available only when you click **Confirm / Change**.

### ***E-Mail Group (Delete)***

#### **Purpose:**

To delete the e-mail group entries registered on the **E-Mail Group** page. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click **Delete** on the **E-Mail Group** top page.

#### **Values:**

<b>ID</b>	Displays the selected group ID.
<b>Name</b>	Displays the name assigned for the group ID.
<b>Apply New Settings</b>	Click this button to apply the new settings.
<b>Back</b>	Click this button to return to the top page.

### ***Default Setup***

#### **Purpose:**

To set the default e-mail subject and message.

#### **Values:**

<b>Default Subject</b>	Allows you to enter the default e-mail subject.
<b>Body Text</b>	Allows you to enter the default e-mail message.
<b>Apply New Settings</b>	Click this button to apply the new settings.
<b>Restore Settings</b>	Click this button to restore the previous settings.

## Server Address

### Server Address

#### Purpose:

To view the server address entries registered on the **Server Address** page.

#### Values:

Address List to:	Selecting each button displays a list of entries for the group of IDs indicated on the button.
ID	Displays the server ID.
Name	Displays the file directory name. <b>(Not in Use)</b> is displayed when there is no registration.
Server Address	Displays the address of the file directory.
Delete	Deletes the entry for the selected server ID.
Confirm / Change	Displays a dialog box where you can edit the entry for the selected server ID.
Create	Displays a dialog box where you can create a new entry under the selected server ID.

### Server Address (Confirm/Change, Create)

#### Purpose:

To view or edit the server address entries on the **Server Address** page, or create a new entry. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click **Confirm / Change** or **Create** on the **Server Address** top page.

#### Values:

ID	Displays the selected server ID.
Name	Allows you to view or change the server name assigned to the server ID, or enter a new server name.
Server Type	Allows you to view the server type if you click <b>Confirm / Change</b> . Allows you to edit the server type if you click <b>Create</b> . <b>FTP</b> <sup>*1</sup> Select this to store scanned documents on a server via the FTP protocol. <b>SMB</b> <sup>*1</sup> Select this to store scanned documents on a computer via the Server Message Block (SMB) protocol.
Server Address	Allows you to view or edit the server address registered under the server ID, or enter a new server address.
Share Name <sup>*2</sup>	Allows you to view or edit the assigned shared name, or enter a new shared name, when <b>Server Type</b> is set to <b>SMB</b> .
Server Path	Allows you to view or edit the assigned server path, or enter a new path.
Server Port Number	Allows you to view or edit the assigned server port number, or enter a new port number. If you leave the text box blank, the default port number (FTP: 21, SMB: 139) will be used.
Login Name	Allows you to view or edit the login name that is required to access the selected protocol, or enter a new login name.
Login Password	Allows you to view or edit the password that is required to access the selected protocol, or enter a new password.
Re-enter Password	Confirms the set password.
Delete <sup>*3</sup>	Click this button to delete the current entry.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Restore Settings	Click this button to restore the previous settings.
Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

- 
- \*1 You can edit this item only when you click **Create**.
  - \*2 This item is available only when **Server Type** is set to **SMB**.
  - \*3 This item is available only when you click **Confirm / Change**.
- 

### ***Server Address (Delete)***

#### **Purpose:**

To delete the server address entries registered on the **Server Address** page. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click **Delete** on the **Server Address** top page.

#### **Values:**

<b>ID</b>	Displays the selected server ID.
<b>Name</b>	Displays the name assigned for the server ID.
<b>Server Address</b>	Displays the server address registered under the server ID.
<b>Apply New Settings</b>	Click this button to apply the new settings.
<b>Back</b>	Click this button to return to the top page.

### **Phone Book**

The **Phone Book** page includes the following subpages.

<b>FAX Speed Dial</b>	Allows you to view, edit, or create speed dial entries.
<b>FAX Group</b>	Allows you to view, edit, or create fax group entries.

### ***FAX Speed Dial***

#### **Purpose:**

To view the fax number entries registered on the **FAX Speed Dial** page.

#### **Values:**

<b>Speed Dial List to:</b>	Selecting each button displays a list of entries for the group of speed dial codes indicated on the button.
<b>Speed Dial</b>	Displays the speed dial ID.
<b>Name</b>	Displays the assigned name for a speed dial ID.
<b>Phone Number</b>	Displays the speed dial code. <b>(Not in Use)</b> is displayed when there is no registration.
<b>Delete</b>	Deletes the entry for the selected speed dial code.
<b>Confirm / Change</b>	Displays a dialog box where you can edit the entry for the selected speed dial code.
<b>Create</b>	Displays a dialog box where you can create a new entry under the selected speed dial code.

### ***FAX Speed Dial (Confirm/Change, Create)***

#### **Purpose:**

To view or edit the speed dial entries on the **FAX Speed Dial** page, or create a new entry. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click **Confirm / Change** or **Create** on the **FAX Speed Dial** top page.

#### **Values:**

<b>Speed Dial</b>	Displays the selected speed dial code.
-------------------	--

Name	Allows you to view or edit the name of an entry registered under the speed dial code, or enter a name for the new entry.
Phone Number	Allows you to view or edit the fax number of an entry registered under the speed dial code, or enter a fax number for the new entry.
Delete <sup>*1</sup>	Click this button to delete the entry for the speed dial code. This button is available only on the dialog box for editing an existing entry.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Restore Settings	Click this button to restore the previous settings.
Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

<sup>\*1</sup> This item is available only when you click **Confirm / Change**.

### ***FAX Speed Dial (Delete)***

#### **Purpose:**

To delete the speed dial entries registered on the **FAX Speed Dial** page. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click **Delete** on the **FAX Speed Dial** top page.

#### **Values:**

Speed Dial	Displays the selected speed dial code.
Name	Displays the name registered under the speed dial code.
Phone Number	Displays the fax number registered under the speed dial code.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

### ***FAX Group***

#### **Purpose:**

To view the fax group entries registered on the **FAX Group** page.

#### **Values:**

ID	Displays a fax group ID.
Name	Displays the assigned group name. <b>(Not in Use)</b> is displayed when there is no registration.
Delete	Deletes the entry for the selected group ID.
Confirm / Change	Displays a dialog box where you can edit the entry for the selected group ID.
Create	Displays a dialog box where you can create a new entry under the selected group ID.

### ***FAX Group (Confirm/Change, Create)***

#### **Purpose:**

To view or edit the fax number group entries on the **FAX Group** page, or create a new entry. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click **Confirm / Change** or **Create** on the **FAX Group** top page.

#### **Values:**

FAX Group	ID	Displays the selected group ID.
	Name	Allows you to view or edit the name assigned for the group ID, or enter a new group name.
	Delete <sup>*1</sup>	Click this button to delete the current entry.

FAX Speed Dial	Speed Dial List to:	Selecting each button displays a list of entries for the group of speed dial codes indicated on the button.
	Speed Dial	Displays the speed dial code. Select the check box on the left to add the speed dial code in the group.
	Name	Displays the name registered for the speed dial code. (Not in Use) is displayed when there is no registration.
	Phone Number	Allows you to view or edit the fax number of an entry registered under the selected speed dial code, or enter a fax number for the new entry.
	Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
	Restore Settings	Click this button to restore the previous settings.
	Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

\*1 This item is available only when you click **Confirm / Change**.

### **FAX Group (Delete)**

#### **Purpose:**

To delete the fax number group entries registered on the **FAX Group** page. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click **Delete** on the **FAX Group** top page.

#### **Values:**

ID	Displays the selected group ID.
Name	Displays the name assigned for the group ID.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

### **Tray Management**

Use the **Tray Management** menu to set the paper size and type of paper loaded in tray1 and the optional 550-sheet feeder.

#### **Values:**

MPF Use Driver Settings for Print Job	Sets whether to use the printer driver settings for the size and type of paper loaded in the MPF.
MPF Paper Size <sup>*1</sup>	Sets the size of paper loaded in the MPF.
MPF Paper Type <sup>*1</sup>	Sets the type of paper loaded in the MPF.
MPF Custom Paper Size - Y <sup>*1</sup>	Sets the length of custom size paper loaded in the MPF.
MPF Custom Paper Size - X <sup>*1</sup>	Sets the width of custom size paper loaded in the MPF.
MPF Display Tray Prompt <sup>*1</sup>	Sets whether to display a popup message that prompts the user to set the paper size and type when the paper is loaded in the MPF.
Tray 1 Paper Size	Sets the size of paper loaded in tray1.
Tray 1 Paper Type	Sets the type of paper loaded in tray1.
Tray 1 Custom Paper Size - Y	Sets the length of custom size paper loaded in tray1.
Tray 1 Custom Paper Size - X	Sets the width of custom size paper loaded in tray1.


Tray 1 Display Tray Prompt	Sets whether to display a popup message that prompts the user to set the paper size and type when the paper is loaded in tray1.
Tray 2 Paper Size <sup>*2</sup>	Sets the size of paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.
Tray 2 Paper Type <sup>*2</sup>	Sets the type of paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.
Tray 2 Custom Paper Size - Y <sup>*2</sup>	Sets the length of custom size paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.
Tray 2 Custom Paper Size - X <sup>*2</sup>	Sets the width of custom size paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.
Tray 2 Display Tray Prompt <sup>*2</sup>	Sets whether to display a popup message that prompts the user to set the paper size and type when the paper is loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.
1st Priority	Sets the paper source to be used as the first priority.
2nd Priority	Sets the paper source to be used as the second priority.
3rd Priority <sup>*2</sup>	Sets the paper source to be used as the third priority.

<sup>\*1</sup> This item is available only when **Off** in **MPF Use Driver Settings for Print Job** is selected.

<sup>\*2</sup> This item is available only when the optional 550-sheet feeder is installed.

## Understanding the Tool Box Menus


The Tool Box allows you to view, specify, and diagnose the system settings.


 **NOTE:** A Password dialog box appears the first time you try to change settings on Tool Box when Panel Lock is set on the printer. In this case, input the password that you have already specified, and click OK to apply the settings.

### Starting the Tool Box

- 1 Click Start→ All Programs→ Dell Printers→ Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer→ Tool Box.  
The screen to select the printer appears.

- 2 Click Network Connection or USB Connection, and then select the printer listed in Select From the Found Printers.

 **NOTE:** If the printer is not listed in **Select From the Found Printers** when you click **Network Connection**, click **Directly Input IP Address/Host Name** and enter the IP address of the printer. For details about how to verify the IP address of the printer, see "Verifying the IP Settings."

 **NOTE:** On Microsoft® Windows® XP or Windows Server® 2003, printers using IPv6 addresses cannot be detected.

- 3 Click OK.

The Tool Box opens.

The Tool Box consists of the Printer Setting Reports, Printer Maintenance, and Diagnosis tabs.

### Printer Setting Reports

The Printer Setting Reports tab includes the Printer Information, Menu Settings, Reports, TCP/IP Settings, Tray Settings, Default Settings, Fax Settings, and Panel Language pages.

#### Printer Information

**Purpose:**

To display the system information of the printer.

**Values:**

Dell Service Tag Number	Displays the service tag number of your printer.
Express Service Code	Displays the express service code number.
Printer Serial Number	Displays the serial number of your printer.
Printer Type	Displays the type of printing for the printer. Color Laser is displayed normally.
Asset Tag Number	Displays the asset tag number of your printer.
Memory Capacity	Displays the memory capacity.
Processor Speed	Displays the processing speed.
Firmware Version	Displays the version of the controller.
Network Firmware Version	Displays the NIC version.
MCU Firmware Version	Displays the version of the Machine Control Unit (MCU) firmware.
Color Printing Speed	Displays the speed for color printing.
Monochrome Printing Speed	Displays the speed for monochrome printing.

## Menu Settings

### Purpose:

To display the menu settings of the printer.

### Values:

System Settings - General	Power Saver Timer - Sleep	Displays the amount of transition time to the Sleep mode after the printer finishes a job.
	Power Saver Timer - Deep Sleep	Displays the amount of transition time between the Sleep mode and the Deep Sleep mode.
	Time Zone	Displays the selected time zone.
	Set Date	Displays the date setting.
	Set Time	Displays the time setting.
	Date Format	Displays the selected date format.
	Time Format	Displays the selected time format; <b>24 Hour</b> or <b>12 Hour</b> .
	mm / inch	Displays the measurement unit used on the operator panel.
	Low Toner Alert Message	Displays whether to show the alert message when the toner is low.
	OffHook Wake Up	Displays whether to wake up from Sleep or Deep Sleep mode when you pick up the handset of the external telephone.
	Auto Log Print	Displays whether to automatically print a job history report after every 20 jobs.
	RAM Disk <sup>*1</sup>	Displays whether to allocate RAM for the disk file system for the Secure Print, Private Mail Box Print, Public Mail Box Print, and Proof Print features.
	Fax Server Address Book	Displays whether to specify the fax numbers from the Address Book for the LDAP server.
	E-mail Server Address Book	Displays whether to specify the e-mail addresses from the Address Book for the LDAP server.
System Settings - Audio Tone	Control Panel Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the operator panel input is correct. <b>Off</b> indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Invalid Key Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the operator panel input is incorrect. <b>Off</b> indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Machine Ready Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the printer becomes ready. <b>Off</b> indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Copy Completed Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when a copy job is complete. <b>Off</b> indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Job Completed Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when a job other than copying is complete. <b>Off</b> indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Fault Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when a job ends abnormally. <b>Off</b> indicates that the tone is disabled.

	<b>Alert Tone</b>	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when a problem occurs. <b>Off</b> indicates that the tone is disabled.
	<b>Out of Paper Alert Tone</b>	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the printer runs out of paper. <b>Off</b> indicates that the tone is disabled.
	<b>Low Toner Alert Tone</b>	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the toner is low. <b>Off</b> indicates that the tone is disabled.
	<b>Auto Clear Alert Tone</b>	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted 5 seconds before the printer performs auto clear. <b>Off</b> indicates that the tone is disabled.
System Settings - Timers	<b>Auto Reset</b>	Displays the amount of time before the printer automatically resets the settings on the operator panel to the defaults when no additional settings are made.
	<b>Fault Time-out</b>	Displays the amount of time the printer waits before canceling a job that stops abnormally.
	<b>Job Time-out</b>	Displays the amount of time the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer.
System Settings - Output Settings	<b>Default Paper Size</b>	Displays the default paper size.
	<b>Print ID</b>	Displays where to print a user ID on the output paper.
	<b>Print Text</b>	Displays whether the printer outputs PDL (Page Description Language) data (which is not supported by the printer) as text when the printer receives it.
	<b>Banner Sheet Insert Position</b>	Displays where to insert the banner sheet.
	<b>Banner Sheet Specify Tray</b>	Displays the banner sheet tray.
	<b>Substitute Tray</b>	Displays an indication to use paper of a different size when the paper that is loaded in the specified tray does not match the paper size settings for the current job.
	<b>Letterhead 2 Sided</b>	Displays whether to print on both sides of a sheet of letterhead paper.
	<b>Enable A4&lt;&gt;Letter Switch</b>	Displays whether to print A4 size jobs on Letter size paper if A4 is not available in the paper trays and vice versa (Letter size job on A4 size paper).
	<b>Report 2 Sided Print</b>	Displays whether to print reports on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	<b>Use Another Tray</b>	Displays whether to show a message to select another tray when the specified paper is not available in the paper tray.
Service Tools - Paper Density	<b>Plain</b>	Displays the plain paper density settings.
	<b>Label</b>	Displays the label paper density settings.
Service Tools - Auto Registration Adjustment	<b>Auto Registration Adjustment</b>	Displays whether to automatically adjust color registration.
Service Tools - Non-Dell Toner	<b>Non-Dell Toner</b>	Displays whether to use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.
Service Tools - Adjust Altitude	<b>Adjust Altitude</b>	Displays the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.

\*1 This item is not available when the optional hard disk is installed.

## Reports

### Purpose:

To print the settings and history information of the printer.

The reports are printed in the paper size specified in system settings.

### Values:

System Settings	Click this button to print a detailed list of the system settings.
Panel Settings	Click this button to print a detailed list of the panel settings.
PCL Fonts List	Click this button to print a list of the PCL (Hewlett-Packard Printer Control Language) fonts.
PCL Macros List	Click this button to print a list of the PCL Macro.
PS Fonts List	Click this button to print a list of the PS fonts.
PDF Fonts List	Click this button to print a list of the PDF fonts.
Job History	Click this button to print the Completed Jobs history of the printer.
Error History	Click this button to print the error history of the printer.
Print Meter	Click this button to print the report for the total number of pages printed.
Color Test Page	Click this button to print a color test page.
Protocol Monitor	Click this button to print the Protocol Monitor report.
Speed Dial	Click this button to print a list of all the members stored as speed dial numbers.
Email Address Book	Click this button to print a list of all the addresses stored as address book information.
Server Address	Click this button to print a list of all the members stored as server address information.
Fax Activity	Click this button to print the report of faxes recently received or sent.
Fax Pending	Click this button to print a list of status of pending faxes.
Stored Documents <sup>*1</sup>	Click this button to print a list of the Stored Documents.

<sup>\*1</sup> You can print the list only when the RAM disk is enabled or the optional hard disk is installed.

## TCP/IP Settings

### Purpose:

To display the current settings of TCP/IP (Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol).

### Values:

IPv4	IP Address Mode	Displays the method for acquiring the IP address.
	IP Address	Displays the IP address of the printer.
	Subnet Mask	Displays the subnet mask.
	Gateway Address	Displays the gateway address.
IPv6	Use Manual Address	Displays whether to set the IP address manually.
	Manual Address	Displays the IP address of the printer.
	Link Local Address	Displays the link local address.

## Tray Settings

### Purpose:

To display the tray settings of the printer.

### Values:

Tray Settings	MPF Display Tray Prompt	Displays a popup menu that prompts to set the paper size and type when paper is loaded in the multipurpose feeder (MPF).
	MPF Use Driver Settings for Print Job	Displays whether to use the printer driver settings for the size and type of paper loaded in the MPF.
	MPF Paper Size	Displays the paper size setting of the MPF.
	MPF Custom Size - Y	Displays the length of custom size paper loaded in the MPF.
	MPF Custom Size - X	Displays the width of custom size paper loaded in the MPF.
	MPF Paper Type	Displays the paper type setting of the MPF.
	Tray 1 Display Tray Prompt	Displays a popup menu that prompts to set the paper size and type when paper is loaded in tray1.
	Tray 1 Paper Size	Displays the paper size setting of tray1.
	Tray 1 Custom Size - Y	Displays the length of custom size paper loaded in tray1.
	Tray 1 Custom Size - X	Displays the width of custom size paper loaded in tray1.
	Tray 1 Paper Type	Displays the paper type setting of tray1.
	Tray 2 Display Tray Prompt <sup>*1</sup>	Displays a popup menu that prompts to set the paper size and type when paper is loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder (tray2).
	Tray 2 Paper Size <sup>*1</sup>	Displays the paper size setting of the optional 550-sheet feeder.
	Tray 2 Custom Size - Y <sup>*1</sup>	Displays the length of custom size paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.
Tray 2 Custom Size - X <sup>*1</sup>	Displays the width of custom size paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.	
Tray 2 Paper Type <sup>*1</sup>	Displays the paper type setting of the optional 550-sheet feeder.	
Tray Priority	Tray Priority	Displays the priority order of the paper trays.

<sup>\*1</sup> This item is available only when the optional 550-sheet feeder is installed.

## Default Settings

### Purpose:

To display the default settings for the Copy, Scan, Fax, and USB Direct Print functions of the printer.

### Values:

Copy Defaults	Output Color	Displays whether to make copies in color or in black and white.
	Select Tray	Displays the input tray.
	Collation	Displays whether to sort the copy job.
	Reduce / Enlarge	Displays the default copy reduction/enlargement ratio.
	Original Size	Displays the paper size of the original document.
	Original Type	Displays the type of the original document.
	Darken / Lighten	Displays the default copy density level.
	Sharpness	Displays the default sharpness level.

	<b>Color Saturation</b>	Displays the default color saturation level.
	<b>Auto Exposure</b>	Displays whether to suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.
	<b>Auto Exposure Level</b>	Displays the background suppression level.
	<b>Color Balance (Yellow Low)</b>	Displays the color balance level of low density yellow.
	<b>Color Balance (Yellow Medium)</b>	Displays the color balance level of medium density yellow.
	<b>Color Balance (Yellow High)</b>	Displays the color balance level of high density yellow.
	<b>Color Balance (Magenta Low)</b>	Displays the color balance level of low density magenta.
	<b>Color Balance (Magenta Medium)</b>	Displays the color balance level of medium density magenta.
	<b>Color Balance (Magenta High)</b>	Displays the color balance level of high density magenta.
	<b>Color Balance (Cyan Low)</b>	Displays the color balance level of low density cyan.
	<b>Color Balance (Cyan Medium)</b>	Displays the color balance level of medium density cyan.
	<b>Color Balance (Cyan High)</b>	Displays the color balance level of high density cyan.
	<b>Color Balance (Black Low)</b>	Displays the color balance level of low density black.
	<b>Color Balance (Black Medium)</b>	Displays the color balance level of medium density black.
	<b>Color Balance (Black High)</b>	Displays the color balance level of high density black.
	<b>2 Sided Copying</b>	Displays whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	<b>2-Up</b>	Displays whether the Multiple-Up feature is enabled.
	<b>Margin Top / Bottom</b>	Displays the value of the top and bottom margins.
	<b>Margin Left / Right</b>	Displays the value of the left and right margins.
	<b>Margin Middle</b>	Displays the value of the middle margin.
<b>Scan Defaults</b>	<b>File Format</b>	Displays the file format in which scanned documents are to be saved.
	<b>Output Color</b>	Displays whether to scan in color or in black and white.
	<b>Resolution</b>	Displays the default scan resolution.
	<b>Original Size</b>	Displays the paper size of the original document.
	<b>2 Sided Scanning</b>	Displays whether to scan both sides of a document.
	<b>Darken / Lighten</b>	Displays the default scan density level.
	<b>Sharpness</b>	Displays the default sharpness level.
	<b>Contrast</b>	Displays the default contrast level.
	<b>Auto Exposure</b>	Displays whether to suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.
	<b>Auto Exposure Level</b>	Displays the background suppression level.
	<b>Margin Top / Bottom</b>	Displays the value of the top and bottom margins.

	<b>Margin Left / Right</b>	Displays the value of the left and right margins.
	<b>Margin Middle</b>	Displays the value of the middle margin.
	<b>TIFF File Format</b>	Displays the TIFF file format; <b>TIFF V6</b> or <b>TTN2</b> .
	<b>Image Compression</b>	Displays the image compression level.
	<b>Max E-mail Size</b>	Displays the maximum size of e-mail that can be sent.
	<b>File Naming Mode</b>	Displays the mode used to name scanned documents.
	<b>Create Folder</b>	Displays the folder to which scanned documents are to be saved.
<b>Fax Defaults</b>	<b>Resolution</b>	Displays the resolution level to be used for fax transmission.
	<b>2 Sided Scanning</b>	Displays whether to scan both sides of a document.
	<b>Darken / Lighten</b>	Displays the density level to be used for fax transmission.
	<b>Delayed Send</b>	Displays the fax transmission start time.
<b>USB Direct Print Defaults</b>	<b>Output Color</b>	Displays the default color mode.
	<b>Select Tray</b>	Displays the default tray.
	<b>2 Sided Printing</b>	Displays whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	<b>Multiple-Up</b>	Displays the default paper layout when <b>Multiple-Up</b> is selected.
	<b>Collation</b>	Displays whether to sort the print job.

## Fax Settings

### Purpose:

To display the fax settings of the printer.

### Values:

<b>Fax Number</b>	Displays the fax number of the printer, which will be printed on the header of faxes.
<b>Country</b>	Displays the country where the printer is used.
<b>Fax Header Name</b>	Displays the name of the sender that will be printed on the header of faxes.
<b>Line Type</b>	Displays the line type; <b>PSTN</b> or <b>PBX</b> .
<b>Line Monitor</b>	Displays the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.
<b>DRPD Pattern</b>	Displays the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) setting.
<b>Receive Mode</b>	Displays the fax receiving mode.
<b>Ring Tone Volume</b>	Displays the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when <b>Receive Mode</b> is set to <b>Telephone / Fax</b> .
<b>Auto Receive Fax</b>	Displays the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call.
<b>Auto Receive Tel/Fax</b>	Displays the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call.
<b>Auto Receive Ans/Fax</b>	Displays the interval at which the printer goes into the fax mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call.
<b>Junk Fax Setup</b>	Displays whether to reject faxes sent from unwanted stations.
<b>Sent Fax Forward</b>	Displays whether to forward incoming faxes to a specified destination.
<b>Fax Forwarding Number</b>	Displays the fax number of the destination to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.

2 Sided Printing	Displays whether to print the received fax on both sides of a sheet of paper.
Remote Receive	Displays whether to receive faxes by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.
Remote Receive Tone	Displays the tone to start <b>Remote Receive</b> .
Discard Size	Displays whether to delete text or images at the bottom of a fax page when the entire page does not fit onto the output paper.
Redial Attempts	Displays the number of redial attempts.
Interval of Redial	Displays the redial interval.
Resend Delay	Displays the interval between transmission attempts.
Tone / Pulse	Displays whether to use tone or pulse dialing.
Prefix Dial	Displays whether to set a prefix dial number.
Prefix Dial Number	Displays a prefix dial number. This number dials before any auto dial number is started. It is useful for accessing the Private Automatic Branch Exchange (PABX).
Fax Cover Page	Displays whether to attach a cover page to faxes.
Fax Header <sup>*1</sup>	Displays whether to print the information of the sender on the header of faxes.
ECM	Displays whether the Error Correction Mode (ECM) is enabled.
Modem Speed	Displays the fax modem speed when a fax transmission or reception error occurs.
Display Manual Fax Recipients	Displays whether to show the fax number of the recipient on the <b>Sending Fax</b> screen when manually sending a fax.
Fax Activity	Displays whether to automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.
Fax Transmit	Displays whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.
Fax Broadcast	Displays whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission to multiple destinations or only when an error occurs.
Fax Protocol	Displays whether to automatically print a protocol monitor report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.

\*1 This item is not available when **Country** is set to **United States**.

## Panel Language

Purpose:

To display the panel language setting of the printer.

Values:

Panel Language	Displays the language that is used on the touch panel.
----------------	--

## Printer Maintenance

The Printer Maintenance tab includes the System Settings - General, System Settings - Timers, System Settings - Output Settings, Service Tools, Tray Management, Panel Language, TCP/IP Settings, Network Settings, Copy Defaults, Scan Defaults, Fax Defaults, USB Direct Print Defaults, and Fax Settings pages.

### System Settings - General


#### Purpose:

To configure the power management of the printer, date and time, mm/inch setting, alarm tones, job log auto print, and setting of the additional memory.

#### Values:

Power Saver Timer	Sleep <sup>*1</sup>	Available Range: 1–60 minutes	Sets the amount of transition time to the Sleep mode after the printer finishes a job.
	Deep Sleep <sup>*1</sup>	Available Range: 1–60 minutes	Sets the amount of transition time between the Sleep mode and the Deep Sleep mode.
Date & Time	Time Zone Settings		Click to display the <b>Time Zone Settings</b> dialog box. Select the geographic region and time zone, and then click <b>OK</b> .
	Time Zone		Displays the time zone selected on the <b>Time Zone Settings</b> dialog box.
	Set Date		Sets the date.
	Date Format		Sets the date format.
	Set Time		Sets the time. You can select <b>AM</b> or <b>PM</b> when <b>Time Format</b> is set to <b>12 Hour</b> .
	Time Format		Sets the time format in <b>24 Hour</b> or <b>12 Hour</b> .
mm / inch	Millimeters(mm)		Selects millimeter or inch as the default measurement unit.
	Inches(″)		
Audio Tone	Control Panel Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when the operator panel input is correct.
		Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the operator panel input is correct.
		Normal	
		Loud	
	Invalid Key Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when the operator panel input is incorrect.
		Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the operator panel input is incorrect.
		Normal	
		Loud	
	Machine Ready Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when the printer becomes ready.
		Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the printer becomes ready.
		Normal	
		Loud	

Copy Completed Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when copying is complete.
	Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume when copying is complete.
	Normal	
	Loud	
Job Completed Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when any other job except copying is complete.
	Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume when any other job except copying is complete.
	Normal	
	Loud	
Fault Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when a job ends abnormally.
	Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume when a job ends abnormally.
	Normal	
	Loud	
Alert Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when a problem occurs.
	Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume when a problem occurs.
	Normal	
	Loud	
Out of Paper Alert Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when the printer runs out of paper.
	Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the printer runs out of paper.
	Normal	
	Loud	
Low Toner Alert Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when the toner is low.
	Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the toner is low.
	Normal	
	Loud	
Auto Clear Alert Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone before the printer performs auto clear.
	Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume 5 seconds before the printer performs auto clear.
	Normal	
	Loud	
Low Toner Alert Message	On	Shows the alert message when the toner is low.
	Off	Does not show the alert message when the toner is low.
OffHook Wake Up	Off	Does not wake up from Sleep or Deep Sleep mode when you pick up the handset of the external telephone.
	On	Wake up from Sleep or Deep Sleep mode when you pick up the handset of the external telephone.
Auto Log Print	Off	Does not automatically print a job history report after every 20 jobs.
	On	Automatically prints a job history report after every 20 jobs.

RAM Disk <sup>*2</sup>	Off	Does not allocate RAM for the disk file system. Secure Print, Private Mail Box Print, Public Mail Box Print, and Proof Print jobs will abort and be recorded to the job log.
	Available Range: 50–100MBytes	Allocates RAM for the disk file system automatically. (in 50 MB increments)
	Available Range: 50–600MBytes <sup>*3</sup>	
Fax Server Address Book	On	Enables the server address book for fax numbers.
	Off	Disables the server address book for fax numbers.
E-mail Server Address Book	On	Enables the server address book for e-mail addresses.
	Off	Disables the server address book for e-mail addresses.
Apply New Settings		After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new settings		Click this button to apply the changes.
<p><sup>*1</sup> When you specify 1 minute for <b>Sleep</b>, the printer enters power saver mode 1 minute after it finishes a job. This uses much less energy, but requires more warm-up time for the printer. Specify 1 minute if your printer shares an electrical circuit with room lighting and you notice lights flickering.  Select a high value if your printer is in constant use. Under most circumstances, this keeps the printer ready to operate with minimum warm-up time.  Select a value between 1 and 60 minutes for the power saver mode if you want a balance between energy consumption and a shorter warm-up period.  The printer automatically returns to the standby mode from the power saver mode when it receives data from the computer. You can also return the printer to the standby mode by pressing the  (<b>Power Saver</b>) button on the operator panel.</p> <p><sup>*2</sup> This item is not available when the optional hard disk is installed.</p> <p><sup>*3</sup> When the optional 512MB memory module is installed.</p>		

## System Settings - Timers

### Purpose:

To configure the auto clear time and time-out time.

### Values:

Auto Reset	45 seconds	Sets the amount of time before the printer automatically resets the settings on the operator panel to the defaults when no additional settings are made.
	1 minute	
	2 minutes	
	3 minutes	
	4 minutes	
Fault Time-out	0	Sets the amount of time the printer waits before canceling a job when the job stops abnormally.
	Available Range: 3–300 seconds	
Job Time-out	0	Sets the amount of time the printer waits for additional data from the computer before it cancels the job.
	Available Range: 5–300 seconds	
Apply New Settings		After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new settings		Click this button to apply the changes.

## System Settings - Output Settings

### Purpose:

To configure the setting of the print ID, substitute tray, and other settings.

### Values:

Default Paper Size	A4 (210x297mm)	Sets the default paper size.
	Letter (8.5x11")	
Print ID	Off	Does not print the user ID.
	Top Left	Prints the user ID on the specified location.
	Top Right	
	Bottom Left	
	Bottom Right	
Print Text	Off	Does not print the received PDL data as text data.
	On	Prints the received PDL data as text data.
Banner Sheet Insert Position	Off	Does not insert the banner sheet.
	Front	Sets where to insert the banner sheet.
	Back	
	Front & Back	
Banner Sheet Specify Tray	MPF	Sets the tray for the banner sheet.
	Tray 1	
	Tray 2 <sup>*1</sup>	
Substitute Tray	Off	No tray size substitute accepted.
	Larger Size	Substitutes paper of next largest size. When there is no larger paper size, the printer substitutes paper of nearest size.
	Nearest Size	Substitutes paper of nearest size.
	Use MPF	Substitutes paper from the MPF.
Letterhead 2 Sided	Disable	Does not print on both sides of a sheet of letterhead paper.
	Enable	Prints on both sides of a sheet of letterhead paper.
Enable A4<>Letter Switch	On	Prints A4 size jobs on Letter size paper if A4 is not available in the paper trays and vice versa (Letter size job on A4 size paper).
	Off	Does not print A4 size jobs on Letter size paper or Letter size jobs on A4 paper.
Report 2 Sided Print	1 Sided	Prints reports on one side of a sheet of paper.
	2 Sided	Prints reports on both sides of a sheet of paper.
Use Another Tray	On	Sets to show a message to select another tray when the specified paper is not available in the paper tray.
	Off	Does not print on other paper sizes in other paper trays if the paper size specified in the job is not available.
Apply New Settings		After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new settings		Click this button to apply the changes.

<sup>\*1</sup> This item is available only when the optional 550-sheet feeder is installed.

## Service Tools

 **CAUTION:** Using a non-Dell™ toner cartridge may severely damage your printer. The warranty does not cover damages caused by using non-Dell toner cartridges.

### Purpose:

To configure the paper density, the color registration adjustments, the initialization of the printer, and other settings.

### Values:

Paper Density	Plain	Light Normal	Sets plain paper density.	
	Label	Light Normal	Sets label paper density.	
Color Registration Adjustments	Auto Correct		Click <b>Start</b> to perform color registration automatically.	
	Print Color Regi Chart		Click <b>Start</b> to print a color registration chart.	
	Registration Adjustments	LY(Left Yellow)	Available Range: -9 to +9	Sets lateral (perpendicular to paper feed direction) and process (paper feed direction) color adjustment values that are found in the color registration chart individually for Yellow, Magenta, and Cyan.
		LM(Left Magenta)	Available Range: -9 to +9	
		LC(Left Cyan)	Available Range: -9 to +9	
		RY(Right Yellow)	Available Range: -9 to +9	
		RM(Right Magenta)	Available Range: -9 to +9	
		RC(Right Cyan)	Available Range: -9 to +9	
		PY(Process Yellow)	Available Range: -9 to +9	
		PM(Process Magenta)	Available Range: -9 to +9	
PC(Process Cyan)	Available Range: -9 to +9			
Reset Defaults	User Fax Section		Initializes the fax number entries in the Address Book.	
	User Scan Section		Initializes the e-mail and server address entries in the Address Book.	
	System Section		Initializes the system parameters.	
Initialize Print Meter			Click <b>Initialize Print Meter</b> to initialize the Print Meter.	
Non-Dell Toner	Off		Disables the use of another manufacturer's toner cartridge.	
	On		Enables the use of another manufacturer's toner cartridge.	

Adjust Altitude	0 meter	Sets the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.
	1000 meters	
	2000 meters	
	3000 meters	
Apply New Settings		After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new settings		Click this button to apply the changes.

## Tray Management

### Purpose:

To specify the paper types and sizes, and the tray priority for the MPF, tray1, and the optional 550-sheet feeder respectively.

### Values:

Tray Settings	MPF Display Tray Prompt	On	Displays a popup message that prompts the user to set Paper Type and Paper Size when the paper is loaded in the MPF.
		Off	
	MPF Use Driver Settings for Print Job	On	Sets whether to use the printer driver settings for the size and type of paper loaded in the MPF.
		Off	
	MPF Paper Size <sup>*1</sup>	A4 (210x297mm)	Sets the size of paper loaded in the MPF.
		A5 (148x210mm)	
		B5 (182x257mm)	
		Letter (8.5x11")	
		Folio (8.5x13")	
		Legal (8.5x14")	
		Executive (7.3x10.5")	
		Envelope #10 (4.1x9.5")	
		Monarch Env. (3.9x7.5")	
		DL Env. (110x220mm)	
		C5 Env. (162x229mm)	
		Custom Size	
MPF Custom Size - Y <sup>*1</sup>	Available Range: 127–355 mm (5.0–14.0 inches)	Sets the length of custom size paper loaded in the MPF.	
MPF Custom Size - X <sup>*1</sup>	Available Range: 77–215 mm (3.0–8.5 inches)	Sets the width of custom size paper loaded in the MPF.	
	MPF Paper Type <sup>*1</sup>	Plain	Sets the type of paper loaded in the MPF.
		Plain Thick	
		Covers(106–163g/m <sup>2</sup> )	
		Covers Thick(164–216g/m <sup>2</sup> )	
		Coated(106–163g/m <sup>2</sup> )	
		Coated Thick(164–216g/m <sup>2</sup> )	
		Label	
		Envelope	

	Recycled	
	Letterhead	
	Preprinted	
	Prepunched	
	Color	
	Plain - Side 2	
	Color - Side 2	
	Plain Thick - Side 2	
	Recycled - Side 2	
Tray 1 Display Tray Prompt	On Off	Displays a popup message that prompts the user to set Paper Type and Paper Size when the paper is loaded in tray1.
Tray 1 Paper Size	A4 (210x297mm) A5 (148x210mm) B5 (182x257mm) Letter (8.5x11") Folio (8.5x13") Legal (8.5x14") Executive (7.3x10.5") Custom Size	Sets the size of paper loaded in tray1.
Tray 1 Custom Size - Y	Available Range: 210–355 mm (8.3–14.0 inches)	Sets the length of custom size paper loaded in tray1.
Tray 1 Custom Size - X	Available Range: 148–215 mm (5.8–8.5 inches)	Sets the width of custom size paper loaded in tray1.
Tray 1 Paper Type	Plain Plain Thick Covers(106–163g/m <sup>2</sup> ) Covers Thick(164–216g/m <sup>2</sup> ) Coated(106–163g/m <sup>2</sup> ) Coated Thick(164–216g/m <sup>2</sup> ) Recycled Letterhead Preprinted Prepunched Color Plain - Side 2 Color - Side 2 Plain Thick - Side 2 Recycled - Side 2	Sets the type of paper loaded in tray1.
Tray 2 Display Tray Prompt <sup>*2</sup>	On Off	Displays a popup message that prompts the user to set Paper Type and Paper Size when the paper is loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.

Tray 2 Paper Size <sup>*2</sup>	Auto Sensed	Sets the size of paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.
	Custom Size	
Tray 2 Custom Size - Y <sup>*2</sup>	Available Range: 210–355 mm (8.3–14.0 inches)	Sets the length of custom size paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.
Tray 2 Custom Size - X <sup>*2</sup>	Available Range: 148–215 mm (5.8–8.5 inches)	Sets the width of custom size paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.
Tray 2 Paper Type <sup>*2</sup>	Plain	Sets the type of paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.
	Plain Thick	
	Covers(106–163g/m <sup>2</sup> )	
	Covers Thick(164–216g/m <sup>2</sup> )	
	Coated(106–163g/m <sup>2</sup> )	
	Coated Thick(164–216g/m <sup>2</sup> )	
	Recycled	
	Letterhead	
	Preprinted	
	Prepunched	
	Color	
	Plain - Side 2	
	Color - Side 2	
Plain Thick - Side 2		
Recycled - Side 2		


Tray Priority	MPF->Tray1	Sets the priority order of the paper trays.
	Tray1->MPF	
	MPF->Tray1->Tray2 <sup>*2</sup>	
	MPF->Tray2 <sup>*2</sup> ->Tray1	
	Tray1->MPF->Tray2 <sup>*2</sup>	
	Tray1->Tray2 <sup>*2</sup> ->MPF	
	Tray2 <sup>*2</sup> ->MPF->Tray1	
	Tray2 <sup>*2</sup> ->Tray1->MPF	

Apply New Settings	After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
--------------------	--

Restart printer to apply new settings	Click this button to restart the printer and apply the changes.
---------------------------------------	---

\*1 This item is available only when **MPF Use Driver Settings for Print Job** is set to **Off**.

\*2 This item is available only when the optional 550-sheet feeder is installed.

 **NOTE:** For details about the paper density for paper types, see "Paper Type Specifications."

## Panel Language

### Purpose:

To determine the language of the text on the touch panel.

### Values:

Panel Language	English	Sets the language to be used on the touch panel.
	French	
	Italian	
	German	
	Spanish	
	Danish	
	Dutch	
	Norwegian	
Swedish		
Apply New Settings	After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.	
Restart printer to apply new settings	Click this button to apply the changes.	

## TCP/IP Settings



**NOTE:** TCP/IP Settings is not available when IP Mode of the printer is set to IPv6 Mode.

### Purpose:

To configure TCP/IP settings.

### Values:


IP Address Mode	AutoIP	Automatically sets the IP address.  A random value in the range of 169.254.1.0 to 169.254.254.255 that is not currently in use on the network is set as the IP address. The subnet mask is set as 255.255.0.0.
	BOOTP	Sets the IP address using BOOTP.
	RARP	Sets the IP address using RARP.
	DHCP	Sets the IP address using DHCP.
	Panel	Manually sets the IP address.
IP Address	Manually sets the IP address allocated to the printer.  It is allocated to the printer using the format nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn. Each octet that makes up nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn is a value in the range of 0 to 254. 127 and any value in the range of 224 to 254 cannot be specified for the first octet of a gateway address.	
Subnet Mask	Manually sets the subnet mask.  It is specified using the format nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn. Each octet that makes up nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn is a value in the range of 0 to 255. 255.255.255.255 cannot be specified as the subnet mask.	
Gateway Address	Manually sets the gateway address.  It is specified using the format nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn. Each octet that makes up nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn is a value in the range of 0 to 254. 127 and any value in the range of 224 to 254 cannot be specified for the first octet of a gateway address.	
Apply New Settings	After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.	

---

Restart printer to apply new settings      Click this button to restart the printer and apply the changes.

---

## Network Settings

 **NOTE:** Network Settings is not available when the printer is connected using a USB cable.

### Purpose:

To configure the setup of the printer using your web browser.

### Values:

Print Server Settings <sup>*1</sup>	Display	Click to display the Print Server Setup page on the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.
Display of Dell Configuration Web Tool	Off	Does not display the server settings for the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.
	On	Displays the server settings for the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.
Apply New Settings		After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new settings		Click this button to restart the printer and apply the changes.

<sup>\*1</sup> This item is available only when **Display of Dell Configuration Web Tool** is set to **On**.

---

## Copy Defaults

### Purpose:

To create your own copy settings.

### Values:

Output Color	Full Color	Prints in color mode.
	Black & White	Prints in black and white mode.
Select Tray	MPF	The paper is fed from the MPF.
	Tray 1	The paper is fed from tray1.
	Tray 2 <sup>*1</sup>	The paper is fed from the optional 550-sheet feeder.
Collation	Auto	Automatically sorts the copy job.
	Collated	Sorts the copy job.
	Uncollated	Does not sort the copy job.
Reduce / Enlarge mm series	100%	Does not enlarge or reduce the size of a copied image.
	50%	Sets the default reduction ratio.
	A4->A5 (70%)	
	B5->A5 (81%)	
	A5->B5 (122%)	Sets the default enlargement ratio.
	A5->A4 (141%)	
	200%	
	Custom	Sets the default enlargement / reduction ratio to a custom ratio.
inch series	100%	Does not enlarge or reduce the size of a copied image.
	50%	Sets the default reduction ratio.
	Ledger->Letter (64 %)	
	Legal->Letter (78 %)	

	Statement->Letter (129 %)	Sets the default enlargement ratio.
	Statement->Legal (154 %)	
	200%	
	Custom	Sets the default enlargement / reduction ratio to a custom ratio.
Custom Reduce / Enlarge	Available Range: 25–400%	Sets the custom enlargement / reduction ratio when you set <b>Reduce / Enlarge</b> to <b>Custom</b> .
Original Size	Auto	Sets the document size automatically.
	A4 (210x297mm)	Sets the document size.
	A5 (148x210mm)	
	B5 (182x257mm)	
	Letter (8.5x11")	
	Folio (8.5x13")	
	Legal (8.5x14")	
	Executive (7.3x10.5")	
Original Type	Photo & Text	Improves the image quality of documents with both text and photos.
	Text	Improves the image quality of documents with text.
	Photo	Improves the image quality of documents with photos.
Darken / Lighten	Darken +3	Makes the copy darker than the original. Works well with light documents or faint pencil markings.
	Darken +2	
	Darken +1	
	Normal	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
	Lighten +1	Makes the copy lighter than the original. Works well with dark documents.
	Lighten +2	
	Lighten +3	
Sharpness	Sharpen	Makes the copy sharper than the original.
	Normal	Does not make the copy sharper or softer than the original.
	Soften	Makes the copy softer than the original.
Color Saturation	High	Increases the color saturation to brighten the color of the copy.
	Normal	The color saturation is the same as the original.
	Low	Decreases the color saturation to lighten the color of the copy.
Auto Exposure	Off	Does not suppress the background.
	On	Suppresses the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.
Auto Exposure Level	Normal	Sets the background suppression level to <b>Normal</b> .
	High	Sets the background suppression level to <b>High</b> .
	Highest	Sets the background suppression level to <b>Highest</b> .
Color Balance	Yellow Low Density Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of low density yellow.

	Yellow Medium Density	Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of medium density yellow.	
	Yellow High Density	Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of high density yellow.	
	Magenta Low Density	Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of low density magenta.	
	Magenta Medium Density	Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of medium density magenta.	
	Magenta High Density	Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of high density magenta.	
	Cyan Low Density	Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of low density cyan.	
	Cyan Medium Density	Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of medium density cyan.	
	Cyan High Density	Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of high density cyan.	
	Black Low Density	Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of low density black.	
	Black Medium Density	Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of medium density black.	
	Black High Density	Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of high density black.	
2 Sided Copying	1 -> 1 Sided		Prints on one side of a sheet of paper.	
	1 -> 2 Sided		Prints one sided originals on both sides of a sheet of paper.	
	2 -> 1 Sided		Prints two sided originals on one side of a sheet of paper.	
	2 -> 2 Sided		Prints two sided originals on both sides of a sheet of paper.	
	Binding of Output <sup>*2</sup>	Long Edge Binding		Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by long edge.
		Short Edge Binding		Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by short edge.
	Binding of Original <sup>*3</sup>	Long Edge Binding		Scans both sides of a document bound by long edge.
Short Edge Binding			Scans both sides of a document bound by short edge.	
2-Up	Off		Does not perform multiple-up printing.	
	Auto		Automatically reduces the original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.	
	Manual		Prints the original pages onto one sheet of paper in the size specified in <b>Reduce / Enlarge</b> .	
Margin Top / Bottom	Available Range: 0–50 mm (0.0–2.0 inches)		Sets the value of the top and bottom margins.	
Margin Left / Right	Available Range: 0–50 mm (0.0–2.0 inches)		Sets the value of the left and right margins.	
Margin Middle	Available Range: 0–50 mm (0.0–2.0 inches)		Sets the value of the middle margin.	
Apply New Settings			After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.	
Restart printer to apply new settings			Click this button to restart the printer and apply the changes.	

\*1 This item is available only when the optional 550-sheet feeder is installed.

\*2 This item is available only when **2 Sided Copying** is set to **1 -> 2 Sided** in the **Copy Defaults** page.

\*3 This item is available only when **2 Sided Copying** is set to **2 -> 1 Sided** or **2 -> 2 Sided** in the **Copy Defaults** page.

## Scan Defaults

### Purpose:

To create your own scan settings.

### Values:

File Format	PDF	Saves the scanned image in <b>PDF</b> .	
	Multi-Page TIFF	Saves the scanned image in <b>Multi-Page TIFF</b> .	
	TIFF (1File per Page)	Saves the scanned image in <b>TIFF (1File per Page)</b> .	
	JPEG (1File per Page)	Saves the scanned image in <b>JPEG (1File per Page)</b> .	
Output Color	Color	Scans in color mode.	
	Black & White	Scans in black and white mode.	
	Gray Scale	Scans in grayscale.	
Resolution	200 dpi	Scans an image at 200 dpi.	
	300 dpi	Scans an image at 300 dpi.	
	400 dpi	Scans an image at 400 dpi.	
	600 dpi	Scans an image at 600 dpi.	
Original Size	A4 (210x297mm)	Sets the document size.	
	A5 (148x210mm)		
	B5 (182x257mm)		
	Letter (8.5x11")		
	Folio (8.5x13")		
	Legal (8.5x14")		
	Executive (7.3x10.5")		
2 Sided Scanning	1 Sided	Scans one side of a document.	
	2 Sided	Scans both sides of a document.	
	Binding of Original	Long Edge Binding	Scans both sides of a document bound by long edge.
		Short Edge Binding	Scans both sides of a document bound by short edge.
Darken / Lighten	Darken +3	Makes the scanned image darker than the original. Works well with light documents or faint pencil markings.	
	Darken +2		
	Darken +1		
	Normal	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.	
	Lighten +1	Makes the scanned image lighter than the original. Works well with dark documents.	
	Lighten +2		
	Lighten +3		
Sharpness	Sharpen	Makes the scanned image sharper than the original.	
	Normal	Does not make the scanned image sharper or softer than the original.	
	Soften	Makes the scanned image softer than the original.	

Contrast	High	Adjusts the amount of colors to make the contrast of colors darker than the original.
	Medium	Does not adjust the amount of colors to make the contrast of colors darker or lighter than the original.
	Low	Adjusts the amount of colors to make the contrast of colors lighter than the original.
Auto Exposure	On	Suppresses the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.
	Off	Does not suppress the background.
Auto Exposure Level	Normal	Sets the background suppression level to <b>Normal</b> .
	High	Sets the background suppression level to <b>High</b> .
	Highest	Sets the background suppression level to <b>Highest</b> .
Margin Top / Bottom	Available Range: 0–50 mm (0.0–2.0 inches)	Sets the value of the top and bottom margins.
Margin Left / Right	Available Range: 0–50 mm (0.0–2.0 inches)	Sets the value of the left and right margins.
Margin Middle	Available Range: 0–50 mm (0.0–2.0 inches)	Sets the value of the middle margin.
TIFF File Format	TIFF V6	Sets the TIFF file format to <b>TIFF V6</b> .
	TTN2	Sets the TIFF file format to <b>TTN2</b> .
Image Compression	High	Sets the image compression level to <b>High</b> .
	Normal	Sets the image compression level to <b>Normal</b> .
	Low	Sets the image compression level to <b>Low</b> .
Max E-mail Size	Available Range: 50–16384 KBytes	Sets the maximum size of e-mail that can be sent within the range of 50 KB to 16384 KB.
File Naming Mode	Auto	Sets the default file name.
	Add Prefix	Adds a prefix to the file name.
	Add Suffix	Adds a suffix to the file name.
	Prefix/Suffix String	Sets the texts that are added when <b>Add Prefix</b> or <b>Add Suffix</b> are selected.
Create Folder	Off	Does not create a folder when saving a scanned image.
	On	Creates a folder when saving a scanned image.
Apply New Settings		After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new settings		Click this button to restart the printer and apply the changes.

## Fax Defaults

### Purpose:

To create your own fax settings.

### Values:

Resolution	Standard	Improves the output quality of the original. For documents with normal sized characters.
	Fine	Improves the output quality of the original. For documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.

	<b>Super Fine</b>		Improves the output quality of the original. For documents containing extremely fine detail. The super fine mode is enabled only if the remote machine also supports the <b>Super Fine</b> resolution.
	<b>Photo</b>		Improves the output quality of the original. For documents containing photographic images.
<b>2 Sided Scanning</b>	<b>1 Sided</b>		Scans one side of a document.
	<b>2 Sided</b>		Scans both sides of a document.
<b>Binding of Original</b>		<b>Long Edge Binding</b>	Scans both sides of a document bound by long edge.
		<b>Short Edge Binding</b>	Scans both sides of a document bound by short edge.
<b>Darken / Lighten</b>	<b>Darken +3</b>		Makes the documents darker than the original. Works well with light documents or faint pencil markings.
	<b>Darken +2</b>		
	<b>Darken +1</b>		
	<b>Normal</b>		Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
	<b>Lighten +1</b>		Makes the documents lighter than the original. Works well with dark documents.
	<b>Lighten +2</b>		
<b>Lighten +3</b>			
<b>Delayed Send</b>	<b>00:00–23:59<sup>*1</sup></b>		Sets the fax transmission start time in 24-hour format when sending a fax at a specified time.
	<b>01:00–12:59<sup>*2</sup></b>	<b>AM</b> <b>PM</b>	Sets the fax transmission start time in 12-hour format when sending a fax at a specified time.
<b>Apply New Settings</b>			After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
<b>Restart printer to apply new settings</b>			Click this button to restart the printer and apply the changes.

<sup>\*1</sup> This item is available only when **Time Format** is set to **24 Hour** in the **System Settings - General** page.

<sup>\*2</sup> This item is available only when **Time Format** is set to **12 Hour** in the **System Settings - General** page.

## USB Direct Print Defaults

### Purpose:

To create your own settings for USB Direct Print Defaults.

### Values:

<b>Output Color</b>	<b>Full Color</b>	Prints in color mode.
	<b>Black &amp; White</b>	Prints in black and white mode.
<b>Select Tray</b>	<b>MPF</b>	The paper is fed from the MPF.
	<b>Tray 1</b>	The paper is fed from tray1.
	<b>Tray 2<sup>*1</sup></b>	The paper is fed from the optional 550-sheet feeder.
<b>2 Sided Printing</b>	<b>1 Sided</b>	Prints on one side of a sheet of paper.
	<b>2 Sided</b>	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	<b>Binding of Output</b>	<b>Long Edge Binding</b>
<b>Short Edge Binding</b>		Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by short edge.
<b>Multiple-Up</b>	<b>Off</b>	Prints one page on one side of a sheet of paper.
	<b>2-Up</b>	Prints two pages on one side of a sheet of paper.
	<b>4-Up</b>	Prints four pages on one side of a sheet of paper.

Collation	Collated	Sorts the print job.
	Uncollated	Does not sort the print job.
Apply New Settings	After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.	
Restart printer to apply new settings	Click this button to restart the printer and apply the changes.	
*1 This item is available only when the optional 550-sheet feeder is installed.		

## Fax Settings

### Purpose:

To specify the fax settings.

### Values:

Fax Number		Sets the fax number of the printer, which will be printed on the header of faxes.
Country		Selects the country where the printer is used.
Fax Header Name		Sets the sender's name to be printed on the header on faxes.
Line Type	PSTN	Sets the default line type to <b>PSTN</b> .
	PBX	Sets the default line type to <b>PBX</b> .
Line Monitor	Off	Turns off the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.
	Low	Sets the volume of the line monitor.
	Medium	
	High	
DRPD Pattern	Pattern1-7	Provides a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern.
Receive Mode	Telephone	Sets the default fax receiving mode to <b>Telephone</b> .
	Fax	Sets the default fax receiving mode to <b>Fax</b> .
	Telephone / Fax	Sets the default fax receiving mode to <b>Telephone / Fax</b> .
	Ans Machine / Fax	Sets the default fax receiving mode to <b>Ans Machine / Fax</b> .
	DRPD	Sets the default fax receiving mode to <b>DRPD</b> .
Ring Tone Volume	Off	Turns the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when <b>Receive Mode</b> is set to <b>Telephone / Fax</b> .
	Low	Sets the volume of the ring tone.
	Medium	
	High	
Auto Receive Fax	Available Range: 0-255 seconds	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call in 0 to 255 seconds.
Auto Receive Tel/Fax	Available Range: 0-255 seconds	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call in 0 to 255 seconds.
Auto Receive Ans/Fax	Available Range: 0-255 seconds	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call in 0 to 255 seconds.

Junk Fax Setup	On	Rejects faxes sent from unwanted numbers by accepting faxes only from the fax numbers registered in the Phone Book.
	Off	Does not reject faxes sent from unwanted numbers.
Sent Fax Forward	Off	Does not forward any of the incoming faxes to a specified destination.
	Forward	Forwards the incoming faxes to a specified destination.
	Print and Forward	Prints the incoming fax and forwards it to a specified destination.
	Print and E-mail	Prints incoming faxes and also forward them to a specified e-mail address.
Fax Forwarding Number		Sets the destination to which incoming faxes will be forwarded.
2 Sided Printing	On	Prints the received fax on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	Off	Does not print the received fax on both sides of a sheet of paper.
Remote Receive	On	Receives a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone after picking up the handset of the telephone.
	Off	Does not receive a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone after picking up the handset of the telephone.
Remote Receive Tone	Available Range: 00–99	Sets the tone to start Remote Receive.
Discard Size	Off	Prints any excess at the bottom of a fax page without discarding it.
	On	Discards any excess at the bottom of the page.
	Auto Reduction	Automatically reduces a fax page to fit it onto the appropriate sized paper.
Redial Attempts	Available Range: 0–13	Sets the number of redial attempts to make when the destination fax number is busy, within the range of 0 to 13.
Interval of Redial	Available Range: 1–15 minutes	Sets the interval between redial attempts within the range of 1 to 15 minutes.
Resend Delay	Available Range: 3–255 seconds	Sets the interval between transmission attempts within the range of 3 to 255 seconds.
Tone / Pulse	Tone	Sets the dialing type to <b>Tone</b> .
	Pulse (10PPS)	Sets the dialing type to <b>Pulse (10PPS)</b> .
	Pulse (20PPS)	Sets the dialing type to <b>Pulse (20PPS)</b> .
Prefix Dial	On	Sets a prefix dial number.
	Off	Does not set a prefix dial number.
Prefix Dial Number		Sets a prefix dial number of up to five digits. This number dials before any auto dial number is started.
Fax Cover Page	On	Attaches a cover page to faxes.
	Off	Does not attach a cover page to faxes.
Fax Header <sup>*1</sup>	On	Prints the information of the sender on the header of faxes.
	Off	Does not print the information of the sender on the header of faxes.
ECM	On	Enables the ECM (Error Correction Mode). To use the ECM, the remote machines must also support the ECM.
	Off	Disables the ECM.

Modem Speed	2.4 kbps	Allows you to adjust the fax modem speed when a fax transmission or reception error occurs.
	4.8 kbps	
	9.6 kbps	
	14.4 kbps	
	33.6 kbps	
Display Manual Fax Recipients	On	Displays the fax number when manually sending a fax.
	Off	Does not display the fax number when manually sending a fax.
Fax Activity	Auto Print	Automatically prints a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.
	No Auto Print	Does not print a fax activity report automatically.
Fax Transmit	Print Always	Prints a transmission report after every fax transmission.
	Print On Error	Prints a transmission report only when an error occurs.
	Print Disable	Does not print a transmission report after a fax transmission.
Fax Broadcast	Print Always	Prints a transmission report after every fax transmission.
	Print On Error	Prints a transmission report only when an error occurs.
	Print Disable	Does not print a transmission report after a fax transmission to multiple destinations.
Fax Protocol	Print Always	Prints a protocol monitor report after every fax transmission.
	Print On Error	Prints the protocol monitor report only when an error occurs.
	Print Disable	Does not print the protocol monitor report.
Apply New Settings	After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.	
Restart printer to apply new settings	Click this button to restart the printer and apply the changes.	
*1 This item is not available when <b>Country</b> is set to <b>United States</b> . The setting is fixed to <b>On</b> and cannot be changed.		

## Diagnosis

The **Diagnosis** tab includes the **Chart Print** and **Environment Sensor Info** pages.

### Chart Print

#### Purpose:

To print various charts that can be used for diagnosis of the printer. The chart is printed to A4 or letter size paper.

#### Values:

Pitch Configuration Chart	Prints full halftone pages for yellow, magenta, cyan, and black. Also prints pages to check the pitch. A total of five pages are output.
Ghost Configuration Chart	Prints a chart to check for ghost printing. One page is printed.
4 Colors Configuration Chart	Bands of yellow, magenta, cyan, and black are printed with varying density. One page is printed.
Banding Detection Chart	Prints charts to check which color the banding occurred and the distance between each band.
MQ Chart	Prints charts to check for the banding in A4 or Letter.
Alignment Chart	Prints a chart to check for proper alignment of the print image on the paper. One page is printed.

## Environment Sensor Info

### Purpose:

To print the internal environment sensor information of the printer to **Result**.

### Values:

---

Get Environment Sensor Info	Click this button to confirm the internal environment sensor information of the printer such as temperature and humidity.
-----------------------------	---

---

## Resetting Defaults


After executing this function and rebooting the printer, the phone book, address book, or menu parameters are reset to their default values.

The following menu parameters are exceptions and are not reset.

- Network settings
- Panel Lock settings and password
- Function Enabled settings (Copy, E-mail, Fax, Scan To Network, Scan To Application, PC Scan, Scan To USB, USB Direct Print) and passwords
- Secure Receive settings and password
- Login Error settings
- Set Available Time settings
- Secure Job Expiration settings
- USB Port settings
- Data Encryption settings
- Hard Disk Over Write settings
- ColorTrack Mode settings
- ColorTrack Error Report settings
- Non Registered User settings

### When Using the Tool Box

- 1 Click Start→ All Programs→ Dell Printers→ Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer→ Tool Box.

 **NOTE:** For details about starting the Tool Box, see "Starting the Tool Box."

The **Tool Box** opens.

- 2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.
- 3 Select **Service Tools** from the list at the left side of the page.  
The **Service Tools** page appears.
- 4 Click **User Fax Section**, **User Scan Section**, or **System Section**.  
The printer restarts automatically to apply the settings.



## Understanding the Printer Menus

When your printer is connected to a network and available to a number of users, the access to the Admin Settings can be limited. This prevents other users from using the operator panel to inadvertently change a user default that has been set by the administrator.

However, you can use your printer driver to override user defaults and select settings for individual print jobs.

### Report / List

Use the Report/List menu to print various types of reports and lists.

#### System Settings

**Purpose:**

To print a list of the current user default values, the installed options, the amount of installed print memory, and the status of printer supplies.

#### Panel Settings

**Purpose:**

To print a detailed list of all the settings of the printer menus.

#### PCL Fonts List

**Purpose:**

To print a sample of the available PCL fonts.

**See also:**

"Understanding Fonts"

#### PCL Macros List

**Purpose:**

To print the information on the downloaded PCL macro.

#### PS Fonts List

**Purpose:**

To print a sample of the available PS fonts.

**See also:**

"Understanding Fonts"

#### PDF Fonts List

**Purpose:**

To print a sample of the available PDF fonts.

#### Job History

**Purpose:**

To print a detailed list of the print, copy, fax, or scan jobs that have been processed. This list contains the last 20 jobs.

### **Error History**

Purpose:

To print a detailed list of paper jams and fatal errors.

### **Print Meter**

Purpose:

To print the reports for the total number of pages printed.

### **Color Test Page**

Purpose:

To print a page for testing colors.

### **Protocol Monitor**

Purpose:

To print a detailed list of monitored protocols.

### **Speed Dial**

Purpose:

To print the list of all members stored as speed dial numbers.

### **Address Book**

Purpose:

To print the list of all addresses stored as **Address Book** information.

### **Server Address**

Purpose:

To print the list of all members stored as **Server Address** information.

### **Fax Activity**

Purpose:

To print the report of faxes you recently received or sent.

### **Fax Pending**

Purpose:

To print the list of status of pending faxes.

### **Stored Documents**





**NOTE:** Stored Documents feature is available only when **RAM Disk** under **System Settings** is enabled or when the optional hard disk is installed.

Purpose:

To print a list of all files stored for Secure Print, Private Mail Box Print, Public Mail Box Print, and Proof Print in the RAM disk.


## Printing a Report/List Using the Operator Panel

- 1 Press the  (Information) button.
- 2 Select Report/List.
- 3 Select  until the desired report or list appears, and then select that report or list .
- 4 Select Print.

The selected report or list is printed.

## Printing a Report/List Using the Tool Box

- 1 Click Start→ All Programs→ Dell Printers→ Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer→ Tool Box.

 **NOTE:** For details about starting the **Tool Box**, see "Starting the Tool Box."

The Tool Box opens.

- 2 Ensure that the **Printer Setting Reports** tab is open.
- 3 Select **Reports** from the list at the left side of the page.

The Reports page appears.

- 4 Click the button for the desired report or list.

The report or list is printed

## Admin Settings

Use the Admin Settings menu to configure a variety of printer features.

### Phone Book

Use the Phone Book menu to configure the speed dial and group dial settings.

#### Individuals

**Purpose:**

To store up to 200 frequently dialed numbers in speed dial locations.


#### Groups

**Purpose:**

To create a group of fax destinations and register it under a two-digit dial code. Up to six group dial codes can be registered.

#### PCL

Use the PCL menu to change printer settings that only affect jobs using the PCL emulation printer language.

 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (\*) are the factory default menu settings.

#### Paper Tray

**Purpose:**

To specify the default paper tray.

**Values:**

Auto*
MPF
Tray1
Tray2* <sup>1</sup>
* <sup>1</sup> This item is available only when the optional 550-sheet feeder is installed.

**Paper Size**

**Purpose:**

To specify the default paper size.

**Values:**


mm series

A4 (210x297mm)* <sup>1</sup>
A5 (148x210mm)
B5 (182x257mm)
Letter (8.5x11")
Folio (8.5x13")
Legal (8.5x14")
Executive (7.3x10.5")
Envelope #10 (4.1x9.5")
Monarch Env. (3.9x7.5")
DL Env. (110x220mm)
C5 Env. (162x229mm)
Custom Size
* <sup>1</sup> Denotes country-specific factory default value.

inch series

Letter (8.5x11") <sup>*1</sup>
Folio (8.5x13")
Legal (8.5x14")
A4 (210x297mm)
A5 (148x210mm)
B5 (182x257mm)
Executive (7.3x10.5")
Envelope #10 (4.1x9.5")
Monarch Env. (3.9x7.5")
DL Env. (110x220mm)
C5 Env. (162x229mm)
Custom Size

<sup>\*1</sup> Denotes country-specific factory default value.

 **NOTE:** Selecting a custom size for the paper size prompts you to enter a custom length and width.

### Orientation

**Purpose:**

To specify how text and graphics are oriented on the page.

**Values:**

Portrait <sup>*</sup>	Prints text and graphics parallel to the short edge of the paper.
Landscape	Prints text and graphics parallel to the long edge of the paper.

### 2 Sided Print

**Purpose:**

To specify whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.

Values:

1 Sided*		Does not print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
2 Sided	Flip on Long Edge*	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by long edge.
	Flip on Short Edge	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by short edge.

## Font

Purpose:

To specify the default font from the fonts registered in the printer.

Values:

CG Times	LetterGothic	CourierPS
CG Times It	LetterGothic It	CourierPS Ob
CG Times Bd	LetterGothic Bd	CourierPS Bd
CG Times BdIt	Albertus Md	CourierPS BdOb
Univers Md	Albertus XBd	SymbolPS
Univers MdIt	Clarendon Cd	Palatino Roman
Univers Bd	Coronet	Palatino It
Univers BdIt	Marigold	Palatino Bd
Univers MdCd	Arial	Palatino BdIt
Univers MdCdIt	Arial It	ITCBookman Lt
Univers BdCd	Arial Bd	ITCBookman LtIt
Univers BdCdIt	Arial BdIt	ITCBookmanDm
AntiqueOlv	Times New	ITCBookmanDm It
AntiqueOlv It	Times New It	HelveticaNr
AntiqueOlv Bd	Times New Bd	HelveticaNr Ob
CG Omega	Times New BdIt	HelveticaNr Bd
CG Omega It	Symbol	HelveticaNrBdOb
CG Omega Bd	Wingdings	N C Schbk Roman
CG Omega BdIt	Line Printer	N C Schbk It
GaramondAntiqua	Times Roman	N C Schbk Bd
Garamond Krsv	Times It	N C Schbk BdIt
Garamond Hlb	Times Bd	ITC A G Go Bk
GaramondKrsvHlb	Times BdIt	ITC A G Go BkOb
Courier*	Helvetica	ITC A G Go Dm
Courier It	Helvetica Ob	ITC A G Go DmOb
Courier Bd	Helvetica Bd	ZapfC MdIt
Courier BdIt	Helvetica BdOb	ZapfDingbats

## Symbol Set

Purpose:

To specify a symbol set for a specified font.

Values:

DESKTOP	ISO L5	PC-8 TK
DNGBTSMS	ISO L6	PI FONT
ISO-11	LEGAL	PS MATH
ISO-15	MATH-8	PS TEXT
ISO-17	MC TEXT	ROMAN-8*
ISO-21	MS PUB	SYMBOL
ISO-4	PC-1004	WIN 3.0
ISO-6	PC-775	WINBALT
ISO-60	PC-8	WINGDINGS
ISO-69	PC-850	WIN L1
ISO L1	PC-852	WIN L2
ISO L2	PC-8 DN	WIN L5

### Font Size

Purpose:

To specify the font size for scalable typographic fonts.

Values:


---

12.00\* Sets the values in increments of 0.25.

Available Range: 4.00 – 50.00

---

Font size refers to the height of the characters in the font. One point equals approximately 1/72 of an inch.

 **NOTE:** The Font Size menu is only displayed for typographic fonts.

See also:

"Pitch and Point Size"

### Font Pitch

Purpose:

To specify the font pitch for scalable mono spaced fonts.

Values:


---

10.00\* Sets the value in increments of 0.01.

Available Range: 6.00–24.00

---

Font pitch refers to the number of fixed-space characters in a horizontal inch of type. For non-scalable mono spaced fonts, the pitch is displayed, but cannot be changed.

 **NOTE:** The Font Pitch menu is only displayed for fixed or mono spaced fonts.

See also:

"Pitch and Point Size"

### Form Line

#### Purpose:

To set the number of lines in a page.

#### Values:

mm series

---

64 mm <sup>*1</sup>	Sets the value in increments of 1 mm.
---------------------	---------------------------------------

---

Available Range: 5–128 mm

---

<sup>\*1</sup> Denotes country-specific factory default values.

---

inch series

---

60 inches <sup>*1</sup>	Sets the value in increments of 1 inch.
-------------------------	---

---

Available Range: 5–128 inches

---

<sup>\*1</sup> Denotes country-specific factory default values.

---

The printer sets the amount of space between each line (vertical line spacing) based on the **Form Line** and **Orientation** menu items. Select the correct **Form Line** and **Orientation** before changing **Form Line**.

#### See also:

"Orientation"

### Quantity

#### Purpose:

To set the default print quantity. (Set the number of copies required for a specific job from the printer driver. Values selected from the printer driver always override values selected from the operator panel.)

#### Values:

---

1 <sup>*</sup>	Sets the value in increments of 1.
----------------	------------------------------------

---

Available Range: 1–999

---

### Image Enhance

#### Purpose:

To specify whether to enable the Image Enhance feature, which makes the boundary line between black and white smoother to decrease jagged edges and enhance the visual appearance.

#### Values:

---

Off	Disables the Image Enhance feature.
-----	-------------------------------------

---

On <sup>*</sup>	Enables the Image Enhance feature.
-----------------	------------------------------------

---

### Hex Dump

#### Purpose:

To help isolate the source of a print job problem. With Hex Dump selected, all data sent to the printer is printed in hexadecimal and character representation. Control codes are not executed.

Values:

Disable*	Disables the Hex Dump feature.
Enable	Enables the Hex Dump feature.

### Draft Mode

Purpose:

To save toner by printing in the draft mode. The print quality is reduced when printing in the draft mode.

Values:

Disable*	Does not print in the draft mode.
Enable	Prints in the draft mode.

### Line Termination

Purpose:

To add the line termination commands.

Values:

Off*	The line termination command is not added. CR=CR, LF=LF, FF=FF
Add-LF	The LF command is added. CR=CR-LF, LF=LF, FF=FF
Add-CR	The CR command is added. CR=CR, LF=CR-LF, FF=CR-FF
CR-XX	The CR and LF commands are added. CR=CR-LF, LF=CR-LF, FF=CR-FF

### Default Color

Purpose:

To specify the color mode to Color or Black. This setting is used for a print job that does not specify a print mode.

Values:

Black*	Prints in the black and white mode.
Color	Prints in the color mode.

### Ignore Form Feed

Purpose:

To specify whether to ignore blank pages that only contain Form Feed control codes.

Values:

Off*	Disables the Ignore Form Feed feature.
On	Enables the Ignore Form Feed feature.

## PostScript

Use the `PostScript` menu to change printer settings that only affect jobs using the PostScript emulation printer language.

 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (\*) are the factory default menu settings.


### PS Error Report

#### Purpose:

To specify whether the printer outputs error contents for a PostScript error. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

#### Values:

Off	Discards the print job without printing an error message.
On*	Prints an error message before it discards the job.

 **NOTE:** Instructions from the PS driver override the settings specified on the operator panel.

### PS Job Time-out

#### Purpose:

To specify the execution time for one PostScript job. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

#### Values:

Off*	Job time-out does not occur.
On	1 minute* Available Range: 1-900 minutes
	A PostScript error occurs if processing is not completed after the specified time.

### Paper Select Mode

#### Purpose:

To specify the way to select the tray for PostScript mode. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

#### Values:

Auto*	The tray is selected as the same setting as in the PCL mode.
Select from Tray	The tray is selected in a method compatible with regular Post Script printers.

### Default Color

#### Purpose:


To specify the color mode to Color or Black. This setting is used for a print job which does not specify a print mode.

#### Values:

Color*	Prints in the color mode.
Black	Prints in the black and white mode.

## PDF

Use the `PDF` menu to change printer settings that only affect the PDF jobs.

 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (\*) are the factory default menu settings.

### Quantity

**Purpose:**

To specify the number of copies to print.

**Values:**

---

1*	Sets the value in increments of 1.
----	------------------------------------

---

Available Range: 1–999

---

### 2 Sided Print

**Purpose:**

To specify whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.

**Values:**

---

1 Sided*	Does not print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
2 Sided	Flip on Long Edge* Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by long edge.
	Flip on Short Edge Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by short edge.

---

### Print Mode

**Purpose:**

To specify the print mode.

**Values:**

---

Normal*	For documents with normal sized characters.
High Quality	For documents with small characters or thin lines, or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
High Speed	Prints with the higher speed than the Normal mode, but the quality is less.

---

### PDF Password

**Purpose:**

To specify the password to print a PDF file secured with a document open password (password to open the PDF file).

**Values:**

---

Enter PDF Password	Enter the document open password to print the secure PDF.
--------------------	---

---

### Collation

**Purpose:**

To specify whether to sort the job.

**Values:**

---

Collated	Sorts the job.
Uncollated*	Does not sort the job.

---

## Output Size

### Purpose:

To specify the output paper size for PDF.

### Values:

A4 <sup>*1</sup>
Letter <sup>*1</sup>
Auto

<sup>\*1</sup> The default paper size is displayed.

## Layout

### Purpose:

To specify the output layout.

### Values:

Auto % <sup>*</sup>
100% (No Zoom)
Booklet
2 Pages Up
4 Pages Up

## Default Color

### Purpose:

To specify the default output color.

### Values:

Color (Auto) <sup>*</sup>
Black

## Network

Use the **Network** menu to change the printer settings affecting jobs sent to the printer through the wired or wireless network.



**NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (\*) are the factory default menu settings.

### Ethernet/Wireless



**NOTE:** When using a wired network, **Ethernet** is displayed. When the optional wireless adapter is attached and the Ethernet cable is disconnected, **Wireless** is displayed.

### Purpose:

To confirm or specify network settings.

### Values:

### Wireless Status



**NOTE:** Wireless Status feature is available only when the printer is connected using the wireless network.

**Purpose:**

To confirm the wireless communication status.

**Values:**

Status	Good
	Acceptable
	Low
	No Reception
SSID	Displays the name that identifies the wireless network.
Encryption Type	Displays the encryption type.

**Wireless Setup Wizard**

**NOTE:** Wireless Setup Wizard is available only when the printer is connected using the wireless network.

**Purpose:**


To configure the wireless network interface.

**Values:**

Select Access		Select the access point from the list.		
	WEP Key	When you select an access point using WEP as the encryption type, enter the WEP key.		
	Pass Phrase	When you select an access point using WPA, WPA2, or Mixed as the encryption type, enter the pass phrase.		
Manual SSID Setup	Enter SSID	Specifies a name to identify the wireless network. Up to 32 alphanumeric characters can be entered.		
	Infrastructure		Select when you configure the wireless setting through the access point such as a wireless router.	
		No Security	Specifies No Security to configure the wireless setting without specifying a encryption type from WEP, WPA-PSK-TKIP, and WPA-PSK-AES.	
		Mixed mode PSK*		Select to configure the wireless setting with the encryption type of Mixed mode PSK. Mixed mode PSK automatically selects the encryption type from either WPA-PSK-TKIP, WPA-PSK-AES, or WPA2-PSK-AES.
			Pass Phrase	Specifies the passphrase of alphanumeric characters from 8 to 63.
	WPA-PSK-TKIP		Select to configure the wireless setting with the encryption type of WPA-PSK-TKIP.	
		Pass Phrase	Specifies the passphrase of alphanumeric characters from 8 to 63.	
	WPA2-PSK-AES		Select to configure the wireless setting with the encryption type of WPA2-PSK-AES.	
		Pass Phrase	Specifies the passphrase of alphanumeric characters from 8 to 63.	
	WEP		Specifies the WEP key to use through the wireless network. For 64bit keys, up to 10 hexadecimal characters can be entered. For 128bit keys, up to 26 hexadecimal characters can be entered.	

	<b>Transmit Key</b>	Specifies the transmit key from <b>Auto</b> <sup>*</sup> , <b>WEP Key 1</b> , <b>WEP Key 2</b> , <b>WEP Key 3</b> , and <b>WEP Key 4</b> .
<b>Ad-hoc</b>		Select to configure the wireless setting without the access point such as a wireless router.
	<b>No Security</b> <sup>*</sup>	Select to configure the wireless setting without specifying the encryption type from WEP.
	<b>WEP</b>	Specifies the WEP key to use through the wireless network. For 64bit keys, up to 10 hexadecimal characters can be entered. For 128bit keys, up to 26 hexadecimal characters can be entered.
	<b>Transmit Key</b>	Specifies the transmit key from <b>WEP Key 1</b> <sup>*</sup> , <b>WEP Key 2</b> , <b>WEP Key 3</b> , and <b>WEP Key 4</b> .

### **WPS Setup**

 **NOTE:** WPS Setup is available only when the printer is connected using the wireless network.

**Purpose:**

To configure the wireless network using WPS.

**Values:**

<b>Push Button Control</b> <sup>*</sup>	<b>Start Configuration</b>	Configures the wireless setting with WPS-PBC.
<b>PIN Code</b>	<b>Start Configuration</b>	Configures the wireless setting using the PIN code assigned automatically by the printer.
	<b>Print PIN Code</b>	Prints the PIN code. Confirm it when entering PIN assigned to the printer into your computer.

### **IP Mode**

**Purpose:**

To configure the IP mode.

**Values:**

<b>Dual Stack</b> <sup>*</sup>	Uses both IPv4 and IPv6 to set the IP address.
<b>IPv4 Mode</b>	Uses IPv4 to set the IP address.
<b>IPv6 Mode</b>	Uses IPv6 to set the IP address.

### **TCP/IP**

**Purpose:**

To configure TCP/IP settings.

**Values:**

<b>Get IP Address</b>	<b>AutoIP</b> <sup>*</sup>	Sets the IP address automatically. A random value in the range of 169.254.1.0 to 169.254.254.255 that is not currently in use on the network is set as the IP address. The subnet mask is set as 255.255.0.0.
	<b>BOOTP</b>	Sets the IP address using BOOTP.
	<b>RARP</b>	Sets the IP address using RARP.

DHCP	Sets the IP address using DHCP.
Panel	Use this option when you want to set the IP address manually on the operator panel.
IP Address	When an IP address is being set manually, the IP is allocated to the printer using the format nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn. Each octet that makes up nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn is a value in the range of 0 to 254. 127 and any value in the range of 224 to 254 cannot be specified for the first octet of a gateway address.
Subnet Mask	When an IP address is being set manually, the subnet mask is specified using the format nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn. Each octet that makes up nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn is a value in the range of 0 to 255. 255.255.255 cannot be specified as the subnet mask.
Gateway Address	When an IP address is being set manually, the gateway address is specified using the format nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn. Each octet that makes up nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn is a value in the range of 0 to 254. 127 and any value in the range of 224 to 254 cannot be specified for the first octet of a gateway address.


### ***IPsec***

 **NOTE:** IPsec feature is available only when **IPsec** is enabled on the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

Purpose:

Disables IPsec.


### ***Reset Wireless***

 **NOTE:** Reset Wireless feature is available only when the printer is connected using the wireless network.

Purpose:

To initialize wireless network settings. After executing this function and rebooting the printer, all wireless network settings are reset to their default values.

### ***Connection Speed***

 **NOTE:** Connection Speed feature is available only when the printer is connected using the wired network.

Purpose:

To specify the communication speed and the duplex settings of Ethernet. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Auto*	Detects the Ethernet settings automatically.
10BASE-T Half	Uses 10BASE-T Half-duplex.
10BASE-T Full	Uses 10BASE-T Full-duplex.
100BASE-TX Half	Uses 100BASE-TX Half-duplex.
100BASE-TX Full	Uses 100BASE-TX Full-duplex.
1000BASE-T Full	Uses 1000BASE-T Full-duplex.

### **Protocols**

Purpose:

To enable or disable each protocol. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

## Values:


LPD	Disable	Disables the LPD port.
	Enable*	Enables the Line Printer Daemon (LPD) port.
Port9100	Disable	Disables the Port9100 port.
	Enable*	Enables the Port9100 port.
FTP	Disable	Disables FTP port.
	Enable*	Enables FTP port.
IPP	Disable	Disables IPP port.
	Enable*	Enables IPP port.
SMB TCP/IP	Disable	Disables SMB TCP/IP port.
	Enable*	Enables SMB TCP/IP port.
SMB NetBEUI	Disable	Disables SMB NetBEUI port.
	Enable*	Enables SMB NetBEUI port.
WSD Print	Disable	Disables WSD print.
	Enable*	Enables WSD print.
WSD Scan	Disable	Disables WSD scan.
	Enable*	Enables WSD scan.
Network TWAIN	Disable	Disables Network TWAIN.
	Enable*	Enables Network TWAIN.
SNMP UDP	Disable	Disables the SNMP UDP port.
	Enable*	Enables the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) UDP port.
E-mail Alert	Disable	Disables the E-mail Alert feature.
	Enable*	Enables the E-mail Alert feature.
EWS	Disable	Disables an access to Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool embedded in the printer.
	Enable*	Enables an access to Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool embedded in the printer.
Bonjour(mDNS)	Disable	Disables Bonjour (mDNS).
	Enable*	Enables Bonjour (mDNS).
Telnet	Disable	Disables Telnet.
	Enable*	Enables Telnet.
Update Address Book	Disable	Disables Update Address Book.
	Enable*	Enables Update Address Book.
HTTP-SSL/TLS	Disable*	Disables HTTP-SSL/TLS.
	Enable	Enables HTTP-SSL/TLS.
Google Cloud Print	Disable*	Disables Google Cloud Print.
	Enable	Enables Google Cloud Print.

## Advanced Settings

### Purpose:

To specify advanced network settings.

### IP Filter

 **NOTE:** IP Filter feature is available only for LPD or Port9100.


#### Purpose:

To block data received from certain IP addresses through the wired or wireless network. You can set up to five IP addresses. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

#### Values:

n (n is 1-5)	IP Address	Sets the IP address for Filter n.		
	Subnet Mask	Sets the address mask for Filter n.		
	Mode	Off*	Disables the IP Filter feature for Filter n.	
		Accept	Accepts an access from the specified IP address.	
Reject		Rejects an access from the specified IP address.		

### IEEE 802.1x

 **NOTE:** IEEE 802.1x feature is available only when the printer is connected using Ethernet cable and it is available only when the IEEE 802.1x authentication is enabled.

#### Purpose:

To disable IEEE 802.1x authentication. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

### Adobe Protocol

#### Purpose:

To specify PostScript communication protocol for a parallel interface, you can configure the Adobe Protocol settings for the wired network. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

#### Values:

Auto*	Used when auto-detecting the PostScript communication protocol.
Standard	Used when the communication protocol is in ASCII interface.
BCP	Used when the communication protocol is in binary format.
TBCP	Used when the communication protocol supports both ASCII and binary data to switch between them according to the specified control code.
Binary	Used when no special processing is required for data.

### Reset LAN

#### Purpose:

To initialize wired network data stored in non-volatile memory (NVM). After executing this function and rebooting the printer, all wired network settings are reset to their default values.

### Fax Settings

Use the Fax Settings menu to configure the basic fax settings.

 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (\*) are the factory default menu settings.

### Fax Line Settings

#### Purpose:

To configure basic settings for the fax line.

### ***Fax Number***

#### **Purpose:**

To set the fax number of the printer, which will be printed on the header of a fax message.

 **NOTE:** Ensure to specify Fax Number before using Junk Fax Setup.

### ***Country***

#### **Purpose:**

To select the country where the printer is used.

#### **Values:**

Algeria	Hungary	Puerto Rico
Australia	Iceland	Romania
Austria	Ireland	Russia
Belgium	Italy	Saudi Arabia
Bulgaria	Jamaica	Slovakia
Canada	Jordan	Slovenia
Colombia	Latvia	South Africa
Costa Rica	Liechtenstein	Spain
Cyprus	Lithuania	Sweden
Czech Republic	Luxembourg	Switzerland
Denmark	Malta	Tunisia
Dominican Republic	Mexico	Turkey
Egypt	Netherlands	U.A.E.
Estonia	New Zealand	United Kingdom
Finland	Nicaragua	United States
France	Norway	Unknown*
Germany	Panama	
Greece	Poland	
Guatemala	Portugal	

### ***Fax Header Name***

#### **Purpose:**

To set the sender name to be printed on the header on faxes.

### ***Line Type***

#### **Purpose:**

To select the default line type.

#### **Values:**

PSTN*	Uses PSTN.
PBX	Uses PBX.

### **Line Monitor**

#### **Purpose:**

To set the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.

#### **Values:**

---

Off	Turns off the volume of the line monitor.
Low	Sets the volume of the line monitor to Low.
Medium*	Sets the volume of the line monitor to Medium.
High	Sets the volume of the line monitor to High.

---

### **DRPD Pattern**

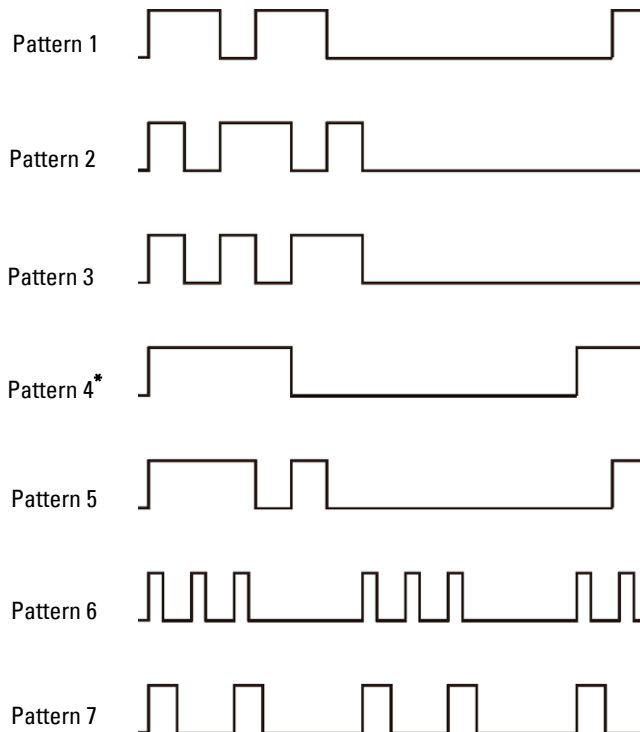
#### **Purpose:**

To provide a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern.

#### **Values:**

---

Pattern1-7      DRPD is a service provided by some telephone companies. DRPD Patterns are specified by your telephone company. The patterns provided with your printer are shown below:



Ask your telephone company which pattern you need to select to use this service. For example, Pattern 7 is the New Zealand FaxAbility distinctive ringing pattern: rings for 400 ms, stops for 800 ms, rings for 400 ms and stops for 1400 ms. This pattern is repeated over and over again. This printer only responds to Distinctive Alert cadence(s) DA4 in New Zealand.

---

## Incoming Defaults

### Purpose:

To configure settings for incoming fax.

### Receive Mode

#### Purpose:

To select the default fax receiving mode.

#### Values:

Telephone	Automatic fax reception is turned off. You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external telephone and then pressing the remote receive code, or by selecting <b>Manual Receive</b> in <b>On Hook</b> and then pressing the <b>▶ (Start)</b> button. For details about <b>Manual Receive</b> , see "Receiving a Fax Manually in the Telephone Mode."
Fax*	Automatically receives faxes.
Telephone / Fax	When the printer receives an incoming fax, the external telephone rings for the time specified in <b>Auto Receive Tel/Fax</b> , and then the printer automatically receives a fax. If an incoming call is not a fax, the printer beeps from the internal speaker indicating that the call is a telephone call.
Ans Machine/Fax	The printer can share a telephone line with an answering machine. In this mode, the printer will monitor the fax signal and pick up the line if there are fax tones. If the phone communication in your country is serial, this mode is not supported.
DRPD	Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) option, a distinctive ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. After the telephone company has provided a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern, configure the fax setup to monitor for that specific ring pattern.

### Ring Tone Volume

#### Purpose:

To set the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when **Receive Mode** is set to **Telephone/Fax**.

#### Values:

Off	Turns off the volume of the ring tone.
Low	Sets the volume of the ring tone to Low.
Medium	Sets the volume of the ring tone to Medium.
High*	Sets the volume of the ring tone to High.

### Auto Receive Setup

#### Purpose:

To configure settings for automatic fax reception.

#### Values:

Auto Receive Fax	0 seconds*	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call. The value is set in increments of 1 second.
Available Range: 0-255 seconds		

Auto Receive Tel/Fax	6 seconds*	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call. The value is set in increments of 1 second.
Available Range: 0-255 seconds		
Auto Receive Ans/Fax	21 seconds*	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call. The value is set in increments of 1 second.
Available Range: 0-255 seconds		

### **Junk Fax Setup**


#### **Purpose:**

To reject unwanted faxes by accepting faxes only from the fax numbers registered in the Phone Book.

#### **Values:**

Off*	Does not reject faxes sent from unwanted numbers.
On	Rejects faxes sent from unwanted numbers.

### **Secure Receive**

 **NOTE:** Secure Receive feature is available only when Panel Lock Control is set to Enable.

#### **Purpose:**


To specify whether to require a password to receive faxes, and to set or change the password.

#### **Values:**

Secure Receive Set	Disable*	Does not require a password to receive faxes.
	Enable	Requires a password to receive faxes.
Change Password* <sup>1</sup>	0000-9999	Sets or changes the password required to receive faxes.

\*<sup>1</sup> This item is available only when Secure Receive Set is set to Enable.

### **Sent Fax Forward**

 **NOTE:** Print and E-mail feature is available only when E-mail Alert information and Forwarding E-mail Address are registered. For information on e-mail alert, see "E-Mail Alert" and on forwarding e-mail address information, see "Fax Settings."

#### **Purpose:**

To set whether to forward incoming faxes to a specified destination.

#### **Values:**

Off*	Does not forward incoming faxes.
Forward	Forwards incoming faxes to a specified destination. Prints incoming faxes if an error occurs during the transfer.
Print and Forward	Prints incoming faxes and also forwards them to a specified destination.
	Forwarding Number
Print and E-mail* <sup>1, 2</sup>	Prints incoming faxes and also forward them to a specified e-mail address.

---

\*1 This item is available only when the E-mail Alert information is registered.

\*2 This item is available only when Forwarding E-mail Address is registered.

---

### **2 Sided Print**

To set the duplex printing for fax.

Values:

---

Off <sup>*</sup>	Does not perform duplex printing.
On	Performs duplex printing.

---

### **Remote Receive**

Purpose:

To receive a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone after picking up the handset of the telephone.

Values:

---

Off <sup>*</sup>	Does not receive a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.
On	Receives a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.
Remote Receive Tone	Specifies the tone in two digits to start Remote Receive.

---

### **Discard Size**

Purpose:

To set the printer to discard images or any text at the bottom of a fax page when the entire page does not fit the output paper.

Values:

---

Off <sup>*</sup>	Prints excess images or text at the bottom of a fax page without discarding it.
On	Discards any excess images or text.
Auto Reduction	Automatically reduces a fax page to fit it onto the appropriate paper size.

---

### **Transmission Defaults**

Purpose:

To configure settings for transmitting fax.

#### **Auto Redial Setup**

Purpose:

To configure settings for automatic redial.

Values:

---

Redial Attempts	3 <sup>*</sup>	Sets the number of redial attempts to make when the destination fax number is busy. If you enter 0, the printer will not redial. The value is set in increments of 1.
-----------------	----------------	---

---

Available Range: 0-13

Interval of Redial	1 minute *	Sets the interval between redial attempts. The value is set in increments of 1 minute.
Available Range: 1-15 minutes		
Resend Delay	8 seconds *	Sets the interval between re-send attempts. The value is set in increments of 1 second.
Available Range: 3-255 seconds		

### ***Tone / Pulse***

#### **Purpose:**

To select the dialing type.

#### **Values:**

Tone *	Uses tone dialing.
Pulse(10PPS)	Sets "DP (10PPS)" (Dial Pulse, 10 Pulse Per Second) as the dial type.
Pulse(20PPS)	Sets "DP (20PPS)" (Dial Pulse, 20 Pulse Per Second) as the dial type.

### ***Prefix Dial***

#### **Purpose:**

To select whether to set a prefix dial number.

#### **Values:**

Off*	Does not set a prefix dial number.
On	Sets a prefix dial number.
	<b>Prefix Dial Number</b>
	Sets a prefix dial number of up to five digits. This number dials before any auto dial number is started. It is useful for accessing the Private Automatic Branch Exchange (PABX).

### ***Fax Cover Page***

#### **Purpose:**

To set whether to attach a cover page to faxes.

#### **Values:**

Off*	Does not attach a cover page to faxes.
On	Attaches a cover page to faxes.


### ***Fax Header***

#### **Purpose:**

To print the information of the sender on the header of the faxes.

#### **Values:**

Off	Does not print the sender's information on the header of faxes.
On *	Prints the sender's information on the header of faxes.

 **NOTE:** If `United States` is selected for the setting of `Country`, this option does not appear on the menu. The setting is fixed to `On` and cannot be changed. For information on the country setting, see "Setting Your Country."

### ***ECM***

#### **Purpose:**

To set whether to enable or disable the Error Correction Mode (ECM). To use the ECM, the remote machines must also support the ECM.

#### **Values:**

Off	Disables the ECM.
On*	Enables the ECM.

### ***Modem Speed***

#### **Purpose:**

To adjust the fax modem speed when a fax transmission or reception error occurs.

#### **Values:**

2.4 Kbps
4.8 Kbps
9.6 Kbps
14.4 Kbps
33.6 Kbps*

### ***Display Manual Fax Recipients***

#### **Purpose:**

To set whether to display the fax number of the recipient on the **Sending Fax** screen when manually sending a fax.

#### **Values:**

Off	Does not display the fax number when manually sending a fax.
On*	Displays the fax number when manually sending a fax.

### **Fax Reports**

#### **Purpose:**

To configure settings for fax reports.

### ***Fax Activity***

#### **Purpose:**

To set whether to automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.

#### **Values:**

Auto Print*	Automatically prints a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.
No Auto Print	Does not automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.

### ***Fax Transmit***

#### **Purpose:**

To set whether to print a transmission result after a fax transmission.

Values:

Print Always	Prints a transmission report after every fax transmission.
Print On Error*	Prints a transmission report only when an error occurs.
Print Disable	Does not print a transmission report after a fax transmission.

### ***Fax Broadcast***

Purpose:

To set whether to print a transmission result after a fax transmission to multiple destinations.

Values:

Print Always*	Prints a transmission report after every fax transmission.
Print On Error	Prints a transmission report only when an error occurs.
Print Disable	Does not print a transmission report after a fax transmission to multiple destinations.

### ***Fax Protocol***

Purpose:

To set whether to print the protocol monitor report, which helps you identify the cause of a communication problem.

Values:

Print Always	Prints a protocol monitor report after every fax transmission.
Print On Error	Prints the protocol monitor report only when an error occurs.
Print Disable*	Does not print the protocol monitor report.

## **System Settings**

Use **System Settings** to configure the power saving mode, warning tones, time-out duration, display language, and job log auto print settings.



**NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (\*) are the factory default menu settings.

### **General**

Purpose:

To configure general settings for the printer.

### ***Power Saver Timer***

Purpose:

To specify the time for transition to power saver mode.

Values:

Sleep	3 minutes* Available Range: 1–60 minutes	Specifies the time taken by the printer to enter Sleep mode after it finishes a job.
Deep Sleep	5 minutes* Available Range: 1–60 minutes	Specifies the time taken by the printer to enter Deep Sleep mode after it has entered Sleep mode.

When you specify 1 minute for `Sleep`, the printer enters power saver mode 1 minute after it finishes a job. This uses much less energy, but requires more warm-up time for the printer. Specify 1 minute if your printer shares an electrical circuit with room lighting and you notice lights flickering.

Select a high value if your printer is in constant use. In most circumstances, this keeps the printer ready to operate with minimum warm-up time.

Select a value between 1 and 60 minutes for power saver mode if you want a balance between energy consumption and a shorter warm-up period.

The printer automatically returns to the standby mode from the power saver mode when it receives data from the computer or remote fax machine. You can also change the status of the printer to the standby mode by pressing any button on the operator panel.

### ***Date & Time***

#### **Purpose:**

To specify the date and time formats.

#### **Values:**

<b>Time Zone</b>		Sets the time zone.
<b>Date</b>		Sets the date depending on the <code>Format</code> settings.
	<b>Format</b>	Sets the date format.
<b>Time</b>		Sets the time.
	<b>Format</b>	<b>12 Hour</b> Sets the time in 12-hour format.
		<b>24 Hour</b> Sets the time in 24-hour format.


### ***mm / inch***

#### **Purpose:**

To specify the default measurement unit displayed after the numeric value on the operator panel.

#### **Values:**

<b>Millimeters(mm)*</b>	Selects millimeter as the default measurement unit.
<b>Inches(")</b>	Selects inch as the default measurement unit.

 **NOTE:** The default for `mm / inch` varies depending on other settings, such as `Country` and `Document Size`.

### ***Display Brightness***

#### **Purpose:**

To adjust the screen brightness of the touch panel.

#### **Values:**

<b>5*</b>	Sets the brightness in ten levels, with ten being the brightest.
<b>Available Range: 1-10</b>	

### ***Audio Tone***

#### **Purpose:**

To configure settings for tones emitted by the printer during operation or when a warning message appears.

Values:

Control Panel	Off*	Does not emit a tone when the operator panel input is correct.
	Soft	Emits a tone when the operator panel input is correct.
	Normal	
	Loud	
Invalid Key	Off*	Does not emit a tone when the operator panel input is incorrect.
	Soft	Emits a tone when the operator panel input is incorrect.
	Normal	
	Loud	
Machine Ready	Off	Does not emit a tone when the printer is ready to process a job.
	Soft	Emits a tone when the printer is ready to process a job.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
Copy Completed	Off	Does not emit a tone when a copy job is complete.
	Soft	Emits a tone when a copy job is complete.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
Job Completed	Off	Does not emit a tone when a job other than a copy job is complete.
	Soft	Emits a tone when a job other than a copy job is complete.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
Fault Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when a job ends abnormally.
	Soft	Emits a tone when a job ends abnormally.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
Alert Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when a problem occurs.
	Soft	Emits a tone when a problem occurs.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
Out of Paper	Off	Does not emit a tone when the printer runs out of paper.
	Soft	Emits a tone when the printer runs out of paper.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
Low Toner Alert	Off	Does not emit a tone when a toner is low.
	Soft	Emits a tone when a toner is low.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
Auto Clear Alert	Off*	Does not emit a tone 5 seconds before the printer performs auto clear.
	Soft	Emits a tone 5 seconds before the printer performs auto clear.
	Normal	
	Loud	

All Tones	Off	Disables all the alert tones.
	Soft	Sets the volume of all the alert tones at once.
	Normal*	
	Loud	

**Low Toner Alert Message**

**Purpose:**

To specify whether to show the alert message when the toner is low.

**Values:**

Off	Does not show the alert message when the toner is low.
On*	Shows the alert message when the toner is low.

**OffHook Wake Up**

**Purpose:**

To specify whether to wake up from Sleep or Deep Sleep mode when you pick up the handset of the external telephone.

**Values:**

OffHook Wake Up	Off*	Does not wake up from Sleep or Deep Sleep mode when you pick up the handset of the external telephone.
	On	Wakes up from Sleep or Deep Sleep mode when you pick up the handset of the external telephone.

**Auto Log Print**

**Purpose:**

To automatically print a job history report after every 20 jobs.

**Values:**

Off*	Does not automatically print a job history report.
On	Automatically prints a job history report.

Print logs can also be printed using the Report / List menu.

**RAM Disk**



**NOTE:** RAM Disk feature is not available when the optional hard disk is installed.

**Purpose:**


To allocate memory to the RAM disk file system for the Secure Print, Private Mail Box Print, Public Mail Box Print, and Proof Print features. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

**Values:**

Off	Does not allocate memory to the RAM disk file system. Secure Print, Private Mail Box Print, Public Mail Box Print, and Proof Print jobs will abort and be recorded to the job log.
-----	--

On *	50 MB* (300 MB* <sup>*1</sup> )	Sets the allocation of memory to the RAM disk file system in increments of 50 MB.
	Available Range: 50-100 MB (50-600 MB* <sup>*1</sup> )	

\*1 When the optional 512 MB memory module is installed.

 **NOTE:** Restart your printer when you change the settings for the RAM Disk menu.

### ***Fax Server Address Book***

#### **Purpose:**

To specify whether to search the phone numbers from the Address Book for the LDAP server.

#### **Values:**

Off*	Does not search the phone numbers from the Address Book for the LDAP server.
On	Searches the phone numbers from the Address Book for the LDAP server.

 **NOTE:** You can search the phone numbers only from the local Address Book when Fax Server Address Book is set to Off.


### ***Email Server Address Book***

#### **Purpose:**

To specify whether to search the e-mail addresses from the Address Book for the LDAP server.

#### **Values:**

Off*	Does not search the e-mail addresses from the Address Book for the LDAP server.
On	Searches the e-mail addresses from the Address Book for the LDAP server.

 **NOTE:** You can search the e-mail addresses only from the Address Book that is local when Email Server Address Book is set to Off.

### ***Power On Wizard***

#### **Purpose:**

To perform initial setup for the printer.

### **Timers**

#### **Purpose:**

To configure timer settings.

### ***Auto Reset***

#### **Purpose:**

To automatically reset the settings for Copy, Scan, Fax, E-mail, or Print to the default settings and return to the standby mode after you do not specify any settings for the specified time.

#### **Values:**

45sec*
1min
2min

---

3min
4min

---

**Fault Time-out**

**Purpose:**

To specify the amount of time the printer waits before canceling a job that stops abnormally. The print job is cancelled if the time-out time is exceeded.

**Values:**

---

Off		Disables the fault time-out.
On *	60 seconds *	Sets the amount of time the printer waits before canceling a job that stops abnormally.
	Available Range: 3-300 seconds	

---

**Job Time-out**

**Purpose:**

To specify the amount of time the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer. The print job is cancelled if the time-out time is exceeded.

**Values:**

---

Off		Disables the job time-out.
On *	30 seconds *	Sets the time the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer.
	Available Range: 5-300 seconds	

---

**Output Settings**

**Purpose:**

To configure settings concerning output from the printer.

**Default Paper Size**

**Purpose:**

To specify the default paper size.

**Values:**

mm series

---

A4 (210x297mm) *1
Letter(8.5x11")
*1 Denotes country-specific factory default values.

---

inch series

---

A4 (210x297mm)
Letter(8.5x11") *1
*1 Denotes country-specific factory default values.

---

**Print ID**

**Purpose:**

To specify a location where the user ID is printed.

Values:

Off*	Does not print the user ID.
Top Left	Prints the user ID on the top left of the page.
Top Right	Prints the user ID on the top right of the page.
Bottom Left	Prints the user ID on the bottom left of the page.
Bottom Right	Prints the user ID on the bottom right of the page.



**NOTE:** When printing on DL size paper, a part of the user ID may not be printed correctly.

### **Print Text**

Purpose:

To specify whether the printer outputs PDL data, which is not supported by the printer, as text when the printer receives it. Text data is printed on A4 or Letter size paper.

Values:

Off	Does not print the received data.
On*	Prints the received data as text data.

### **Banner Sheet**

Purpose:

To specify the position of banner sheet, and also specify the tray in which the banner sheet is loaded.

Values:

Insert Position	Off*	Does not print the banner sheet.
	Front	Inserted before the first page of every copy.
	Back	Inserted after the last page of every copy.
	Front & Back	Inserted before the first page of every copy and after the last page of every copy.
Specify Tray	MPF	The banner sheet is loaded in the MPF.
	Tray1*	The banner sheet is loaded in tray1.
	Tray2* <sup>1</sup>	The banner sheet is loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.

\*1 This item is available only when the optional 550-sheet feeder is installed.

### **Substitute Tray**

Purpose:

Specifies whether to use paper of a different size when the paper that is loaded in the specified tray does not match the paper size settings for the current job.

Values:

Off	No tray size substitute accepted.
Larger Size	Substitutes paper of next largest size. When there is no larger paper size, the printer substitutes paper of nearest size.
Nearest Size*	Substitutes paper of nearest size.

Use MPF	Substitutes paper from the MPF.
---------	---------------------------------

### **Letterhead 2 Sided**

**Purpose:**

To specify whether to print on both sides when using letterhead.

**Values:**

Disable*	Does not print on both sides of letterhead.
Enable	Prints on both sides of letterhead.

### **A4<>Letter Switch**

**Purpose:**

To print A4 size jobs on Letter size paper if A4 size paper is not available or to print Letter size jobs on A4 size paper if Letter size paper is not available.

**Values:**

Off* <sup>1</sup>	Does not print A4 size jobs on Letter size paper or Letter size jobs on A4 paper.
On*	Prints A4 size jobs on Letter size paper if A4 is not available in the paper trays and vice versa (Letter size job on A4 size paper).

\*<sup>1</sup> Depending on the printer setting, the printer will continue to print on existing media of a different size or prompt the user to select from the following:

- Delete Job
- Supply with correct media

### **Report 2 Sided Print**

**Purpose:**

To specify to print reports on both sides a sheet of paper.

**Values:**

1 Sided*	Prints reports on one side of a sheet of paper.
2 Sided	Prints reports on both side of a sheet of paper.

### **Use Another Tray**

**Purpose:**

To change to another paper tray when a paper size runs out in the specified paper tray.



**NOTE:** If you select another paper tray with paper size smaller than the paper size specified in the job, the parts that do not fit are not printed (print size is not adjusted automatically).

**Values:**

Off	Does not print on other paper sizes in other paper trays if the paper size specified in the job runs out.
On*	Shows a message to select another tray when the specified paper runs out in the paper tray.


### **Set Available Time**

**Purpose:**


Sets the available time for the Copy, Scan, Fax, and Print functions.

Values:

Copy, Scan, Fax, Print	Set Available Time	Off*	Does not set the time when function is available.
		On	Sets the time when function is available.
	Start Time		Sets the start time of the available time.
	End Time		Sets the end time of the available time.
	Recurrence		Sets the day of the week to repeat the setting.

 **NOTE:** Set Available Time can be configured when Print, Copy, Scan, or Fax is set to On.

### Secure Job Expiration

 **NOTE:** Secure Job Expiration feature is available only when RAM Disk is set to On.

Purpose:

To specify the date and time to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk.

Values:

Expiration Mode	Off*	Does not set the date and time to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk.
	On	Sets the date and time to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk.
Expiration Time		Sets the time to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk.
Recurrence	Daily	Sets the recurrence to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk daily.
	Weekly*	Sets the recurrence to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk weekly.
	Monthly	Sets the recurrence to delete the files stored as Secure Print monthly.
Weekly Setting	Monday	Sets the day of the week to delete the files stored as Secure Print.
	Tuesday	
	Wednesday	
	Thursday	
	Friday	
	Saturday	
	Sunday*	
Monthly Setting	1 day*	Sets the day of the month to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk.
	Available Range: 1-28 days	

### ColorTrack Mode

Purpose:

To specify who has access to color printing.

Values:

Off*	Does not limit access to color printing.
------	--

Internal Mode	Limits access to color printing. Authentication is done using user information registered on the printer .
External Mode	Limits access to color printing. Authentication is done using an external authentication server .

### Non Registered User

#### Purpose:

To specify whether to permit the printing of data without authentication information.

#### Values:

Off <sup>*</sup>	Does not permit non-account user to print the data.
On <sup>*1</sup>	Permits non-account user to print the data.

<sup>\*1</sup> Set **Non Account User Password** using the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

### Auto Color To Mono Print



**NOTE:** Auto Color To Mono Print feature is available when Dell ColorTrack is disabled.

#### Purpose:

To specify whether to print all print jobs in black and white even when color print is specified.

#### Values:

Off <sup>*</sup>	Prints according to the specified color mode.
On	Prints all print jobs in black and white even when color print is specified.

### ColorTrack Error Report

#### Purpose:

To specify whether to automatically print error-related information if printing with ColorTrack results in an error.

#### Values:

Off <sup>*</sup>	Does not print the error report when printing with ColorTrack results in an error.
On	Prints the error report when printing with ColorTrack results in an error.

### Maintenance

Use the Maintenance menu to initialize the NV (non-volatile) memory, configure the plain paper quality adjustment settings, and configure the security settings.



**NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (\*) are the factory default menu settings.

### Paper Density

#### Purpose:

To specify paper density settings.

#### Values:

Plain	Light
	Normal <sup>*</sup>
Label	Light
	Normal <sup>*</sup>

### Adjust Transfer Belt Unit

#### Purpose:

To adjust the transfer bias when ghosting occur. (The ghost image may be the image of the previous page, or a part of the page currently printing)

#### Values:

K Offset	0*	If faint black colored ghosts appear, try to decrease the value.
	Available Range: -5 to +5	
YMC Offset	0*	If faint ghosts in color (yellow, magenta, or cyan) appear, try to decrease the value.
	Available Range: -5 to +5	

### Adjust 2nd BTR

 **NOTE:** The print quality changes depending on the setting values you select for this item.


#### Purpose:

To specify the transfer roller voltage adjustment for each paper type.

#### Values:

Plain	0*	Sets the transfer roller voltage in increments of 1. The default settings may not give the best output on all paper types. If you see mottles on the print output, try to increase the voltage. If you see white spots on the print output, try to decrease the voltage.
	Available Range: -5 to +10	
Plain Thick	0*	
	Available Range: -5 to +10	
Covers (106-163g/m <sup>2</sup> )	0*	
	Available Range: -5 to +10	
Covers Thick (164-216g/m <sup>2</sup> )	0*	
	Available Range: -5 to +10	
Coated (106-163g/m <sup>2</sup> )	0*	
	Available Range: -5 to +10	
Coated Thick (164-216g/m <sup>2</sup> )	0*	
	Available Range: -5 to +10	
Label	0*	
	Available Range: -5 to +10	
Envelope	0*	
	Available Range: -5 to +10	
Recycled	0*	
	Available Range: -5 to +10	

### Adjust Fusing Unit

 **NOTE:** The print quality changes depending on the setting values you select for this item.

#### Purpose:

To adjust the temperature setting of the fusing unit for each paper type.

## Values:

Plain	0*	Sets the fusing unit temperature in increments of 1. The default settings may not give the best output on all paper types. When the printed paper has curled, try to lower the temperature. When the toner does not fuse on the paper properly, try to increase the temperature.
	Available Range: -3 to +3	
Plain Thick	0*	
	Available Range: -3 to +3	
Covers (106-163g/m <sup>2</sup> )	0*	
	Available Range: -3 to +3	
Covers Thick (164-216g/m <sup>2</sup> )	0*	
	Available Range: -3 to +3	
Coated (106-163g/m <sup>2</sup> )	0*	
	Available Range: -3 to +3	
Coated Thick (164-216g/m <sup>2</sup> )	0*	
	Available Range: -3 to +3	
Label	0*	
	Available Range: -3 to +3	
Envelope	0*	
	Available Range: -3 to +3	
Recycled	0*	
	Available Range: -3 to +3	

## Auto Reg Adjust

### Purpose:

To specify whether to automatically perform color registration adjustment.

### Values:


Off	Does not automatically perform color registration adjustment.
On*	Automatically performs color registration adjustment.

## Color Reg Adjust

### Purpose:

To manually perform color registration adjustment.


Manual Color Registration Adjustments are required when the printer is initially installed and after the printer is moved.

 **NOTE:** The Color Reg Adjust feature can be configured when Auto Reg Adjust is set to Off.

### Values:

Auto Correct	Start	Automatically performs color registration correction.
--------------	-------	---

Color Regi Chart	Print		Prints a color registration chart. The color registration chart prints a lattice pattern of yellow, magenta, and cyan lines. On the chart, find the values on the right side that are next to the line that is perfectly straight for each of the three colors. If the value for this line is 0, color registration adjustment is not required. If the value for this line is any value other than 0, specify the adjustment values under lateral adjustment and process adjustment in Enter Number.
Enter Number	LY	Available Range: -9 to +9	Sets lateral (perpendicular to paper feed direction) and process (paper feed direction) color adjustment values individually for Yellow, Magenta, and Cyan. Enter a number in order of lateral adjustment (left), lateral adjustment (right), and process adjustment. Select OK to save all the settings.
	LM		
	LC		
	RY	Available Range: -9 to +9	
	RM		
	RC		
	PY	Available Range: -9 to +9	
	PM		
PC			

 **NOTE:** Ensure that you remove the paper from the single sheet feeder before performing Auto Correct.

### Reset Defaults

#### Purpose:

To initialize the non-volatile (NV) memory. After executing this function and rebooting the printer, all the menu parameters are reset to their default values.

#### Values:

User Fax Section	Initialize	Initializes the fax number entries in the Address Book.
User Scan Section	Initialize	Initializes the e-mail and server address entries in the Address Book.
System Section	Initialize	Initializes the system parameters.

### Initialize Print Meter

#### Purpose:

To initialize the print meter of the printer. When the print meter is initialized, the meter count is reset to zero.

### Reset Fusing Unit

#### Purpose:


To initialize the life counter of the fusing unit. After replacing the fusing unit, be sure to initialize its life counter.

### Reset Transfer Belt Unit

#### Purpose:

To initialize the life counter of the transfer belt unit. After replacing the transfer belt unit, be sure to initialize its life counter.

### Clear Storage

 **NOTE:** Clear Storage feature is available only when RAM Disk is set to On or when the optional hard disk is installed.

**Purpose:**

To clear all files stored as Secure Print, Private Mail Box Print, Public Mail box Print, Proof Print, and Stored Print in the RAM Disk or the optional hard disk.

**Values:**

All	Deletes all files stored as Secure Print, Private Mail Box Print, Public Mail Box Print, and Proof Print in the RAM Disk or the optional hard disk.
Secure Document	Deletes all files stored as Secure Print in the RAM Disk or the optional hard disk.
Stored Document	Deletes all files stored as Stored Print in the RAM Disk or the optional hard disk.

**Format Hard Disk**

**NOTE:** Format Hard Disk feature is available only when the optional hard disk is installed.

**Purpose:**

To initialize the optional hard disk.

**Non-Dell Toner****Purpose:**

To use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.



**CAUTION:** Using a non-Dell™ toner cartridge may severely damage your printer. The warranty does not cover damages caused by using non-Dell toner cartridges.

**Values:**

Off*	Does not use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.
On	Uses toner cartridge of another manufacturer.

**Adjust Altitude****Purpose:**

To specify the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.

The discharge phenomenon for charging the photo conductor varies with barometric pressure. Adjustments are performed by specifying the altitude of the location where the printer is being used.



**NOTE:** An incorrect altitude adjustment setting leads to poor printing quality, incorrect indication of remaining toner, etc.

**Values:**

0m*	Sets the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.
1000m	
2000m	
3000m	


**Clear Job History****Purpose:**

To clear the job history of all finished jobs.

**Calibrate Touchscreen****Purpose:**

To calibrate the touch panel.

### Fax Line Test

 **NOTE:** Fax Line Test feature is not available when the Fax function is disabled.

**Purpose:**

To test if the voltage supply from the fax line is sufficient.

### Secure Settings

Use the `Secure Settings` menu to set a password to limit access to the menus. This prevents items from being changed accidentally.

 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (\*) are the factory default menu settings.

**See also:**

"Panel Lock"

### Panel Lock

**Purpose:**


To set a limited access to `Admin Settings` with a password, and to set or change the password.

**Values:**

Panel Lock Control	Disable*	Disables password protection for <code>Admin Settings</code> .
	Enable	Enables password protection for <code>Admin Settings</code> .
Change Password <sup>*1</sup>	0000-9999	Sets or changes the password required to access <code>Admin Settings</code> .

<sup>\*1</sup> This item is available only when `Panel Lock Control` is set to `Enable`.

### Function Enabled

 **NOTE:** Function Enabled feature is available only when `Panel Lock Control` is set to `Enable`.

**Purpose:**

To specify whether to enable or disable each of the printer functions, or to require a password to use the functions.

**Values:**

Copy	On*	Enables the Copy function.
	On (Password)	Enables the Copy function, but requires a password to use the function.
	On (Color Password)	Enables the Copy function with a color mode, but requires a password.
	Off	Disables the Copy function.
E-mail	On*	Enables the E-mail function.
	On (Password)	Enables the E-mail function, but requires a password.
	Off	Disables the E-mail function.
Fax	On*	Enables the Fax function.
	On (Password)	Enables the Fax function but requires a password to send faxes (does not require a password to receive incoming faxes).

	Off		Disables the Fax function (the printer will not send or receive faxes).
Fax Driver	Enable*		Enables the Fax Driver function.
	Disable		Disables the Fax Driver function (the printer will not send faxes).
Scan To Network	On*		Enables the Scan To Network function.
	On (Password)		Enables the Scan To Network function, but requires a password.
	Off		Disables the Scan To Network function.
Scan To Application	On*		Enables the Scan To Application and WSD Scan function.
	On (Password)		Enables the Scan To Application function, but requires a password. WSD Scan is disabled since On (Password) is not supported by WSD Scan.
	Off		Disables the Scan To Application and WSD Scan function.
PC Scan	On*		Enables the PC Scan function.
	On (Password)		Enables the PC Scan function, but requires a password.
	Off		Disables the PC Scan function.
Scan To USB	On*		Enables the Scan To USB function.
	On (Password)		Enables the Scan To USB function, but requires a password.
	Off		Disables the Scan To USB function.
USB Direct Print	On*		Enables the USB Direct Print function.
	On (Password)		Enables the USB Direct Print function, but requires a password.
	On (Color Password)		Enables the USB Direct Print function with a color mode, but requires a password.
	Off		Disables the USB Direct Print function.
ID Card Copy	Enable*		Enables the ID Card Copy function.
	Disable		Disables the ID Card Copy function.
USB Services	Show When Inserted	Enable*	Shows a <b>USB Drive Detected</b> screen when a USB memory is inserted in to the printer.
		Disable	Does not show a <b>USB Drive Detected</b> screen when a USB memory is inserted in to the printer.
	Hide Until Inserted	Enable*	Hides menus concerning USB memory until a USB memory is inserted to the printer.
		Disable	Menus concerning USB memory are shown without a USB memory inserted to the printer.
Change Password* <sup>1</sup>			Changes the password that is set under the <b>Function Enabled</b> menu.

\*1 This item is available only when **On (Password)** or **On (Color Password)** is enabled.

## Edit E-mail From Fields

Purpose:

To specify whether to enable editing of the transmission source when you use Scan to E-mail.


Values:

Disable	Disables editing of the transmission source.
Enable*	Enables editing of the transmission source.

### Reconfirm Recipient

Purpose:

To specify whether to reconfirm the recipient before sending a fax or scan.

 **NOTE:** If **Reconfirm Recipient** menu is set to **Reconfirm Recipient**, recipients can only be selected from the phone book or the address book. You cannot directly enter an address or fax number.

Values:

No Confirmation*	Does not display a screen to reconfirm the recipient before the job is actually sent.
Reconfirm Recipient	Displays a screen to reconfirm the recipient before the job is actually sent.

### Domain Filtering

Purpose:

To specify whether to only send e-mails to specified domains.

 **NOTE:** Set the domains from **SMTP Domain Filtering** on the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

Values:

Off*	Disables Domain Filtering.
Allow Domains	Only allows e-mails to be sent to specified domains.

### Software Download

Purpose:

To enable or disable download of firmware updates.

Values:

Disable	Disables firmware updates.
Enable*	Enables firmware updates.

### Display of Network Information

Purpose:

To show or hide network information in the message field of the **Main Home** screen.

Values:

Show IPv4 Address*	Shows the IPv4 address of the printer on the <b>Main Home</b> screen.
Show Host Name	Shows the host name of the printer on the <b>Main Home</b> screen.
Hide Network Information	Does not show network information on the <b>Main Home</b> screen.

## Data Encryption

 **NOTE:** Data Encryption feature is available only when the optional hard disk is installed.

### Purpose:


To disable or enable data encryption when using the printer.

### Values:

Encryption	Off*	Disables encryption of the data.
	On	Enables encryption of the data.
Encryption Key		Sets a key that is required for encryption.

## Hard Disk Over Write

 **NOTE:** Hard Disk Over Write feature is available only when the optional hard disk is installed.

 **NOTE:** Overwrite of the hard disk may take several hours. When overwriting the hard disk, all functions of the printer are inoperable.


### Purpose:

To erase the contents of the entire hard disk by overwriting the hard disk with meaningless data.

### Values:

Off*		Disables overwrite of the hard disk.
Single Pass		Overwrites the hard disk once.
3 Pass		Overwrites the hard disk three times.

## Login Error

 **NOTE:** Login Error feature is available only when Panel Lock Control is set to Enable.

### Purpose:

To specify the number of error entry attempts allowed when you log in as an administrator in the Admin Settings and Report/List menu.


### Values:

Off*		Does not allow an administrator to log in after one error entry attempt.
On	5*	Sets the number of error entry attempts allowed when an administrator logs in.
	Available Range: 1-10	

## USB Settings

Use the USB Settings menu to change printer settings affecting a USB port.

### USB Port

 **NOTE:** USB Port feature is available only for the USB port on the rear of the printer.

### Purpose:

To specify whether to enable the USB port. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Disable	Disables the USB interface.
Enable*	Enables the USB interface.

### Adobe Protocol

Purpose:

To specify PostScript communication protocol for a parallel interface. You can configure the Adobe Protocol settings for the wired network. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Auto	Used when auto-detecting the PostScript communication protocol.
Standard	Used when the communication protocol is in ASCII interface.
BCP	Used when the communication protocol is in binary format.
TBCP*	Used when the communication protocol supports both ASCII and binary data to switch between them according to the specified control code.
Binary	Used when no special processing is required for data.

## Default Settings

Use **Default Settings** to modify the **Copy**, **Scan Menu**, or **Fax** menu defaults.

### Copy Defaults

Purpose:

To modify the **Copy** menu defaults.

**Copy Defaults** allows you to configure the following items in addition to the items under the **Copy** menu.

### Auto Exposure Level

Purpose:

To specify the default background suppression level.

Values:

Normal*	Sets the background suppression level to Normal.
High	Sets the background suppression level to High.
Highest	Sets the background suppression level to Highest.

### Color Balance

Purpose:

To specify the default color balance level within the range of -3 to +3.

Values:

Yellow	Low Density	0*	Sets the color balance level of low density yellow.
		Available Range: -3 to +3	
	Med. Density	0*	Sets the color balance level of medium density yellow.
		Available Range: -3 to +3	

	High Density	0 <sup>*</sup> Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of high density yellow.
Magenta	Low Density	0 <sup>*</sup> Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of low density magenta.
	Med. Density	0 <sup>*</sup> Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of medium density magenta.
	High Density	0 <sup>*</sup> Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of high density magenta.
Cyan	Low Density	0 <sup>*</sup> Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of low density cyan.
	Med. Density	0 <sup>*</sup> Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of medium density cyan.
	High Density	0 <sup>*</sup> Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of high density cyan.
Black	Low Density	0 <sup>*</sup> Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of low density black.
	Med. Density	0 <sup>*</sup> Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of medium density black.
	High Density	0 <sup>*</sup> Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of high density black.

## Scan Defaults

### Purpose:

To modify the Scan Menu and E-mail menu defaults.

Scan Defaults allows you to configure the following items in addition to the items under the Scan Menu and E-mail menus.

### Auto Exposure Level

#### Purpose:

To specify the default background suppression level.

#### Values:

Normal <sup>*</sup>	Sets the background suppression level to Normal.
High	Sets the background suppression level to High.
Highest	Sets the background suppression level to Highest.

## TIFF File Format

### Purpose:

To specify the default TIFF file format.

#### Values:

TIFF V6 <sup>*</sup>	Sets the default TIFF file format to TIFF V6.
TTN2	Sets the default Tiff file format to TTN2.

## Image Compression

### Purpose:

To specify the image compression level.

### Values:

High	Sets the image compression level to High.
Normal*	Sets the image compression level to Normal.
Low	Sets the image compression level to Low.

## Max E-mail Size

### Purpose:

To specify the maximum size of e-mail that can be sent.

### Values:

2048 KB*	Sets the maximum size of e-mail that can be sent, in increments of 1 KB.
50-16384 KB	

## Fax Defaults

### Purpose:

To modify the Fax menu defaults. See "Fax Menu" for more details.

## USB Direct Print Defaults

### Purpose:

To modify the defaults for the USB Direct Print Defaults menu. See "USB Direct Print Menu" for more details.

# Tray Management

Use the Tray Settings menu to define the print media loaded in tray1 and the optional 550-sheet feeder.



**NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (\*) are the factory default menu settings.

## Tray Settings

To configure tray settings.

### MPF

#### Purpose:

To specify the paper loaded in the MPF.

#### Values:

Display Tray Prompt	Enter a check to display a popup message that prompts to set Paper Type and Paper Size when paper is loaded in the MPF. The factory default is on (check).
Use Driver Settings for Print Job	Enter a check to use the paper size and type set on the printer driver. The factory default is off (blank).

Size  mm series	A4 (210x297mm) *1	
	A5 (148x210mm)	
	B5 (182x257mm)	
	Letter (8.5x11")	
	Folio (8.5x13")	
	Legal (8.5x14")	
	Executive (7.3x10.5")	
	Envelope #10 (4.1x9.5")	
	Monarch Env. (3.9x7.5")	
	DL Env. (110x220mm)	
	C5 Env. (162x229mm)	
	Custom	
	inch series	Letter (8.5x11") *1
		Folio (8.5x13")
Legal (8.5x14")		
A4 (210x297mm)		
A5 (148x210mm)		
B5 (182x257mm)		
Executive (7.3x10.5")		
Envelope #10 (4.1x9.5")		
Monarch Env. (3.9x7.5")		

	DL Env. (110x220mm)
	C5 Env. (162x229mm)
	Custom
Type	Plain*
	Plain Thick
	Covers (106-163g/m <sup>2</sup> )
	Covers Thick (164-216g/m <sup>2</sup> )
	Coated (106-163g/m <sup>2</sup> )
	Coated Thick (164-216g/m <sup>2</sup> )
	Label
	Envelope
	Recycled
	Letterhead
	Preprinted
	Prepunched
	Color
	Plain S2
	Color S2
	Plain Thick S2
	Recycled S2

\*1 Denotes country-specific factory default value.

### Tray1

#### Purpose:

To specify the paper loaded in tray1.

#### Values:

Display Tray Prompt	Enter a check to display a popup message that prompts to set Paper Type and Paper Size when paper is loaded in tray1. The factory default is on (check).
Size	A4 (210x297mm)*1
mm series	A5 (148x210mm)
	B5 (182x257mm)

	Letter (8.5x11")
	Folio (8.5x13")
	Legal (8.5x14")
	Executive (7.3x10.5")
	Custom
inch series	Letter (8.5x11") *1
	Folio (8.5x13")
	Legal (8.5x14")
	A4 (210x297mm)
	A5 (148x210mm)
	B5 (182x257mm)
	Executive (7.3x10.5")
	Custom
Type	Plain
	Plain Thick
	Covers (106-163g/m <sup>2</sup> )
	Covers Thick (164-216g/m <sup>2</sup> )
	Coated (106-163g/m <sup>2</sup> )
	Coated Thick (164-216g/m <sup>2</sup> )
	Recycled
	Letterhead
	Preprinted
	Prepunched
	Color
	Plain S2
	Color S2
	Plain Thick S2

---

## Recycled S2


---

\*1 Denotes country-specific factory default value.

---

 **NOTE:** For more information on supported paper sizes, see "Supported Paper Sizes."

### Tray2

 **NOTE:** Tray2 feature is available only when the optional 550-sheet feeder is installed.

#### Purpose:

To specify the paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.

#### Values:

---

Display Tray Prompt	Enter a check to display a popup message that prompts to set Paper Type and Paper Size when paper is loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder. The factory default is on (check).
---------------------	--

---

Size	Auto Sensed*
	Custom
Type	Plain
	Plain Thick
	Covers
	(106-163g/m <sup>2</sup> )
	Covers Thick
	(164-216g/m <sup>2</sup> )
	Coated
	(106-163g/m <sup>2</sup> )
	Coated Thick
	(164-216g/m <sup>2</sup> )
	Recycled
	Letterhead
	Preprinted
	Prepunched
	Color
	Plain S2
	Color S2
	Plain Thick S2
	Recycled S2

---

### Tray Priority

#### Purpose:

To set the priority order of the paper trays for automatic tray selection. If paper trays loaded with the same paper size and type exists, the paper tray is selected according to this priority order.

#### Values:

---

First	MPF*1	Sets the MPF as the first priority.
-------	-------	-------------------------------------

---

	Tray1*	Sets tray1 as the first priority.
	Tray2	Sets the optional 550-sheet feeder as the first priority.
Second	MPF*	Sets the MPF as the second priority.
	Tray1* <sup>1</sup>	Sets tray1 as the second priority.
	Tray2	Sets the optional 550-sheet feeder as the second priority.
Third	MPF	Sets the MPF as the third priority.
	Tray1	Sets tray1 as the third priority.
	Tray2* <sup>1</sup>	Sets the optional 550-sheet feeder as the third priority.

\*1 The factory default when the optional 550-sheet feeder is installed.

## Panel Language

Purpose:


To determine the language of the text on the touch panel.

Values:

English*
Français
Italiano
Deutsch
Español
Dansk
Nederlands
Norsk
Svenska

## Print Menu

Use the Print Menu to print a job using the Secure Print, Private Mail Box Print, Public Mail Box Print, and Proof Print features.

 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (\*) are the factory default menu settings.

### Private Mailbox

 **NOTE:** Private Mailbox feature is available only when RAM Disk is set to On or the optional hard disk is installed.

Purpose:

To specify whether and how to print the job stored in the Private Mailbox.

Values:

Select User ID		Enter the password you specified on the printer driver.
Select a Job		Selects a job to print.
Select All		Selects all the documents stored for this User ID.
Quantity	1*	Specifies the quantity of prints in increments of 1.
	Available Range: 1-999	

	<b>Use Driver Settings</b>	Sets the quantity of prints specified on the printer driver.
<b>Print</b>		Prints the selected job.
	<b>Print and Delete*</b>	Deletes the document after it is printed.
<b>Delete</b>		Deletes the specified document from print memory.

### Public Mailbox

 **NOTE:** Public Mailbox feature is available only when RAM Disk is set to On or the optional hard disk is installed.

**Purpose:**

To specify whether and how to print the job stored in the Public Mailbox.

**Values:**

<b>Select User ID</b>	<b>Select a Job</b>	Selects a job to print.
	<b>Select All</b>	Selects all the documents stored for this User ID.
<b>Quantity</b>	<b>1*</b>	Specifies the quantity of prints in increments of 1.
	<b>Available Range: 1-999</b>	
	<b>Use Driver Settings</b>	Sets the quantity of prints specified on the printer driver.
<b>Print</b>		Prints the selected job.
	<b>Print and Delete</b>	Deletes the document after it is printed.
<b>Delete</b>		Deletes the specified document from print memory.

### Proof Print

 **NOTE:** Proof Print feature is available only when RAM Disk is set to On or the optional hard disk is installed.

**Purpose:**

To specify whether and how to print the job stored in the Proof Print. When the print job is sent from the printer driver on the computer, a single copy is printed for you to check the print result. If you do not have problems with the print result, you can choose to print more copies. This prevents a large number of misprinted copies from being printed at one time.

**Values:**

<b>Select User ID</b>	<b>Select a Job</b>	Selects a job to print.
	<b>Select All</b>	Selects all the documents stored for this User ID.
<b>Quantity</b>	<b>1*</b>	Specifies the quantity of prints in increments of 1.
	<b>Available Range: 1-999</b>	
	<b>Use Driver Settings</b>	Sets the quantity of prints specified on the printer driver.
<b>Print</b>		Prints the selected job.
	<b>Print and Delete</b>	Deletes the document after it is printed.
<b>Delete</b>		Deletes the specified document from print memory.

### Secure Print

Secure Print feature is available only when RAM Disk is set to On or the optional hard disk is installed.

**Purpose:**

To print confidential jobs. The printer can hold the job in memory until you arrive at the printer and type the password on the operator panel.

Values:

Select User ID	Enter the password you specified on the printer driver.
Select a Job	Selects a job to print.
Select All	Selects all the documents stored for this User ID.
Print	Prints the selected job.
Print and Delete *	Deletes the document after it is printed.
Delete	Deletes the specified document from print memory.

### Secure Fax Receive

Purpose:


To specify the password to receive faxes.

Values:

Enter Password	Enter the password you specified in Secure Receive.
----------------	---

## Copy Menu

Use the Copy menus to configure a variety of copy features.

 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (\*) are the factory default menu settings.

### Copy Tab

Purpose:

To set the basic copy options.

#### Output Color

Purpose:

To select color or black and white copying.

Values:

Full Color *	Prints in color mode.
Black & White	Prints in black and white mode.

### Select Tray

Purpose:

To specify the input tray.

Values:

MPF	The paper is fed from the MPF. When Use Driver Settings for Print Job is set in MPF of Tray Settings, Any is displayed for Size and Type. If you start the copy job with Any as the paper size and type, A4 or Letter is selected as the paper size and plain is selected as the paper type. If you want to specify the size and type of paper in the MPF, select MPF and specify the paper size and type.
-----	--

Size mm series	A4 (210x297mm) *1	
	A5 (148x210mm)	
	B5 (182x257mm)	
	Letter (8.5x11")	
	Folio (8.5x13")	
	Legal (8.5x14")	
	Executive (7.3x10.5")	
	Envelope #10 (4.1x9.5")	
	Monarch Env. (3.9x7.5")	
	DL Env. (110x220mm)	
	C5 Env. (162x229mm)	
	Custom	
	inch series	Letter (8.5x11") *1
		Folio (8.5x13")
Legal (8.5x14")		
A4 (210x297mm)		
A5 (148x210mm)		
B5 (182x257mm)		
Executive (7.3x10.5")		
Envelope #10 (4.1x9.5")		
Monarch Env. (3.9x7.5")		

	DL Env. (110x220mm)
	C5 Env. (162x229mm)
	Custom
Type	Plain
	Plain Thick
	Covers (106-163g/m <sup>2</sup> )
	Covers Thick (164-216g/m <sup>2</sup> )
	Coated (106-163g/m <sup>2</sup> )
	Coated Thick (164-216g/m <sup>2</sup> )
	Label
	Envelope
	Recycled
	Letterhead
	Preprinted
	Prepunched
	Color
	Plain S2
	Color S2
	Plain Thick S2
	Recycled S2
Tray1 <sup>*</sup>	The paper is fed from tray1.
Tray2 <sup>*2</sup>	The paper is fed from the optional 550-sheet feeder.
<sup>*1</sup> Denotes country-specific factory default value. <sup>*2</sup> This item is available only when the optional 550-sheet feeder is installed.	

### Darken / Lighten

#### Purpose:

To make the copy darker or lighter than the original.

#### Values:

Darken +3	Works well with light documents or faint pencil markings.
Darken +2	
Darken +1	
Normal <sup>*</sup>	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.

Lighten +1	Works well with dark documents.
Lighten +2	
Lighten +3	

## 2 Sided Copying

### Purpose:

To specify whether to make duplex copy and select the binding position.

### Values:

1 → 1 Sided*			Prints on one side of a sheet of paper.
1 → 2 Sided	Binding of Output	Long Edge Binding*	Prints one sided originals on both sides of a sheet of paper.
		Short Edge Binding	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by long edge.
			Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by short edge.
2 → 1 Sided	Binding of Original	Long Edge Binding*	Prints two sided originals on one side of a sheet of paper.
		Short Edge Binding	Scans both sides of a document bound by long edge.
			Scans both sides of a document bound by short edge.
2 → 2 Sided	Binding of Original	Long Edge Binding*	Prints two sided originals on both sides of a sheet of paper.
		Short Edge Binding	Scans both sides of a document bound by long edge.
			Scans both sides of a document bound by short edge.

## Quality Tab

### Purpose:

To set the options concerning image quality.

### Original Type

#### Purpose:

To improve the image quality by selecting the type of the original document.

#### Values:

Photo & Text*	Used for documents with both text and photos.
Text	Used for documents with text.
Photo	Used for documents with photos.

## Sharpness

### Purpose:

To adjust the sharpness to make the copy sharper or softer than the original.

### Values:

Sharpen	Makes the copy sharper than the original.
Normal*	Does not make the copy sharper or softer than the original.
Soften	Makes the copy softer than the original.

**Color Saturation****Purpose:**

To adjust the amount of colors to make the colors darker or lighter than the original.

**Values:**

High	Increases the color saturation to brighten the color of the copy.
Normal*	The color saturation is the same as the original.
Low	Decreases the color saturation to lighten the color of the copy.

**Auto Exposure****Purpose:**

To suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.

**Values:**

Off	Does not suppress the background.
On*	Suppresses the background to enhance text.

**Output Tab****Purpose:**

To set other copy options.

**Collation****Purpose:**

To sort the copy job. For example, if you make two copies of three page documents, one complete set of three page documents is printed one by one.

**Values:**

Auto*	Automatically sorts a copy job only when you use the DADF.
Collated	Sorts a copy job.
Uncollated	Does not sort a copy job.

**Reduce / Enlarge****Purpose:**

To reduce or enlarge the size of a copied image.

**Values:**

Custom ratio	100* 25-400 %	Enter a custom ratio in increments of 1 percent.
mm series	100%* 50% 70% A4→A5	

	81%
	B5→A5
	122%
	A5→B5
	141%
	A5→A4
	200%
inch series	100%*
	50%
	64%
	Ledger→Letter
	78%
	Legal→Letter
	129%
	Statement→Letter
	154%
	Statement→Legal
	200%

### Original Size

#### Purpose:

To specify the default document size.

#### Values:

mm series

Auto <sup>*1</sup>
A4 (210x297mm)
A5 (148x210mm)
B5 (182x257mm)
Letter (8.5x11")
Folio (8.5x13")
Legal (8.5x14")
Executive (7.3x10.5")

inch series

Auto <sup>*1</sup>
Letter (8.5x11")
Folio (8.5x13")
Legal (8.5x14")
A4 (210x297mm)
A5 (148x210mm)

---

B5 (182x257mm)

---

Executive (7.3x10.5")

---

\*1 Denotes country-specific factory default values.

---



**NOTE:** When `Auto` is selected, the printer assumes that the document size is the size of the print media loaded in tray1 or the MPF.

## 2-Up

### Purpose:

To print two original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.

### Values:

Off*	Does not perform 2-up printing.
Auto	Automatically reduces the original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.
Manual	Prints the original pages onto the one sheet of paper in the size specified in <code>Reduce/Enlarge</code> .

## Margin

### Purpose:

To specify the top, bottom, right, left, and middle margins of the copy.

### Values:

Top / Bottom	0.2 inch* (4 mm*) Available Range: 0.0–2.0 inches (0–50 mm)	Sets the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
Left / Right	0.2 inch* (4 mm*) Available Range: 0.0–2.0 inches (0–50 mm)	Sets the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
Middle	0.0 inches* (0 mm*) Available Range: 0.0–2.0 inches (0–50 mm)	Sets the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).

## Scan Menu

Use the `Scan` Menu to configure a variety of scanner features.

## Network

### Purpose:

To store the scanned image on a network server or a computer. See "Scan Options" for more details about the various scan options you can set for the scan.

### Values:

Address Book	Selects a FTP address or Server Message Block (SMB) protocol address from the Local Address Book.
--------------	---

## Application

### Purpose:

To save scanned data on a computer. The **Scan to Application** feature allows you to import scanned data from the printer to a computer connected via a USB cable. The computer must have **ScanButton Manager** installed to receive the data. See "Scan Options" for more details about the various scan options you can set for the scan.

## USB

### Purpose:

To save the scanned image to a USB memory attached to the printer. See "Scan Options" for more details about the various scan options you can set for the scan.

### Values:

---

Change Folder	Selects which folder the scanned image is saved to.
---------------	---

---

## Scan Options

Use the scan options to configure a variety of scanner features when scanning to a Network, Application, or USB.



**NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (\*) are the factory default menu settings.

### Scan To Network/Application/USB Tab

#### Purpose:

To set the basic options of the scan.

#### *Output Color*

##### Purpose:

To select color or black and white scanning.

##### Values:

---

Color*	Scans in color mode. Works well with texts and photos.
Black & White	Scans in black and white mode. Works well with texts.
Gray Scale	Scans in grayscale mode. Works well with texts and photos.

---

#### *Resolution*

##### Purpose:

To specify the resolution of the scanned image.

##### Values:

---

200 dpi*
300 dpi
400 dpi
600 dpi

---

#### *2 Sided Scanning*

##### Purpose:

To specify whether to scan both sides of a document.

Values:

1 Sided*		Scans one side of a document.
2 Sided	Long Edge Binding*	Scans both sides of a document bound by the long edge.
	Short Edge Binding	Scans both sides of a document bound by the short edge.

**File Format**

Purpose:

To specify the file format to save the scanned image.

Values:

PDF*
Multi-Page TIFF
TIFF (1 File per Page)
JPEG (1 File per Page)

**Quality Tab**

Purpose:

To set the options concerning image quality.

**Darken / Lighten**

Purpose:

To adjust the density to make the scanned image darker or lighter than the original.

Values:

Darken +3	Works well with light documents or faint pencil markings.
Darken +2	
Darken +1	
Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
Lighten +1	Works well with dark documents.
Lighten +2	
Lighten +3	

**Sharpness**

Purpose:

To adjust the sharpness to make the scanned image sharper or softer than the original.

Values:

Sharpen	Makes the scanned image sharper than the original.
Normal*	Does not make the scanned image sharper or softer than the original.
Soften	Makes the scanned image softer than the original.

**Contrast**

Purpose:

To adjust the amount of colors to make the contrast of colors darker or lighter than the original.

Values:

High	Adjusts the amount of colors to make the contrast of colors darker than the original.
Medium <sup>*</sup>	Does not adjust the amount of colors to make the contrast of colors darker or lighter than the original.
Low	Adjusts the amount of colors to make the contrast of colors lighter than the original.

### ***Auto Exposure***

Purpose:

To suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.

Values:

Off	Does not suppress the background.
On <sup>*</sup>	Suppresses the background to enhance text.

### **Options Tab**

Purpose:

To set other options for the scan.

### ***Original Size***

Purpose:

To specify the default paper size.

Values:

mm series

A4 (210x297mm) <sup>*1</sup>
A5 (148x210mm)
B5 (182x257mm)
Letter (8.5x11")
Folio (8.5x13")
Legal (8.5x14")
Executive (7.3x10.5")

<sup>\*1</sup> Denotes country-specific factory default values.

inch series

Letter (8.5x11") <sup>*1</sup>
Folio (8.5x13")
Legal (8.5x14")
A4 (210x297mm)
A5 (148x210mm)
B5 (182x257mm)
Executive (7.3x10.5")

---

\*1 Denotes country-specific factory default values.

---

### **Margin**

#### **Purpose:**

To specify the top, bottom, right, left, and middle margins of the scanned image.

#### **Values:**

Top / Bottom	0.1 inch* (2 mm*) Available Range: 0.0–2.0 inches (0–50 mm)	Sets the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
Left / Right	0.1 inch* (2 mm*) Available Range: 0.0–2.0 inches (0–50 mm)	Sets the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
Middle	0.0 inches* (0 mm*) Available Range: 0.0–2.0 inches (0–50 mm)	Sets the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).

### **File Naming Mode**

#### **Purpose:**

To specify the detailed setting of File Naming Mode.

#### **Values:**

Auto*		Sets the default file name.
Add Prefix	Prefix/Suffix String	Adds texts in front of the file name. Specifies the texts that are added when Add Prefix is selected.
Add Suffix	Prefix/Suffix String	Adds texts after the file name. Specifies the texts that are added when Add Suffix is selected.

### **Create Folder**

#### **Purpose:**

To specify whether to create a folder when saving scanned images.

#### **Values:**

Off	Does not create a folder when saving a scanned image.
On*	Creates a folder when saving a scanned image.

### **WSD Scan**

#### **Purpose:**

To save scanned data on a computer using WSD.



**NOTE:** WSD Scan is available when the OS of the client computer is Windows Vista SP2 (or later), Windows 7, and Windows 8.


#### **Values:**

Scan to Computer Name	Selects which computer the scanned image is saved to. Up to 20 computers will be listed.
-----------------------	--

Event	Scan	Sends the scanned image to the computer according to the chosen event. Which application each event is associated with depends on the setting on the computer.
	ScanToPrint	
	ScanToEmail	
	ScanToFax	
	ScanToOCR	

## E-mail

Use the E-mail to configure a variety of e-mail features. See "Scan Options" for details about the **Quality** and **Options** tab.


 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (\*) are the factory default menu settings.


Values:

New Recipient		Enters the e-mail address of the recipient using the keyboard.
Address Book	Machine Address Book - Individuals	Selects an e-mail address from the Local Address Book.
	Machine Address Book - Groups	Selects an e-mail group from the Local Address Book.
	Search Network Address Book	Searches an e-mail address from the Server Address Book.
From	Keyboard	Enters the e-mail address of the sender using the keyboard.
	Machine Address Book	Selects an e-mail address of the sender from the Local Address Book.
	Search Network Address Book	Searches an e-mail address of the sender from the Server Address Book.

## Fax Menu

Use the Fax menus to configure a variety of fax features.

 **NOTE:** The Fax function cannot be used unless you set up a country code under Country. If Country is not set up, a message Set the Country Code appears on the display.

 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (\*) are the factory default menu settings.

### Fax Tab

Purpose:



To set the recipient and basic fax options.

#### Specify the Recipient

Purpose:

To specify the recipient

Values:

<i>Enter number text box</i>		Enters the fax number using the number pad.
		Enters the speed dial number stored in the printer.
	Machine Address Book - Individuals	Selects a fax number from the Local Address Book.
	Machine Address Book - Groups	Selects a group dial number from the Local Address Book.
	Search Network Address Book	Searches a fax number from the Server Address Book.

## Darken / Lighten

### Purpose:

To adjust the density to make the copy darker or lighter than the original.

### Values:

Darken +3	Works well with light documents or faint pencil markings.
Darken +2	
Darken +1	
Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
Lighten +1	Works well with dark documents.
Lighten +2	
Lighten +3	

## 2 Sided Scanning

### Purpose:

To specify whether to scan both sides of a document.

### Values:

1 Sided*		Scans one side of a document.
2 Sided	Long Edge Binding*	Scans both sides of a document bound by the long edge.
	Short Edge Binding	Scans both sides of a document bound by the short edge.

## Resolution

### Purpose:

To specify the scan resolution to improve the output quality.

### Values:

Standard*	Suitable for documents with normal sized characters.
Fine	Suitable for documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
Super Fine	Suitable for documents containing extremely fine detail. The Super Fine mode is enabled only if the remote machine also supports the Super Fine mode. See the notes below.
Photo	Suitable for documents containing photographic images.



**NOTE:** Faxes scanned in the Super Fine mode transmit at the highest resolution supported by the receiving device.

## OnHook

### Purpose:

To send or receive faxes manually.

### Values:

Manual Send*	Enter Number	Enters the fax number using the number pad.
	Machine Address Book	Selects a fax number from the Local Address Book.

Search Network Address Book	Searches a fax number from the Server Address Book.
Manual Receive	Receives faxes manually.
Manual Polling	Manually retrieves information from a remote machine.

### Options Tab

#### Purpose:

To set other fax options.

#### Delayed Send

#### Purpose:

To send a fax at a later time.

#### Values:

Off <sup>*</sup>	Does not send a fax at a later time.
On	Sets the fax transmission start time when sending a fax at a specified time.

 **NOTE:** A maximum of 19 delayed fax jobs can be stored in the Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer.

### Polling Receive

#### Purpose:

To receive faxes from the remote fax machine when you want to receive it.

#### Values:

Off <sup>*</sup>	Does not receive faxes using Polling Receive.
On	Receives faxes using Polling Receive.

### Fax Cover Page


#### Purpose:

To set whether to attach a cover page to faxes.

#### Values:

Off <sup>*</sup>	Does not attach a cover page to faxes.
On	Attaches a cover page to faxes.

## USB Direct Print Menu

 **NOTE:** USB Direct Print function is available only when a USB memory is inserted in the front USB port.

### Select File to Print

#### Purpose:

To specify the document stored in the root, file, or folder in a USB memory.

### USB Direct Print Tab

#### Purpose:

To change the file and set basic print options.

### Change File

#### Purpose:

To change the file you want to print.

### Output Color

#### Purpose:

To select color or black and white printing.

#### Values:

Full Color*	Prints in color mode.
Black & White	Prints in black and white mode.

### Select Tray

#### Purpose:

To specify the input tray.

#### Values:

MPF	The paper is fed from the MPF. When Use Driver Settings for Print Job is set in MPF of Tray Settings, Any is displayed for Size and Type. If you start the print job with Any as the paper size and type, A4 or Letter is selected as the paper size and plain is selected as the paper type. If you want to specify the size and type of paper in the MPF, select MPF and specify the paper size and type.
Size	A4
mm series	(210x297mm) <sup>*1</sup>
	A5
	(148x210mm)
	B5
	(182x257mm)
	Letter
	(8.5x11")
	Folio
	(8.5x13")
	Legal
	(8.5x14")
inch series	Letter
	(8.5x11") <sup>*1</sup>
	Folio
	(8.5x13")
	Legal
	(8.5x14")

	A4 (210x297mm)
	A5 (148x210mm)
	B5 (182x257mm)
Type	Plain
	Plain Thick
	Covers (106-163g/m <sup>2</sup> )
	Covers Thick (164-216g/m <sup>2</sup> )
	Coated (106-163g/m <sup>2</sup> )
	Coated Thick (164-216g/m <sup>2</sup> )
	Envelope
	Recycled
	Letterhead
	Prepunched
	Color
	Plain S2
	Color S2
	Plain Thick S2
	Recycled S2
	Tray1 <sup>*</sup>
Tray2	The paper is fed from the optional 550-sheet feeder.

<sup>\*</sup>1 Denotes country-specific factory default value.

## 2 Sided Printing

### Purpose:

To print on both sides of a sheet of paper.

### Values:

1 Sided <sup>*</sup>		Does not print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
2 Sided	Long Edge Binding <sup>*</sup>	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by the long edge.
	Short Edge Binding	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by the short edge.

## Multiple-Up

### Purpose:

To specify the output layout.

Values:

Off*	Prints one page on one side of a sheet of paper.
2-Up	Prints two pages on one side of a sheet of paper.
4-Up	Prints four pages on one side of a sheet of paper.

### Options Tab

Purpose:

To set other print options.

#### Collation

Purpose:

To specify whether to sort the job.

Values:

Collated	Sorts a job.
Uncollated*	Does not sort a job.

#### PDF Password

Purpose:

To enter the password when you print a PDF file secured with a document open password (password to open the PDF file).

Values:

Enter PDF Password	Enter the document open password to print the secure PDF job.
--------------------	---

## ID Card Copy

Purpose:

To copy both sides of an ID card on one side of a single sheet of paper in the original size.

### ID Card Copy Tab

Purpose:

To set the basic ID Card Copy options.

Values:

Output Color	For details about each menu, see "Copy Menu."
Select Tray	
Darken / Lighten	
Auto Exposure	

### Quality Tab

Purpose:

To set the options concerning image quality.

Values:


---

Sharpness	For details about each menu, see "Copy Menu."
Color Saturation	




---

## Panel Lock


This feature prevents unauthorized personnel from changing the settings made by the administrator. For regular printing, items can be selected from the menu and printer settings remain unchanged. For regular printing, items can be configured using the printer driver.

 **NOTE:** Disabling the operator panel menus does not prevent access to the Stored Print and Tray Settings menus.

### Enabling the Panel Lock




- 1 Press the  (Information) button.
- 2 Select the Tools tab, and then select Admin Settings.
- 3 Select  until Secure Settings appears, and then select Secure Settings.
- 4 Select  until Panel Lock appears, and then select Panel Lock.
- 5 Select Panel Lock Control.
- 6 Select Enable, and then select OK.
- 7 Enter the new password, and then select OK.

 **CAUTION:** Be sure to remember the password. The procedure described below allows you to reset the password, but the settings for Address Book and Phone Book are cleared.

- Turn off the printer. Then, while holding the  (Information) button, turn on the printer. Perform steps 7 and 8.
- 8 Re-enter the password to confirm the password that you entered, and then select OK.  
The password has been changed.

To change the password while Panel Lock is Enable, perform steps 1 to 4 above, and then select Change Password. Perform steps 7 and 8 above to change the password.

### Disabling the Panel Lock

- 1 Press the  (Information) button.
- 2 Select the Tools tab, and then select Admin Settings.
- 3 Select  until Secure Settings appears, and then select Secure Settings.
- 4 Select  until Panel Lock appears, and then select Panel Lock.
- 5 Select Panel Lock Control.
- 6 Select Disable.
- 7 Enter the current password, and then select OK.  
The setting has been changed.




## Resetting Defaults

After executing this function and rebooting the printer, the phone book, address book, or menu parameters are reset to their default values.

The following menu parameters are exceptions and are not reset.

- Network settings
- Panel Lock settings and password
- Function Enabled settings (Copy, E-mail, Fax, Scan To Network, Scan To Application, PC Scan, Scan To USB, USB Direct Print) and passwords
- Secure Receive settings and password
- Login Error settings
- Set Available Time settings
- Secure Job Expiration settings
- USB Port settings
- Data Encryption settings
- Hard Disk Over Write settings
- ColorTrack Mode settings
- ColorTrack Error Report settings
- Non Registered User settings

### When Using the Operator Panel


- 1 Press the  (Information) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Admin Settings**.
- 3 Select  until **Maintenance** appears, and then select **Maintenance**.
- 4 Select  until **Reset Defaults** appears, and then select **Reset Defaults**.
- 5 Select the desired setting, and then select **Initialize**.

User Fax Section	Resets the phone book data.
User Scan Section	Resets the address book data.
System Section	Resets the system parameters.

- 6 Select **Yes, Reset**.  
The printer is restarted automatically.

## Print Media Guidelines

Print media refers to paper, labels, envelopes, and coated paper among others. Your printer provides high-quality printing on a variety of print media. Selecting the appropriate print media for your printer helps avoid printing troubles. This section describes selecting and caring for print media.

 **NOTE:** Use only laser print media. Do not use ink jet paper in your printer.

### Paper

For the best print quality in color, use 75 g/m<sup>2</sup> (20 lb) xerographic, grain long paper. For the best print quality in black and white, use 90 g/m<sup>2</sup> (24 lb) xerographic, grain long paper. It is recommended that you try a sample first before buying large quantities of any print media.

When loading paper, identify the recommended print side on the paper package, and load the paper accordingly. See "Loading Print Media in Tray1 and the Optional 550-Sheet Feeder" and "Loading Print Media in the MPF" for detailed loading instructions.

### Paper Characteristics

The following paper characteristics affect print quality and reliability. It is recommended that you follow these guidelines when evaluating new paper stock.

#### Weight

The tray automatically feeds paper weights from 60 g/m<sup>2</sup> to 216 g/m<sup>2</sup> (16 lb to 80 lb bond) grain long. The multipurpose feeder (MPF) automatically feeds paper weights from 60 g/m<sup>2</sup> to 216 g/m<sup>2</sup> (16 lb to 80 lb bond) grain long. Paper lighter than 60 g/m<sup>2</sup> (16 lb) may not feed properly, and could cause paper jams. For best performance, use 75 g/m<sup>2</sup> (20 lb bond) grain long paper.

#### Curl

Curl is the tendency of print media to curve at its edges. Excessive curl can cause paper feeding problems. Curl usually occurs after the paper passes through the printer, where it is exposed to high temperatures. Storing paper unwrapped, even in the paper tray, can contribute to paper curling prior to printing and cause feeding problems regardless of humidity. When printing on curled paper, straighten the paper and then insert it into the MPF.

#### Smoothness

The degree of paper smoothness directly affects the print quality. If the paper is too rough, the toner does not fuse on to the paper properly, resulting in poor print quality. If the paper is too smooth, it can cause paper feeding problems. Smoothness between 150 and 250 Sheffield points produces the best print quality.

#### Moisture Content

The amount of moisture in the paper affects both the print quality and the ability of the printer to feed the paper properly. Leave the paper in its original packaging until you are ready to use it. This limits the exposure of the paper to moisture changes that can degrade its performance.

#### Grain Direction

Grain refers to the alignment of the paper fibers in a sheet of paper. Grain is either grain long, running the length of the paper, or grain short, running the width of the paper. For 60 g/m<sup>2</sup> to 135 g/m<sup>2</sup> (16 lb to 36 lb bond) paper, grain long fibers are recommended. For paper heavier than 135 g/m<sup>2</sup> (36 lb bond), grain short is preferred.

## **Fiber Content**

Most high-quality xerographic paper is made from 100 % chemically pulped wood. Paper containing fibers such as cotton may lead to degraded paper handling.

## **Recommended Paper**

To ensure the best print quality and feed reliability, use 75 g/m<sup>2</sup> (20 lb) xerographic paper. Business paper designed for general business use also provides acceptable print quality. Only use paper able to withstand high temperatures without discoloring, bleeding, or releasing hazardous emissions. The laser printing process heats paper to high temperatures. Check with the manufacturer or vendor to determine whether the paper you have chosen is acceptable for laser printers.

It is recommended that you try a sample first before buying large quantities of any print media. When choosing any print media, you should consider the weight, fiber content, and color.

## **Unacceptable Paper**

The following paper types are not recommended for use with the printer:

- Chemically treated paper used to make copies without carbon paper, also known as carbonless paper, carbonless copy paper (CCP), or no carbon required (NCR) paper.
- Preprinted paper with chemicals that may contaminate the printer.
- Preprinted paper that can be affected by the temperature in the fusing unit.
- Preprinted paper that requires a registration (the precise print location on the page) greater than  $\pm 0.09$  inches, such as optical character recognition (OCR) forms.

In some cases, you can adjust registration with your software program to successfully print on these forms.

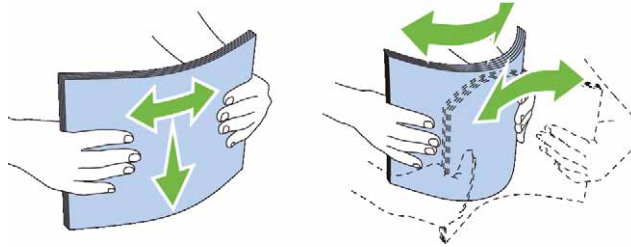
- Coated paper (erasable bond), synthetic paper, and thermal paper.
- Rough-edged, rough or heavily textured surface paper, or curled paper.
- Recycled paper containing more than 25 % post-consumer waste that does not meet DIN 19 309.
- Multiple-part forms or documents.
- Print quality may deteriorate (blank spaces or blotches may appear in the text) when printing on talc or acid paper.

## **Selecting Paper**

Proper paper selection helps prevent jams and ensures trouble-free printing.

To help avoid jams or poor print quality:

- Always use new, undamaged paper.
- Before loading the paper, identify the recommended print side of the paper. This information is usually indicated on the paper package.
- Do not use paper that you have cut or trimmed.
- Do not mix print media sizes, weights, or types in the same source. This may result in a paper jam.
- Do not remove the tray while printing is in progress.
- Ensure that the paper is properly loaded in the tray.
- Flex the paper back and forth, and then fan them. Straighten the edges of the stack on a level surface.



## Selecting Pre-Printed Media and Letterheads

When selecting pre-printed and letterhead paper for the printer:

- Use grain long paper for best results.
- Use only forms and letterheads printed using an offset lithographic or engraved printing process.
- Select paper that absorb ink, but does not bleed.
- Avoid paper with rough or heavily textured surfaces.
- Use paper printed with heat-resistant inks designed for use in xerographic copiers. The ink must withstand temperatures of 225 °C (437 °F) without melting or releasing hazardous emissions.
- Use inks that are not affected by the resin in the toner or the silicone in the fusing unit. Inks that are oxidation-set or oil-based should meet these requirements; latex inks might not. If you are in doubt, contact your paper supplier.

## Selecting Pre-Punched Paper

When selecting pre-punched paper for the printer:

- Test paper from several manufacturers before ordering and using large quantities of pre-punched paper.
- Paper should be punched at the paper manufacturer and not drilled into paper already packaged in a ream. Drilled paper can cause jams when multiple sheets feed through the printer. This may result in a paper jam.
- Pre-punched paper can include more paper dust than standard paper. Your printer may require more frequent cleaning and feed reliability may not be as good as standard paper.
- Weight guidelines for pre-punched paper are the same as non-punched paper.

## Envelopes

Depending on the envelopes, it is possible to expect variable levels of wrinkling. It is recommended that you try a sample first before buying large quantities of any print media. See "Loading an Envelope in the MPF" for instructions on loading an envelope.

When printing on envelopes:

- Use only high-quality envelopes that are designed for use in laser printers.
- Set the print media source to the MPF. Set the paper type to **Envelope**, and select the correct size of envelope from the printer driver.
- Use envelopes made from 75 g/m<sup>2</sup> (20 lb bond) paper. You can use up to 105 g/m<sup>2</sup> (28 lb bond) weight for the envelope feeder as long as the cotton content is 25 % or less. Envelopes with 100 % cotton content must not exceed 90 g/m<sup>2</sup> (24 lb bond) weight.
- Use only freshly unpackaged, undamaged envelopes.
- Use envelopes that can withstand temperatures of 205 °C (401 °F) without sealing, excessive curling, wrinkling, or releasing hazardous emissions. If you have any doubts about the envelopes you are considering, check with the envelope supplier.

- Adjust the guide to fit the width of the envelopes.
- To load an envelope into the MPF, insert the envelope with the flaps closed or open and the short-edge of the envelope facing into the printer. The print side must be facing up.
- See "Loading an Envelope in the MPF" for instructions on loading an envelope.
- Use one envelope size during a print job.
- Ensure that the humidity is low because high humidity (more than 60 %) and the high printing temperatures may seal the envelopes.
- For best performance, do not use envelopes that:
  - Have excessive curl or twist
  - Are stuck together or damaged in any way
  - Contain windows, holes, perforations, cutouts, or embossing
  - Use metal clasps, string ties, or metal folding bars
  - Have an interlocking design
  - Have postage stamps attached
  - Have any exposed adhesive when the flap is in the sealed or closed position
  - Have nicked edges or bent corners
  - Have rough, cockle, or laid finishes

## Labels

Your printer can print on many labels designed only for use with laser printers.

When selecting labels:

- Label adhesives, face sheet (printable stock), and topcoats must be able to withstand temperatures of 205 °C (401 °F) and pressure of 25 pounds per square inch (psi).
- Use labels that can be without sealing, excessive curling, wrinkling, or releasing hazardous emissions.
- Do not use label sheets with a slick backing material.

 **CAUTION: Before buying large quantities of any print media, it is recommended that you try a sample first.**

When printing on labels:

- Use labels that can withstand temperatures of 205 °C (401 °F) without sealing, excessive curling, wrinkling, or releasing hazardous emissions.
- Set the paper type to **Label** from the printer driver.
- Load labels in the MPF. Tray1 and the optional 550-sheet feeder do not support labels.
- Do not load labels together with paper in the MPF.
- Do not print within 1 mm (0.04 inches) of the die-cut.
- Do not print within 1 mm (0.04 inches) of the edge of the label, of the perforations, or between die-cuts of the label.
- Do not print a label through the printer more than once.
- Portrait orientation is preferred, especially when printing bar codes.
- Do not use labels that have exposed adhesive.
- Use full label sheets. Partial sheets may cause labels to peel off during printing, resulting in a jam.

- Do not use label sheets that have adhesive to the edge of the sheet. It is recommended that zone coating of the adhesive is done at least 1 mm (0.04 inches) away from edges. Adhesive material contaminates your printer and could void your warranty.

**⚠ WARNING: Otherwise a jam occurs in the printer and contaminate your printer and your cartridges with adhesive. As a result, could void your printer and cartridge warranties.**

## Storing Print Media

For proper print media storage, the following guidelines will help to avoid media feeding problems and uneven print quality.

- Store print media in an environment where the temperature is approximately 21 °C (70 °F) and the relative humidity is 40 %.
- Store cartons of print media on a pallet or shelf, rather than directly on the floor.
- If you store individual packages of print media out of the original carton, ensure that they rest on a flat surface so that the edges do not buckle or curl.
- Do not place anything on top of the print media packages.

## Identifying Print Media and Specifications

The following tables show print media information.

### Supported Paper Sizes


Paper size	MPF		Tray1		Optional 550-sheet feeder		Duplex unit
	Side 1	Side 2	Side 1	Side 2	Side 1	Side 2	
A4 (210 x 297 mm)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
B5 (182 x 257 mm)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
A5 (148 x 210 mm)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Letter (8.5 x 11 in)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Folio (8.5 x 13 in)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Legal (8.5 x 14 in)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Executive (7.25 x 10.5 in)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Envelope #10 (4.125 x 9.5 in)	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N
Monarch (3.875 x 7.5 in)	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N
DL (110 x 220mm)	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N
C5 (162 x 229mm)	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N
Custom <sup>*1,2</sup>	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y

<sup>\*1</sup> Custom: width: 76.2 mm (3.0 inches) to 215.9 mm (8.5 inches) for the MPF; 148 mm (5.83 inches) to 215.9 mm (8.5 inches) for tray1 and the optional 550-sheet feeder  
length: 127.0 mm (5.0 inches) to 355.6 mm (14.00 inches) for the MPF; 210 mm (8.27 inches) to 355.6 mm (14.00 inches) for tray1 and the optional 550-sheet feeder

<sup>\*2</sup> XPS driver does not support custom size paper.

## Supported Paper Types

Paper type		MPF		Tray1		Optional 550-sheet feeder		Duplex unit	
		Side 1	Side 2	Side 1	Side 2	Side 1	Side 2	Side 1	Side 2
Plain	Light	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N
	Normal	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N
	Thick	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N
Covers	Normal	Y	N	Y	N	Y	N	Y	N
	Thick	Y	N	Y	N	Y	N	N	N
Coated	Normal	Y	N	Y	N	Y	N	Y	N
	Thick	Y	N	Y	N	Y	N	N	N
Label	Normal	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
	Light	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Envelope		Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Recycled		Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N
Letterhead		Y	N	Y	N	Y	N	Y	N
Preprinted		Y	N	Y	N	Y	N	Y	N
Prepunched		Y	N	Y	N	Y	N	Y	N
Color		Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N

 **NOTE:** For Plain and Label paper, you can set the paper density by selecting the Paper Density (Light or Normal) under Maintenance from the operator panel, **Tool Box**, or **Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool**. Once you set the Paper Density settings, the printer uses the settings for Plain and Label paper.

## Paper Type Specifications

Paper type	Weight (g/m <sup>2</sup> )	Remarks
Plain	60–90	-
Plain Thick	80/90–105	-
Recycled	60–105	-
Labels	-	Inkjet printer paper cannot be used.
Covers	106–163	-
Covers Thick	164–216	-
Envelope	-	-
Coated	106–163	Inkjet printer paper cannot be used.
Coated Thick	164–216	Inkjet printer paper cannot be used.
Letterhead	60–90	-
Preprinted	60–90	-
Prepunched	60–90	-
Color	60–90	-

## Loading Print Media

Loading print media properly helps prevent jams and ensures trouble-free printing.

Before loading any print media, identify the recommended print side of the print media. This information is usually indicated on the print media package.

### Capacity

Tray1 and the optional 550-sheet feeder (tray2) can hold:

- 550 sheets of the standard paper.

The multipurpose feeder (MPF) can hold:

- 150 sheets of the standard paper.

### Print Media Dimensions

The maximum dimensions of print media that tray1 and the optional 550-sheet feeder can handle are:

- Width — 148 mm (5.83 inches) to 215.9 mm (8.5 inches)
- Length — 210 mm (8.27 inches) to 355.6 mm (14.00 inches)

The maximum dimensions of print media that the MPF can handle are:

- Width — 76.2 mm (3.00 inches) to 215.9 mm (8.5 inches)
- Length — 127 mm (5.00 inches) to 355.6 mm (14.00 inches)

## Loading Print Media in Tray1 and the Optional 550-Sheet Feeder

This section describes how to load letterhead. For details about loading print media other than letterhead, see "Loading Paper."



**NOTE:** To avoid paper jams, do not remove the tray while printing is in progress.



**NOTE:** Use only laser print media. Do not use ink jet paper in the printer.

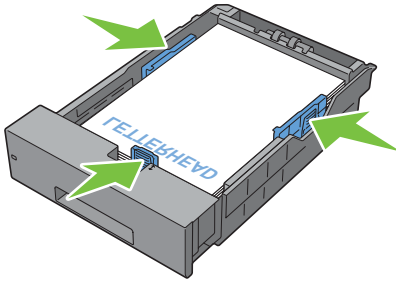
### Loading Letterhead (Pre-Printed and Pre-Punched Paper)

The pre-printed paper such as letterhead and pre-punched paper must be inserted bottom edge first with the print side facing down as shown below.

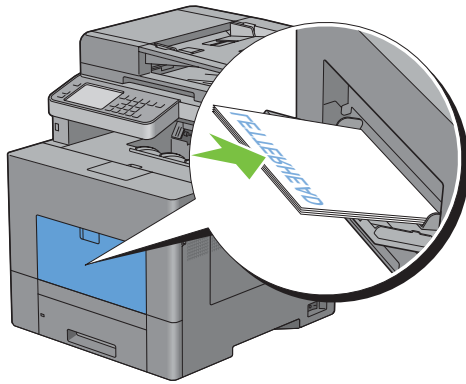


**NOTE:** Set Letterhead 2-Sided or Letterhead Duplex Mode to Enable and Paper Type to Letterhead, Preprinted, or Prepunched from the operator panel or the printer driver even when you print on a single side of letterhead, pre-printed, or pre-punched paper.

Print media source	Print side	Page orientation
Tray1 and optional 550-sheet feeder	Face down	Letterhead enters the printer last

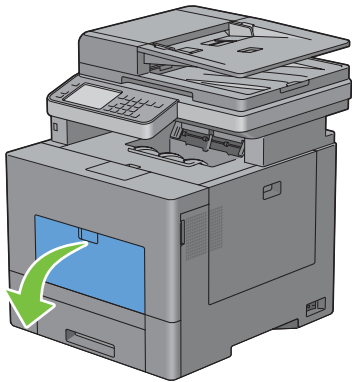


MPF	Face down	Letterhead enters the printer last
-----	-----------	------------------------------------

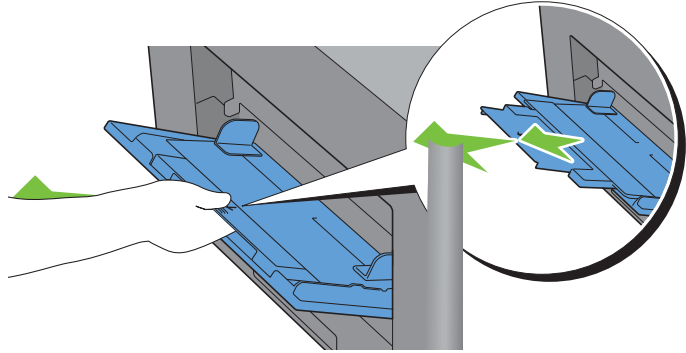


## Loading Print Media in the MPF

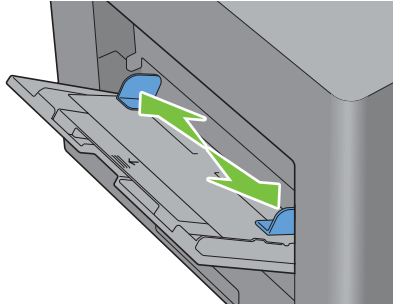
- 1 Gently pull open the MPF cover.




2 Extend the extension tray as necessary.

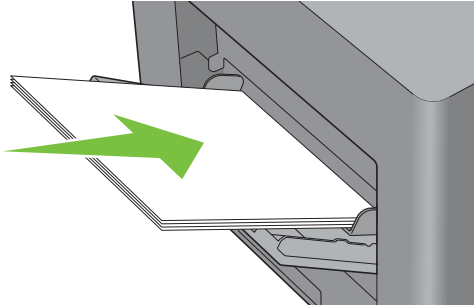


3 Slide the width guides to the edge of the tray. The width guides should be fully extended.




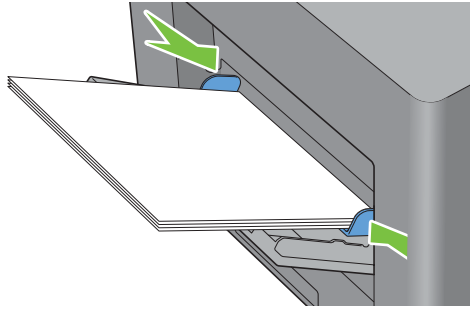
4 Insert all media facing up and top edge first into the MPF.





 **NOTE:** Do not force the print media into the MPF.



- Slide both width guides until they rest lightly against the edge of the print media stack.

 **NOTE:** Do not force the print media into the MPF.




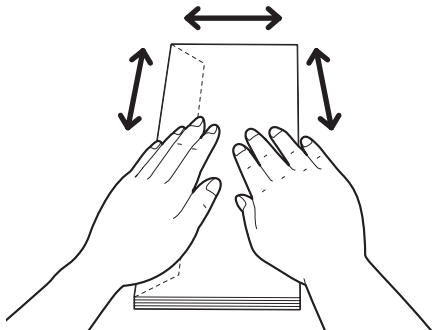
- On the touch panel, select **Size**.
- Select  or  until the desired paper size appears, and then select the size.
- Select **Type**.
- Select  or  until the desired paper type appears, and then select the type.
- Select **OK**.


### Loading an Envelope in the MPF

Use the following guidelines when loading envelopes in the MPF:

 **CAUTION:** Never use envelopes with windows, coated linings, or self-stick adhesives. These lead to paper jams and can cause damage to the printer.

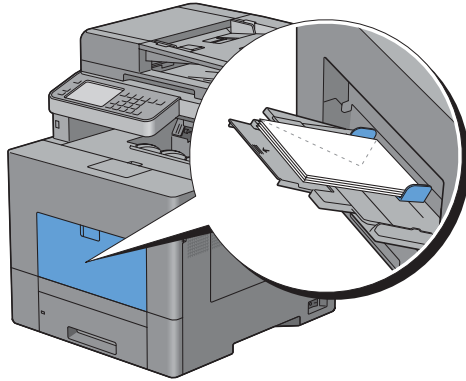
 **NOTE:** If you do not load envelopes in the MPF right after they have been removed from the packaging, they may bulge. To avoid jams, press firmly across the whole envelopes to flatten them as shown below before loading the envelopes in the MPF.



 **NOTE:** The maximum height (quantity) of envelopes that can be loaded in the MPF is approximately 15 mm (0.59 inches) (15 envelopes).

### Envelope #10, Monarch, or DL

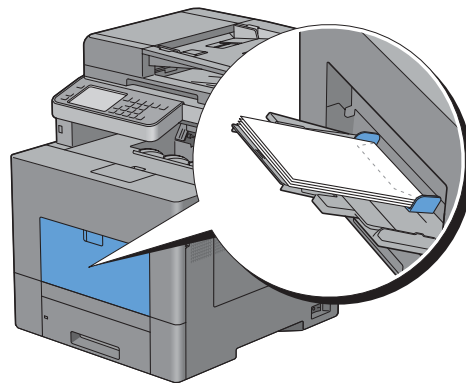
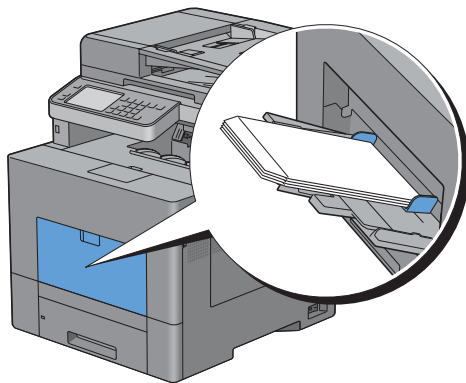
Load the envelopes short edge feed with the flaps closed and the print side up. Ensure that the flaps come at the left when you face towards the printer.



### C5

Load the envelopes short edge feed with the flaps open or closed and the print side up.

Ensure that the flaps come at the bottom with the flaps open or at the top with the flaps closed when you face towards the printer.




## Using the MPF

- Load only one size and type of print media during a single print job.
- To achieve the best possible print quality, use only high-quality print media that is designed for use in laser printer. For more guidelines on print media, see "Print Media Guidelines."
- Do not add or remove print media when there is still print media in the MPF or when the printer is printing from the MPF. This may result in a paper jam.
- Print media should be loaded with the recommended print side up and the top of the print media going into the MPF first.
- Do not place objects on the MPF. Also, avoid pressing down or apply excessive force on it.
- The icons on the MPF show how to load the MPF with paper, and how to turn an envelope for printing.


## Linking Trays

The printer automatically links the trays when you load the same size and type of print media in them. The first tray will be utilized until the media runs out after which the next tray will be used.

 **NOTE:** The print media should be the same size and type in each tray. The MPF cannot be linked to any of the tray sources.

After loading the selected trays with the same size and type of print media, select the Paper Type setting in the Tray Settings component for each source (tray).

To disable tray linking change the paper type in one of the sources (trays) to a unique value.

 **NOTE:** If different types of print media of the same size are loaded in each tray, the printer will automatically link them if the paper type is not specified in the printer driver properties/preferences.

# Printing, Copying, Scanning, and Faxing

19 Printing..... 315

20 Copying ..... 329

21 Scanning..... 341

22 Faxing ..... 369



# Printing

This chapter covers tips for printing, how to print certain information from your printer, and how to cancel a job.

## Tips for Successful Printing

### Tips on Storing Print Media

Store your print media properly. For more information, see "Storing Print Media."

### Avoiding Paper Jams

 **CAUTION:** Before buying large quantities of any print media, it is recommended that you try a sample first.

By selecting appropriate print media and loading it properly, you can avoid paper jams. See the following instructions on loading print media:

- "Loading Paper"
- "Loading Print Media in the MPF"
- "Avoiding Jams"

If you encounter a paper jam, see "Clearing Jams."


## Sending a Job to Print

To support all of the printer features, use the printer driver. When you choose **Print** from an application, a window representing the printer driver opens. Select the appropriate settings for the specific job that you are sending to print. Print settings selected from the driver override the default menu settings selected from the operator panel or **Tool Box**.

You may need to click **Preferences** from the initial **Print** box to see all of the available system settings you can change. If you are not familiar with a feature in the printer driver window, open the online Help for more information.

To print a job from a typical Microsoft® Windows® application:

- 1 Open the file you want to print.
- 2 From the **File** menu, select **Print**.
- 3 Verify that the correct printer is selected in the dialog box. Modify the print settings as appropriate (such as the pages you want to print or the number of copies).
- 4 Click **Preferences** to adjust system settings that are not available from the first screen, and then click **OK**.
- 5 Click **OK** or **Print** to send the job to the selected printer.

 **NOTE:** When you print on a small size medium such as an envelope, lift the operator panel so that you can easily remove the printed media from the output tray.

## Canceling a Print Job

There are several methods for canceling a job.

- Canceling a Job From the Operator Panel
- Canceling a Job From a Computer Running Windows

### Canceling a Job From the Operator Panel

To cancel a job after it has started printing:

- 1 Press the **X** (Cancel) button or Select Delete.

Printing is canceled only for the current job. All the following jobs will continue to print.

To cancel a job before it has started printing:

- 1 Press the  (Job Status) button.

A list of print jobs appears.

- 2 Select the desired job to cancel.
- 3 Select Delete.
- 4 Select Delete Job.

### Canceling a Job From a Computer Running Windows

#### Canceling a Job From the Taskbar

When you send a job to print, a small printer icon appears in the bottom right corner of the taskbar.

- 1 Double-click the printer icon.  
A list of print jobs appears in the printer window.
- 2 Select the job you want to cancel.
- 3 Press the <Delete> key.

#### Canceling a Job From the Desktop

- 1 Click Start → Devices and Printers.

For Windows XP: Click start → Printers and Faxes.

For Windows Vista®: Click Start → Control Panel → Hardware and Sound → Printers.

For Windows Server® 2008: Click Start → Control Panel → Printers.

For Windows Server 2008 R2: Click Start → Devices and Printers.

For Windows 8: Under Desktop mode, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Devices and Printers**.

For Windows Server 2012: Under Desktop mode, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel** → **Hardware** → **Devices and Printers**.

A list of available printers appears.

- 2 Right-click the printer that you selected when you sent the job for print, and then select **See what's printing**.
- 3 Select the printer driver.  
A list of print jobs appears in the printer window.
- 4 Select the job you want to cancel.

- 5 Press the <Delete> key.

## Duplex Printing

Duplex printing (or two-sided printing) allows you to print on both sides of a sheet of paper. For sizes that are acceptable for duplex printing, see "Supported Paper Sizes."

### Duplex Printing With Duplex Unit

- 1 Click **Start**→ **Devices and Printers**.

For Windows XP: Click **start**→ **Printers and Faxes**.

For Windows Vista: Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **Hardware and Sound**→ **Printers**.

For Windows Server 2008: Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **Printers**.

For Windows Server 2008 R2: Click **Start**→ **Devices and Printers**.

For Windows 8: Under Desktop mode, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Devices and Printers**.

For Windows Server 2012: Under Desktop mode, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel** → **Hardware** → **Devices and Printers**.

- 2 Right-click the printer and select **Printing Preferences**.

The **General** tab appears.

- 3 From **Paper Source**, select the paper tray.

For PCL driver:

Select from **Auto**, **Tray1**, **Tray2**, or **MPF**.

For PS driver:

Select from **Automatically Select**, **Tray1**, **Tray2**, or **MPF**.

- 4 From **Duplex**, select **Flip on Short Edge** or **Flip on Long Edge**.


 **NOTE:** For details on the **Flip on Short Edge** and **Flip on Long Edge** options, see "Flip on Short Edge" and "Flip on Long Edge."

- 5 Click **OK**.

### Using Booklet Print

To use the booklet print feature, select the **Enable** check box of the **Booklet Printing** in the **Layout** tab.

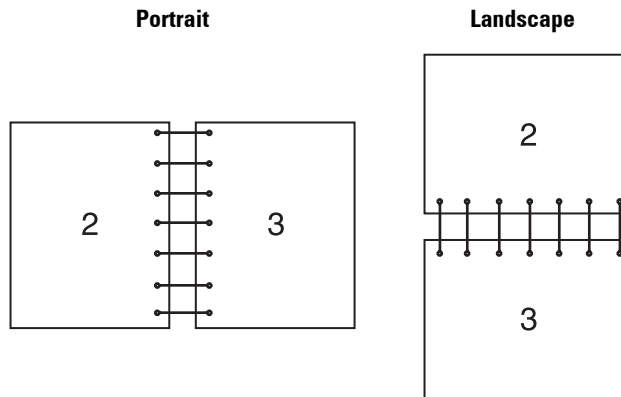
 **NOTE:** When the XPS or PS driver is used, booklet print is not available.

 **NOTE:** You must select **Flip on Long Edge** in the **Duplex** when using the Booklet Print feature.

---

Flip on Long Edge

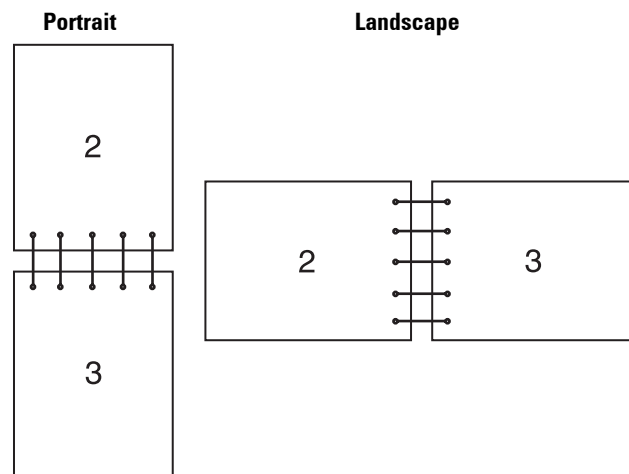
Assumes binding along the long edge of the page (left edge for portrait orientation and top edge for landscape orientation). The following illustration shows long-edge binding for portrait and landscape pages:



---

Flip on Short Edge


Assumes binding along the short edge of the page (top edge for portrait orientation and left edge for landscape orientation). The following illustration shows short-edge binding for portrait and landscape pages:




---

## Using the Stored Print Feature

When you send a job to the printer, you can specify in the printer driver to store the job in the memory or hard disk. When you are ready to print the job, go to the printer and use the operator panel to identify which job in the memory or hard disk you want to print.

 **NOTE:** The data in the memory is cleared when the printer is turned off. The data on the optional hard disk is not cleared even when the printer is turned off.

 **NOTE:** Stored Print feature is available when:

- The RAM disk is enabled in the printer menu.
- **RAM Disk** is set to **Available** in the printer driver.

OR

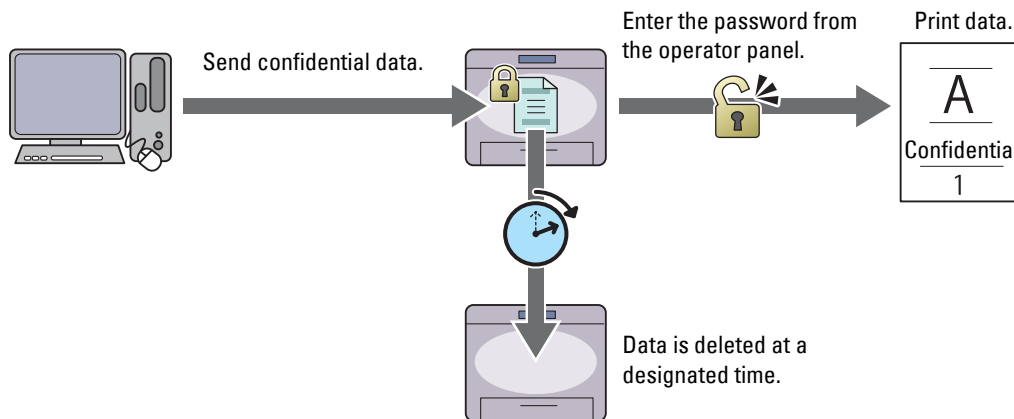
- The optional hard disk is installed.
- **Hard Disk** is set to **Available** in the printer driver.

## Overview

The stored printing feature includes the following job types.

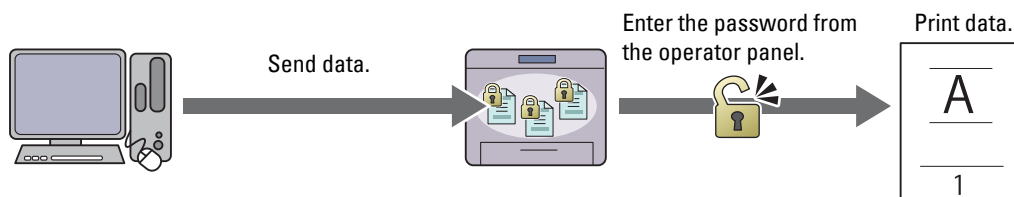
### Secure Print

You can temporarily store print jobs secured with a password in the memory or hard disk. Users with the password can print them from the operator panel. This feature can be used to print confidential documents. A stored print job will be deleted after you print it or at a designated time.



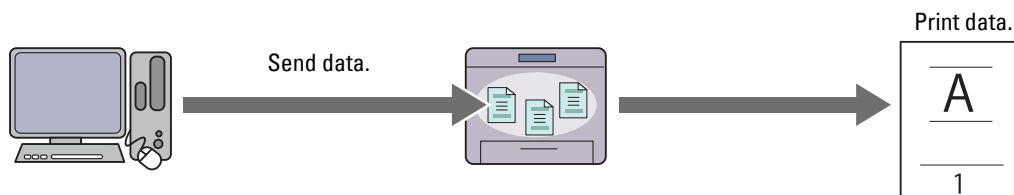
### Private Mail Box Print

You can store print jobs secured with a password in the memory or hard disk. Users with the password can print them at a more convenient time from the operator panel. This feature can be used to print confidential documents. The stored jobs remain in the memory or hard disk until you delete them from the operator panel.



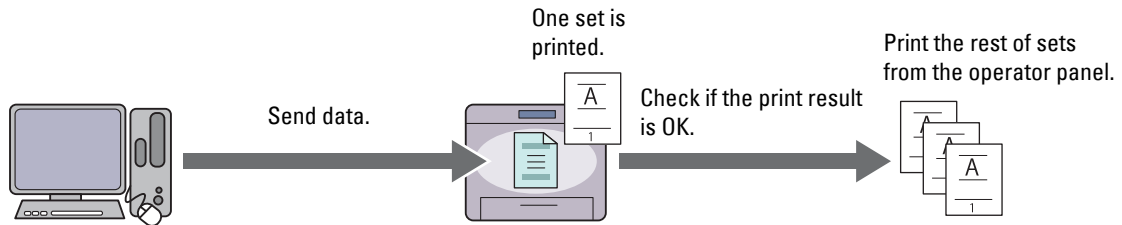
### Public Mail Box Print

You can store print jobs without a password in the memory or hard disk. Any user can print them at a more convenient time from the operator panel. The stored jobs remain in the memory or hard disk until you delete them from the operator panel.



## Proof Print

The collated print job is stored in the memory or hard disk, but a single copy is printed automatically so you can check the print result. If you do not have problems with the print result, you can choose to print more copies. This prevents large number of misprinted copies from being printed at one time.



The difference between each of the job types are listed below. If you want to set the password for confidentiality, store the jobs in the Secure Print or Private Mail Box Print.

Job types	Password	Differences
Secure Print	Y	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The stored jobs will be deleted at a designated time.</li> <li>You cannot specify the quantity of copies from the operator panel. The quantity of copies depends on the number you specified on the printer driver.</li> </ul>
Private Mail Box Print	Y	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The stored jobs remain until you delete them from the operator panel.</li> </ul>
Public Mail Box Print	N	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can specify the quantity of copies from the operator panel.</li> </ul>
Proof Print	N	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The print job is set to collate.</li> <li>A single copy is printed automatically.</li> <li>The stored jobs remain until you delete them from the operator panel.</li> <li>You can specify the quantity of copies from the operator panel.</li> </ul>

**NOTE:** If a print job is too large for the memory available, the printer may display an error message.

## Procedures for Printing Stored Print

**NOTE:** The stored print feature is available when using the PCL or PS driver.

When you select a job type in the printer driver, the job will be stored in the memory or hard disk until you request to print it from the operator panel. The following are procedures for storing and printing jobs.

### Storing Print Jobs

To use the stored print feature, you need to select a job type other than **Normal Print** in the **General** tab of the printer driver. The job will be stored in the memory or hard disk until you request to print it from the operator panel.






**NOTE:** Secure Print and Private Mail Box Print require specifying a password for confidentiality.

**NOTE:** If a document name is not assigned to your print job in the printer driver, the job's name will be identified using the printer's time and date of submission to distinguish it from other jobs you have stored under your name.

### Printing the Stored Jobs

**NOTE:** You can access Secure Print from the **Job Status** screen. In this case, select **Secure Print**, and proceed to step 4.

- 1 Press the (Home) button.
- 2 Select **Print Menu**.

- 3 Select a job types such as `Secure Print`, `Private Mailbox`, `Public Mailbox`, or `Proof Print`.  
A list of user ID appears.
- 4 Select  until the desired user ID appears, and then select that user ID.  
 **NOTE:** `Secure Print` and `Private Mail Box Print` require specifying a password for confidentiality. If you select `Public Mail Box Print` or `Proof Print`, proceed to step 6.
- 5 Enter the password using the number pad, and then select `OK`.  
For details about specifying the password, see "Specifying your password on the operator panel (`Secure Print/Private Mail Box Print`)."
- 6 Select  until the desired document appears, and then select that document.  
 **NOTE:** You can select `Quantity` to specify the number of copies. For `Secured Print`, `Quantity` is not available.
- 7 Select `Print`.  
 **NOTE:** If you want to keep the data in the memory or hard disk for the time being, clear the **Print and Delete** check box.
- 8 Select `OK`.  
The stored job will be printed.

### Specifying your password on the operator panel (`Secure Print/Private Mail Box Print`)

When you select `Secure Print` or `Private Mailbox` from `Print Menu`, a screen to enter the password appears after selecting your user ID.

Use the number pad to enter the numeric password you specified in the printer driver. The password you entered will appear as asterisks (`*****`) to ensure confidentiality.

If you enter an invalid password, the message `Wrong Password Retry` appears. Wait 3 seconds, or select `Close` to return to the screen for entering the password.

When you enter a valid password, you have access to all print jobs matching the user ID and password you entered. The print jobs matching the password you entered appear on the screen. You can then choose to print or delete jobs matching the password you entered. (See "Printing the Stored Jobs" for more information.)

### Deleting Stored Jobs

With `Secure Print`, a job that has been stored will be deleted after printing or deleted at a designated time entered on the operator panel.


For other jobs, these jobs remain stored until you delete them from the operator panel.

## Printing from USB Memory

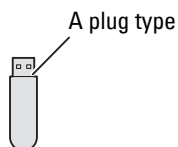
The `USB Direct Print` feature allows you to print files stored in a USB memory by operating from the operator panel.

 **CAUTION:** To prevent damage to your printer, do not connect any device other than USB memory to the front USB port of the printer.

 **CAUTION:** Do not remove the USB memory from the front USB port until the printer has finished printing.

 **NOTE:** If the `Function Enabled` setting for `USB Direct Print` is set to `On (Password)`, you need to enter the four digit password to use the print function. If the `Function Enabled` setting for `USB Direct Print` is set to `Off`, the print function is disabled and the menu is not displayed on the screen. For details, see "Function Enabled."

The front USB port of the printer is designed for USB 2.0 devices. You must use only an authorized USB memory with an A plug type connector. Use only a metal shielded USB memory.



## Supported File Formats

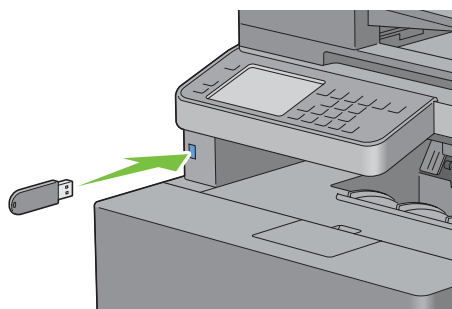
Files in the following file formats can be printed directly from a USB memory.

- PDF
- TIFF
- JPEG

## Inserting and Removing a USB Memory






You can insert the USB memory before printing or scanning images.


Before removing the USB memory, ensure that the printer is not accessing the USB memory.




**CAUTION:** If you remove the USB memory while the printer is accessing, the data in the USB memory or the USB memory device itself may be destroyed.

## Printing a File in a USB Memory

- 1 Press the  (Home) button.
- 2 Insert a USB memory to the front USB port of the printer.  
For details about inserting a USB memory, see "Inserting and Removing a USB Memory."
-  **NOTE:** If the **USB Drive Detected** screen appears, select `USB Direct Print`, and proceed to step 5.
- 3 Select `Print Menu`.
- 4 Select `USB Direct Print`.
- 5 Select  until the desired file appears, and then select that file.  
 **NOTE:** Only the following characters are displayed on the touch panel:  
`ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ0123456789$%''-@{}~!#()&_ ^`
- 6 Select `OK`.
- 7 Specify print options such as `Output Color`, `Select Tray`, `2 Sided Printing`, `Multiple-Up`, `Collation`, and `PDF Password` on the **USB Direct Print** and **Options** tabs. For details, see "USB Direct Print Menu."
- 8 Press the  (Start) button to begin printing.

 **NOTE:** Color printing is secured with a password if the Function Enabled setting for USB Direct Print is set to On (Color Password). If you set Output Color to Full Color and the Function Enabled setting for USB Direct Print to On (Color Password), you will need to enter the four digit password after pressing the ► (Start) button.

 **NOTE:** You can print files created using the Scan to USB feature of the printer. Files created by other means or sources may not be printed properly.

## Printing With Web Services on Devices (WSD)

This section provides information for network printing with WSD, the protocol of Microsoft for Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, and Windows Server 2012.

### Adding Roles of Printer Services

When you use Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2 or Windows Server 2012, you need to add the roles of print services to the Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2 or Windows Server 2012 client.

#### For Windows Server 2008:

- 1 Click Start→ Administrative Tools→ Server Manager.
- 2 Select Add Roles from the Action menu.
- 3 Check the Print Services check box on the Server Roles window in the Add Roles Wizard, and then click Next.
- 4 Check the Print Server check box, and then click Next.
- 5 Click Install.

#### For Windows Server 2008 R2:

- 1 Click Start→ Administrative Tools→ Server Manager.
- 2 Select Add Roles from the Action menu.
- 3 Check the Print and Document Services check box on the Server Roles window in the Add Roles Wizard, and then click Next.
- 4 Click Next.
- 5 Check the Print Server check box, and then click Next.
- 6 Click Install.

#### For Windows Server 2012:

- 1 Click Server Manager of the Start screen.
- 2 Select Add Roles and Features from the Manage menu.
- 3 Click Next on the Before You Begin window → Select installation type on the Installation Type window → Select destination server on the Server Selection window in the Add Roles and Features Wizard.
- 4 Check the Print and Document Services check box on the Server Roles window, and then click Next.
- 5 Select features on the Features window → Confirm installation selections on the Confirmation window.
- 6 Click Install.

### Printer Setup

You can install your new printer on the network using the *Software and Documentation* disc that shipped with your printer, or using Microsoft Windows' Add Printer wizard.


## Installing a Printer Driver Using the Add Printer Wizard


- 1 Click **Start**→ **Devices and Printers** (**Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **Hardware and Sound**→ **Printers** for Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008).

For Windows 8 and Windows Server 2012:

Under Desktop mode, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** (**Hardware** for Windows Server 2012)→ **Devices and Printers**.


- 2 Click **Add a printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.
- 3 Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.
- 4 In the list of available printers, select the one you want to use, and then click **Next**.

 **NOTE:** In the list of available printers, the WSD printer is displayed in the form of **http://IP address/ws/**.

 **NOTE:** If no WSD printer is displayed in the list, enter the printer's IP address manually to create a WSD printer. To enter the printer's IP address manually, follow the instructions below.

For Windows Server 2008 R2, to create a WSD printer, you must be a member of Administrators group.

1. Click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.
2. Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or hostname** and click **Next**.
3. Select **Web Services Device** from **Device type**.
4. Enter the printer's IP address in the **Hostname or IP address** text box and click **Next**.

 **NOTE:** Before installing the driver using the Add Printer wizard on Windows Server 2008 R2 or Windows 7, perform one of the following:

- Establish the Internet connection so that Windows Update can scan your computer.
- Add the printer driver to your computer.

- 5 If prompted, install the printer driver on your computer. If you are prompted for an administrator password or confirmation, type the password or provide confirmation.
- 6 Complete the additional steps in the wizard, and then click **Finish**.
- 7 Print a test page to verify print installation.
  - a Click **Start**→ **Devices and Printers** (**Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **Hardware and Sound**→ **Printers** for Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008).

For Windows 8 and Windows Server 2012:

Under Desktop mode, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** (**Hardware** for Windows Server 2012)→ **Devices and Printers**.

- b Right-click the printer you just created, and then click **Printer properties** (**Properties** for Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008).
- c On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**. When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

## Printing With AirPrint




This section provides information for printing with AirPrint. AirPrint allows you to print through a network with iPad (all models), iPhone (3GS or later), and iPod touch (3rd generation or later) running the latest version of iOS. AirPrint also allows you to accomplish basic network printing with Macintosh (Mac OS X 10.7 or later) without installing additional drivers.

### Setting Up AirPrint on Your Printer


To use AirPrint, Bonjour (mDNS) and IPP protocols are required on your printer. Make sure that Bonjour (mDNS) and IPP are set to Enable on the operator panel menu. See "Protocols" for details. Bonjour (mDNS) and IPP can also be enabled by clicking **Turn on AirPrint** from the **Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool**. Follow the procedure below to configure the environment settings for AirPrint from the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

- 1 Ensure that the printer is connected to the network.
- 2 Launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** by entering the IP address of the printer in your web browser. For more information, see "Setting Up the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool" and "Starting the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool."
- 3 When the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** opens, go to the pages in the **Print Server Settings** tab. Click **Turn on AirPrint** in **Enable AirPrint**. The printer is ready for AirPrint.

 **NOTE:** If the **Turn on AirPrint** button is not active, it means that both Bonjour (mDNS) and IPP are already set to Enable on the operator panel menu and the printer is ready for AirPrint.

### Printing via AirPrint

The following procedure uses the iPhone running iOS5 as an example.

- 1 Open your email, photo, web page, or document you want to print.
- 2 Tap the action icon .
- 3 Tap **Print**.
- 4 Select your printer and set printer options.
- 5 Tap **Print**.

 **NOTE:** To cancel the printing job, double click the **Home** button, tap the **Print Center** icon . If there are more than one job in the queue, select the job you want to cancel, then tap **Cancel Printing**.


## Printing With Google Cloud Print™


This section provides information for Google Cloud Print service with your smart phone, tablet, or any other device. By registering the printer to your Google™ account, you can use the Google Cloud Print service to print from various devices connected to the Internet. You can print documents, photos or e-mails using the Google Chrome™ browser or applications such as Google Drive™ on your mobile device. For more information about Google Cloud Print, visit the Google web site.

### Preparing to Use the Printer with Google Cloud Print

To use Google Cloud Print, you need to prepare the following in advance:

- Connect the printer to a network that has access to the Internet.





 **NOTE:** Google Cloud Print supports only IPv4 connection.

 **NOTE:** If the printer is connected to a network that uses a proxy server, you need to specify the settings in **Proxy Server** from the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. For more information, see "Proxy Server."

- Acquire a Google account and a Gmail™ address.

- Set **Google Cloud Print** to **Enable** from the operator panel menu, or set **Google Cloud Print** to **On** from the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

#### When using the operator panel

- 1 Press the  (**Information**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Admin Settings**.
- 3 Select  until **Network** appears, and then select **Network**.
- 4 Select  until **Protocols** appears, and then select **Protocols**.
- 5 Select  until **Google Cloud Print** appears, and then select **Google Cloud Print**.
- 6 Select **Enable**.
- 7 Turn off the printer, and turn it on again to apply the settings.

#### When using the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

- 1 Launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** by entering IP address of the printer in your web browser. For more information, see "Setting Up the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool" and "Starting the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool."
- 2 When the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** opens, go to the pages in the **Print Server Settings** tab. Click **Port Settings**. In **Port Status**, select the **On** check box for **Google Cloud Print**.

#### Registering the Printer to Your Google Account

To register the printer to your Google account, follow the procedure below.




- 1 Launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** by entering IP address of the printer in your web browser. For more information, see "Setting Up the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool" and "Starting the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool."
- 2 When the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** opens, go to the pages in the **Print Server Settings** tab. Click **Register This Device to Google Cloud Print in Google Cloud Print**. A sheet with a URL for the Google Cloud Print printer registration web site is printed.
- 3 From the web browser of your computer, visit the Google web site and sign in with your Google account. Visit the Google Cloud Print registration web site by entering the URL on the printout into your web browser. You can also visit the site by scanning the **QR** code with your mobile device.
- 4 On the Google Cloud Print registration web site, click **Finish printer registration**.
- 5 Click **Manage your printers**. Your printer will be listed in the **Printers** list and will be ready for use with the Google Cloud Print service.

#### Printing via Google Cloud Print

The printing procedure varies depending on the application or the device you are using. You can see the application list that supports Google Cloud Print service on the Google web site.

#### Printing From an Application on a Mobile Device



The following procedure uses the Google Drive application on an Android mobile device as an example.

- 1 Install the Google Drive application on your mobile device.
  -  **NOTE:** You can download the application from Google Play.
- 2 Access the Google Drive application from your mobile device and tap  to select the document.
- 3 Tap  and then tap **Print**.
- 4 Select your printer from the list.

- 5 Select printer options and then tap **Print**.

### Printing From Google Chrome

The following procedure uses the Google Chrome browser on a Windows PC as an example.

- 1 Open the Google Chrome browser.
- 2 Open the web page or e-mail that you want to print.
- 3 Click  or  (varies depending on the version of the Google Chrome browser) in the top right corner and then click **Print**.
- 4 Click **Change** in the **Destination** area.
- 5 Choose your printer from the Google Cloud Print area.
- 6 Click **Print**.

## Printing a Report Page

You can print a variety of settings for your printer including system settings, panel setting, and font list. For details about how to print reports or lists, see "Report / List."

## Printer Settings

You can change most of the print settings from the application you are printing from. If your printer is attached to the network, you can also change settings from the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. To launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, type the printer's IP address in your web browser. To find your printer's IP address, see "Verifying the IP Settings."

Settings from the application update the default system settings for the printer. Settings from the printer driver only apply to the job that you are currently sending to the printer.

If you cannot change a setting from the application, use the operator panel, **Tool Box** or the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. Changing a system setting from the operator panel, **Tool Box** or from the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** makes that setting the user default.

You can verify the detailed system settings by printing a system settings report. For details about how to print a system settings report, see "Report / List."


You can reset settings to their default values from the **Tool Box** or the operator panel. For details, see "When Using the Tool Box" or "When Using the Operator Panel."

### Using the Operator Panel to Change the Printer Settings

You can select menu items and corresponding values from the operator panel.

When you first browse through the menus from the operator panel, you see some menu items are highlighted.

These highlighted items are the factory default and original system settings.

 **NOTE:** Factory defaults may vary for different countries.

When you select a new setting from the operator panel, the item selected is highlighted to identify it as the current user default menu setting.

These settings are active until new ones are selected or the factory defaults are restored.

Driver settings may override changes previously made and may require you to change the operator panel defaults.

### Using the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool to Change the Printer Settings

If your printer is connected to the network, you can change the printer settings from your web browser. If you are a network administrator, you can clone the system settings of one printer to one or all the printers on the network.


Type the IP address of your printer in your web browser. Choose **Printer Settings** from the topics list. From the **Printer Settings** tab, select the **System Settings** to change the printer settings.

To change the paper type and size, choose **Tray Management** from the topics list. To change the ColorTrack settings, choose **Print Volume** from the topics list, and then select the **Dell ColorTrack** tab.

To copy your system settings to another printer on the network, choose **Copy Printer Settings** from the topics list, and then type the other printer's IP address.

If you do not know your printer's IP address, see the system settings report or display the TCP/IP settings. For details about how to find your printer's IP address, see "Verifying the IP Settings."

## Copying

 **NOTE:** If the Function Enabled setting for Copy is set to On (Password), you need to enter the four digit password to use the copy function. If the Function Enabled setting for Copy is set to Off, the copy function is disabled and the menu is not displayed on the screen. For details, see "Function Enabled."


### Loading Paper for Copying

The instructions for loading paper in the paper tray are the same whether you are printing, faxing, or copying. For details about loading paper, see "Loading Print Media." For details about setting the paper type and size in the tray, see "Print Media Guidelines."

### Selecting Paper Tray

After loading the print media for copy output, select the desired paper tray to be used for the copy job.

To select the tray:


- 1 Press the  (Home) button.
- 2 Select Copy.
- 3 Select Select Tray.
- 4 Select the desired tray, and then select OK.

You can select MPE, Tray1, or Tray2\*.

\* Tray2 is only available when the optional 550-sheet feeder (tray2) is installed.


### Preparing a Document

You can use the document glass or the duplex automatic document feeder (DADF) to load an original document for copying, scanning, and sending a fax. You can load up to 50 sheets of 75 g/m<sup>2</sup> (20 lb) documents for one job using the DADF or one sheet at a time using the document glass.




 **WARNING:** Avoid loading documents that are smaller than 5.5 inches by 5.5 inches (139.7 mm by 139.7 mm) or larger than 8.5 inches by 14 inches (215.9 mm by 355.6 mm), different sizes or weights together, or booklets, pamphlets, transparencies, or documents having other unusual characteristics in the DADF.

 **WARNING:** Carbon-paper or carbon-backed paper, coated paper, onion skin or thin paper, wrinkled or creased paper, curled or rolled paper, torn paper, photographs, or transparencies cannot be used in the DADF.

 **WARNING:** Do not use the documents with staples, paper clips or exposed to adhesives or solvent based materials such as glue, ink and correcting fluid in the DADF.

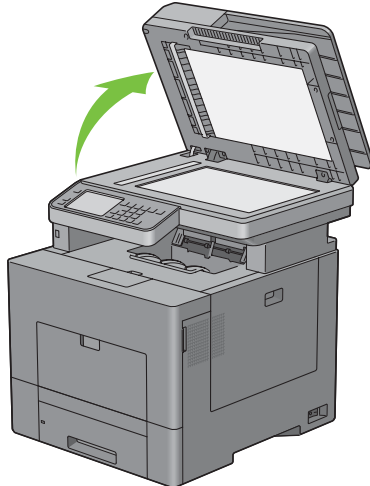
 **NOTE:** To get the best scan quality, especially for color or gray scale images, use the document glass instead of the DADF.

## Making Copies From the Document Glass

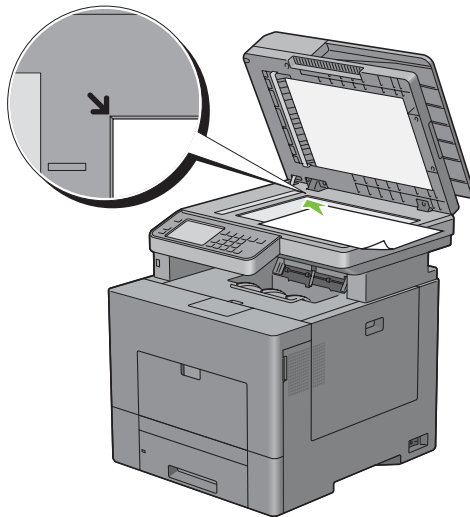
-  **NOTE:** A computer connection is not required for copying.
-  **NOTE:** Remove any documents from the DADF before copying from the document glass.
-  **NOTE:** Contaminants on the document glass may cause black spots on the copy output. For best results, clean the document glass before use. For more information, see "Cleaning the Scanner."

To make a copy from the document glass:



- 1 Lift and open the document cover.



- 2 Place the document facing down on the document glass and align it with the registration guide on the top left corner of the glass.



- 3 Close the document cover.

-  **NOTE:** Leaving the document cover open while copying may affect the copy quality and increase the toner consumption.
-  **NOTE:** If you are copying a page from a book or magazine, lift the cover until its hinges are caught by the stopper and then close the cover. If the book or magazine is thicker than 30 mm, start copying with the document cover open.


- 4 Press the  (Home) button.

To simply make a copy without changing the default copy settings, proceed to step 7.

5 Select Copy.


To customize the copy settings such as Output Color, Select Tray, and Darken / Lighten, see "Setting Copy Options."

To clear the option settings, press the AC (All Clear) button.

 **NOTE:** The copy options automatically return to their default status after the auto clear timer is expired.


6 Enter the number of copies from 1 to 99 using the number pad.

7 Press the ▶ (Start) button to begin copying.

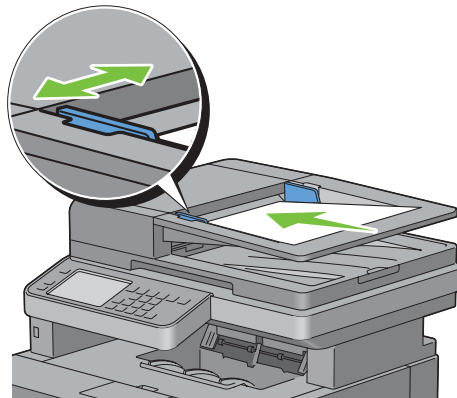
 **NOTE:** You can cancel a copy job at any time while scanning a document by pressing the X (Cancel) button, or selecting Delete.


## Making Copies From the DADF

 **CAUTION:** Do not load more than 50 sheets into the DADF or allow more than 50 sheets to be fed to the document output tray. The document output tray should be emptied before it exceeds 50 sheets or your original documents may be damaged.

 **NOTE:** A computer connection is not required for copying.

1 Load the document(s) facing up on the DADF with top edge of the documents in first. Then adjust the document guides to the document size.



 **NOTE:** Ensure that you use the document stopper before copying a legal-size document.


2 Press the  (Home) button.

To simply make a copy without changing the default copy settings, proceed to step 5.

3 Select Copy.


To customize the copy settings such as Output Color, Select Tray, and Darken / Lighten, see "Setting Copy Options."

To clear the option settings, press the AC (All Clear) button.

 **NOTE:** The copy options automatically return to their default status after the auto clear timer is expired.

4 Enter the number of copies from 1 to 99 using the number pad.


5 Press the ▶ (Start) button to begin copying.

 **NOTE:** You can cancel a copy job at any time while scanning a document by pressing the X (Cancel) button, or selecting Delete.

## Setting Copy Options

Set the following options for the current copy job before pressing the ▶ (Start) button to begin copying.

For details about making copies, see "Making Copies From the Document Glass" and "Making Copies From the DADF."

 **NOTE:** The copy options automatically return to their default status after the auto clear timer is expired.


Options on each tab are below:

- Copy tab
  - Output Color
  - Select Tray
  - Darken / Lighten
  - 2 Sided Copying
- Quality tab
  - Original Type
  - Sharpness
  - Color Saturation
  - Auto Exposure
- Output tab
  - Collation
  - Reduce / Enlarge
  - Original Size
  - 2-Up
  - Margin

### Output Color

To select mode for color or black and white copying:

- 1 Select Output Color.
- 2 Select Full Color or Black & White, and then select OK.

 **NOTE:** Color copy is secured with a password if the Function Enabled setting for Copy is set to On (Color Password). If you set Output Color to Full Color and the Function Enabled setting for Copy to On (Color Password), you will need to enter the four digit password after pressing the ▶ (Start) button.


### Select Tray


To select the tray:

- 1 Select Select Tray.
- 2 Select the desired setting, and then select OK.

MPF	The paper is fed from the multipurpose feeder.
Tray1*	The paper is fed from tray1.
Tray2	The paper is fed from the optional 550-sheet feeder.

\* Denotes the factory default setting.

 **NOTE:** Tray2 is only available when the optional 550-sheet feeder is installed.

 **NOTE:** When Any is displayed as the paper size and type in the MPF, you can select the paper size and type from this menu. For details, see "Select Tray."

## Darken / Lighten

To adjust the contrast to make the copy darker or lighter than the original:

- 1 Select **Darken / Lighten**.
- 2 Select the desired level on the **Darken / Lighten** bar, and then select **OK**.  
You can select a contrast level from seven levels between **Darken** and **Lighten**.

Selecting a cell on the left side of the bar makes the document contrast darker, and selecting a cell on the right side of the bar makes the document contrast lighter.

<b>Darken +3</b>	Works well with light documents or faint pencil markings.
<b>Darken +2</b>	
<b>Darken +1</b>	
<b>Normal*</b>	Works well with normal typed or printed documents.
<b>Lighten +1</b>	Works well with dark documents.
<b>Lighten +2</b>	
<b>Lighten +3</b>	

\* Denotes the factory default setting.

## 2 Sided Copying

To make duplex copies with the specified binding position:


- 1 Select **2 Sided Copying**.
- 2 Select the desired setting, and then select **OK**.

<b>1 → 1 Sided*</b>	Select 1 sided or 2 sided and specify binding position for the 2 sided copy.
<b>1 → 2 Sided</b>	
<b>2 → 1 Sided</b>	
<b>2 → 2 Sided</b>	
<b>Long Edge Biding</b>	
<b>Short Edge Binding</b>	

\* Denotes the factory default setting.

When you are using the document glass and it is set to **1 → 2 Sided** or **2 → 2 Sided**, the display prompts you for another page after pressing the **▶ (Start)** button.

- a If you want to place a new document, replace the document with a new document, and then select **Continue** or press the **▶ (Start)** button.
- b If you finish copying, select **Print Now**.

 **NOTE:** When you use the DADF to copy both sides of a document, the printed position of the front and back of the document may differ if the size in the document size setting and the size of the document do not match. In this case, set **Original Size** to the same size as the document.

## Original Type

To select the copy image quality:

- 1 Select the **Quality** tab, and then select **Original Type**.
- 2 Select the desired setting, and then select **OK**.

<b>Photo &amp; Text*</b>	Used for documents with both photos and text.
<b>Text</b>	Used for documents with text.
<b>Photo</b>	Used for documents with photos.

\* Denotes the factory default setting.

## Sharpness

To adjust the sharpness to make the copy image sharper or softer than the original:

- 1 Select the **Quality** tab, and then select **Sharpness**.
- 2 Select the desired setting, and then select **OK**.

<b>Sharpen</b>	Makes the copy image sharper than the original.
<b>Normal*</b>	The color clarity of the image is the same as the original.
<b>Soften</b>	Makes the copy image softer than the original.

\* Denotes the factory default setting.

## Color Saturation

To adjust the amount of colors of the copy to make the colors darker or lighter than the original:

- 1 Select the **Quality** tab, and then select **Color Saturation**.
- 2 Select the desired setting, and then select **OK**.

<b>High</b>	Makes the color of the copy more vivid.
<b>Normal*</b>	The color saturation is the same as the original.
<b>Low</b>	Makes the color of the copy less vivid.

\* Denotes the factory default setting.


## Auto Exposure

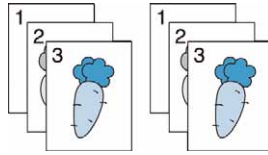
To suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy:

- 1 Select the **Quality** tab, and then select **Auto Exposure**.
- 2 Select **On**, and then select **OK**.

## Collation

To sort the copy output: For example, if you make two copies of three page documents, one complete three page document will be printed followed by the second complete document:

 **NOTE:** You can collate more pages when the optional memory module or hard disk is installed.



- 1 Select the **Output** tab, and then select **Collation**.
- 2 Select the desired setting, and then select **OK**.

<b>Auto*</b>	Only the documents loaded from DADF are copied in collated order.
<b>Collated</b>	Copies in collated order.
<b>Uncollated</b>	Does not copy in collated order.


\* Denotes the factory default setting.

When you are using the document glass and it is set to **Collated**, the display prompts you for another page after pressing the **▶ (Start)** button.

- a If you want to place a new document, replace the document with a new document, and then select **Continue** or press the **▶ (Start)** button.
- b If you finish copying, select **Print Now**.

## Reduce / Enlarge

To reduce or enlarge the size of a copied image from 25 to 400 percent when you copy original documents from the document glass or DADF:

 **NOTE:** When you make a reduced copy, black lines may appear at the bottom of your copy.

- 1 Select the **Output** tab, and then select **Reduce / Enlarge**.
- 2 Select the desired setting, and then select **OK**.

(Inch series)



100%*
50%
64% (Ledger→Letter)
78% (Legal→Letter)
129% (Statement→Letter)
154% (Statement→Legal)
200%

(mm series)

100%*
50%
70% (A4→A5)
81% (B5→A5)
122% (A5→B5)
141% (A5→A4)
200%

\* Denotes the factory default setting.



**NOTE:** You can also specify the value in increments of 1 percent from 25 to 400 by selecting  or , or entering a value using the number pad.

## Original Size

To select the default document size:

- 1 Select the **Output** tab, and then select **Original Size**.
- 2 Select the desired setting, and then select **OK**.

(Inch series)

Auto*
Letter (8.5x11")
Folio (8.5x13")
Legal (8.5x14")
A4 (210x297mm)
A5 (148x210mm)
B5 (182x257mm)
Executive (7.3x10.5")

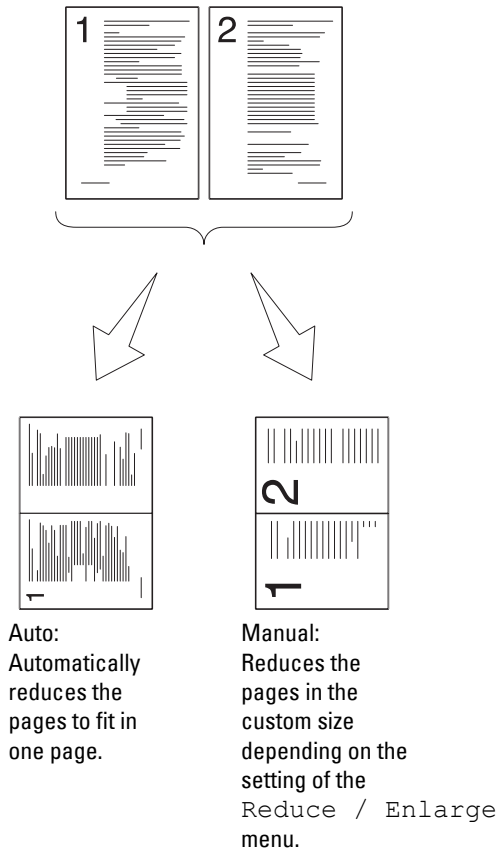
(mm series)

Auto*
A4 (210x297mm)
A5 (148x210mm)
B5 (182x257mm)
Letter (8.5x11")
Folio (8.5x13")
Legal (8.5x14")
Executive (7.3x10.5")

\* Denotes the factory default setting.

## 2-Up

To print two original images to fit onto one sheet of paper:




- 1 Select the **Output** tab, and then select 2-Up.
- 2 Select the desired setting, and then select OK.

Off*	Does not perform multiple-up printing.
Auto	Automatically reduces the original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.
Manual	Prints the original pages onto the one sheet of paper in the size specified in Reduce / Enlarge.

\* Denotes the factory default setting.




When you are using the document glass and it is set to Auto or Manual, the display prompts you for another page after pressing the ► (**Start**) button.

- a If you want to place a new document, replace the document with a new document, and then select Continue or press the ► (**Start**) button.
- b If you finish copying, select Print Now.

 **NOTE:** When you use the DADF to copy both sides of a document, the printed position of the front and back of the document may differ if the size in the document size setting and the size of the document do not match. In this case, set Original Size to the same size as the document.

## Margin


To specify the margins of the copy:

- 1 Select the **Output** tab.
- 2 Select  until **Margin** appears, and then select **Margin**.
- 3 Select  or , or use the number pad to enter the desired value.

Top / Bottom	0.2 inch* (4 mm*) Available Range: 0.0–2.0 inches (0–50 mm)	Specify the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
Left / Right	0.2 inch* (4 mm*) Available Range: 0–2.0 inches (0–50 mm)	Specify the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
Middle	0 inches* (0 mm*) Available Range: 0–2.0 inches (0–50 mm)	Specify the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).


\* Denotes the factory default settings.

## Using the ID Card Copy



 **NOTE:** If the Function Enabled setting for ID Card Copy is set to **Disable**, the ID card copy function is disabled and the menu is not displayed on the screen. For details, see "Function Enabled."



You can copy both sides of an ID card on one side of a single sheet of paper in its original size by selecting **ID Card Copy** on the touch panel. This feature helps to show both sides of an ID card in one page in its original size.

To make a copy:

- 1 Place an ID card facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.  
For details about loading a document, see "Making Copies From the Document Glass."
- 2 Press the  (**Home**) button.
- 3 Select **ID Card Copy**.
- 4 Specify the copy settings below as required.
  - Output Color
  - Select Tray
  - Darken / Lighten
  - Auto Exposure
  - Sharpness
  - Color Saturation

For details, see "Setting Copy Options."



- 5 Press the  (**Start**) button to begin copying.  
After the front side of the ID card is scanned, the display prompts you to turn over the card.
  - a To scan the back side of the ID card, turn the ID card over and select **Continue** or press the  (**Start**) button.
  - b To finish copying, select **Print Now**.

 **NOTE:** Color copy is secured with a password if the Function Enabled setting for Copy is set to **On (Color Password)**. If you set **Output Color** to **Full Color** and the Function Enabled setting for Copy to **On (Color Password)**, you will need to enter the four digit password after pressing the  (**Start**) button.

## Changing the Default Settings

The default settings of the copy menu options such as Output Color, Select Tray, and Darken / Lighten can be set to the most frequently used modes. When you copy a document, the specified default settings are used unless they are changed by using the operator panel.


To create your own default settings:

- 1 Press the  (**Information**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Default Settings**.
- 3 Select **Copy Defaults**.
- 4 Select  until the desired menu item appears, and then select that menu item.
- 5 Select the desired setting or enter the value, and then select **OK**.
- 6 Repeat steps 4 and 5 as needed.

To return to the **Information** screen, press the **AC (All Clear)** button.



## Scanning

 **NOTE:** If the Function Enabled setting for a scan function (E-mail, Scan To Network, Scan To Application / WSD Scan, PC Scan, or Scan To USB) is set to On (Password), you need to enter the four digit password to use that scan function. If the Function Enabled setting for a scan function is set to On, that scan function is disabled and the menu is not displayed on the screen. For details, see "Function Enabled."

### Scanning Overview

Use your Dell™ C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer to turn pictures and text into editable images on your computer.

The Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer provides several ways to scan your document. There are two main scanning types. One is operated on the printer side without using the scanner driver, and the other is operated on the computer side using a software and the scanner driver. See the available features below to help you find the information you need.

- Scanning - With scanner driver
- Scanning - Without scanner driver

#### Scanning - With scanner driver

- Scan into a graphic software such as **PaperPort**® (a software for Microsoft® Windows® that is bundled with the printer) and Adobe® Photoshop® using a TWAIN driver  
(Supporting USB and Network connections for both Microsoft Windows and Apple Macintosh using a graphic software)

See "Scanning Using the TWAIN Driver."

- Scan into a Microsoft's default program such as Windows Photo Gallery and Microsoft Paint, using a Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) driver  
(Supporting USB and Network (including WSD) connections on Windows only)

See "Scanning Using the Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) Driver."

- Scan and send the scanned document to computer connected via USB cable  
(Supporting USB connection for both Microsoft Windows and Apple Macintosh using bundled software tool of **ScanButton Manager**)

Using the feature of Scan to Application on the operator panel of your printer, the scanned image is saved in the location of your computer specified with the **ScanButton Manager**.

See "Scanning From the Operator Panel - Scan to Application."

#### Scanning - Without scanner driver

- Scan and save the scanned document in a USB memory  
See "Scanning to a USB Memory."
- Scan and send the scanned document by e-mail  
See "Sending an E-Mail With the Scanned Image."
- Scan and send the scanned document to computer or server connected to network  
See "Scanning to a PC or Server via SMB/FTP."

- Scan and send the scanned document to a computer connected to a network using WSD  
See "Scanning from the Operator Panel - WSD Scan."


The resolution setting to use when you scan an item depends on the item type and how you plan to use the image or document after you scan it to your computer. For the best results, use these recommended settings.


Type	Resolution
Documents	300 dpi black-and-white or 200 dpi grayscale or color
Documents of poor quality or that contain small text	400 dpi black-and-white or 300 dpi grayscale
Photographs and pictures	100–200 dpi color or 200 dpi grayscale
Images for an inkjet printer	150–300 dpi
Images for a high-resolution printer	300–600 dpi

Scanning above these recommended resolutions may exceed the capabilities of the application. If you require a resolution above those recommended in the above table, you should reduce the size of the image by previewing (or pre-scan) and cropping before scanning the image.

### PaperPort

**PaperPort** that comes bundled with this printer can be used to manage all your documents. You can organize, search, and share all of your scanned documents.

 **NOTE:** **PaperPort** is supported only on Windows.

 **NOTE:** You can use **PaperPort's** built-in Optical Character Recognition (OCR) software to copy text from scanned documents so that you can use and edit the text in any text editing, word processing, or spreadsheet program. The OCR process requires textual images scanned at 150–600 dpi and 300 dpi or 600 dpi is recommended for graphics.

If you prefer to use another application, such as Adobe Photoshop, you must assign the application to the printer by selecting it from the list of available applications through the **Select Software** button each time you start scanning. If you do not assign an application to the **Select Software** button, **PaperPort** is automatically selected when you start scanning. See "Printer Utility Software."


### Dell ScanCenter


**Dell ScanCenter** is a **PaperPort** application that enables you to scan items and send them directly to **PaperPort** or other programs on your computer without first running **PaperPort**. **Dell ScanCenter** runs as a separate application from the Windows start menu and displays the **Dell ScanCenter** bar. For more information about using **Dell ScanCenter**, refer to the **PaperPort's Help** menu.



Icons on the **Dell ScanCenter** bar represent the programs that are limited to **PaperPort** and to **Dell ScanCenter**. To scan and send an item to a program, click the program icon and then scan the item. **Dell ScanCenter** automatically starts the selected program when the scan is complete.

## Scanning From the Operator Panel - Scan to Application

 **NOTE:** You must connect your computer via USB for selecting the Scan to Application feature from the operator panel. Network connection is not supported.

 **NOTE:** This feature is supported on both Microsoft Windows and Apple Macintosh.

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the DADF.

OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.


For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."


2 Press the  (Home) button.

3 Select Scan Menu.

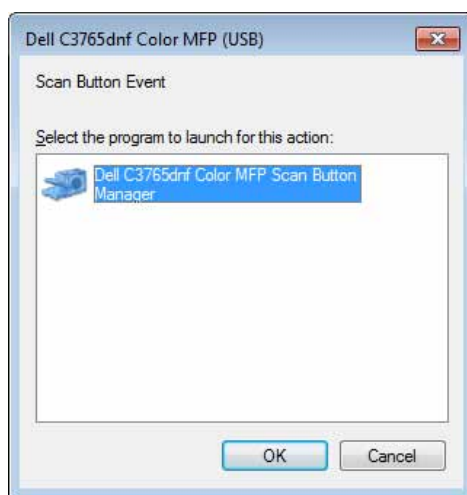
4 Select Application.

5 Specify scan options such as Output Color, Resolution, 2 Sided Scanning, and File Format on the Scan to Application, Quality and Options tabs. For details, see "Application."


6 Press the  (Start) button to begin scanning the document.


 **NOTE:** If the following dialog box appears on your computer, select **Dell C3765dnf Color MFP ScanButton Manager**, and then click **OK**.

For Microsoft Windows:



 **NOTE:** Once you select **Dell C3765dnf Color MFP ScanButton Manager** with the **Always use this program for this action** check box selected, **Dell C3765dnf Color MFP ScanButton Manager** will automatically open without selecting an application.

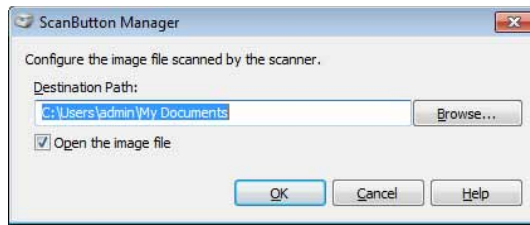
 **NOTE:** You must use **ScanButton Manager** on your computer to change the settings for scanning. For details, see "ScanButton Manager."

 **NOTE:** For Macintosh, the dialog box for selecting a program is not displayed.

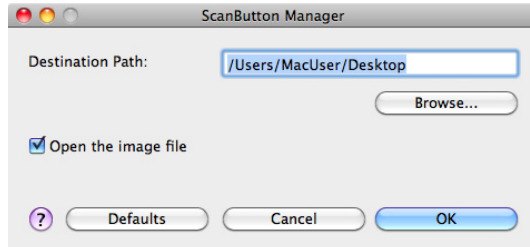
### ScanButton Manager

The Scan to Application stores the image files in the My Documents folder by default, and then you can open them using the related application. Use **ScanButton Manager** to change the output destination of the obtained image files and to select whether to open the image files using the related application.

For Microsoft Windows:




For Apple Macintosh:



## Scanning from the Operator Panel - WSD Scan

If the printer is connected to a computer via network using WSD (Web Services on Devices), you can use the WSD Scan function to send scanned images to a computer.

 **NOTE:** To use WSD Scan, you need to setup connection using WSD.

 **NOTE:** WSD is supported only on Windows Vista®, Windows 7, and Windows 8.


### Printer Setup for WSD Scan

Setup the printer and computer for connection using WSD.

#### Checking the Printer Setting

To use the WSD Scan function, WSD Scan needs to be set to Enable. See "Protocols" for details.

#### Setting Up the Computer

 **NOTE:** For Windows 8, the computer automatically connects the printer using WSD. There is no need to install the printer manually.




##### *For Windows 7:*

- 1 Click Start→ Computer→ Network
- 2 Right-click the icon for the printer, and then click **Install**. The printer is connected using WSD.

##### *For Windows Vista:*

- 1 Click Start→ Network
- 2 Right-click the icon for the printer, and then click **Install**.
- 3 Click **Continue**. The printer is connected using WSD.

## Procedures for WSD Scan

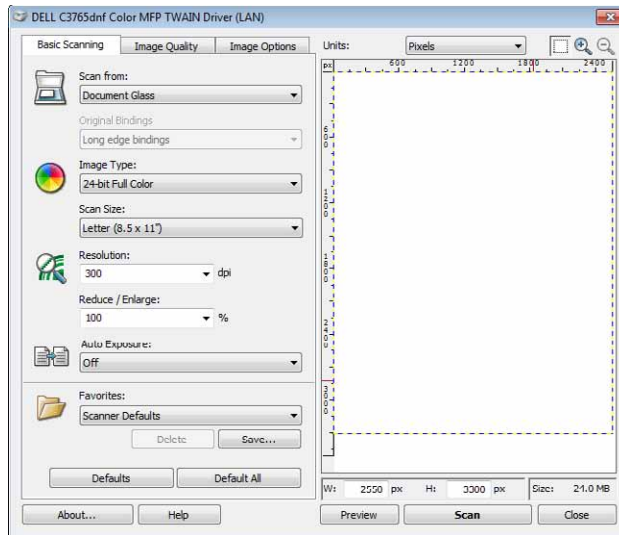
- 1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the DADF.  
OR  
Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.  
For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."
- 2 Press the  (Home) button.
- 3 Select **Scan** Menu.
- 4 Select **WSD Scan**.
- 5 Select  until the desired computer you want to send the scan job to appears, and then select that computer.
- 6 Select **Event**, and specify the type of scan. For details, see "WSD Scan."
- 7 Press the  (Start) button to begin sending the scanned file.

## Scanning Using the TWAIN Driver

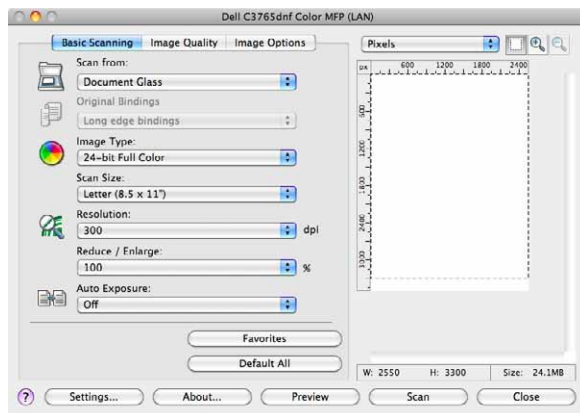
Your printer supports the TWAIN driver for scanning images that supports Microsoft Windows XP, Windows Server® 2003, Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows Server 2012, Apple Mac OS X 10.3.9, Mac OS X 10.4.11, Mac OS X 10.5, Mac OS X 10.6, Mac OS X 10.7, Mac OS X 10.8 works with various scanners.


- 1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the DADF.  
OR  
Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.  
For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."
- 2 Start the drawing software that supports TWAIN, such as **PaperPort** for Windows. For using other than **PaperPort**, proceed to step 6.
- 3 To set the location where to store the scanned images:  
Click **Desktop**→**Folders**.  
In the **Folders** panel, specify a destination folder.
- 4 To set the scanner:  
Click **Desktop**→**Scan Settings**→**Select...**  
In the **Available Scanners** dialog box, select **TWAIN: Dell C3765dnf Color MFP**, and then click **OK**.
- 5 Make sure that **Display scanner dialog box** check box is selected on the **Scan or Get Photo** panel.
- 6 Click **Scan** to begin scanning process.  
The **Dell C3765dnf Color MFP TWAIN Driver** window appears.

**For Microsoft Windows:**




**For Apple Macintosh:**



 **NOTE:** The screen image may vary depending on the operating system.

**7** In the **Basic Scanning** tab, set the desired preferences, and click **Preview** to display the preview image.

 **NOTE:** The **Preview** feature cannot be used when performing duplex (two-sided) scanning from the DADF.

**8** Adjust the settings in the **Image Quality** and **Image Option** tabs.

**9** Click **Scan** to start scanning.

**10** When the scanning is completed, click **Close** to exit the window.

**11** Click **Done** to close the **PaperPort - Scan** window.  
The scanned image is automatically saved in the specified location.

If you want to scan more pages, follow the on-screen instructions to edit the picture after it is copied to your computer.

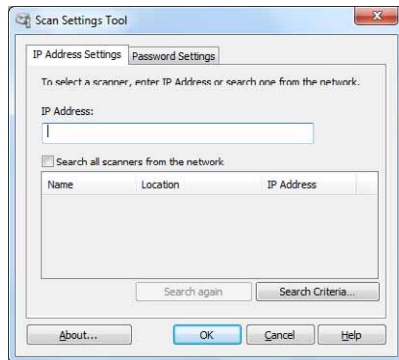
# Scan Settings Tool

You can check the IP address of the printer or set the password using the Scan Settings Tool.

To open the Scan Settings Tool:

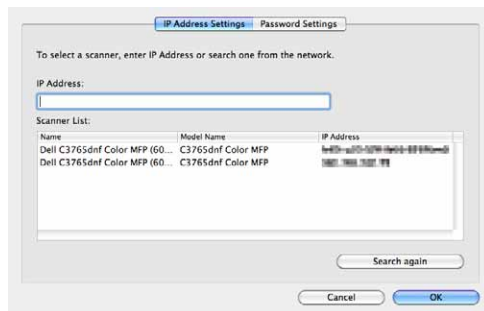
### **For Microsoft Windows:**

Click Start→ Program→ Dell Printers→ Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer→ Scan Settings Tool.



### **For Apple Macintosh:**

Click Settings on the main scanning window of the Dell C3765dnf Color MFP window.

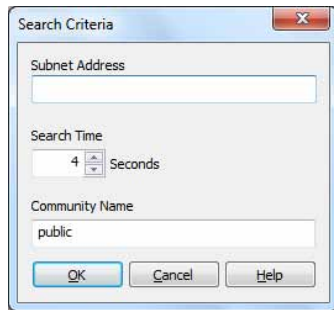


## IP Address Settings

In the IP Address Settings tab, you can check the IP address that is set for your scanner or change the scanner selection.

- **IP Address**  
Enter the IP address.
- **Search all scanners from the network (Windows only)**  
Searches scanners in your network.
- **Scanner List**  
Displays a list of scanners that are detected.
- **Search again**  
Searches the scanners in your network.
- **Search Criteria (Windows only)**  
Displays the Search Criteria dialog box for setting the search condition.

## Search Criteria Dialog Box (Windows only)

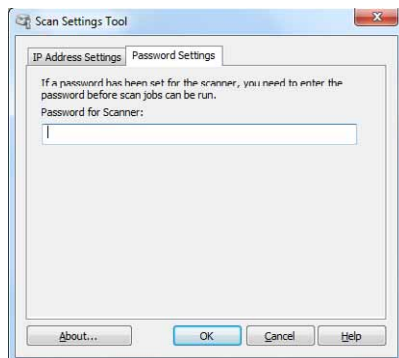


- **Subnet Address**  
Enter the subnet address.
  - IPv4: Broadcast Address such as "192.168.1.255"
  - IPv6: Multicast Address such as "ff02::1"
- **Search Time**  
Specify a time period for searching a scanner.
- **Community Name**  
Enter the SNMPv1/v2 community name. The default community name is "public."

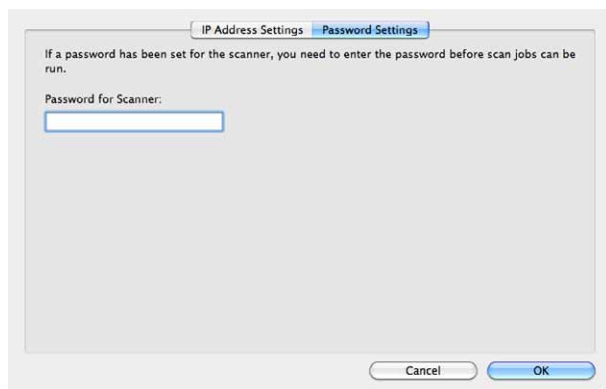
## Password Setting

In the **Password Setting** tab, you can input the password that is set for your scanner to access from your computer to the printer.

**For Microsoft Windows:**




**For Apple Macintosh:**



- **Password for Scanner**  
Enter the password.

## Scanning Using the Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) Driver

Your printer also supports the WIA driver for scanning images. WIA is one of the standard components provided by Microsoft Windows XP and later operating systems and works with digital cameras and scanners. Unlike the TWAIN driver, the WIA driver allows you to scan an image and easily manipulate those images without using additional software.

 **NOTE:** The Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) driver is supported only on Windows.


### To scan an image from the drawing software:


- 1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the DADF.  
OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."

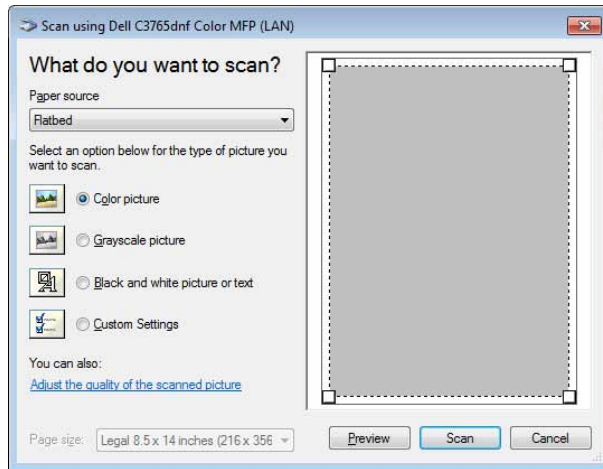
- 2 Start the drawing software, such as Microsoft Paint for Windows.


 **NOTE:** When you use Windows Vista or Windows Server 2008, use Windows Photo Gallery instead of Microsoft Paint.

 **NOTE:** When using applications that utilize WIA 2.0, such as Windows Fax and Scan on Windows Vista, Windows 7 and Windows 8, the **Feeder (Scan both sides)** option can be selected for duplex (two-sided) scanning.

- 3 Click **File**→ **From Scanner or Camera** (**Paint** button→ **From scanner or camera** for Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows Server 2008 R2, and Windows Server 2012).


The Scan using Dell C3765dnf Color MFP (*USB or LAN*) window appears.



 **NOTE:** The screen image may vary depending on the operating system.

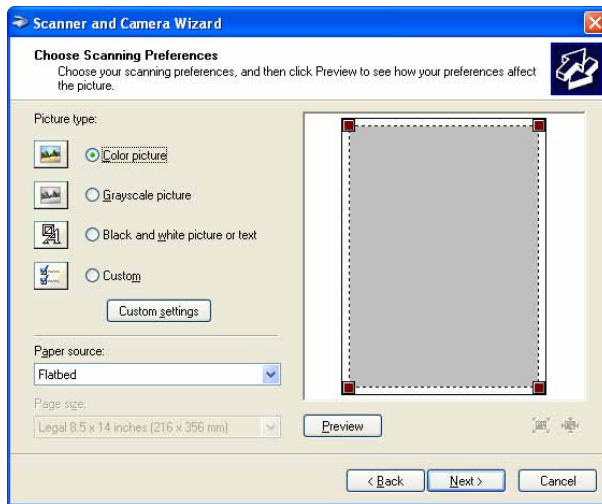
- 4 Select your desired type of picture that you want to scan, and click **Adjust the quality of the scanned picture** to display the **Advanced Properties** dialog box.
- 5 Select the desired properties including brightness and contrast, and then click **OK**.
- 6 Click **Scan** to start scanning.
- 7 Click **File**→ **Save** to save your scanned document in your desired location on your computer.

#### **To scan an image from Control Panel:**

 **NOTE:** This feature is supported on Microsoft Window Server 2003 and Windows XP only.

- 1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the DADF.  
OR  
Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.  
For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."
- 2 Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **Printers and Other Hardware**→ **Scanners and Cameras**.
- 3 Double-click the scanner icon. The **Scanner and Camera Wizard** launches.

- 4 Click **Next** to display the **Choose Scanning Preferences** page.



**NOTE:** The screen image may vary depending on the operating system.

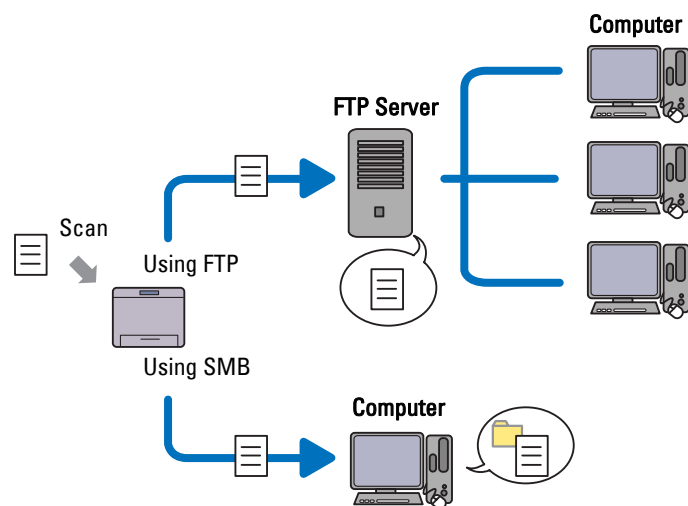
- 5 Select your desired type of picture, paper source, and paper size, and click **Next**.
- 6 Enter a picture name, select a file format, and specify the desired location to save the scanned document.
- 7 Click **Next** to start scanning.
- 8 Follow the on-screen instructions to edit the picture after it is copied to your computer.

## Scanning to a PC or Server via SMB/FTP

**NOTE:** This feature does not require a network scan driver.

### Overview

The Scan to Network feature allows you to send the scanned documents to a computer or FTP server.



## Required operating systems:

### For FTP:



**NOTE:** For information on how to configure the FTP service, refer to the manual provided with the software.



**NOTE:** Microsoft Windows Server 2003, Windows XP, Windows Vista, Mac OS X 10.3.9/10.4.11/10.5 support IPv4 only.

- Microsoft Windows XP Professional  
FTP service of Microsoft Internet Information Services 5.1
- Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Service Pack 1  
FTP service of Microsoft Internet Information Services 6.0
- Microsoft Windows Vista  
Microsoft Windows Server 2008  
FTP service of Microsoft Internet Information Services 7.0
- Microsoft Windows 7  
Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2  
FTP service of Microsoft Internet Information Services 7.5
- Microsoft Windows 8  
Microsoft Windows Server 2012  
FTP service of Microsoft Internet Information Services 8.0
- Mac OS X 10.3.9/10.4.11/10.5/10.6/10.7/10.8  
FTP service of Mac OS X

### For SMB:



**NOTE:** Microsoft Windows Server 2003, Windows XP, Mac OS X 10.3.9/10.4.11/10.5/10.6 support IPv4 only.

- Microsoft Windows XP
- Microsoft Windows Server 2003
- Microsoft Windows Vista
- Microsoft Windows Server 2008
- Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2
- Microsoft Windows 7
- Microsoft Windows 8
- Microsoft Windows Server 2012
- Mac OS X 10.3.9/10.4.11/10.5/10.6

## Procedures

### For FTP:

- 1 "Setting a Destination Using an Address Book"
- 2 "Sending the Scanned File on the Network"

### For SMB:

- 1 "Setting a Login Name and a Password (SMB Only)"
- 2 "Creating a Shared Folder (SMB Only)"

- 3 "Setting a Destination Using an Address Book"
- 4 "Sending the Scanned File on the Network"

### Setting a Login Name and a Password (SMB Only)

The Scan to Network feature requires a user login account with a valid and non-empty password for authentication. Confirm a login user name and password.

For Microsoft Windows:



If you do not use a password for your user login, you need to create a password on your User Login Account with the following procedure.

#### ***For Windows XP:***

- 1 Click start→ Control Panel→ User Accounts.
- 2 Click Change an account.
- 3 Click Create a password and add in a password for your user login account.

#### ***For Windows Vista and Windows 7:***

- 1 Click Start→ Control Panel.
- 2 Click User Accounts and Family Safety.
- 3 Click User Accounts.
- 4 Click Create a password for your account and add in a password for your user login account.

#### ***For Windows Server 2008:***

- 1 Click Start→ Control Panel.
- 2 Double-click User Accounts.
- 3 Click Create a password for your account and add in a password for your user login account.

#### ***For Windows Server 2008 R2:***

- 1 Click Start→ Control Panel.
- 2 Select User Accounts.
- 3 Click User Accounts.
- 4 Click Create a password for your account and add in a password for your user login account.

#### ***For Windows 8 and Windows Server 2012:***

- 1 Point to the top or bottom right corner of the screen, and then click Settings.

- 2 Click **Change PC settings**.
- 3 Click **Users**.
- 4 Click **Create a Password** and add in a password for your user login account.

**For Mac OS X 10.3.9:**

- 1 Click **System Preferences**→ **Accounts**.
- 2 Enter a password for your user login account in **Password**.
- 3 Re-enter the password in **Verify**.

**For Mac OS X 10.4.11/10.5/10.6:**


- 1 Click **System Preferences**→ **Accounts**.
- 2 Select **Change Password**.
- 3 Enter a password for your user login account in **New password**.
- 4 Re-enter the password in **Verify**.

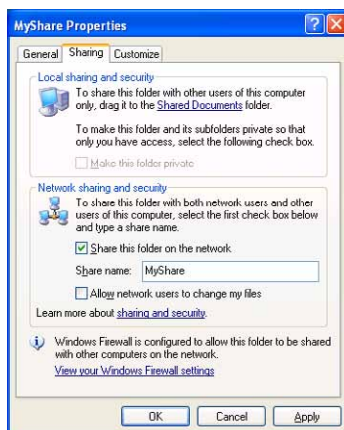
### Creating a Shared Folder (SMB Only)

Create a shared folder to store the scanned document from your printer.


**For Microsoft Windows XP Home Edition:**

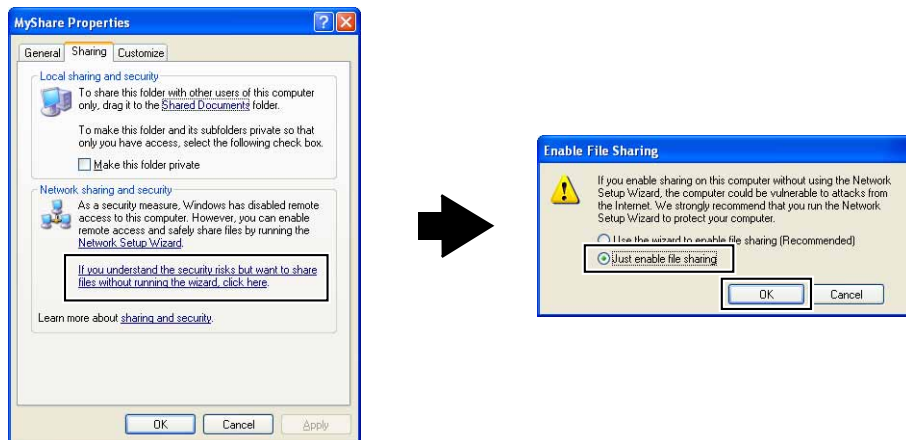
- 1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, MyShare).
- 2 Right-click on the folder, and then select **Properties**.  
The **Properties** dialog box appears.
- 3 Click on the **Sharing** tab, and then select **Share this folder on the network**.
- 4 Enter a shared name in the **Share name** box.

 **NOTE:** Write down this shared name because you will use this name in the next setting procedure.



- 5 Select the **Allow network users to change my files** check box, and click **OK**.

 **NOTE:** When the following screen appears, click **If you understand the security risks but want to share files without running the wizard, click here**, then select **Just enable file sharing**, and then click **OK**.



**NOTE:** To add sub-folders, create new folders in the shared folder you have created.

For example:

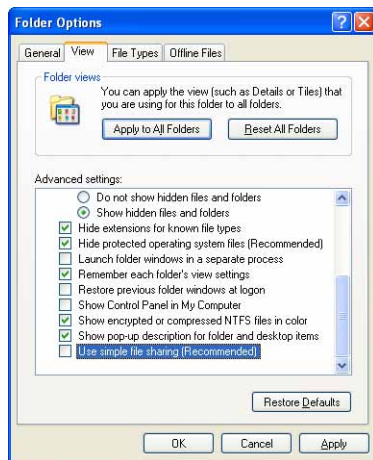
Folder name: MyShare, Second-level folder name: MyPic, Third-level folder name: John  
 You should now see MyShare\MyPic\John in your directory.

**For Microsoft Windows XP Professional:**

- 1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, MyShare) and double-click the folder.
- 2 Select Folder Options from Tools.




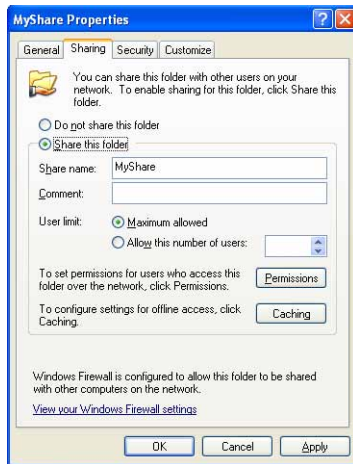
- 3 Click View tab, and then clear the check box of Use simple file sharing (Recommended).



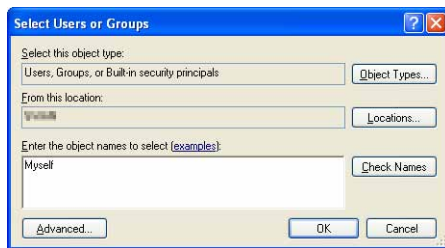
- 4 Click OK.

- 5 Right-click the folder, and then select **Properties**.  
The **Properties** dialog box appears.
- 6 Select the **Sharing** tab, and then select **Share this folder**.
- 7 Enter a shared name in the **Share name** box.

 **NOTE:** Write down this shared name because you will use this name in the next setting procedure.



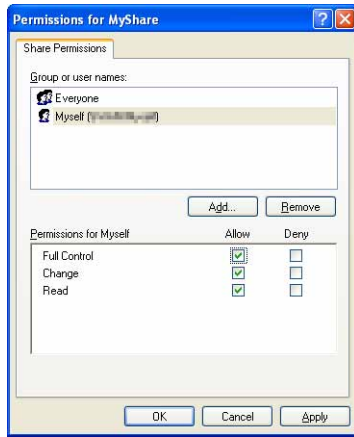
- 8 Click on **Permissions** to create a write permission for this folder.
- 9 Click **Add**.
- 10 Search user login name by clicking **Advanced**, or enter the user login name in **Enter the object names to select** box and click **Check Names** to confirm (Example of user login name, `Myself`).




- 11 Click **OK**.

 **NOTE:** Do not use **Everyone** as the user login name.

- 12 Click on the user login name that you have just entered. Select **Full Control** check box. This will grant you permission to send the document into this folder.



- 13 Click OK.

 **NOTE:** To add sub-folders, create new folders in the shared folder you have created.

For example:

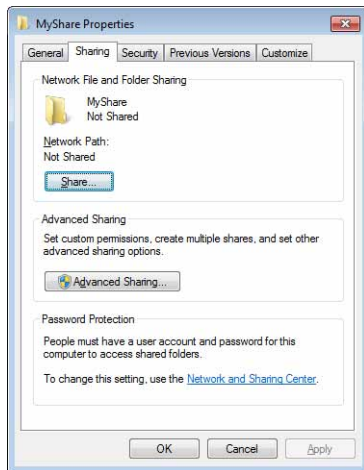
Folder name: MyShare, Second-level folder name: MyPic, Third-level folder name: John

You should now see MyShare\MyPic\John in your directory.

**For Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows Server 2012:**


- 1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, MyShare).
- 2 Right-click on the folder, and then select **Properties**.

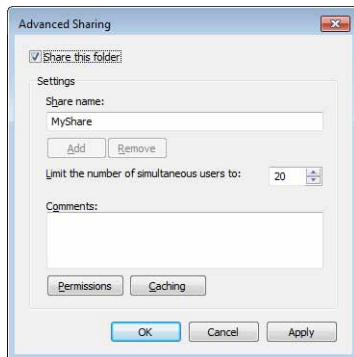
The **Properties** dialog box appears.



- 3 Click on the **Sharing** tab, and then select **Advanced Sharing**.
- 4 Select the **Share this folder** check box.

5 Enter a shared name in the **Share name** box.

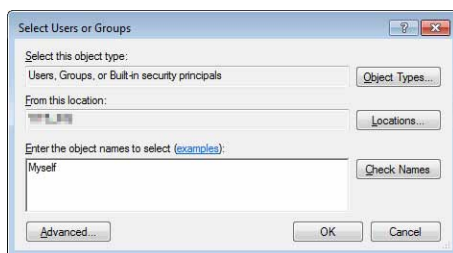
 **NOTE:** Write down the shared name as you need to use this name in the next setting procedure.



6 Click on **Permissions** to create a write permission for this folder.

7 Click **Add**.

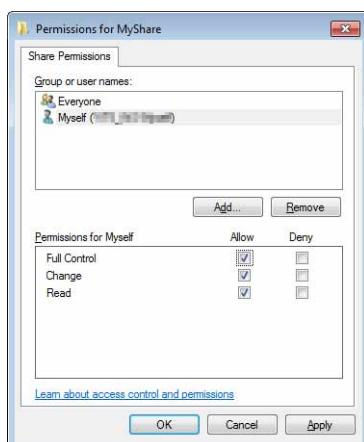
8 Search user login name by clicking **Advanced**, or enter the user login name in **Enter the object names to select** box and click **Check Names** to confirm (Example of user login name, `Myself`).



9 Click **OK**.

10 Click on the user login name that you have just entered. Select **Full Control** check box. This will grant you permission to send the document into this folder.

 **NOTE:** Do not use **Everyone** as the user login name.



- 11 Click OK.



**NOTE:** To add sub-folders, create new folders in the shared folder you have created.

For example:

Folder name: MyShare, Second-level folder name: MyPic, Third-level folder name: John

You should now see MyShare\MyPic\John in your directory.

**For Mac OS X 10.3.9/10.4.11:**

- 1 Select **Go** from the **Finder** menu, and then click **Home**.
- 2 Double-click **Public**.
- 3 Create a folder (Example of folder name, MyShare).
- 4 Open **System Preferences**, and then click **Sharing**.
- 5 Select the **Personal File Sharing** check box and **Windows Sharing** check box.

**For Mac OS X 10.5/10.6:**

- 1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, MyShare).
- 2 Select the created folder, and then select **Get Info** from the **File** menu.
- 3 Select the **Shared Folder** check box.
- 4 Open **System Preferences**, and then click **Sharing**.
- 5 Select the **File Sharing** check box, and then click **Options**.
- 6 Select the **Share Files and folders using SMB** and **account name** check boxes.
- 7 Click **Done**.

## Setting a Destination Using an Address Book

You can register the connection details for SMB and FTP server in the address book using **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** or **Address Book Editor**.

Before beginning to setup a destination, make sure you have the IP addresses you need such as printer and computer.

### Verifying the IP Address Setting of the Printer

To setup the server address book through the network, you will first need to locate the IP address of the printer. To find your printer's IP address, see "Verifying the IP Settings."

### Locating the IP Address Setting of Your Computer

You can locate the IP address of your computer by the following operations.

- 1 Click **Start**→**Run**.

For Windows Server 2003/Windows Server 2008/Windows Server 2008 R2:

Click **Start**→**Run**.

For Windows Vista/Windows 7:

Click **Start**→**All Programs**→**Accessories**→**Run**.



For Windows 8/Windows Server 2012:

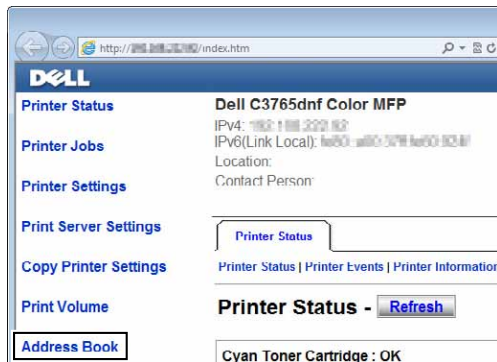
Point to the top or bottom right corner of the screen, and then click **Search** → Type **Run** in the search box, click **Apps**, and then click **Run**.

- 2 Type **cmd** in the text field and click **OK**. A command prompt window will open.
- 3 Type **ipconfig** and press **Enter**.

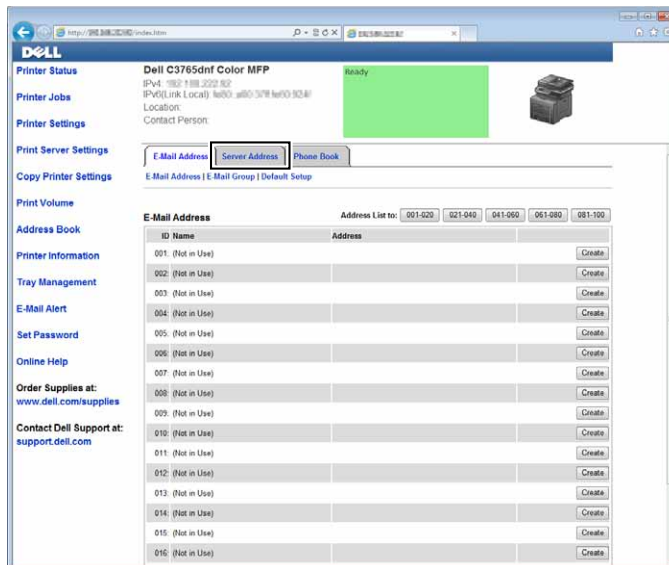
- 4 Write down the IP Address xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx.

### Using Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

- 1 Open a web browser.
- 2 Type in the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and press the <Enter> key.  
The web page of the printer appears.  
 **NOTE:** For details on how to check the IP address of the printer, see "Verifying the IP Settings."
- 3 Click **Address Book**. If a security login dialog box appears, type in the correct **User Name** and **Password**.  
 **NOTE:** The default user name is "admin", and the default password is left blank (NULL).



- 4 Click the **Server Address** tab, and then click **Create** of an ID.



Server Address page appears.

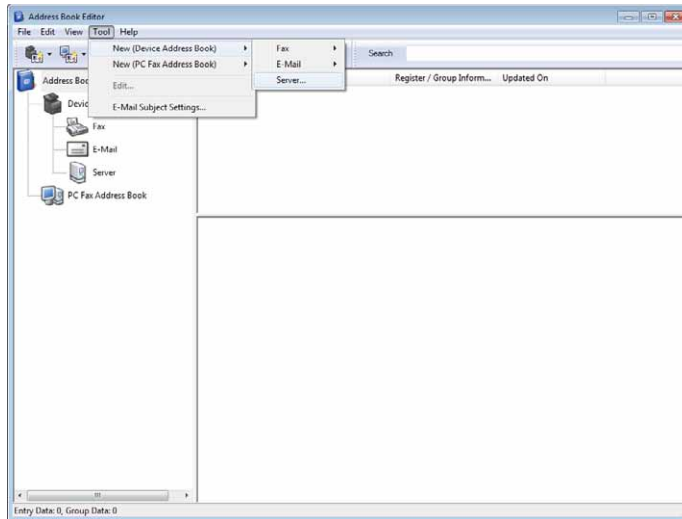
To fill in the fields, enter the information as follows:

(1) Name	Enter a friendly name that you want it to appear on the Server address book.
(2) Server Type	Select <b>FTP</b> if you store document on a FTP server. Select <b>SMB</b> if you store documents in a shared folder on your computer.
(3) Server Address	Enter a FTP server name that you have shared out or a server name or IP address of your computer. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For FTP: Server name: myhost.example.com (myhost: host name, example.com: domain name) IP address: 192.168.1.100</li> <li>For SMB: Server name: myhost IP address: 192.168.1.100</li> </ul>
(4) Share Name	Enter the name of the shared folder on the recipient computer. For SMB only.
(5) Server Path	Enter the subdirectory path where you want the scanned document to be stored. Ensure that the subdirectory path is already created in the shared folder or FTP server.
(6) Server Port Number	Enter the Server Port Number. If you are unsure, you can enter the default value of 21 for FTP or 139 for SMB.  Available ports are: FTP: 21, 5000 - 65535 SMB: 139, 445, 5000 - 65535
(7) Login Name	Enter the user account name to allow access to a shared folder on your computer or to a FTP server. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For FTP: Contact the system administrator.</li> <li>For SMB: Windows login name that you have specified in the procedure 1.</li> </ul>
(8) Login Password	Enter the password corresponding to the above login name. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For FTP: Contact the system administrator</li> <li>For SMB: Empty password is not valid in the Network (Computer) feature. Ensure that you have a valid password for the user login account. (See "Setting a Login Name and a Password (SMB Only)" for details on how to add a password in your user login account.)</li> </ul>
(9) Re-enter Password	Re-enter your password.

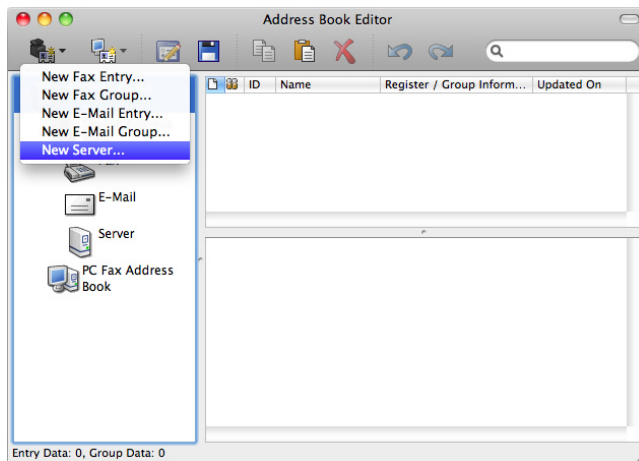
### Using Address Book Editor

- 1 Click Start→ All Programs→ Dell Printers→ Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer→ Address Book Editor.
- 2 Click Tool→ New (Device Address Book)→ Server.

### For Microsoft Windows:

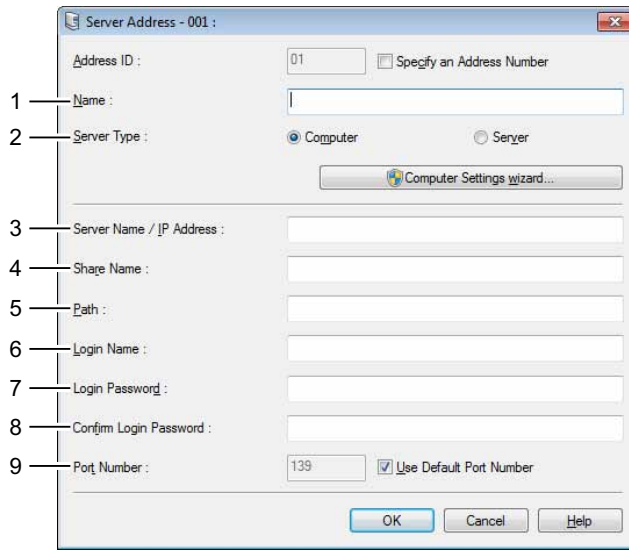


### For Apple Macintosh:

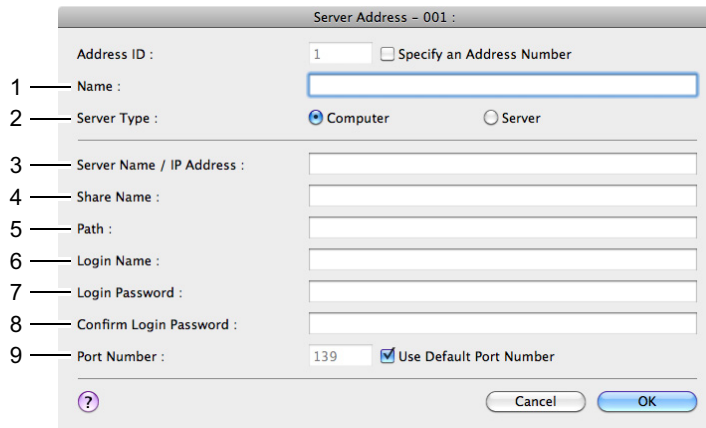


Server Address dialog box appears.

**For Microsoft Windows:**



**For Apple Macintosh:**






To fill in the fields, enter the information as follows:

(1) Name	Enter a friendly name that you want it to appear on the Server address book.
(2) Server Type	Select <b>Computer</b> if you store documents in a shared folder on your computer. Select <b>Server</b> if you store documents on a FTP server.
(3) Server Name/IP Address	Enter a server name or IP address of your computer or the FTP server name that you have shared out. The following are examples: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For Computer: Server name: myhost IP address: 192.168.1.100</li> <li>For Server: Server name: myhost.example.com (myhost: host name, example.com: domain name) IP address: 192.168.1.100</li> </ul>
(4) Share Name	Enter the name of the shared folder on the recipient computer. For SMB only.

(5) Path	Enter the subdirectory path where you want the scanned document to be stored. Ensure that the subdirectory path is already created in the shared folder or FTP server.
(6) Login Name	Enter the user account name to allow access to a shared folder on your computer or to a FTP server. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For Computer: Windows login name that you have specified in the procedure 1.</li> <li>• For Server: Contact the system administrator.</li> </ul>
(7) Login Password	Enter the password corresponding to the above login name. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For Computer: Empty password is not valid in the Network (Computer) feature. Ensure that you have a valid password for the user login account. (See "Setting a Login Name and a Password (SMB Only)" for details on how to add a password in your user login account.)</li> <li>• For Server: Contact the system administrator.</li> </ul>
(8) Confirm Login Password	Re-enter your password.
(9) Port Number	Enter the Server Port Number. If you are unsure, you can enter the default value of 139 for Computer and 21 for FTP server. Available ports are: For Computer: 139, 445, 5000 - 65535 For Server: 21, 5000 - 65535

### Sending the Scanned File on the Network

- 1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the DADF.  
OR  
Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.  
For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."
- 2 Press the  (Home) button.
- 3 Select Scan Menu.
- 4 Select Network.
- 5 Select  until the desired address appears and then select that address.
- 6 Select OK.
- 7 Specify scan options such as Output Color, Resolution, 2 Sided Scanning, and File Format on the Scan to Network, Quality and Options tabs. For details, see "File Format."
- 8 Press the  (Start) button to begin sending the scanned file.

### Scanning to a USB Memory


The Scan to USB Memory feature allows you to store scanned image directly to a USB memory attached to the printer without using software.


#### Types of a USB Memory

You can use a USB memory with the following interfaces:

- USB 1.1
- USB 2.0


The USB memory must be formatted in FAT file systems (FAT16, FAT32, or VFAT) before inserting the memory device into the front USB port of the printer.

 **NOTE:** If the USB memory is formatted in a file system other than above, the printer may not recognize that the USB memory is attached.

 **NOTE:** A USB memory with authentication feature and some brands of USB memories cannot be used with this printer.

## Procedures



To store the scanned images to a USB memory:

 **NOTE:** If you insert a USB memory to the front USB port first, the **USB Drive Detected** screen may appear. In this case, select **Scan to USB**, and proceed to step 6.

- 1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the DADF.  
OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.


For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."


- 2 Press the  (**Home**) button.
- 3 Insert a USB memory into the front USB port of the printer. See "Inserting and Removing a USB Memory" for more details.
- 4 Select **Scan Menu**.
- 5 Select **USB**.
- 6 Specify scan options such as **Output Color**, **Resolution**, **2 Sided Scanning**, and **File Format** on the **Scan to USB**, **Quality** and **Options** tabs. For details, see "File Format."  
You can also specify the folder to save the scanned image. For details, see "Specifying a Folder to Save the Scanned Image."
- 7 Press the  (**Start**) button to begin scanning the document.
- 8 Remove the USB memory from the printer. See "Inserting and Removing a USB Memory" for more details.


## Specifying a Folder to Save the Scanned Image

To save the scanned image to a folder in the USB memory, specify the folder before executing the scan job.

- 1 Select **Change Folder** on the **Scan to USB** tab.
- 2 Select a folder to save the scanned image.

 **NOTE:** The default saving location is the root directory of the USB memory.

 **NOTE:** You cannot directly enter a folder path using the numeric keypad.

 **NOTE:** You can select any folder in the USB memory but cannot create a new folder in this step. You should always create a new folder before connecting the memory to the printer. If you want the printer to automatically create a folder and then save the scanned image to that folder, set **Create Folder** to **On**. For details, see "Create Folder."

If the name of the scanned image has already existed in the folder, the printer automatically generate a new file name to save the data.

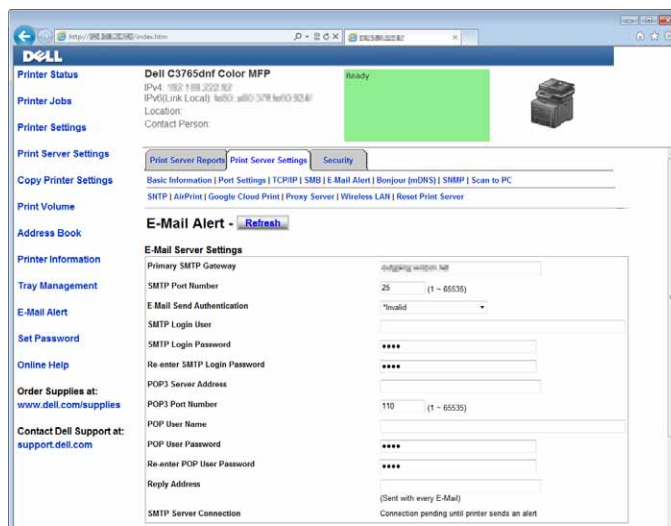
## Sending an E-Mail With the Scanned Image

To send an e-mail attached with the scanned image from your printer, follow the steps below:

- Set E-Mail Alert
- Register a user
- Start to send e-mail with the scanned file

### Setting an E-Mail Alert


- 1 From the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool, click E-Mail Alert.  
The E-Mail Server Settings page appears.



- 2 Specify the settings for E-Mail Alert as follows:

**Primary SMTP Gateway:** Enter the IP address of the e-mail server.

**E-Mail Send Authentication:** Specify Invalid to enable the e-mail server.

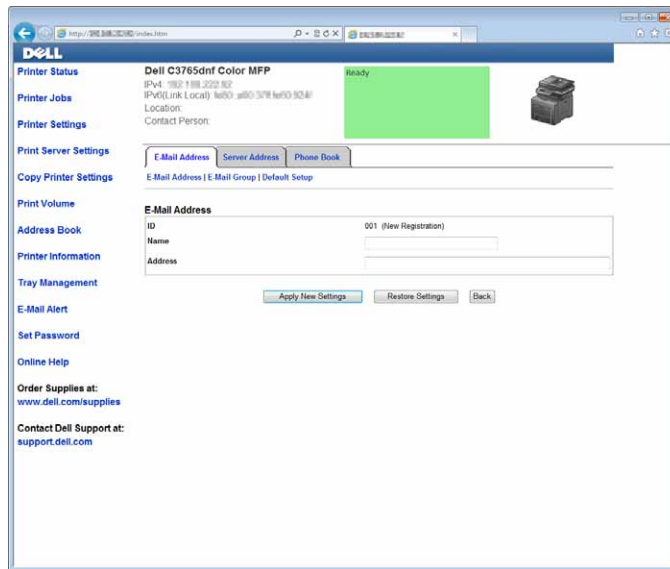
 **NOTE:** If an error message including 016-506 or 016-764 is displayed, contact your server administrator for the settings for **E-Mail Send Authentication**.

- 3 Click Apply New Settings.

## Registering a New E-Mail Address


- 1 From the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool, click **Address Book**, and then click the **E-Mail Address** tab.
- 2 Click **Create**.

The E-Mail Address page for registering a new e-mail address appears.



- 3 Enter the following:
  - Name
  - Address
- 4 Click **Apply New Settings**.

## Sending an E-mail With the Scanned File

- 1 Press the  (**Home**) button.
- 2 Select **Email**.
- 3 Specify a recipient from the following, and then select **OK**:

**New Recipient:** Enter an e-mail address directly.


**Address Book:** Select from the following types of address books:


- **Machine Address Book - Individuals:** Select an e-mail address registered in the address book.
- **Machine Address Book - Groups:** Select a group of e-mails registered in the address book.
- **Search Network Address Book:** Search an e-mail address from the LDAP server address book.

Select the recipient you specified from the **New Recipient** to remove or edit the recipient.

Select the recipient you specified from the **Address Book** to remove or see details of the recipient. You can also change the email to **Bcc**.

 **NOTE:** For more information on address book and server address book, see "Address Books."

 **NOTE:** For details about Search Network Address Book, see "Using the Server Address Book and Server Phone Book."

 **NOTE:** The e-mail addresses needs to be registered before you can select **Address Book**.

- 4 Specify scan options such as Output Color, Resolution, 2 Sided Scanning, and File Format on the **Quality** and **Options** tabs. For details, see "File Format."
- 5 Press the ▶ (Start) button to begin sending e-mail.

## Faxing

**NOTE:** If the Function Enabled setting for Fax is set to On (Password), you need to enter the four digit password to use the fax function. If the Function Enabled setting for Fax is set to On, the fax function is disabled and the menu is not displayed on the touch panel. For details, see "Function Enabled."

**NOTE:** If the Panel Lock Control is set to Enable, you need to enter the four digit password to enter the Admin Settings menu.

### Specifying the Fax Initial Settings Using the Easy Setup Navigator

You can specify the country, line type, tone/pulse, receive mode, DRPD pattern, fax header name, and fax number.

- 1 Insert the *Software and Documentation* disc provided with the printer in your computer. The Easy Setup Navigator file launches automatically.
- 2 Click **Advanced Tools** on the Easy Setup Navigator window. The Advanced Tools window appears.






- 3 Click **Fax Configuration**.
- 4 Follow the instructions displayed on the screen.

Available settings are:


- Country
- Line Type
- Tone/Pulse
- Receive Mode
- DRPD Pattern  
(This setting is available only when a distinctive ring service is installed on your telephone line by your telephone company.)
- FAX Header Name
- FAX Number

**NOTE:** To make initial settings from the printer operator panel, see "Setting Your Country."

## Setting Your Country




- 1 Press the  (Information) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Admin Settings**.
- 3 Select  until **Fax Settings** appears, and then select **Fax Settings**.
- 4 Select **Fax Line Settings**.
- 5 Select  until **Country** appears, and then select **Country**.
- 6 Select the country where the printer is used, and then select **OK**.



The printer must be rebooted after you set the country settings. When a screen prompting you to reboot the printer, select **Start**. After the reboot, the **Main Home** screen is displayed on the touch panel.


 **NOTE:** When you configure the country setting, the information, which is registered to the printer, is initialized.

## Setting the Printer ID

In most countries, you are required by law to indicate your fax number on any fax you send. The printer ID, containing your telephone number and name or company name, will be printed at the top of each page sent from your printer.

- 1 Press the  (Information) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Admin Settings**.
- 3 Select  until **Fax Settings** appears, and then select **Fax Settings**.
- 4 Select **Fax Line Settings**.
- 5 Select  until **Fax Number** appears, and then select **Fax Number**.
- 6 Enter your fax number using the number pad, and then select **OK**.


 **NOTE:** If you make a mistake while entering numbers, press the  (**Delete**) button to delete the last digit.

- 7 Select  until **Fax Header Name** appears, and then select **Fax Header Name**.
- 8 Enter your name or company name using the keyboard, and then select **OK**.







For details on how to use the keyboard to enter alphanumeric characters, see "Using the Keyboard Displayed on the Touch Panel."



To return to the **Information** screen, press the **AC (All Clear)** button.

## Setting the Time and Date


 **NOTE:** It may be necessary to reset the correct time and date if loss of power to the printer occurs.

To set the time and date:

- 1 Press the  (Information) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Admin Settings**.
- 3 Select  until **System Settings** appears, and then select **System Settings**.
- 4 Select  until **General** appears, and then select **General**.
- 5 Select  until **Date & Time** appears, and then select **Date & Time**.
- 6 Select **Time Zone**.
- 7 Select  until the desired geographic region appears, and then select that region.
- 8 Select  until the desired time zone appears, and then select that time zone.
- 9 Select **OK**.





- 10 Select Date.
- 11 Select  or  or enter the date using the number pad.
- 12 Select Time.
- 13 Enter the time using the number pad.
- 14 Select OK.

To return to the **Information** screen, press the **AC (All Clear)** button.

 **NOTE:** The printer beeps and does not allow you to proceed to the next step if a wrong number is entered.

## Changing the Clock Mode




You can set the current time using either the 12-hour or the 24-hour format.

- 1 Press the  (**Information**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Admin Settings**.
- 3 Select  until **System Settings** appears, and then select **System Settings**.
- 4 Select  until **General** appears, and then select **General**.
- 5 Select  until **Date & Time** appears, and then select **Date & Time**.
- 6 Select **Time**.
- 7 Select **12 Hour** or **24 Hour**, and then select **OK**.




To return to the **Information** screen, press the **AC (All Clear)** button.

## Setting Sounds

### Speaker Volume





- 1 Press the  (**Information**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Admin Settings**.
- 3 Select  until **Fax Settings** appears, and then select **Fax Settings**.
- 4 Select **Fax Line Settings**.
- 5 Select  until **Line Monitor** appears, and then select **Line Monitor**.
- 6 Select the desired volume, and then select **OK**.
- 7 Turn off the printer, and turn it on again to apply the settings.

### Ringer Volume

- 1 Press the  (**Information**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Admin Settings**.
- 3 Select  until **Fax Settings** appears, and then select **Fax Settings**.
- 4 Select **Incoming Defaults**.
- 5 Select  until **Ring Tone Volume** appears, and then select **Ring Tone Volume**.
- 6 Select the desired volume, and then select **OK**.
- 7 Turn off the printer, and turn it on again to apply the settings.

# Specifying the Fax Settings Options

## Changing the Fax Settings Options

- 1 Press the  (Information) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Admin Settings**.
- 3 Select  until **Fax Settings** appears, and then select **Fax Settings**.
- 4 Select the desired menu.
- 5 Select the desired setting or enter a value.  
To enter a value, select  or , or use the number pad or the keyboard.
- 6 Select **OK**.  
If necessary, repeat steps 4 through 6.  
To return to the **Information** screen, press the **AC (All Clear)** button.

## Available Fax Settings Options


You can use the following settings options for configuring the fax system:






Option	Description
<b>Fax Line Settings</b> <b>Fax Number</b>	Specifies the fax number of the printer, which will be printed on the header of faxes. This feature is available when you set <b>Fax Header</b> to <b>On</b> . The number specified in <b>Fax Number</b> is used in the printer ID.
<b>Country</b>	You can select the country where the printer is used. You can change this setting when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• No jobs in operation</li><li>• No fax jobs waiting in the memory</li></ul>
<b>Fax Header Name</b>	Specifies the sender's name to be printed on the header of faxes.
<b>Line Type</b>	You can select the default line type. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• PSTN</li><li>• PBX</li></ul>
<b>Line Monitor</b>	Sets the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.
<b>DRPD Pattern</b>	Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) option, distinctive ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. After the telephone company has provided a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern, configure the fax setup to monitor for that specific ring pattern.

Option	Description
Incoming Defaults Receive Mode	<p>You can select the default fax receiving mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Telephone</b> (manual receive mode): Automatic fax reception is turned off. You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external telephone and then pressing the remote receive code, or by selecting <code>Manual Receive</code> in <code>On Hook</code> and then pressing the <b>▶ (Start)</b> button. For details about <code>Manual Receive</code>, see "Receiving a Fax Manually in the Telephone Mode."</li> <li>• <b>Fax</b>: (automatic receive mode)</li> <li>• <b>Telephone / Fax</b>: When the printer receives an incoming fax, the external telephone rings for the time specified in <code>Auto Rec Fax/Tel</code>, and then the printer automatically receives a fax. If an incoming call is not a fax, the printer beeps from the internal speaker indicating that the call is a telephone call.</li> <li>• <b>Ans Machine/Fax</b>: The printer can share a telephone line with an answering machine. In this mode, the printer will monitor the fax signal and pick up the line if there are fax tones. If the phone communication is using serial transmission in your country (such as Germany, Sweden, Denmark, Austria, Belgium, Italy, France and Switzerland), this mode is not supported.</li> <li>• <b>DRPD</b>: Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) option, distinctive ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. After the telephone company has provided a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern, configure the fax setup to monitor for that specific ring pattern.</li> </ul>
Ring Tone Volume	<p>Sets the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when <code>Receive Mode</code> is set to <code>Telephone / Fax</code>.</p>
Auto Receive Setup Auto Receive Fax	<p>Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call. The interval can be specified within the range of 0 to 255 seconds. The default is 0 second.</p>
Auto Receive Tel/Fax	<p>Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call. The interval can be specified within the range of 0 to 255 seconds. The default is 6 seconds.</p>
Auto Receive Ans/Fax	<p>Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call. The interval can be specified within the range of 0 to 255 seconds. The default is 21 seconds.</p>
Junk Fax Setup	<p>You can reject faxes sent from unwanted stations. The system only accepts faxes from the remote stations registered in the speed dial. This feature is useful for blocking any unwanted faxes.</p> <p>Select <code>Off</code> to turn the feature off. Anybody can send you a fax.</p> <p>Select <code>On</code> to turn the feature on.</p>
Secure Receive	<p>You can specify whether to require a four digit password to receive faxes, and to set or change the password.</p>

Option	Description	
Sent Fax Fwd	<p>You can set your printer to forward incoming faxes to another fax number, or forward them to an e-mail address. When a fax arrives at your printer, it is stored in the memory. Then, the printer dials the fax number you have specified in <code>Forwarding Number</code> or sends an e-mail to the address you have specified in <code>Forwarding E-mail Address 1-5</code>.</p> <p>To forward to a fax number, you need to register a fax number on <code>Forwarding Number</code>. To forward to an e-mail address, you need to register information on <code>E-mail Alert</code> and <code>Forwarding E-mail Address</code>. For information on e-mail alert, see "E-Mail Alert" and on forwarding number and e-mail address, see "Fax Settings."</p> <p>Select <code>Off</code> not to forward incoming faxes.</p> <p>Select <code>Forward</code> to forward incoming faxes without printing. If an error occurs during forwarding a received fax, the printer prints the fax.</p> <p>Select <code>Print and Forward</code> to forward and print incoming faxes.</p> <p>Select <code>Print and E-mail</code> to print and forward incoming faxes to e-mail.</p>	
2 Sided Print	<p>You can set whether to make duplex print when you print faxes.</p> <p>Select <code>Off</code> to print faxes on one side of a sheet of paper.</p> <p>Select <code>On</code> to print faxes on both sides of a sheet of paper.</p>	
Remote Receive	<p>You can receive a fax by pressing the remote receive code on the external telephone after picking up the handset of the telephone. When you set <code>Remote receive</code> to <code>On</code>, specify a two digit remote receive code in <code>Remote Receive Tone</code>.</p>	
Discard Size	<p>When receiving a document as long as or longer than the paper installed in your printer, you can set the printer to discard any excess at the bottom of the page. If the received page is outside the margin you set, it will print on two sheets of paper at the actual size. When the document is within the margin and <code>Discard Size</code> is set to <code>Auto Reduction</code>, the printer reduces the document to fit it onto the appropriate sized paper and discard does not occur. If <code>Discard Size</code> is set to other than <code>Auto Reduction</code>, the data within the margin will be discarded.</p>	
Transmission Defaults	<p><code>Auto Redial Setup</code></p>	<p><code>Resend Delay</code> You can specify the interval between transmission attempts within the range of 3 to 255 seconds. The default is 8 seconds.</p>
	<p><code>Redial Attempts</code></p>	<p>You can specify the number of redial attempts to make when the destination fax number is busy, within the range of 0 to 13. If you enter 0, the printer will not redial.</p>
	<p><code>Interval of Redial</code></p>	<p>Your printer can automatically redial a remote fax machine if it was busy. Intervals from 1-15 minutes can be entered.</p>
Tone/Pulse	<p>You can select the dialing type.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>Tone</code></li> <li>• <code>Pulse(10PPS)</code></li> <li>• <code>Pulse(20PPS)</code></li> </ul>	


Option	Description
Prefix Dial	You can specify whether or not to set a prefix dial number. When you set <code>Prefix Dial</code> to <code>On</code> , the number set in <code>Prefix Dial Number</code> dials before any auto dial number is started. It is useful for accessing the Private Automatic Branch Exchange (PBX). You can set a prefix dial number of up to five digits.
Fax Cover Page	You can set whether to attach a cover page to faxes when sending faxes.
Fax Header	Prints the sender's information on the header of faxes. Select <code>Off</code> to turn this feature off. Select <code>On</code> to turn this feature on. Note that if <code>United States</code> is selected for the setting of <code>Country</code> , this option does not appear on the menu. The setting is fixed to <code>On</code> and cannot be changed. For information on the country setting, see "Setting Your Country."
ECM	You can set whether to enable or disable the ECM (Error Correction Mode).
Modem Speed	You can set the modem speed.
Display Manual Fax Recipients	You can set whether to display the fax number of the recipient on the <code>Sending Fax</code> screen when manually sending a fax.
Fax Reports	
Fax Activity	You can set whether to automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.
Fax Transmit	You can set whether to print a transmission result after a fax transmission.
Fax Broadcast	You can set whether to print a transmission result after a fax transmission to multiple locations.
Fax Protocol	You can set whether to print the protocol monitor report after a fax transmission to monitor fax protocol problems.

 **NOTE:** Prefix Dial supports only the environment where you send a fax to the external line number. To use Prefix Dial, you must do the following from the operator panel.

- 1 Press the  (**Information**) button.
- 2 Select the `Tools` tab, and then select `Admin Settings`.
- 3 Select  until `Fax Settings` appears, and then select `Fax Settings`.
- 4 Select `Fax Line Settings`.
- 5 Select  until `Line Type` appears, and then select `Line Type`.
- 6 Select `PBX`, and then `OK`.
- 7 Select .
- 8 Select `Transmission Defaults`.
- 9 Select  until `Prefix Dial` appears, and then select `Prefix Dial`.
- 10 Select `On`.
- 11 Select the `Prefix Dial Number` box.
- 12 Enter a prefix number using the number pad, and then select `OK`. The characters you can use for a prefix number are 0–9, \*, and #. The maximum number of characters for a prefix number is five.

- 13 Turn off the printer, and turn it on again to apply the settings.

### Advanced Fax Settings

 **NOTE:** The advanced fax settings are only meant for advanced users. Incorrect settings may damage the printer.

If you are experiencing fax send or receive errors, there is an advanced fax settings menu which you can access and change the settings accordingly.

To enter the Diagnostic Menu (Customer Mode), follow the instructions.





- 1 Turn off the printer.
- 2 Disconnect all network, phone line, and USB cables from the printer.
- 3 Turn on the printer while holding down the 8 and 2 buttons on the number pad to start in Customer Mode.

After all the advanced fax settings have been made, you will need to turn off and on the printer for the new settings to be effective.

### Fax Data Encoding Method





Some of the legacy fax devices do not support the Joint Bi-level Image Experts Group (JBIG) data encoding method. You may experience fax send or receive errors due to this data encoding method. You can disable the JBIG and select the Modified Huffman (MH), Modified Read (MR), or Modified Modified Read (MMR) encoding with the following instructions.

You can change the modem transmission encoding with the following instructions.

- 1 Turn on the printer while holding down the 8 and 2 buttons on the number pad to start in Customer Mode.
- 2 Press  button to select Fax/Scanner Diag, and then select OK.
- 3 Press  button until Parameter appears, and then select OK.
- 4 Ensure that FAX Parameter appears, and then select OK.
- 5 Press  button until G3M TX Coding appears, and then select OK.
- 6 Press  button until the desired encoding appears, and then select OK.

You can select MH, MR, or MMR.



You can change the modem receive encoding with the following instructions.

- 1 Turn on the printer while holding down the 8 and 2 buttons on the number pad to start in Customer Mode.
- 2 Press  button to select Fax/Scanner Diag, and then select OK.
- 3 Press  button until Parameter appears, and then select OK.
- 4 Ensure that FAX Parameter appears, and then select OK.
- 5 Press  button until G3M RX Coding appears, and then select OK.
- 6 Press  button until the desired encoding appears, and then select OK.

You can select MH, MR, or MMR.

### Diagnosing the Fax Connection

You can diagnose the Fax connection using the FAX Line Diagnosis feature that can detect the abnormalities of telephone line connection.

- 1 Turn on the printer while holding down the 8 and 2 buttons on the number pad to start in Customer Mode.
- 2 Press  button to select Fax/Scanner Diag, and then select OK.
- 3 Press  button until FAX Test appears, and then select OK.
- 4 When the message Check FAX Connection appears, select OK.

- When the message **Ready to Start** appears, select **OK** to start diagnosing the FAX connection. One of the following diagnosing result is displayed.


Diagnosing result	Description
Connection not Detected Please Reconnect Telephone Line	The telephone line cord is not connected. Make sure that the telephone line cord is securely connected.
Cable Connected Wrongly Reconnect Telephone Line from Wall Jack to Line Connection	The telephone line cord is connected to the wrong connector. Make sure that the telephone line cord is connected at one end to the wall jack connector (LINE) of your printer and at the other end to an active wall jack. If you use a telephone or answering machine, connect to the phone connector (PHONE).
Fax Connection OK Please Check Setting of Tone/Pulse in Admin Menu after Restart Printer	The telephone line cord is properly connected. Check the Tone/Pulse setting. For information on Tone/Pulse setting, see "Available Fax Settings Options."

## Sending a Fax

You can fax data from your printer. You can also directly fax data transferred from the computer running a Microsoft® Windows® operating system.

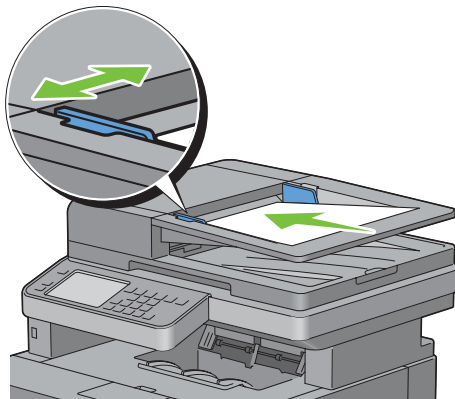
### Loading an Original Document

You can use the DADF or the document glass to load an original document for faxing. Using the DADF, you can load up to 50 sheets of 75 g/m<sup>2</sup> (20 lb) paper at a time. Using the document glass, you can load one sheet at a time.

 **NOTE:** To get the best scan quality, especially for gray scale images, use the document glass instead of the DADF.

#### To fax a document using the Duplex Automatic Document Feeder (DADF):

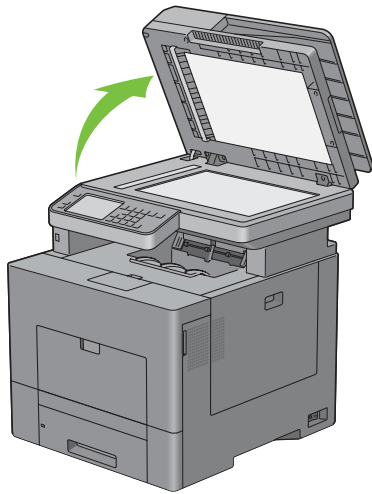
- Place the document(s) facing up on the DADF with the top edge of the documents in first. Then adjust the document guides to the correct document size.



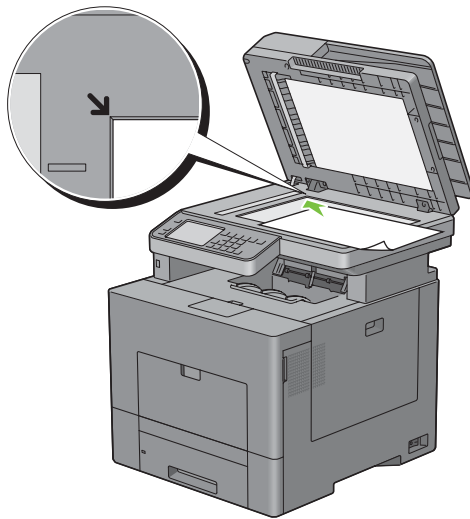
- Adjust the document resolution. (For details, see "Adjusting the Document Resolution.")

### To fax a document from the document glass:

- 1 Open the document cover.



- 2 Place the document facing down on the document glass and align it with the registration guide on the top left corner of the glass.



- 3 Adjust the document resolution. (For details, see "Adjusting the Document Resolution.")
- 4 Close the document cover.




**NOTE:** Ensure that no document is in the DADF. If any document is detected in the DADF, it takes priority over the document on the document glass.



**NOTE:** If you are faxing a page from a book or magazine, lift the cover until its hinges are caught by the stopper and then close the cover. If the book or magazine is thicker than 30 mm, start faxing with the cover open.

### Adjusting the Document Resolution

You can improve the quality of the fax document by adjusting the resolution, especially for documents with low image quality or documents containing photographic images.

- 1 Press the  (Home) button.
- 2 Select Fax.

- 3 Select Resolution.
- 4 Select the desired setting, and then select OK.

Standard*	Used for documents with normal sized characters.
Fine	Used for documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
Super Fine	Used for documents containing extremely fine detail. The super fine mode is enabled only if the remote machine also supports the Super Fine resolution. See the note below.
Photo	Used for documents containing photographic images.

\* Denotes the factory default setting.



**NOTE:** Faxes scanned in the Super Fine resolution transmit at the highest resolution supported by the receiving device.

### Adjusting the Document Contrast


You can adjust the contrast of the fax document to be lighter or darker than the original.

- 1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the DADF.

OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."

- 2 Press the  (Home) button.
- 3 Select Fax.
- 4 Select Darken/Lighten.
- 5 Select the desired level on the Darken/Lighten bar, and then select OK.

You can select a contrast level from seven levels between Darken and Lighten.

Selecting a cell on the left side of the bar makes the document contrast darker, and selecting a cell on the right side of the bar makes the document contrast lighter.

Darken3	Works well with light documents or faint pencil markings.
Darken2	
Darken1	
Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
Lighten1	Works well with dark documents.
Lighten2	
Lighten3	

\* Denotes the factory default setting.

### Sending a Fax From Memory

- 1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the DADF.


OR


Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.


For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."


- 2 Press the  (Home) button.



- 3 Select Fax.
- 4 Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs. (For details, see "Adjusting the Document Resolution." For adjusting the contrast, see "Adjusting the Document Contrast.")
- 5 To select a fax number, do one of the followings :


- Select  , and then select one of the following:  
 Machine Address Book - Individuals - Select an individual fax number and then select OK.  
 Machine Address Book - Groups - Select a group dial number and then select OK.  
 Search Network Address Book - Search and select a fax number from the LDAP server and then select OK.

 **NOTE:** For more information on address book and server address book, see "Address Books."


 **NOTE:** For details about Search Network Address Book, see "Using the Server Address Book and Server Phone Book."

 **NOTE:** The fax number needs to be registered before you can select Address Book.

- Select  .  
 Enter the speed dial number using the number pad, and then select  .


- 6 Press the  (Start) button to scan data.



When the document is loaded on the document glass, the display prompts you for another page.

If you want to place a new document, replace the document with a new document, and then press the  (Start) button.

When you have finished loading documents, select Send Now.

The printer starts dialing the number, and then sends the fax when the remote fax machine is ready.

 **NOTE:** You can cancel the fax job at any time while sending the fax by pressing the **X (Cancel)** button.



 **NOTE:** Pressing the  (Start) button does not start sending a fax when the available time is set or the Fax function is locked. (For details, see "Set Available Time" for the Available time and "Function Enabled" for the Fax function.)

## Sending a Fax Manually


- 1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the DADF.  
OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."

- 2 Press the  (Home) button.
- 3 Select Fax.
- 4 Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs. (For details, see "Adjusting the Document Resolution." For adjusting the contrast, see "Adjusting the Document Contrast.")
- 5 Select On Hook.
- 6 Enter the fax number of the recipient using the number pad.  
 You can also select the recipient by using speed dial number or address book. (For details, see "Automatic Redialing.")
- 7 Press the  (Start) button to begin sending the fax.

 **NOTE:** You can cancel the fax job at any time while sending the fax by pressing the **X (Cancel)** button.

 **NOTE:** Pressing the **▶ (Start)** button does not start sending a fax when the available time is set or the Fax function is locked. (For details, see "Set Available Time" for the Available time and "Function Enabled" for the Fax function.)

### Confirming Transmissions

When the last page of your document has been sent successfully, the printer beeps and returns to the standby mode.

If something goes wrong while sending your fax, an error message appears on the display.


If you receive an error message, press the **✕ (Cancel)** button to clear the message and try to send the document again.

You can set your printer to print a confirmation report automatically after each fax transmission. For further details, see "Printing a Report."

### Automatic Redialing


If the number you have dialed is busy or there is no answer when you send a fax, the printer will automatically redial the number every minute based on the number set in the redial settings.

To change the time interval between redials and the number of redial attempts, see "Available Fax Settings Options."

 **NOTE:** The printer will not automatically redial a number that was busy when the number was manually entered.


## Sending a Delayed Fax

The Delayed Start mode can be used to save scanned documents for transmission at a specified time to take advantage of lower long distance rates.

- 1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the DADF.  
OR  
Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.  
For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."
- 2 Press the  **(Home)** button.
- 3 Select **Fax**.
- 4 Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs. (For details, see "Adjusting the Document Resolution." For adjusting the contrast, see "Adjusting the Document Contrast.")
- 5 Select the **Options** tab, and then select **Delayed Send**.
- 6 Select **On**.
- 7 Enter the start time using the number pad, and then select **OK**.
- 8 Select the **Fax** tab, and then enter the fax number of the recipient using the number pad.  
You can also select the recipient by using speed dial number or address book. (For details, see "Automatic Redialing.")
- 9 Press the **▶ (Start)** button to scan data.


Once Delayed Start mode is activated, your printer stores all of the documents to be faxed into its memory and sends them at the specified time. After faxing in the Delayed Start mode is complete, the data in the memory is cleared.


 **NOTE:** If you turn off and on the printer, the stored documents are sent as soon as the printer is activated.

 **NOTE:** If the specified start time overlaps with the time periods for the available time or the Fax function, the printer cannot send the delayed fax at the specified time. (For details, see "Set Available Time" for the Available time and "Function Enabled" for the Fax function.)

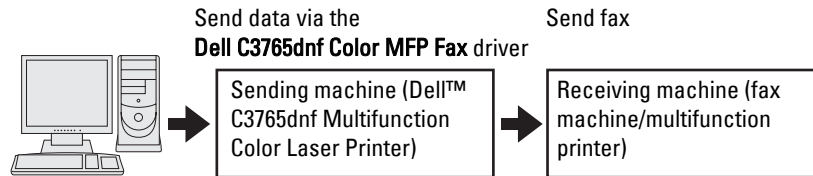
## Sending a Fax from the Driver (Direct Fax)

You can send a fax directly from your computer by using the driver.


 **NOTE:** Only black and white faxes can be sent using Direct Fax.


 **NOTE:** If the specified start time overlaps with the time periods for the available time or the Fax function, the printer cannot send the delayed fax at the specified time. (For details, see "Set Available Time" for the Available time and "Function Enabled" for the Fax function.)

### Example



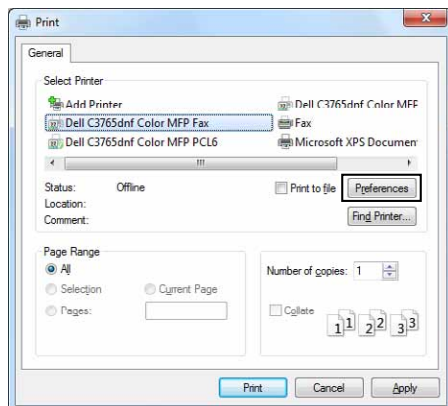
### Procedure

 **NOTE:** The names of the dialog boxes and the buttons may be different from those given in the following procedure depending on the application you are using.

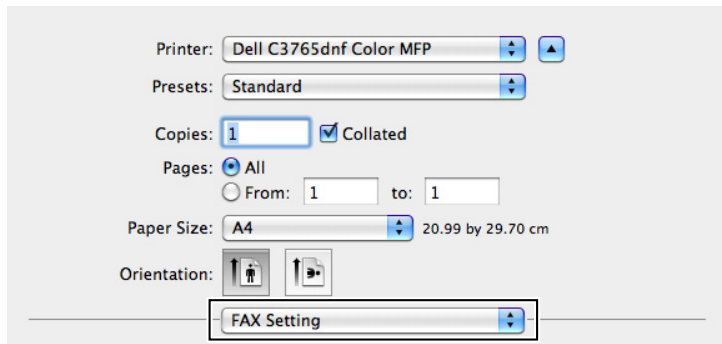
 **NOTE:** To use this feature, you must install the fax driver. (For details, see "Inserting the Software and Documentation Disc" for Windows or "Installing the Drivers and Software" for Macintosh.)

- 1 Open the file you want to send by fax.
- 2 Open the print dialog box from the application, and then select **Dell C3765dnf Color MFP Fax**.
- 3 Click **Preferences** in Windows, or select **FAX Setting** in Macintosh.


For Microsoft Windows:



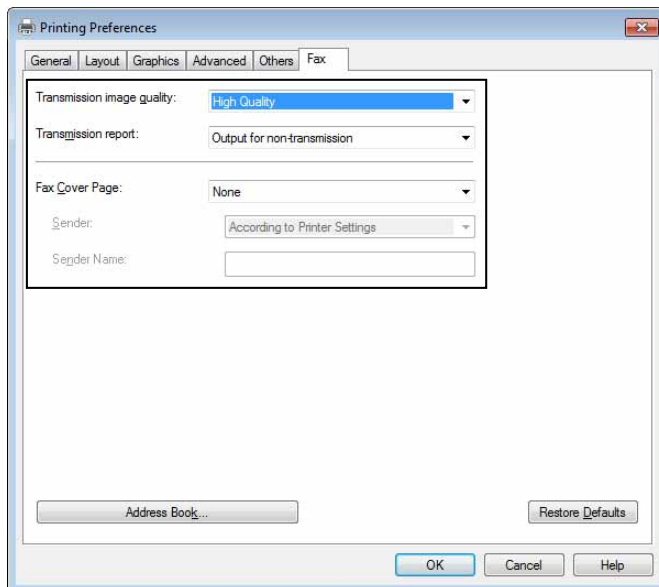
For Apple Macintosh:



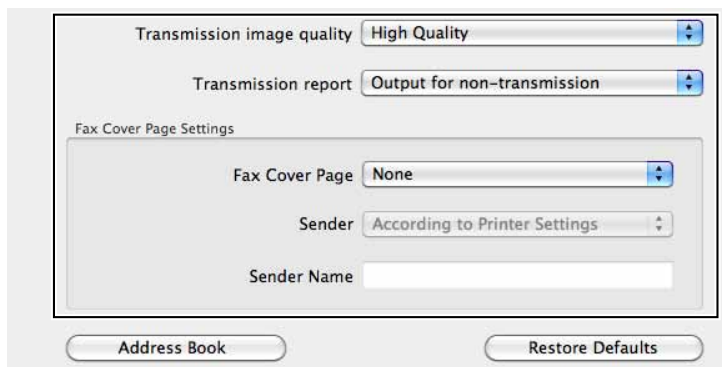
4 When the setting dialog box appears, specify the following settings.

 **NOTE:** The settings done here are only applied to a single fax job.

For Microsoft Windows:



For Apple Macintosh:



### a. Transmission image quality

#### Purpose:

To set the output quality.

#### Values:

Standard	For documents with normal sized characters.
High Quality*	For documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
Super-high image quality	For documents containing extremely fine detail. The super fine mode is enabled only if the remote machine also supports Super Fine resolution. See the notes below.

\* Denotes the factory default setting.



**NOTE:** Faxes printed in the Super-high image quality by Direct Fax driver transmits at the highest resolution supported by the receiving device.

### b. Transmission report

#### Purpose:

To specify whether to print a fax transmission result.

#### Values:

Output regularly	Prints a transmission result after every fax transmission.
Output for non-transmission*	Prints a transmission result only when an error occurs.
Do not output	Does not print fax transmission results.

\* Denotes the factory default setting.

### c. Fax Cover Page

#### Purpose:

To specify whether to attach a cover page to your fax.

#### Values:

According to Printer Settings	Determines whether to attach a cover page to your fax depending on the setting you specify in Fax Cover Page on the operator panel.
Attach	Attaches a cover page to your fax.
None*	Does not attach a cover page to your fax.

\* Denotes the factory default setting.

#### **Sender**

#### Purpose:

To specify whether to print the sender's name on the fax cover page.

#### Values:

According to Printer Settings*	Determines whether or not to print the sender's name on the fax cover page based on the printer settings.
Enter a sender name	Allows you to enter a sender's name that will be printed on the fax cover page in <b>Sender Name</b> .

\* Denotes the factory default setting.

## Sender Name

### Purpose:

To enter a sender's name that will be printed on the fax cover page.

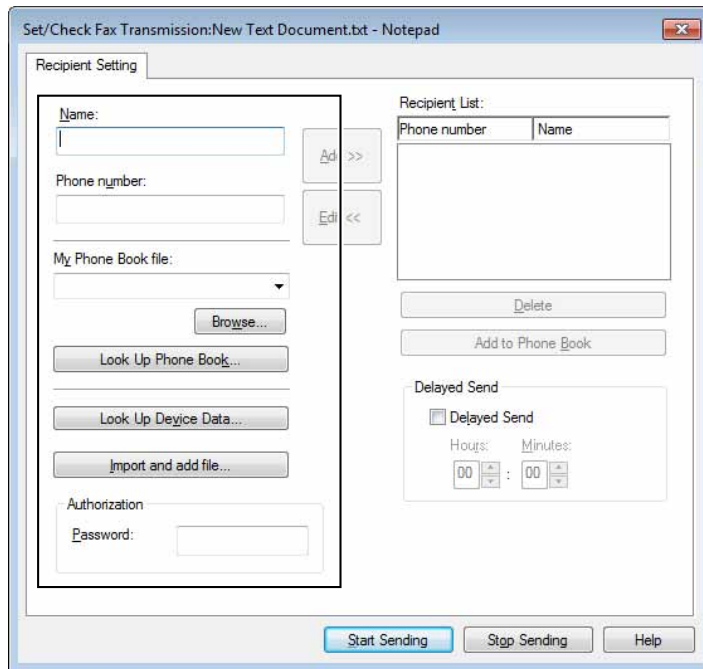
The sender's name can be up to 30 characters. If it exceeds 30 characters, only the first 30 characters will be printed.

- 5 For Windows, click **OK** to close the **Printing Preferences** dialog box, and then click **Print**.

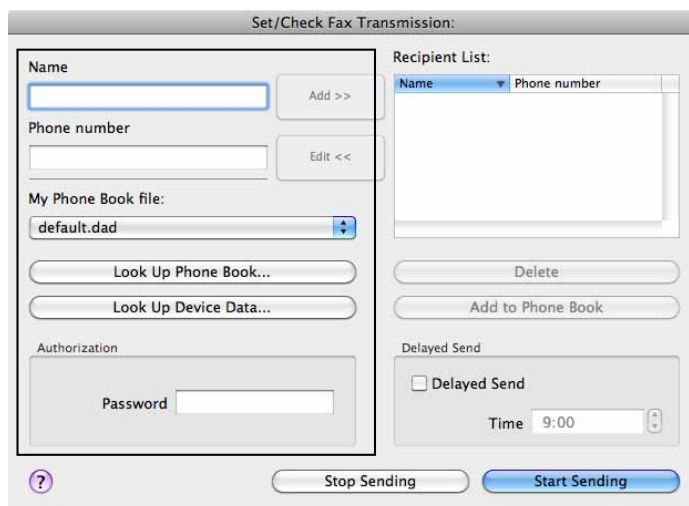
For Macintosh, click **Print**.

The **Set/Check Fax Transmission** dialog box appears.

### For Microsoft Windows:




### For Apple Macintosh:






- 6 Enter the destination for the recipient. The following procedure is for entering the destination. For details on how to enter the destination, please refer to the Help file for the driver.
  - a Enter the name and fax number directly.
  - b Select a fax number from a phone book.
    - **Look Up Phone Book:** Displays a list of fax numbers that are saved in the file specified for **My Phone Book** file.
    - **Look Up Device Data:** Displays a list of fax numbers that are saved in the Phone Book on the Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer.
    - **Import and add file (Windows only):** Allows you to select a source file such as a CSV file, WAB file, MAPI, or a LDAP server. (For details on LDAP server, see "LDAP Server" and "Fax Server Address Book.")

 **NOTE:** Enter the password in the **Password** field in the **Authorization** area before sending a fax if the fax function is locked with a password.

To lock the fax function with a password:

 **NOTE:** To lock the fax function from **Function Enabled**, you must first set **Panel Lock** to **On**. For details, see "Panel Lock."



- 1 Press the  (**Information**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Admin Settings**.
- 3 Select  until **Secure Settings** appears, and then select **Secure Settings**.
- 4 Select **Function Enabled**.
- 5 Select  until **Fax** appears, and then select **Fax**.
- 6 Select **On (Password)**.
- 7 Enter a four digit password, and then select **OK**.
- 8 Turn off the printer, and turn it on again to apply the settings.

To check whether the fax has been sent:

Print a job history report. For details about how to print a job history report, see "Report / List."

## Receiving a Fax

### About Receiving Modes

 **NOTE:** To use the **Telephone / Fax** or **Ans Machine/Fax**, connect an answering machine to the phone connector  on the back of your printer.

When the memory is full, the fax is received in the **Telephone** mode.

### Loading Paper for Receiving Faxes

The instructions for loading paper in the paper tray are the same whether you are printing, faxing, or copying, except that faxes can only be printed on Letter-sized, A4-sized, or Legal-sized paper. For details about loading paper, see "Loading Print Media." For details about setting the paper type and size in the tray, see "Print Media Guidelines."

### Receiving a Fax Automatically in the Fax Mode

Your printer is preset to the **Fax** mode at the factory.



If you receive a fax, the printer automatically goes into the fax mode after a specified period of time and receives the fax.

To change the interval at which the printer goes into the fax mode after receiving an incoming call, see "Available Fax Settings Options."

### Receiving a Fax Manually in the Telephone Mode


You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external telephone and then pressing the remote receive code (see "Available Fax Settings Options"). You can also receive a fax by selecting **Manual Receive** in **On Hook**.

To receive a fax by selecting **Manual Receive**:

- 1 When the external telephone rings, pick up the handset and check for the fax tone.
- 2 After you hear the fax tone, press the  (**Home**) button.
- 3 Select **Fax**.
- 4 Select **On Hook**.
- 5 Select **Mode**, and then select **Manual Receive**.
- 6 Press the  (**Start**) button.
- 7 Hang up the hand set of the external telephone.

The printer begins receiving a fax and returns to the standby mode when the reception is completed.

### Receiving a Fax Automatically in the Telephone / Fax or Ans Machine/Fax

To use the **Telephone / Fax or Ans Machine/Fax** mode, you must connect an external telephone to the phone connector ( <sup>PHONE</sup>) on the back of your printer.

If the caller leaves a message, the answering machine stores the message as it would normally. If your printer hears a fax tone on the line, it automatically starts to receive a fax.


For details on **Telephone / Fax or Ans Machine/Fax** mode, see "Available Fax Settings Options."



**NOTE:** If you have set your printer to **Ans Machine/Fax** and your answering machine is switched off, or no answering machine is connected to your printer, your printer will automatically go into the **Fax** mode after a predefined time.

### Receiving a Fax Manually Using an External Telephone (Remote Receive)

You can manually receive a fax from the external telephone without having to go to the printer.

To manually receive a fax using the external telephone, you must connect an external telephone to the phone connector ( <sup>PHONE</sup>) on the back of your printer and also set **Remote Receive** to **On**.

When you receive a call on the external telephone and hear a fax tone, enter the two-digit code from the external telephone.

The printer receives the document.

When entering the remote receive code from the external telephone, press the number keys slowly in sequence. If you still hear the fax tone from the remote machine, try entering the two-digit code once again.

The default remote receive code is 00. You can change the two-digit code to whatever you choose. For details on changing the code, see "Available Fax Settings Options."






**NOTE:** Set the dialing system of your external telephone to **DTMF**.

## Receiving Faxes Using the DRPD

The DRPD is a telephone company service which enables a user to use a single telephone line to answer several different telephone numbers. The particular number someone uses to call you on is identified by different ringing patterns, which consist of various combinations of long and short ringing sounds.

Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection option, Distinctive Ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. To set up Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection, you will need another telephone line at your location, or someone available to dial your fax number from outside.

To set up the DRPD:

- 1 Press the  (Information) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Admin Settings**.
- 3 Select  until **Fax Settings** appears, and then select **Fax Settings**.
- 4 Select **Fax Line Settings**.
- 5 Select  until **DRPD Pattern** appears, and then select **DRPD Pattern**.
- 6 Select the desired pattern, and then select **OK**.
- 7 Turn off the printer, and turn it on again to apply the settings.

To receive faxes in the DRPD, you need to set the menu to DRPD. For details, see "Available Fax Settings Options."



Your printer provides seven DRPD patterns. If this service is available from your telephone company, ask your telephone company which pattern you need to select to use this service.

## Receiving Faxes in the Memory

Since your printer is a multi-tasking device, it can receive faxes while you are making copies or printing. If you receive a fax while you are copying, printing, or run out of paper or toner, your printer stores incoming faxes in the memory. Then, as soon as you finish copying, printing, or re-supply the consumables, the printer automatically prints the fax.

## Polling Receive

You can receive faxes from the remote fax machine when you want to receive it.

- 1 Press the  (Home) button.
- 2 Select **Fax**.
- 3 Select **On Hook**.
- 4 Select **Mode**, and then select **Manual Polling**.
- 5 Enter the fax number of the remote machine using the number pad.
- 6 Press the  (Start) button to begin receiving the fax.





## Automatic Dialing

### Speed Dialing







You can store up to 200 frequently dialed numbers in speed dial locations (001–200).

When the speed dial job specified in the delayed fax or redial exists, you cannot change the speed dial number from the operator panel or **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

## Setting Speed Dial


- 1 Press the  (**Information**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Admin Settings**.
- 3 Select  until **Phone Book** appears, and then select **Phone Book**.
- 4 Select **Individuals**.
- 5 Select  until the desired speed dial number between 1 and 200 appears and then select that number.  
To jump to a specific speed dial number, enter the desired number and then # using the number pad.
- 6 Select the **Name** text box.
- 7 Enter the name, and then **OK**.
- 8 Select the **Fax Number** text box.
- 9 Enter the fax number using the number pad, and then **OK**.  
To insert a pause between numbers, press the  (**Redial/Pause**) button.  
"-" appears on the display.
- 10 Select **OK**.  
To store more fax numbers, repeat steps 5 to 10.  
To return to the **Information** screen, press the **AC (All Clear)** button.

## Sending a Fax Using Speed Dial




- 1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the DADF.  
OR  
Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.  
For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."
  - 2 Press the  (**Home**) button.
  - 3 Select **Fax**.
  - 4 Select  .
  - 5 Enter the speed dial number between 1 and 200 using the number pad, and then select  .
  - 6 Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs. (For details, see "Adjusting the Document Resolution." For adjusting the contrast, see "Adjusting the Document Contrast.")
  - 7 Press the  (**Start**) button to scan data.  
When the document is loaded on the document glass, the display prompts you for another page.  
If you want to place a new document, replace the document with a new document, and then press the  (**Start**) button.  
When you have finished loading documents, select **Send Now**.  
The fax number stored in the speed dial location is automatically dialed. The document is sent when the remote fax machine answers.
-  **NOTE:** Using the asterisk (\*) in the first digit, you can send a document to multiple locations. For example, if you enter 00\*, you can send a document to the locations registered between 001 and 009.

## Group Dialing


If you frequently send the same document to several destinations, you can create a group of these destinations and set them under a one-digit group dial location. This enables you to use a group dial number setting to send the same document to all the destinations in the group.

 **NOTE:** You cannot include one group dial number within another group dial number.

### Setting Group Dial

- 1 Press the  (Information) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Admin Settings**.
- 3 Select  until **Phone Book** appears, and then select **Phone Book**.
- 4 Select **Groups**.
- 5 Select  until the desired group dial number between 1 and 6 appears and then select that group dial number.  
If a speed dial number is already stored in the location you chose, the display shows the name and the number of entries stored in that group dial number.
- 6 Select the **Enter Group Name** text box.
- 7 Enter the name, and then **OK**.
- 8 Select **Add from Address Book**.

 **NOTE:** The fax number needs to be registered before you can select **Add from Address Book**.






- 9 Select  until the desired speed dial number appears and then select that speed dial number.
- 10 Select **OK**, and then select **OK** again.

To store more group dial numbers, repeat steps 5 to 11.

To return to the **Information** screen, press the **AC (All Clear)** button.

### Editing Group Dial

You can delete a specific speed dial number from a selected group or add a new number to the selected group.

- 1 Press the  (Information) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Admin Settings**.
- 3 Select  until **Phone Book** appears, and then select **Phone Book**.
- 4 Select **Groups**.
- 5 Select  until the group dial number that you want to edit appears, and then select that group dial number.
- 6 Select **Edit**.
- 7 Select the **Enter Group Name** text box.
- 8 Enter a new name, and then **OK**.
- 9 To delete a speed dial number from the group dial number:
  - a Select  until the speed dial number that you want to edit appears, and then select that speed dial number.
  - b Select **Remove**.
- 10 To add a new speed dial number to the group dial number:
  - a Select **Add from Address Book**.
  - b Select  until the desired speed dial number appears and then select that speed dial number.
  - c Select **OK**.

11 Select OK.

To delete an existing group dial number, select the group dial number, and then select Remove.

If you want to edit another group dial number, repeat steps 5 to 11.

To return to the Information screen, press the AC (All Clear) button.

### **Sending a Fax Using Group Dial (Multi-address Transmission)**

You can use group dialing for Broadcasting or Delayed transmissions.

Follow the procedure of the desired operation. (For Delayed transmission, see "Specifying the Fax Settings Options.")

You can use one or more group numbers in one operation. Then continue the procedure to complete the desired operation.

Your printer automatically scans the document loaded in the DADF or on the document glass into the memory. The printer dials each of the numbers included in the group.

### **Printing a Speed Dial List**

You can check your automatic dial setting by printing a Speed Dial list.

For details about how to print a Speed Dial list, see "Report / List."

## **Phone Book**

You can select or search the registered phone numbers from the phone books.

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the DADF.


OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."


2 Press the  (Home) button.

3 Select Fax.

4 Select , and then select one of the following:

To select from the local phone book:

a Select Machine Address Book - Individuals or Machine Address Book - Groups.

b Select  until the desired speed dial number or the group dial number appears, and then select that speed dial number or group dial number.

c Select OK.


To search from the server phone book:

a Select Search Network Address Book.


b Enter a keyword using the keyboard, and then select OK.

c Select a recipient from the search result, and then select OK.

 **NOTE:** For more information on address book and server address book, see "Address Books."

 **NOTE:** For details about Search Network Address Book, see "Using the Server Address Book and Server Phone Book."


 **NOTE:** A fax number needs to be registered before you can select an address book.

- 5 Press the  (Start) button to begin sending the fax.




## Other Ways to Fax

### Using the Secure Receiving Mode

You may need to prevent your received faxes from being accessed by unauthorized people. You can turn on the secure fax mode using the **Secure Receive** option to restrict printing out all of the received faxes when the printer is unattended. In the secure fax mode, all incoming faxes will go in memory. When the mode is turned off, all stored faxes will be printed.


 **NOTE:** Before operation, ensure Panel Lock is enabled.

To turn the secure receiving mode on:

- 1 Press the  (**Information**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Admin Settings**.
- 3 Select  until **Fax Settings** appears, and then select **Fax Settings**.
- 4 Select **Incoming Defaults**.
- 5 Select  until **Secure Receive** appears, and then select **Secure Receive**.
- 6 Select **Secure Receive Set**.
- 7 Select **Enable**.
- 8 Enter a four digit password, and then select **OK**.
- 9 To return to the **Information** screen, press the **AC (All Clear)** button.

When a fax is received in the secure receiving mode, your printer stores it into memory and **Secure Fax Receive** is enabled on the **Job Status** screen to let you know that there is a fax stored.

To print received documents:

- 1 Press the  (**Job Status**) button.
- 2 Select **Secure Fax Receive**.
- 3 Enter a four digit password, and then select **OK**.

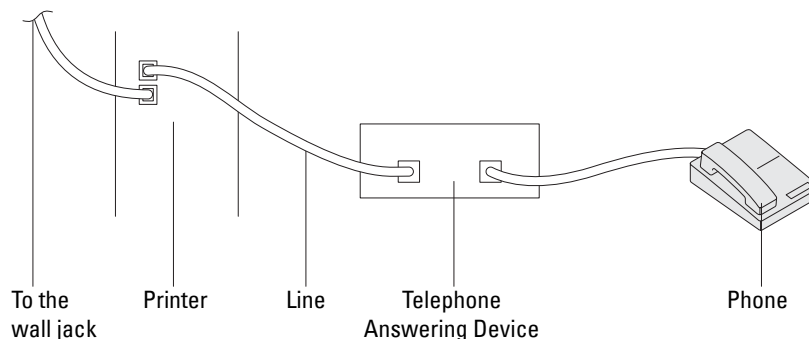
The faxes stored in memory are printed.

To turn the secure receiving mode off:

- 1 Follow the same steps from 1 to 6 in "To turn the secure receiving mode on:" and select **Secure Receive Set**.
- 2 Select **Disable**.

To return to the **Information** screen, press the **AC (All Clear)** button.

## Using an Answering Machine



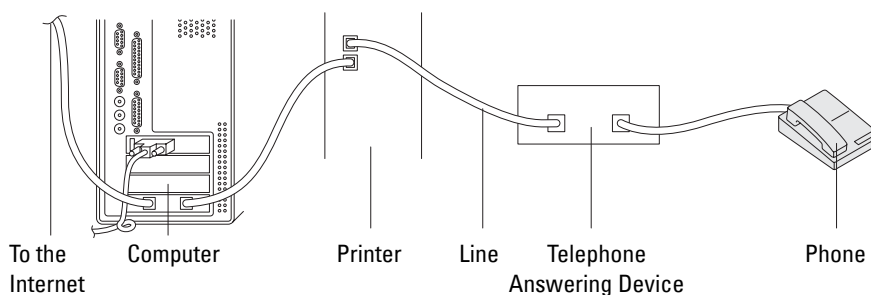
You can connect a telephone answering device (TAD) directly to the back of your printer as shown above.

- Set your printer to the **Ans Machine/Fax** and set **Auto Receive Ans/Fax** to specify the time for the TAD.
- When the TAD picks up the call, the printer monitors and takes the line if fax tones are received and then starts receiving the fax.
- If the answering device is off, the printer automatically goes into the **Fax** after the ring tone sounds for a predefined time.
- If you answer the call and hear fax tones, the printer will answer the fax call if you Set **On Hook** to **On** (you can hear voice or fax tones from the remote machine), and then press the **▶ (Start)** button and hang up the receiver.

OR

Press the two-digit remote receive code and hang up the receiver.

## Using a Computer Modem



If you want to use your computer modem for faxing or for a dial-up Internet connection, connect the computer modem directly to the back of your printer with the TAD as shown above.

- Set your printer to the **Ans Machine/Fax** and set **Auto Receive Ans/Fax** to specify the time for the TAD.
- Turn off the computer modem's fax-receive feature.
- Do not use the computer modem if your printer is sending or receiving a fax.
- Follow the instructions provided with your computer modem and fax application to fax via the computer modem.




## Printing a Report

The following reports may be useful when using fax:

 **NOTE:** For more information about other reports and how to print a report, see "Report / List."

Speed Dial	This list shows all the numbers currently stored in the memory of your printer as speed dial numbers.
Address Book	This list shows all the addresses currently stored in the printer's memory as Address Book information.
Server Address	This list shows all of the numbers currently stored in the printer's memory as Server Address information.
Fax Activity	This report shows information about the faxes you recently received or sent.
Fax Pending	This list shows the status of pending faxes. You may print this list to confirm your changes after changing any settings.
Print Meter	This report shows the total number of pages printed. The report will be titled <b>Dell ColorTrack Report</b> .

## Changing Setting Options

- 1 Press the  (Information) button.
  - 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Default Settings**.
  - 3 Select **Fax Defaults**.
  - 4 Select  until the desired menu appears, and then select that menu.
  - 5 Select  until the desired setting appears or enter the value using the number pad, and then select **OK**.
- To return to the **Information** screen, press the **AC (All Clear)** button.

# Know Your Printer

23 Understanding Your Printer Software .....	397
24 Printing Using ColorTrack (External Authentication) .....	413
25 Using the Server Address Book and Server Phone Book ...	421
26 Using Digital Certificates .....	423
27 Understanding Fonts .....	435
28 Understanding Printer Messages .....	443
29 Specifications .....	455



## Understanding Your Printer Software

Use the *Software and Documentation* disc that shipped with your printer to install a combination of software programs, depending on your operating system.

### Printer Status Window

The **Printer Status** window alerts you when there is a warning or when an error occurs, for example, when a paper jam occurs or toner is running low.

By default, the **Printer Status** window launches only when an error occurs. When an error occurs, the error message appears on the **Printer Status** window. You can set the **Printer Status** window to always launch when printing in **Printing Status Window Properties**.

You can also check toner level, quantity of paper remaining or the configuration of options for the printer.

### Status Monitor Console

Use the **Status Monitor Console** to manage multiple instances of the **Status Window** for a particular printer.

Select a printer from the list view (or **Printer Selection**) by clicking its name to open a **Status Window** for a particular printer.

### Dell™ Supplies Management System


You can launch the **Dell Supplies Management System** dialog box from the **All Programs** menu or the desktop icon.

You can order consumables by phone or from the web.

- 1 Click **Start**→ **All Programs**→ **Dell Printers**→ **Additional Color Laser Software**→ **Dell Supplies Management System**.

The **Dell Supplies Management System** window appears.

- 2 Select your printer from the **Select Printer Model** list.
- 3 If you are ordering from the web:
  - a Select a URL from the **Select Reorder URL** list.
  - b Click **Visit Dell printer supplies ordering web site**.

 **NOTE:** When you cannot get information from the printer automatically by two-way communication, a window prompting you to type the Service Tag appears. Type the Service Tag of your Dell printer in the field provided. Your Service Tag is located inside the front cover of your printer.

- 4 If you order by phone, call the number that appears in the **Order by Phone** section.

### User Setup Disk Creating Tool

The **User Setup Disk Creating Tool** program located in the **MakeDisk** folder of the **Utilities** folder on the *Software and Documentation* disc and the printer drivers located on the *Software and Documentation* disc are used to create driver installation packages that contain custom driver settings. A driver installation package can contain a group of saved printer driver settings and other data for things such as:

- Print orientation and Multiple Up (document settings)
- Watermarks
- Font references

If you want to install the printer driver with the same settings on multiple computers running the same operating system, create a setup disk in a floppy disk or in a server on the network. Using the setup disk that you have created will reduce the amount of work required when installing the printer driver.


- Install the printer driver in the computer on which the setup disk is to be created.
- The setup disk can only be used on the operating system on which the disk was created or computers running the same operating system. Create a separate setup disk for each of the operating systems.

### Software Update

The firmware and/or driver updates can be downloaded from the Dell Support web site located at [support.dell.com](http://support.dell.com).

## Printer Utility Software

You can open the **Status Window**, **Tool Box**, **Updater**, **Troubleshooting**, **Address Book Editor**, **ScanButton Manager**, and **Dell ScanCenter** using the **Quick Launch Utility** window.

 **NOTE:** **Quick Launch Utility** is only supported on Microsoft® Windows®.

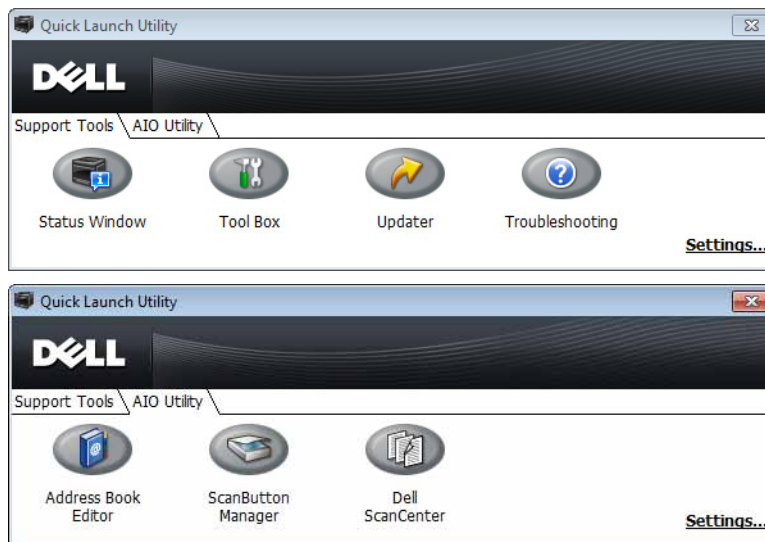
To use the **Quick Launch Utility**, select to install the **Quick Launch Utility** when you install the Dell software.

To install the Dell software, follow the instructions below.

- 1 Insert the *Software and Documentation* disc into your computer and click **setup\_assist.exe** to start **Easy Setup Navigator**.
- 2 Click **Installing Driver and Software**.
- 3 Follow the on-screen instructions.

To open the **Quick Launch Utility** window:

- 1 Click **Start**→ **All Programs**→ **Dell Printers**→ **Additional Color Laser Software**→ **Quick Launch Utility**.



The **Quick Launch Utility** window provides seven buttons: **Status Window**, **Tool Box**, **Updater**, **Troubleshooting**, **Address Book Editor**, **ScanButton Manager**, and **Dell ScanCenter**.

To exit the **Quick Launch Utility** window:

- 1 Click the Close (x) button at the top-right of the window.  
For details, click **Help** of each application.

### **Status Window**

The **Status Window** button opens the **Printer Status** window. For more information about using Status Window, refer to "Printer Status Window."

### **Tool Box**

The **Tool Box** button opens the **Tool Box**. For more information about using **Tool Box**, refer to "Understanding the Tool Box Menus."

### **Updater**

The **Updater** button updates the Dell software and printer firmware.

### **Troubleshooting**

The **Troubleshooting** button opens the Troubleshooting Guide, which allows you to solve problems by yourself.

### **Address Book Editor**

The **Address Book Editor** button opens the **Address Book Editor**, which allows you to register the contact information such as phone number and e-mail address. For more information about using **Address Book Editor**, refer to "Using Address Book Editor."

### **ScanButton Manager**

The **ScanButton Manager** button opens the **ScanButton Manager**, which allows you to specify how the **ScanButton Manager** behaves for scan events that the device generates (USB connection only). For more information about using **ScanButton Manager**, refer to "Scanning From the Operator Panel - Scan to Application."

### **Dell ScanCenter**

The **Dell ScanCenter** button opens the **Dell ScanCenter**, which is a **PaperPort**<sup>®</sup> application that enables you to scan items and send them directly to **PaperPort** or other programs on your computer without running the **PaperPort** program first. For more information about using **Dell ScanCenter**, refer to "Dell ScanCenter" or **PaperPort's** Help menu.

## **Address Books**

There are several address books available for Scan and Fax functions. Address books help you organize contact information, such as e-mail addresses, fax numbers and server information, and quickly choose the recipient or locate the address. The address book data can be obtained from the printer or a remote LDAP server.



**NOTE:** Phone Book is described as one of Address Books in this section.



**NOTE:** For information on how to setup the LDAP server, see "LDAP Server" and "LDAP User Mapping." For information on how to obtain e-mail addresses and fax numbers from LDAP servers, see "Using the Server Address Book and Server Phone Book."

### **Types of Address Books**

- E-mail Address Book (for Scan to E-mail)  
E-mail addresses registered for sending the scanned document via e-mail

- **Email Group (for Scan to E-mail)**  
Groups of e-mail addresses registered for sending the scanned document via e-mail
- **LDAP Server Address Book (for Scan to E-mail)**  
E-mail addresses registered in the LDAP server for sending the scanned document via e-mail
- **Network Address Book (for Scan to Network)**  
Computer and FTP server information registered for sending the scanned document to a computer or ftp server
- **Phone Book (for Fax)**  
Fax numbers registered for sending documents from your printer
- **Group Dial (for Fax)**  
Groups of fax numbers registered for sending documents from your printer
- **LDAP Server Phone Book (for Fax)**  
Fax numbers registered in the LDAP server for sending documents from your printer
- **PC Fax Address Book (for Direct Fax)**  
Fax numbers registered for sending documents from your computer
- **PC Fax Address Book for group (for Direct Fax)**  
Groups of fax numbers registered for sending documents from your computer

### Adding and Editing Entries to the Address Books


There are following three ways to add or edit entries to the address books:

- Operator panel of the printer
- Address Book Editor
- Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

Functions	Features	Types of Address Books	Entry Registration		
			Operator Panel on the Printer	Address Book Editor	Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool
Scan	E-mail	Address Book	-	●	●
		Email Group	-	●	●
		Server Address Book (LDAP server)	-	-	-
	Network	Address Book	-	●	●
Fax	Fax	Phone Book	●	●	●
		Group Dial	●	●	●
		Server Phone Book (LDAP server)	-	-	-
	Direct Fax	PC Fax Address Book	-	●	-
		PC Fax Address Book - group	-	●	-


## Using Operator Panel of the Printer

You can directly enter the fax numbers on the operator panel.

 **NOTE:** For information on how to add a new entry, see "Setting Speed Dial."

## Using Address Book Editor


You can use **Address Book Editor** installed on your computer to add or edit entries. **Address Book Editor** is synchronized with the address books of your printer and updated simultaneously as you save changes to the entries in **Address Book Editor**.

 **NOTE:** This tool is supported on both Microsoft Windows and Apple Macintosh.

 **NOTE:** When the printer and your computer is connected via USB, you must install the scanner driver.

With **Address Book Editor**, you can:

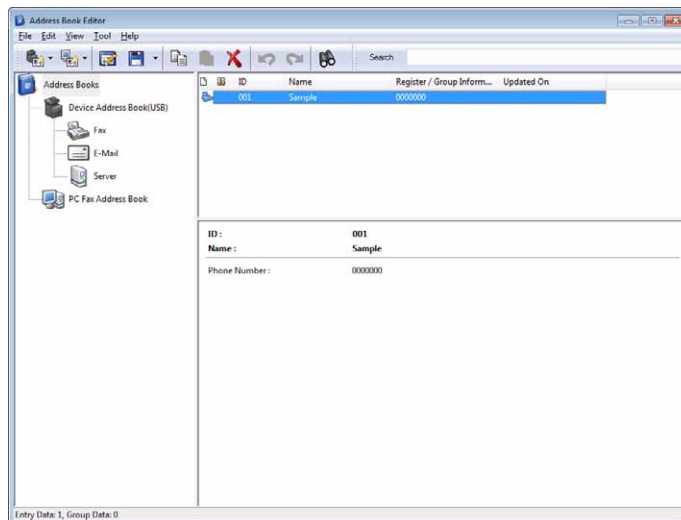
- Automatically retrieves data from the address books of your printer at startup
- Synchronizes with the printer
- Allows you to import the Address Book data from CSV file, WAB file, MAPI, and LDAP server
- Allows you to export the Address Book data into a CSV file

 **NOTE:** Do not edit the exported CSV file with applications other than the **Address Book Editor**. Editing the CSV file with other applications may corrupt the address data.

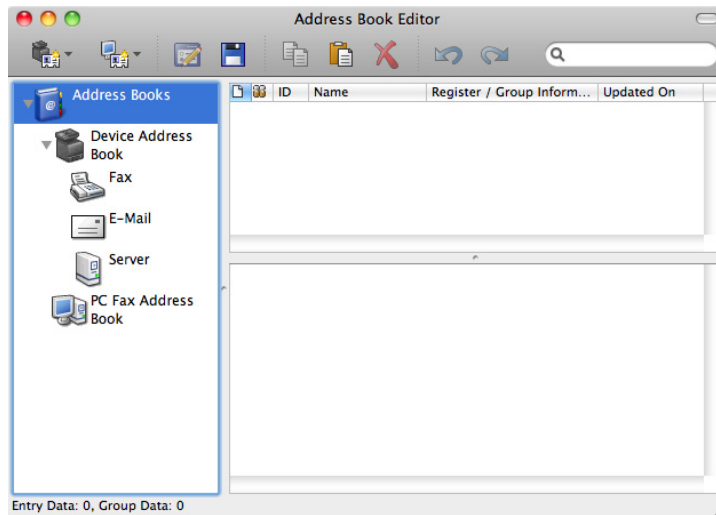
## Address Book Panel

There are two address books you can manage in the **Address Book Editor**: Device Address Book for Fax, E-mail, and Server and PC Fax Address Book for Direct Fax.

For Microsoft Windows:



For Apple Macintosh:



- **Device Address Book**
  - **Fax**

Links to the printer's Address Book for Fax feature. You can register up to 200 fax numbers and 6 groups with 200 fax numbers.
  - **E-Mail**


Links to the printer's Address Book for Scan to E-mail feature. You can register up to 100 e-mail addresses and 10 groups with 10 e-mail addresses.
  - **Server**

Links to the printer's Address Book for Scan to Network feature. You can register up to 32 server information.
- **PC Fax Address Book**

You can manage the PC Fax Address Book for using Direct Fax feature on your computer. You can register up to 500 fax numbers and 500 groups with 30 fax numbers.


#### ***Editing an entry:***


- 1 Select an Address Book that the entry you want to edit is stored.
- 2 Select an entry that you want to edit.
- 3 Click **Edit**, and enter new information.
- 4 Click **Save** to save changes.

 **NOTE:** When the address book entries are updated, it synchronizes with the printer and updates the address books of your printer simultaneously.

#### **Using Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**

You can use **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** using a general web browser.

 **NOTE:** For information on how to add a new entry, see "Address Book."

 **NOTE:** When the address book entries are updated, it synchronizes with the printer and updates the address books of your printer simultaneously.

# Status Monitor Widget for Macintosh

Status Monitor Widget is a printer utility that promotes efficient use of the printer through the exchange of information between the Macintosh and the printer.

## Status Monitor Widget Feature

- Monitoring Dell Printers  
Allows you to check the status of Dell printers currently connected to your Macintosh
- Receiving Alerts  
Alerts you to problems, such as paper jams or low toner
- Ordering Supplies  
Allows you to access the web site to order supplies

## Before Installing the Status Monitor Widget

### Operating systems


- Mac OS X 10.4.11
- Mac OS X 10.5
- Mac OS X 10.6
- Mac OS X 10.7
- Mac OS X 10.8

### Network protocols and interfaces

- LPR
- Socket 9100
- Bonjour
- USB 2.0 and 1.1 (When connecting with multiple printers of the same model via USB cables, only the printer recognized first can be monitored in the Status Monitor Widget.)

## Installing the Status Monitor Widget

- 1 Double-click the Status Monitor Installer icon in the Finder window.
- 2 Follow the on-screen instructions.  
When the Install Succeeded screen appears, the installation is complete.

 **NOTE:** Entering the administrative login name and password are required during the installation process.

## Opening and Closing the Status Monitor Widget

### Opening the Status Monitor Widget


- 1 Click the Dashboard icon in the Dock to launch Dashboard.

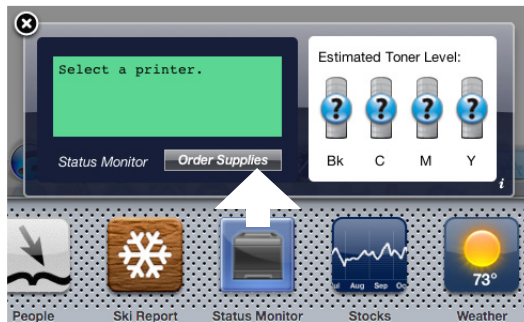


- 2 Click the Plus (+) sign to display the Widget Bar.



- 3 Click the icon of Status Monitor in the Widget Bar. The Printer Status window appears.

 **NOTE:** If the message **Select a printer** is displayed, select your printer in **Preferences**. (For more information on Preferences, see "Preferences.")

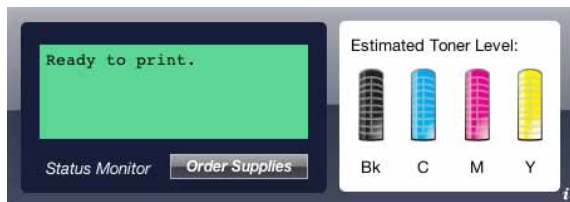


### Closing the Status Monitor Widget

- 1 Click the Close (x) button in the upper-left corner of the Printer Status window.




### Printer Status Window

When the Status Monitor Widget is activated, the Printer Status window appears on Dashboard.



### Printer Status Message Area

Displays a message of the current printer status.


-  **NOTE:** The **Status Monitor Widget** automatically obtains the printer information at the updated interval that can be specified in **Preferences**. Also, the printer status is refreshed when Dashboard is launched or **Preferences** is closed.
-  **NOTE:** If the **Status Monitor Widget** receives no response from the printer, the message **Cannot get printer information** is displayed.
-  **NOTE:** When the printer is connected via USB cable, you cannot check the status of the printer during a print or scan job.

### Printer Status Image Area

Displays the image of printer condition.

- Estimated Toner Level image  
Displays the estimated toner level of each color if the printer is functioning properly.



 **NOTE:** If the utility does not receive a response from the printer, the **Unknown** toner image is displayed.

- Printer error image  
Displays an indication image when an error occurs.




An error has occurred and the printer cannot be used.

### Order Supplies button

Click this button to display the **Order** window.  
To hide the **Order** window, click **Order Supplies** again.

### Info (i) button


Click this button to open **Preferences**.

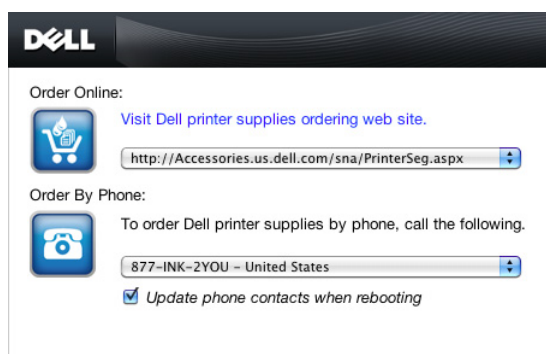
 **NOTE:** The **info (i)** button appears on the lower-right corner of the window when the cursor is over the **Printer Status** window. The **info (i)** button is a standard used across all widgets.

### Order Window

This window provides you with the information for ordering printer supplies by telephone or from the web site.  
To open the **Order** window:

- 1 Click **Order Supplies** in the **Printer Status** window.  
The **Order** window appears.

 **NOTE:** The **Order** window appears when low toner is detected.



### Order Online

- Visit Dell printer supplies ordering web site hyperlink  
Click the **Visit Dell printer supplies ordering web site** hyperlink to access the web site for ordering Dell printer supplies.

- URL list  
Displays a list of available URLs where you can order Dell printer supplies.  
Select a URL address to use when the **Visit Dell printer supplies ordering web site** hyperlink is clicked.

### Order By Phone

- Phone number list  
Displays a list of available phone numbers that you can call to order Dell printer supplies.
- Update phone contacts when rebooting check box  
Select this check box to regularly update the phone number list.

### Dell and the Environment


Click the hyperlink to access the web site about recycling.

### Preferences

To open Preferences:

- 1 Click the **info (i)** button in the **Printer Status** window.

Preferences appears.

 **NOTE:** The **info (i)** button appears on the lower-right corner of the window when the cursor is over the **Printer Status** window. The **info (i)** button is a standard used across all widgets.



### Printer

Displays a list of available printer names in the pull down menu. The first printer displayed in this list is set as default.

### Status Update Interval


You can specify the update interval of the printer status. By default, it is set to obtain the printer information every 10 seconds. It can be set from 0 second to 600 seconds.

### SNMP Community Name

You can change the SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) community name if using default community name (public). Up to 31 characters can be entered.

### Service Tag button

Click this button to obtain the service tag.

 **NOTE:** You cannot retrieve the service tag when the printer is connected via USB cable.

### done button

Click this button to return to the **Printer Status** window.

# Status Monitor Console for Linux

Status Monitor Console is a printer utility that promotes efficient use of the printer through the exchange of information between the Linux and the printer.

## Status Monitor Console Feature


- Monitoring Dell Printers  
Allows you to check the status of Dell printers currently connected to your Linux.
- Receiving Alerts  
Alerts you to problems, such as paper jams or low toner.
- Ordering Supplies  
Allows you to access the web site to order supplies.

## Before Installing the Status Monitor Console

 **NOTE:** The **Status Monitor Console** requires the following modules installed.

- Python, PyGTK, Net-SNMP, cups-libs, and xdg-open

Please confirm that these modules are installed before you install the **Status Monitor Console**.

 **NOTE:** The **Status Monitor Console** is available when the printer is connected to a network (LPR or Socket 9100). USB connection is not supported.

## Distributions

- Red Hat® Enterprise Linux® 5 Desktop
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Desktop
- SUSE® Linux Enterprise Desktop 10
- SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11

## Printing system

- CUPS (Common Unix Printing System)

## Installing the Status Monitor Console

- 1 Activate the terminal, and log in as a super user.
- 2 Type the following rpm command in the terminal window.

```
# rpm -ivh (Type the package file name)
```

## Starting the Status Monitor Console

- 1 Click Dell Printers→ Status Monitor Console

The **Printer Selection** window appears.

For more information on Printer Selection window, see "Printer Selection Window."

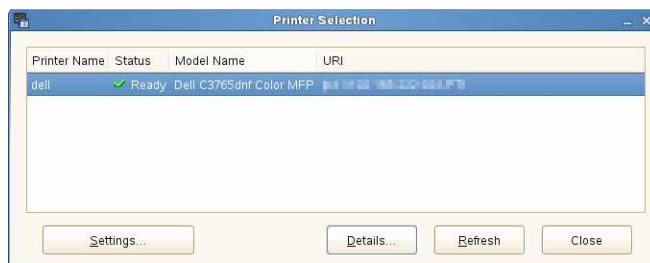
- 2 Select your printer.

The **Printer Status** window appears.

For more information on **Printer Status** window, see "Printer Status Window."

- You can order supplies from the **Dell Supplies Management System** window. See "Dell Supplies Management System Window."

## Printer Selection Window



### Printers list

All the printers registered in the CUPS (Common UNIX Printing System) are displayed in a list.

- Status icons:
  - ✓ Ready
  - ⚠ Unknown/Offline/Toner Low/Paper Low
  - ✗ Door Open/Paper Jam/No Toner/Out Of Paper

### Settings button

Click this button to open the **Settings** window.

### Details button

Click this button to open the **Printer Status** window. If a non-supported printer is selected, it opens the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. For details on the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, see "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."

### Refresh button

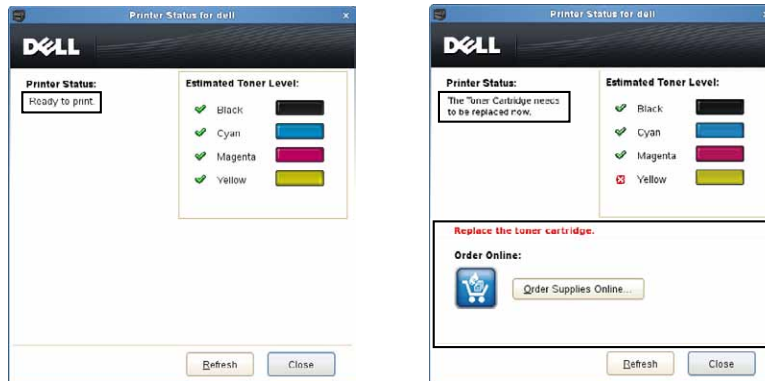
Click this button to update the information of printers.

### Close button

Click this button to close the **Printer Selection** window.


## Printer Status Window


When the printer is specified in the **Printer Selection** window, the **Printer Status** window appears.







### Printer Status Message Area

Displays a message of the current printer status.

 **NOTE:** The **Status Monitor Console** automatically obtains the printer information at the updated interval that can be specified in the **Settings** window. Also, the printer status is refreshed when the **Refresh** is clicked.

 **NOTE:** If the **Status Monitor Console** receives no response from the printer, the message **Cannot get printer information** is displayed.

### Printer Status Image Area

- Current Toner Status icons  
Displays icons of the current status of each toner.
  -  The toner level is more than 30%.
  -  The toner level is less than 29%.
  -  The toner level is less than 9%.
  -  The toner level is unknown.
- Estimated Toner Level images  
Keeps you informed about the amount of toner that remains for each color.

### Toner Alert

Displays an alert message when any remaining toner is low, empty, or unknown.

### Order Online

- **Order Supplies Online** button  
Click this button to access the web site for ordering Dell printer supplies. This button appears when the amount of toners becomes less than 30%.

### Refresh button

Click this button to update the status of the printer.

### Close button

Click this button to close the **Printer Status** window.

## Dell Supplies Management System Window

This window provides you with the information for ordering printer supplies by telephone or from the web site.

To open the Dell Supplies Management System window:

- 1 Click **Order Supplies Online** in the **Printer Status** window.  
OR  
Click **Dell Printers**→**Dell Supplies Management System**.



### Select Printer Model

Select your printer model name.

### Order Online

- **Order Supplies Online** button
  - When the Regular URL is selected in the **Select Reorder URL:**  
Click this button to open the **Service Tag** window.
  - When the Premier URL is selected in the **Select Reorder URL:**  
Click this button to open the procurement and support web site.
- **Select Reorder URL**  
Displays a list of available URLs where you can order Dell printer supplies. Select a URL address to use when the **Order Supplies Online** button is clicked.
  - Regular URL: <http://accessories.us.dell.com/sna/printerseg.aspx>
  - Premier URL: <http://premier.dell.com>

### Order by Phone

- **To order Dell printer supplies by phone, call the following**  
Select your country with phone number from the list, and call the displayed telephone number to order supplies.
- **Update phone contacts when rebooting** check box  
Select this check box to regularly update the phone number list.

## Dell and the Environment

Click the hyperlink to access the web site about recycling.


## Close button

Click this button to close the **Dell Supplies Management System** window.

## Service Tag Window



- 1 Enter the Dell printer service tag.

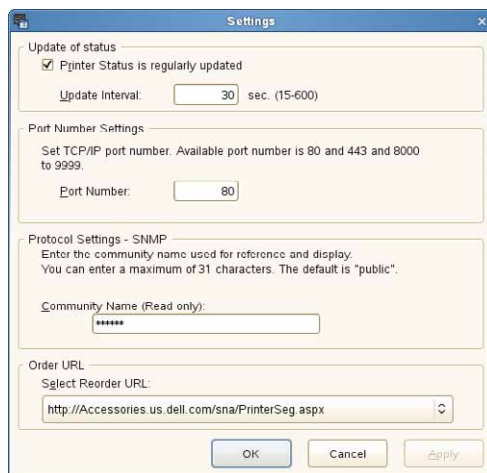
 **NOTE:** For information on the service tag, see "Express Service Code and Service Tag."

## Settings Window

To open the **Settings** window:

- 1 Click **Settings** in the **Printer Selection** window.

The **Settings** window appears.



### Update of status

- **Printer Status is regularly updated** check box  
Select the check box to enable/disable the printer status to be updated by the specified interval.
- **Update interval** text box  
Specify the update interval of the printer status.

### Port Number Settings

- **Port Number**  
Specify the port number in the **Port Number** text box to open the setting page of your printer in a web browser.

**Protocol Settings - SNMP**

- **Community Name**

Enter the Community name of SNMP in the **Community Name** text box.

**Order URL**


- **Select Reorder URL**

The selected URL address is set as default web site for the **Select Reorder URL** in the **Dell Supplies Management System** window.

## Printing Using ColorTrack (External Authentication)

With ColorTrack, you can restrict the number of pages that can be printed per user, specify the users who can print in color, and restrict the users who can access the printer, based on the user information registered on the external authentication server or the printer.

To print using ColorTrack, you must set ColorTrack Settings and the printer driver. Also, you must set the external server with ColorTrack for using an external authentication server. To set the external server, consult your system administrator.

 **NOTE:** To restrict color printing when ColorTrack is disabled, set `Auto Color To Mono Print` to `On`. All print jobs are printed in black and white even when color is specified. For details, see "Auto Color To Mono Print."

### ColorTrack Settings

To print using Dell™ ColorTrack, configure the following settings.

- "Dell ColorTrack"
- "Authentication System"
- "Kerberos Server"
- "LDAP Server"
- "LDAP Authentication"

### Dell ColorTrack






Specify the authentication method.

#### When Using the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

- 1 Launch Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.
  - a Open the web browser.
  - b Enter the IP address of your printer in the web browser.  
See "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."
- 2 Select **Print Volume**.
- 3 Click the **Dell ColorTrack** tab.
  - Select **External Mode** for **ColorTrack Mode**.
  - Select the **On** check box for **Non Registered User** when you permit the printing of data with no authentication information. If not, clear the **On** check box.
  - Enter the password when **External Mode** is selected for **ColorTrack Mode** and **On** is selected for **Non Registered User**. Then, re-enter the password to confirm the password that you entered.
  - Select the **On** check box for **ColorTrack Error Report**, if necessary.
- 4 Click **Apply New settings**.
- 5 Turn off the printer, and turn it on again to apply the settings.

## When Using the Operator Panel

You can specify only the settings of ColorTrack Mode, Non Registered User, and ColorTrack Error Report using the operator Panel.

- 1 Press the  (Information) button.
- 2 Select the Tools tab, and then select Admin Settings.
- 3 Select  until System Settings appears, and then select System Settings.
- 4 Select  until ColorTrack Mode appears, and then select ColorTrack Mode.
- 5 Select External Mode, and then select OK.
- 6 Select  until Non Registered User appears, and then select Non Registered User.
- 7 Select Off or On, and then select OK.
- 8 Select  until ColorTrack Error Report appears, and then select ColorTrack Error Report.
- 9 Select Off or On, and then select OK.
- 10 Turn off the printer, and turn it on again to apply the settings.

## ColorTrack Mode

The following two authentication modes are available: the Internal Mode using user information registered on the printer, and the External Mode using user information registered on an external server. To authenticate on the external authentication server with External Mode, you need not register user information on the printer. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.


## Non Registered User

Specify whether to permit the printing of data with no authentication information. This setting is enabled when the printer is restarted. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

## Non Registered User Password

Specify the password to be used for non-account user using 1 to 127 alphanumeric characters. If the password is left blank (NULL), you cannot log in to a server. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

 **NOTE:** When **External Mode** is specified and **Non Registered User** is set to On, you must set a password.

 **NOTE:** When using an LDAP server, you also must set the same password on the server.

## Re-enter Non Registered User Password


Enter the Non Registered user password again to confirm it.

## ColorTrack Error Report

Specify whether to automatically print error-related information if printing using ColorTrack results in an error.

## Setup Remote Authentication

Click **Setup Remote Authentication Page** to display the **Authentication System** page.

 **NOTE:** This item is displayed only when **External Mode** is specified.

## Authentication System

Specify the server authentication type, the server response time-out, or the search time-out.

### When Using the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

- 1 Launch Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.
  - a Open the web browser.
  - b Enter the IP address of your printer in the web browser.  
See "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."
- 2 Select **Print Server Settings**.
- 3 Click the **Security** tab.
- 4 Select **Authentication System**.  
Authentication System page is displayed.
  - Select the authentication system for **Authentication System Settings**.
  - Specify the time-out period for **Server Response Time-Out**.
  - Specify the time-out period for **Search Time-Out**.
- 5 Click **Apply New settings**.
- 6 Turn off the printer, and turn it on again to apply the settings.

### Authentication System Settings

Select the authentication system from the list. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

### Server Response Time-Out

Specify the amount of time the printer should wait for response from the server. Set the time period from 1 up to 75 seconds. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

### Search Time-Out

Specify the amount of time the printer should wait for searching for the server. Set the time period from 5 up to 120 seconds. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

### Kerberos Server

Specify the settings for the Kerberos Server.

### When Using the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool


- 1 Launch Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.
  - a Open the web browser.
  - b Enter the IP address of your printer in the web browser.  
See "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."
- 2 Select **Print Server Settings**.
- 3 Click the **Security** tab.
- 4 Select **Kerberos Server**.
- 5 Enter the IP address or host name, and the port address in **IP Address / Host Name & Port of Kerberos Server (for ColorTrack PRO)**.
- 6 Enter the domain name in **Domain Name**.
- 7 Click **Apply New settings**.


- 8 Turn off the printer, and turn it on again to apply the settings.


### IP Address / Host Name & Port

Specify the IP address or host name, and the port address. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

 **CAUTION:** Do not use the same port address as that of another port.


 **NOTE:** The port address must be 88 or between 5,000 and 65,535. The default value is 88.

 **NOTE:** Specify the IP address in the nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn format for IPv4. Each section of "nnn" is a variable value between 0 and 255.

 **NOTE:** Specify the IP address in the xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx format for IPv6. Each section of "xxxx" is a hexadecimal variable value.


### Domain Name

Specify the domain name of the Active Directory® in **Domain Name** (Realm Name). The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

 **NOTE:** Specify the domain name with uppercase characters. Depending on your server, an error may occur if you specify the domain name with lowercase characters.

### LDAP Server

Specify the directory server and the authentication method to execute LDAP authentication or to acquire information using LDAP, and specify the range and attributes for searching.

 **NOTE:** When using LDAPS or certificate verification, you must set the LDAP server or import an external certificate. For more information, see "Using Digital Certificates."

### When Using the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

- 1 Launch **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.
  - a Open the web browser.
  - b Enter the IP address of your printer in the web browser.  
See "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."

- 2 Select **Print Server Settings**.

- 3 Click the **Security** tab.

- 4 Select **LDAP Server**.

**Server Information (for ColorTrack PRO):**

- Enter the IP address or the host name, and the port address in **IP Address / Host Name & Port**.
- Confirm the software information for **LDAP Server**.

**Optional Information (for ColorTrack PRO):**

- Enter a text string in **Search Directory Root**.
- Enter the login name in **Login Name**.
- Enter the password in **Password**. Then, re-enter the password to confirm the password that you entered.
- Specify the time-out period for **Search Time-Out**.

- 5 Click **Apply New settings**.


- 6 Turn off the printer, and turn it on again to apply the settings.


## Server Information (for ColorTrack PRO)


### *IP Address / Host Name & Port*

Specify the IP address or the host name, and the port address. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

 **CAUTION:** Do not use the same port address as that of another port.

 **NOTE:** The port address must be 389, 636 or between 5,000 and 65,535. The default value is 389. When using LDAPS, normally specify 636.

 **NOTE:** Specify the IP address in the nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn format for IPv4. Each section of "nnn" is a variable value between 0 and 255.

 **NOTE:** Specify the IP address in the xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx format for IPv6. Each section of "xxxx" is a hexadecimal variable value.

### *LDAP Server*

Displays the current software information of the LDAP server.

## Optional Information (for ColorTrack PRO)

### *Search Directory Root*

Specify a text string as the origin of the search when using LDAP communication. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

For example: ou=colortrackv3,dc=win2003ad,dc=colortrack.dc=net

### *Login Name*

Specify the login name for accessing the directory server with LDAP authentication. Specify the name of a user with the authority to update the LDAP server. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

### *Password*

Specify the password for accessing the directory server with LDAP authentication. Specify the password of a user with the authority to update the LDAP server using 1 to 127 alphanumeric characters. If the password is left blank (NULL), you cannot log in to a server. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

### *Re-enter Password*

Enter the password again to confirm it.

### *Search Time-Out*

Specify the amount of time the printer should wait for searching for the server. To specify a time-out period for searching, select **Wait**, and set the time period from 5 up to 120 seconds. To not specify a time-out period, select the **Wait LDAP Server Limit**. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

## LDAP Authentication

Specify the LDAP server authentication method.

### When Using the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

- 1 Launch Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.
  - a Open the web browser.

- b** Enter the IP address of your printer in the web browser.  
See "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."
- 2** Select **Print Server Settings**.
- 3** Click the **Security** tab.
- 4** Select **LDAP Authentication**.  
**LDAP Authentication (for ColorTrack PRO):**
  - Confirm the authentication method.
  - When adding a text string to the UserID, select **Enable** for **Use Added Text String**.
  - When **Enable** is selected for **Use Added Text String**, enter the additional text string in **Text String Added to User Name**.
- 5** Click **Apply New settings**.
- 6** Turn off the printer, and turn it on again to apply the settings.

### **Authentication Method**

Displays the current LDAP authentication method. **Direct Authentication** executes server authentication with the UserID and password entered.

### **Use Added Text String**

Specify whether to add a text string to the UserID. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

### **Text String Added to User Name**

When using an added string for the user name, specify the text string to be added.

For example: if the user name is "abcde@myhost.example.com", normally you must enter "abcde@myhost.example.com".

However if **Use Added Text String** is set to **Enable**, and "@myhost.example.com" is specified in **Text String Added to User Name**, only the data "abcde" must be entered with the printer driver, thus simplifying the entry task.

The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

## **Setting the Printer Driver**

To print using ColorTrack, set the printer driver. Once set, the settings of the printer driver are enabled until they are changed.

- 1** Open **Properties** of the printer driver.
- 2** Configure the following settings from the **Configuration** tab.

### **Dell ColorTrack Mode**

Specify whether to allow general users to change settings related to authentication or whether general users must use the settings configured by the Administrator.

### **Specify Group Name**

Specify the name of the belonging group to use when authenticating. If you specify a group that does not belong, authentication fails and the data is not printed. Also, the default group is set if **Specify Group Name** is not specified.

**Specify Job Owner**

Select **Use Login Name** to use the user information logged into your PC, and select **Enter ID** to enter the user name yourself.

**Job Owner Name**

Specify the user name to use when authenticating with an external server. You can enter this only when selecting **Enter ID** for **Specify Job Owner**.

**Password**

Specify the user password to use when authenticating with an external server.



# Using the Server Address Book and Server Phone Book

With server address book and server phone book, you can specify an e-mail address or fax number of a recipient registered in the external LDAP server when sending a scanned image with e-mail or fax.

To use the server address book and server phone book, the printer needs to be configured in order to access the external LDAP server.



**NOTE:** To configure the settings of the external LDAP server, consult your system administrator.



**NOTE:** You must also set **Email Server Address Book** and **Fax Server Address Book** to **On** to specify recipients using the server address book and server phone book. For details, see "Email Server Address Book" and "Fax Server Address Book."

## Setting Server Address Book and Server Phone Book

- 1 Launch the Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool by entering the IP address of your printer in your web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of your printer, print the system settings report or display the **TCP/IP Settings** page, which lists the IP address. For details about how to find your printer's IP address, see "Verifying the IP Settings."

- 2 Select **Print Volume**, and then click the **Dell ColorTrack** tab.

- 3 Select **Off**, **Internal Mode**, or **External Mode** for **ColorTrack Mode**, and then click **Apply New Settings**.

Selecting **External Mode** allows you to authenticate the printer to the external server using the LDAP or Kerberos authentication method.

If the external server does not require authentication, select **Off** or **Internal Mode**.

- 4 Click **Restart Printer**.

- 5 Select **Print Server Settings**, click the **Security** tab, and then select **Authentication System**.

- 6 From the **Authentication System Settings** drop-down menu under **Authentication Type (for Server Address/Phone Book)**, select **Kerberos** or **LDAP** as the authentication method you are using, and then click **Apply New Settings**.

If **Off** or **Internal Mode** is selected in step 3, be sure to select **LDAP**.

If **External Mode** is selected, select **LDAP** or **Kerberos** according to the authentication method set up for the external server.

- 7 Click **Restart Printer**.

If you select **LDAP** in step 6, go to step 11.

- 8 Select **Print Server Settings**, click the **Security** tab, and then select **Kerberos Server**.

- 9 Specify the settings under **Kerberos Server (for Server Address/Phone Book)**, and then click **Apply New Settings**.

For details about each setting item, see "Kerberos Server."

- 10 Click **Restart Printer**.

- 11 Select **Print Server Settings**, click the **Security** tab, and then select **LDAP Server**.

- 12 Specify the settings under **LDAP Server (for Server Address/Phone Book)** and **Optional Information (for Server Address/Phone Book)**, and then click **Apply New Settings**.

For details about each setting item, see "LDAP Server."

**13** Click **Restart Printer**.

**14** Select **Print Server Settings**, click the **Security** tab, and then select **LDAP User Mapping**.


Specify the attribute names used in the LDAP server. If the attribute names are not customized in the LDAP server, leave the settings in this step as they are by default.

Now the settings are complete. See "Sending an E-mail With the Scanned File" or "Phone Book" to use the address information in the external server for sending e-mails or faxes.

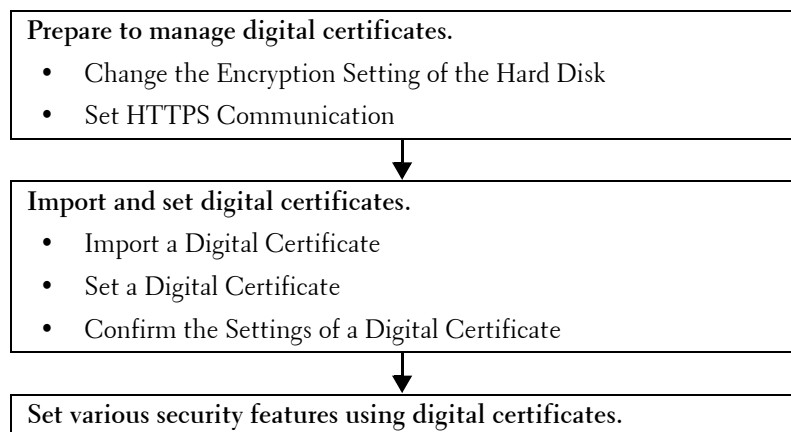
## Using Digital Certificates

The authentication feature using digital certificates upgrades security when sending print data or setting data.

This chapter describes how to manage digital certificates.

 **NOTE:** For information about digital certificate error, see "Understanding Printer Messages" and "Digital Certificate Problem."


The following is a typical setup flow for using digital certificates.



## Managing Certificates

This section describes how to manage digital certificates as follows.

- "Preparing to Manage Certificates"
- "Importing a Digital Certificate"
- "Setting a Digital Certificate"
- "Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate"
- "Deleting a Digital Certificate"
- "Exporting a Digital Certificate"

 **NOTE:** The external certificate management described above is enabled only when the optional hard disk is installed and is set to On for encryption.

### Preparing to Manage Certificates


Before managing digital certificates, the following settings must be applied.

- "Changing the Encryption Setting of the Hard Disk"
- "Setting HTTPS Communication"




### Changing the Encryption Setting of the Hard Disk

Some items are effective only when encryption of the optional hard disk is set to On. Change the encryption setting to On and set a key that is required to encrypt, if necessary.

 **CAUTION:** All files stored on the optional hard disk are cleared when changing the encryption setting.

 **NOTE:** You can enter only characters from 0 to 9, a to z, A to Z, and NULL values for encryption key.

### ***When Using the Operator Panel***

- 1 Press the  (Information) button.
- 2 Select the Tools tab, and then select Admin Settings.
- 3 Select  until Secure Settings appears, and then select Secure Settings.
- 4 Select  until Data Encryption appears, and then select Data Encryption.
- 5 Select Encryption.
- 6 Select On, and then select OK.
- 7 Use number pad to enter the passphrase for the encryption key, and then select OK.
- 8 The Encryption (All stored documents will be deleted. Are you sure) screen appears. When you confirm that all stored documents will be deleted to change the encryption setting, select Yes, Delete to change the setting. When you quit changing encryption setting, select No, Cancel.

### ***When Using the Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool***

- 1 Launch Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.
  - a Open the web browser.
  - b Enter the IP address of your printer in the web browser.  
See "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."
- 2 Select Printer Settings.
- 3 Click the Printer Settings tab.
- 4 Select Secure Settings.
- 5 Check that the Enable check box of Panel Lock Control of Panel Lock is selected.  
If Enable is selected, proceed to step 10. If not, perform the following steps.
- 6 Select the Enable check box of Panel Lock Control of Panel Lock.
- 7 Enter a four digit password in New Password.
- 8 Re-enter the password in Re-enter Password.
- 9 Click Apply New Settings.  
For details about Panel Lock, see "Panel Lock."
- 10 Click Data Encryption.  
The Data Encryption page is displayed.
- 11 Select the Encryption check box.
- 12 Enter a key that is required to encrypt.
- 13 Re-enter the key again to confirm it.
- 14 Click Apply New Settings.

### **Setting HTTPS Communication**

Before managing certificates, set HTTPS communication with a self-signed certificate.




**NOTE:** Set HTTPS communication after changing the Encryption setting to On.


### ***When Using the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool***


- 1** Launch Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.
  - a** Open the web browser.
  - b** Enter the IP address of your printer in the web browser.  
See "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."
- 2** Select **Print Server Settings**.
- 3** Click the **Security** tab.
- 4** Select **SSL/TLS**.
- 5** Click **Generate Self-Signed Certificate of Machine Digital Certificate**. The **Generate Self-Signed Certificate** page is displayed.
- 6** Select the size of public key from the list of **Size of Public Key**.
- 7** Specifies the issuer of SSL self-signed certificate.
- 8** Click **Generate Signed Certificate**.
- 9** The **Restart Printer** button is displayed after generating the self-signed certificate, and then click **Restart Printer**.
- 10** Repeat steps 2 to 4 to display the **SSL/TLS** page after restarting the printer.
- 11** If the self-signed certificate is set correctly, since the **HTTP- SSL/TLS Communication** column is set to **Enable** and a check box is displayed, select **Enable**.


### **Importing a Digital Certificate**

 **CAUTION:** Before importing a certificate file, back up the certificate file.


 **NOTE:** To manage digital certificates, you must first set encryption of the optional hard disk to On, and then set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage Certificates."

 **NOTE:** Be sure to import the certificate with Internet Explorer.

 **NOTE:** After importing a PKCS#12 format certificate, the secret key is not exported even if you execute exporting.

- 1** Launch Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.
  - a** Open the web browser.
  - b** Enter the IP address of your printer in the web browser.  
See "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."
- 2** Select **Print Server Settings**.
- 3** Click the **Security** tab.
- 4** Select **SSL/TLS**.
- 5** Click **Upload Signed Certificate of Machine Digital Certificate**.  
The **Upload Signed Certificate** page is displayed.  
 **NOTE:** The **Upload Signed Certificate** button is displayed only when the optional hard disk is installed and is set to On for encryption.
- 6** Enter a password.
- 7** Re-enter the password again to confirm it.
- 8** Click **Browse of File Name**, and select the file to be imported.
- 9** Click **Import** to import the certificate.

## Setting a Digital Certificate

 **NOTE:** To manage digital certificates, you must first set encryption of the optional hard disk to On, and then set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage Certificates."

**1** Launch **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.


- a** Open the web browser.
- b** Enter the IP address of your printer in the web browser.  
See "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."

**2** Select **Print Server Settings**.

**3** Click the **Security** tab.

**4** Select **SSL/TLS**.


**5** Click **Certificate Management** to display the **Certificate Management** page.

 **NOTE:** The **Certificate Management** button is displayed only when the optional hard disk is installed and is set to On for encryption.

**6** When setting a Wireless LAN (Server) certificate, select **Trusted Certificate Authorities** within **Category**.  
When setting a certificate of SSL Server, SSL Client, IPsec, or Wireless LAN (Client), select **Local Device**.

**7** Select the purpose of use from the **Certificate Purpose** list.

**8** Click **Display the List** to display the **Certificate List** page.


 **NOTE:** If the list includes more than 20 certificates, click **Next** to display the next page.

**9** Select the certificate to associate. At this time, confirm that **Validity** of the certificate selected is set to **Valid**.

**10** Click **Certificate Details** to display the **Certificate Details** page.

**11** Confirm the content, and click **Use This Certificate** at the upper-right corner.

## Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate

 **NOTE:** To manage digital certificates, you must first set encryption of the optional hard disk to On, and then set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage Certificates."

**1** Launch **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.


- a** Open the web browser.
- b** Enter the IP address of your printer in the web browser.  
See "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."

**2** Select **Print Server Settings**.

**3** Click the **Security** tab.

**4** Select **SSL/TLS**.


**5** Click **Certificate Management** to display the **Certificate Management** page.

 **NOTE:** The **Certificate Management** button is displayed only when the optional hard disk is installed and is set to On for encryption.

**6** Select the category from the **Category** list.


**7** Select the purpose of use from the **Certificate Purpose** list.

**8** Click **Display the List** to display the **Certificate List** page.


 **NOTE:** If the list includes more than 20 certificates, click **Next** to display the next page.

**9** The certificate displayed with an asterisk as **"\*Valid"** in the **Validity** column is the certificate associated with the use purpose and actually used.


## Deleting a Digital Certificate

 **NOTE:** To manage digital certificates, you must first set encryption of the optional hard disk to On, and then set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage Certificates."


- 1 Launch **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.
  - a Open the web browser.
  - b Enter the IP address of your printer in the web browser.  
See "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."
- 2 Select **Print Server Settings**.
- 3 Click the **Security** tab.
- 4 Select **SSL/TLS**.
- 5 Click **Certificate Management** to display the **Certificate Management** page.

 **NOTE:** The **Certificate Management** button is displayed only when the optional hard disk is installed and is set to On for encryption.

- 6 Select the category from the **Category** list.
- 7 Select the purpose of use from the **Certificate Purpose** list.
- 8 Click **Display the List** to display the **Certificate List** page.


 **NOTE:** If the list includes more than 20 certificates, click **Next** to display the next page.


- 9 Select the certificate to be deleted.
- 10 Click **Certificate Details** to display the **Certificate Details** page.
- 11 To delete the selected certificate, click **Delete** at the upper-right corner.

 **NOTE:** When a certificate is deleted, the features associated with the deleted certificate are disabled. To delete a certificate being used, either set the feature to OFF in advance or switch the association to another certificate, and then switch to another operation mode if possible before deleting the certificate.

- For an SSL Server, switch to another certificate such as a self-signed certificate.
- For an SSL Client, set the LDAP-SSL/TLS and IEEE 802.1x (EAP-TLS) setting to OFF.
- For IPsec, change the IKE setting to Pre-Shared Key or set the feature to OFF.
- For Wireless LAN, change the Wireless Security setting to other than WPA-Enterprise before deleting the certificate.


## Exporting a Digital Certificate

 **NOTE:** To manage digital certificates, you must first set encryption of the optional hard disk to On, and then set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage Certificates."

 **NOTE:** Since the secret key is not exported, an imported PKCS#12 format certificate can be exported only as a PKCS#7 certificate.

- 1 Launch **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.
  - a Open the web browser.
  - b Enter the IP address of your printer in the web browser.  
See "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."
- 2 Select **Print Server Settings**.
- 3 Click the **Security** tab.
- 4 Select **SSL/TLS**.


5 Click **Certificate Management** to display the **Certificate Management** page.

 **NOTE:** The **Certificate Management** button is displayed only when the optional hard disk is installed and is set to On for encryption.

6 Select the category from the **Category** list.

7 Select the purpose of use from the **Certificate Purpose** list.

Click **Display the List** to display the **Certificate List** page.

 **NOTE:** If the list includes more than 20 certificates, click **Next** to display the next page.

8 Select the certificate to be exported.

9 Click **Certificate Details** to display the **Certificate Details** page.

10 To export the selected certificate, click **Export This Certificate**.


## Setting the Features

You can set various security features using digital certificates.

See the following for details:

- "Setting the Certificate in the IPsec Digital Signature Mode"
- "Setting the SSL-use Server Certificate (HTTP/IPP)"
- "Setting LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication"
- "Setting Server Certificate Verification for LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication"
- "Setting Client Certificate for LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication"
- "Setting for Wireless LAN WPA-Enterprise (EAP-TLS)"
- "Setting for Wireless LAN WPA-Enterprise (PEAPV0-MS-CHAPV2, EAP-TTLS PAP, EAP-TTLS CHAP)"
- "Setting Client Certificate for IEEE 802.1x (EAP-TLS)"

### Setting the Certificate in the IPsec Digital Signature Mode

 **NOTE:** To manage digital certificates, you must first set encryption of the optional hard disk to On, and then set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage Certificates."

1 Import the certificate to be used with IPsec. For more information, see "Importing a Digital Certificate."

2 Set the certificate to be used with IPsec. For more information, see "Setting a Digital Certificate."

3 Confirm whether the certificate is set correctly in IPsec. For more information, see "Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate."

4 Select **Print Server Settings** from the left side of the page.

5 Click the **Security** tab.

6 Select **IPsec**.

7 Select the **Enable** check box for **Protocol**.


8 Select **Digital Signature** from the **IKE** list.

9 Set each item, as necessary.

10 Click **Apply New Settings**.

11 After restarting the printer, IPsec communication using digital signatures is enabled. You can execute IPsec communication (Digital Signature Mode) between the printer and the network device (such as PC) on which the certificate and IPsec are set identically as on this device.

## Setting the SSL-use Server Certificate (HTTP/IPP)

 **NOTE:** To manage digital certificates, you must first set encryption of the optional hard disk to On, and then set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage Certificates."

- 1 Import the certificate to be used with the SSL-use server. For more information, see "Importing a Digital Certificate."
- 2 Set the certificate to be used with the SSL-use server. For more information, see "Setting a Digital Certificate."
- 3 Confirm whether the certificate is set correctly. For more information, see "Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate."


 **NOTE:** Confirm whether the newly set certificate, not the self-signed certificate, is associated.

- 4 After restarting the printer, the certificate set as described above is used as the server certificate when executing communication with HTTP/IPP-SSL/TLS.


## Setting LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication

 **NOTE:** This setting is available only when the optional hard disk is installed and is set to On for encryption.

- 1 Select **Print Server Settings** from the left side of the page.
- 2 Click the **Security** tab.
- 3 Select **SSL/TLS**.
- 4 Select the **Enable** check box for **LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication**.
- 5 Click **Apply New Settings**.
- 6 After restarting the printer, **LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication** is enabled.


 **NOTE:** When executing the certificate validity of the server and the presentation of the client certificate, see "Setting Server Certificate Verification for LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication" and "Setting Client Certificate for LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication."

## Setting Server Certificate Verification for LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication


 **NOTE:** This setting is available only when the optional hard disk is installed and is set to On for encryption.

 **NOTE:** This feature is enabled only when **Enable** is set for **LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication**.


- 1 Import the root certificate (including intermediate certificate) for the LDAP server certificate. For more information, see "Importing a Digital Certificate."

 **NOTE:** In the verification of a certificate of the connected server, to automatically search for an imported certificate and verify the path, the certificate does not need to be associated.

- 2 Confirm whether the root certificate is correctly imported to the LDAP server. For more information, see "Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate."
- 3 Select **Print Server Settings**.
- 4 Click the **Security** tab.
- 5 Select **SSL/TLS**.
- 6 Select the **Enable** check box for **Verify Remote Server Certificate**.
- 7 Click **Apply New Settings**.
- 8 After restarting the printer, the certificate presented by the LDAP server is verified when LDAP-SSL/TLS communication starts with the LDAP server.

 **NOTE:** When the result of verification is NG, communication is not established and an error results.


## Setting Client Certificate for LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication


 **NOTE:** To manage digital certificates, you must first set encryption of the optional hard disk to On, and then set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage Certificates."


 **NOTE:** This feature is enabled only when **Enable** is set for **LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication**.


- 1 Import a certificate to be used with SSL Client. For more information, see "Importing a Digital Certificate."
- 2 Set a certificate to be used with SSL Client. For more information, see "Setting a Digital Certificate."
- 3 Confirm whether the certificate is set correctly. For more information, see "Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate."
- 4 After restarting the printer, the LDAP client certificate is presented when LDAP-SSL/TLS communication with the LDAP server starts. When the LDAP server is set to require a client certificate, the client certificate provided by the printer is verified by the LDAP server.

## Setting for Wireless LAN WPA-Enterprise (EAP-TLS)



 **NOTE:** To manage digital certificates, you must first set encryption of the optional hard disk to On, and then set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage Certificates."

 **NOTE:** WPA-Enterprise is available only when infrastructure is selected as the network type.





 **NOTE:** Be sure to import the certificate with Internet Explorer.



 **NOTE:** After importing a PKCS#12 format certificate, the secret key is not exported even if you execute exporting.

- 1 Import the certificate to be used with Wireless LAN (server or root certificate). For details, see "Importing a Digital Certificate."
- 2 Set the digital certificate for wireless LAN (server or root certificate).
  - a Launch Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.
  - b Select **Print Server Settings**.
  - c Click the **Security** tab.
  - d Select **SSL/TLS**.
  - e Click **Certificate Management** to display the **Certificate Management** page.
  - f Select **Trusted Certificate Authorities** within **Category**.
  - g Select the **Wireless LAN (Server)** of use from the **Certificate Purpose** list.
  - h From **Certificate Order**, select how the certificates are sorted in **Certificate List**. This setting is not necessary if you do not need to specify the order for the certificates.
  - i Click **Display the List** to display the **Certificate List** page.
  - j Select the certificate to associate. At this time, confirm that **Validity** of the certificate selected is set to **Valid**.
  - k Click **Certificate Details** to display the **Certificate Details** page.
  - l Confirm the content, and click **Use This Certificate** at the upper-right corner.
- 3 Confirm whether the certificate is set correctly. For details, see "Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate."
- 4 Import the certificate to be used with Wireless LAN (client or client certificate). For details, see "Importing a Digital Certificate."
- 5 Set the digital certificate for wireless LAN (client or client certificate).
  - a Launch Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.
  - b Select **Print Server Settings**.
  - c Click the **Security** tab.


- d Select **SSL/TLS**.
  - e Click **Certificate Management** to display the **Certificate Management** page.
  - f Select **Local Device** within **Category**.
  - g Select the **Wireless LAN (Server)** of use from the **Certificate Purpose** list.
  - h From **Certificate Order**, select how the certificates are sorted in **Certificate List**. This setting is not necessary if you do not need to specify the order for the certificates.
  - i Select the certificate to associate. At this time, confirm that **Validity** of the certificate selected is set to **Valid**.
  - j Click **Certificate Details** to display the **Certificate Details** page.
  - k Confirm the content, and click **Use This Certificate** at the upper-right corner.
- 6** Confirm whether the certificate is set correctly. For details, see "Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate."
- 7** Set **WPA-Enterprise** for **EAP-TLS**.
- a Launch **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.
  - b Click the **Print Server Settings** tab.
  - c Select **Wireless LAN**.
    -  **NOTE:** This setting is available only when the optional wireless adapter is installed.
  - d Select either of the following from the **Encryption** list of **Secure Settings**.
    - **WPA-Enterprise-AES/WPA2-Enterprise-AES**
    - **WPA-Enterprise-TKIP**
    -  **NOTE:** **WPA-Enterprise-AES/WPA2-Enterprise-AES** or **WPA-Enterprise-TKIP** becomes available only when the following steps are set correctly.
      - **Importing a Digital Certificate**
      - **Setting a Digital Certificate**
      - **Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate**
  - e Set **EAP-Identity** of **WPA-Enterprise**.
  - f Select **EAP-TLS** from the **Authentication Method** list of **WPA-Enterprise**.
  - g Click **Apply New Settings**.


### Setting for Wireless LAN WPA-Enterprise (PEAPV0-MS-CHAPV2, EAP-TTLS PAP, EAP-TTLS CHAP)

-  **NOTE:** To manage digital certificates, you must first set encryption of the optional hard disk to **On**, and then set up **HTTPS** communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage Certificates."
  -  **NOTE:** **WPA-Enterprise** is available only when **infrastructure** is selected as the network type.
  -  **NOTE:** Be sure to import the certificate with **Internet Explorer**.
  -  **NOTE:** After importing a **PKCS#12** format certificate, the secret key is not exported even if you execute exporting.
- 1** Import the certificate to be used with **Wireless LAN** (server or root certificate). For details, see "Importing a Digital Certificate."
  - 2** Set the digital certificate for **wireless LAN** (server or root certificate).
    - a Launch **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.
    - b Select **Print Server Settings**.
    - c Click the **Security** tab.
    - d Select **SSL/TLS**.
    - e Click **Certificate Management** to display the **Certificate Management** page.

- f Select **Trusted Certificate Authorities** within **Category**.
  - g Select the purpose of use from the **Certificate Purpose** list.
  - h Click **Display the List** to display the **Certificate List** page.
  - i Select the certificate to associate. At this time, confirm that **Validity** of the certificate selected is set to **Valid**.
  - j Click **Certificate Details** to display the **Certificate Details** page.
  - k Confirm the content, and click **Use This Certificate** at the upper-right corner.
- 3 Confirm whether the certificate is set correctly.
- a Launch **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.
  - b Select **Print Server Settings**.
  - c Click the **Security** tab.
  - d Select **SSL/TLS**.
  - e Click **Certificate Management** to display the **Certificate Management** page.
  - f Select the category from the **Category** list.
  - g Select the **Wireless LAN (Server)** of use from the **Certificate Purpose** list.
  - h From **Certificate Order**, select how the certificates are sorted in **Certificate List**. This setting is not necessary if you do not need to specify the order for the certificates.
  - i Click **Display the List** to display the **Certificate List** page.
  - j The certificate displayed with an asterisk as **"\*Valid"** in the **Validity** column is the certificate associated with the use purpose and actually used.
- 4 Set **WPA-Enterprise** for **PEAPV0-MS-CHAPV2**, **EAP-TTLS PAP**, or **EAP-TTLS CHAP**.
- a Launch **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.
  - b Click the **Print Server Settings** tab.
  - c Select **Wireless LAN**.
    -  **NOTE:** This setting is available only when the optional wireless adapter is installed.
  - d Select either of the following from the **Encryption** list of **Secure Settings**.
    - **WPA-Enterprise-AES/WPA2-Enterprise-AES**
    - **WPA-Enterprise-TKIP**
    -  **NOTE:** **WPA-Enterprise-AES/WPA2-Enterprise-AES** or **WPA-Enterprise-TKIP** becomes available only when the following steps are set correctly.
      - **Importing a Digital Certificate**
      - **Setting a Digital Certificate**
      - **Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate**
  - e Set **EAP-Identity**, **Login Name**, and **Password** of **WPA-Enterprise**.
  - f Select either of the following from the **Authentication Method** list of **WPA-Enterprise**:
    - **PEAPV0 MS-CHAPV2**
    - **EAP-TTLS PAP**
    - **EAP-TTLS CHAP**
  - g Click **Apply New Settings**.

## Setting Client Certificate for IEEE 802.1x (EAP-TLS)

 **NOTE:** To manage digital certificates, you must first set encryption of the optional hard disk to On, and then set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage Certificates."

 **NOTE:** This feature is enabled only when Enable is set for IEEE 802.1x (EAP-TLS).

- 1 Import a certificate to be used with SSL Client. For more information, see "Importing a Digital Certificate."
- 2 Set a certificate to be used with SSL Client. For more information, see "Setting a Digital Certificate."
- 3 Confirm whether the certificate is set correctly. For more information, see "Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate."
- 4 After restarting the printer, the IEEE 802.1x (EAP-TLS) certificate is presented when IEEE 802.1x communication with the RADIUS server starts. When the RADIUS server is set to require a client certificate, the client certificate provided by the printer is verified by the RADIUS server.



# Understanding Fonts

## Typefaces and Fonts

A font is a set of characters and symbols created with a distinct design. The distinct design is called a *typeface*. The typefaces you select add personality to a document. Well-chosen typefaces make a document easier to read.

The printer has numerous resident fonts in PCL 5/PCL 6 and PostScript 3. See "Resident Fonts" for a listing of all resident fonts.

### Weight and Style

Typefaces are often available in different weights and styles. These variations modify the original typeface so you can, for example, emphasize important words in text or highlight book titles. The different weights and styles are designed to complement the original typeface.

*Weight* refers to the thickness of the lines that form the characters. Thicker lines result in darker characters. Some words commonly used to describe the weight of a typeface are bold, medium, light, black, and heavy.

*Style* refers to other typeface modifications, such as tilt or character width. Italic and oblique are styles where the characters are tilted. Narrow, condensed, and extended are three common styles that modify the character widths.

Some fonts combine several weight and style modifications; for example, Helvetica BdOb. A group of several weight and style variations of a single typeface is called a *typeface family*. Most typeface families have four variations: regular, italic (oblique), bold, and bold italic (bold oblique). Some families have more variations, as the following illustration for the Helvetica typeface family shows:


Helvetica	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZabcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz1234567890
Helvetica Oblique	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZabcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz1234567890
Helvetica Bold	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZabcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz1234567890
Helvetica Bold Oblique	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZabcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz1234567890
Helvetica Narrow	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZabcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz1234567890
Helvetica Narrow Oblique	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZabcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz1234567890
Helvetica Narrow Bold	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZabcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz1234567890
Helvetica Narrow Bold Oblique	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZabcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz1234567890

### Pitch and Point Size

The size of a font is specified as either a pitch or point size, depending on whether the font is fixed space or proportional.

In *fixed space* fonts, each character has the same width. *Pitch* is used to specify the size of fixed space fonts. It is a measure of the number of characters that will print in one horizontal inch of type. For example, all 10-pitch fonts print 10 characters per inch (cpi) and all 12-pitch fonts print 12 cpi:

Courier	10 Pitch	1234567890
<b>Courier-Bold</b>	<b>10 Pitch</b>	<b>1234567890</b>
Courier	12 Pitch	123456789012
<b>Courier-Bold</b>	<b>12 Pitch</b>	<b>123456789012</b>



In *proportional* (or *typographic*) fonts, every character can have a different width. Since proportional fonts have characters with different widths, the font size is specified in point size, not pitch. *Point size* refers to the height of the characters in the font. A *point* is defined as 1/72 inch. The characters in a font printed at 24 point will be twice as large as the characters in the same font printed at 12 point.

The following illustration shows samples of a font printed in different point sizes:

48 point 36 point

24 point 18 point 12 point 10 point

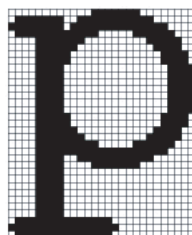
The point size of a font is defined as the distance from the top of the tallest character in the font to the bottom of the lowest character in the font. Due to the definition of point size, different fonts printed at the same point size may appear quite different in size. This is because there are other font parameters that affect how the font looks. However, the point size of a font is an excellent specification of the relative size of a font. The following examples illustrate two very different proportional fonts at 14 point:

ITC Avant Garde  
abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz  
ITC Zapf Chancery  
abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz

## Bitmapped and Scalable Fonts

The printer uses both bitmapped and scalable fonts.

*Bitmapped* fonts are stored in print memory as predefined patterns of bits that represent a typeface at a specific size, style, and resolution. The following illustration shows an example of a character from a bitmapped font.



Bitmapped fonts are available in different type styles and point sizes as downloadable fonts.

*Scalable* fonts (also called *outline* fonts) are stored as computer programs that define the outlines of the characters in the font. Each time you print characters from a scalable font, the printer creates a bitmap of the characters at the point size you choose and saves it temporarily in print memory.

P

**P P P P**

These temporary bitmapped fonts are deleted when you turn off or reset the printer. Scalable fonts provide the flexibility of printing in many different point sizes.

Your printer uses different scalable font formats for downloading fonts to the printer. PCL 5/PCL 6 uses Intellifont and TrueType scalable fonts. PostScript 3 uses Type 1 and TrueType scalable fonts. There are thousands of different scalable fonts available in these different font formats from numerous font suppliers.

If you plan to use many downloadable bitmapped or scalable fonts or if you plan to use many different sizes of scalable fonts, you may need to purchase additional memory for your printer.

## Resident Fonts

Your printer is equipped with resident fonts stored permanently in print memory. Different fonts are available in PCL 5/PCL 6 and PostScript 3. Some of the most popular typefaces, like Courier and TimesNew (PCL 5/PCL 6)/Times New Roman (PostScript 3), are available for all printer languages.

The following table lists all the fonts resident in your printer. See "Report / List" for instructions on how to print samples of the fonts. You can select the resident fonts from your software program. You can also select the fonts from the operator panel if you are using PCL 5/PCL 6.

Resident bitmapped and scalable fonts	
PCL 5/PCL 6	PostScript 3
CG Times	Albertus
CG Times It	Albertus Italic
CG Times Bd	Albertus Light
CG Times BdIt	
	Antique Olive Roman
Univers Md	Antique Olive Italic
Univers MdIt	Antique Olive Bold
Univers Bd	Antique Olive Compact
Univers BdIt	Apple Chancery
Univers MdCd	Arial
Univers MdCdIt	Arial Italic
Univers BdCd	Arial Bold
Univers BdCdIt	Arial Bold Italic
	ITC Avant Garde Gothic Book
AntiqueOlv	ITC Avant Garde Gothic Book Oblique
AntiqueOlv It	ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi
AntiqueOlv Bd	ITC AvantGarde Gothic Demi Oblique
	Bodoni Roman

<b>Resident bitmapped and scalable fonts</b>	
<b>PCL 5/PCL 6</b>	<b>PostScript 3</b>
CG Omega	Bodoni Italic
CG Omega It	Bodoni Bold
CG Omega Bd	Bodoni Bold Italic
CG Omega BdIt	Bodoni Poster
	Bodoni Poster Compressed
Garamond Antiqua	ITC Bookman Light
Garamond Krsv	ITC Bookman Light Italic
Garamond Hlb	ITC Bookman Demi
Garamond KrsvHlb	ITC Bookman Demi Italic
	Carta
Courier	Chicago
Courier It	Clarendon Roman
Courier Bd	Clarendon Bold
Courier BdIt	Clarendon Light
	Cooper Black
LetterGothic	Cooper Black Italic
LetterGothic It	Cooper Gothic 32BC
LetterGothic Bd	Cooper Gothic 33BC
	Coronet
Albertus Md	Courier
Albertus XBd	Courier Oblique
	Courier Bold
Clarendon Cd	Courier Bold Oblique
	Eurostile Medium
Coronet	Eurostile Bold
	Eurostile Extended No. 2
Marigold	Eurostile Bold Extended No. 2
	Geneva
Arial	Gill Sans
Arial It	Gill Sans Italic
Arial Bd	Gill Sans Bold
Arial BdIt	Gill Sans Bold Italic
	Gill Sans Light
TimesNew	Gill Sans Light Italic
TimesNew It	Gill Sans Extra Bold
TimesNew Bd	Gill Sans Condensed
TimesNew BdIt	Gill Sans Condensed Bold
	Goudy Oldstyle
Symbol	Goudy Oldstyle Italic
	Goudy Bold

<b>Resident bitmapped and scalable fonts</b>	
<b>PCL 5/PCL 6</b>	<b>PostScript 3</b>
Wingdings	Goudy Bold Italic
	Goudy Extra Bold
Line Printer	Helvetica
	Helvetica Oblique
Times Roman	Helvetica Bold
Times It	Helvetica Bold Oblique
Times Bd	Helvetica Narrow
Times BdIt	Helvetica Narrow Oblique
	Helvetica Narrow Bold
Helvetica	Helvetica Narrow Bold Oblique
Helvetica Ob	Helvetica Condensed
Helvetica Bd	Helvetica Condensed Oblique
Helvetica BdOb	Helvetica Condensed Bold
	Helvetica Condensed Bold Oblique
CourierPS	Hoefler Text
CourierPS Ob	Hoefler Text Italic
CourierPS Bd	Hoefler Text Black
CourierPS BdOb	Hoefler Text Black Italic
	Hoefler Ornaments
SymbolPS	Joanna
	Joanna Italic
Palatino Roman	Joanna Bold
Palatino It	Joanna Bold Italic
Palatino Bd	Letter Gothic
Palatino BdIt	Letter Gothic Slanted
	Letter Gothic Bold
ITCBookman Lt	Letter Gothic Bold Slanted
ITCBookman LtIt	ITC Lubalin Graph Book
ITCBookmanDm	ITC Lubalin Graph Book Oblique
ITCBookmanDm It	ITC Lubalin Graph Demi
	ITC Lubalin Graph Demi Oblique
HelveticaNr	Marigold
HelveticaNr Ob	Monaco
HelveticaNr Bd	ITC Mona Lisa Recut
HelveticaNr BdOb	New Century Schoolbook Roman
	New Century Schoolbook Italic
N C Schbk Roman	New Century Schoolbook Bold
N C Schbk It	New Century Schoolbook Bold Italic
N C Schbk Bd	NewYork
N C Schbk BdIt	Optima Roman

<b>Resident bitmapped and scalable fonts</b>	
<b>PCL 5/PCL 6</b>	<b>PostScript 3</b>
	Optima Italic
ITC A G Go Bk	Optima Bold
ITC A G Go BkOb	Optima Bold Italic
ITC A G Go Dm	Oxford
ITC A G Go DmOb	Palatino Roman
	Palatino Italic
ZapfC MdlT	Palatino Bold
	Palatino Bold Italic
ZapfDingbats	Stempel Garamond Roman
	Stempel Garamond Italic
	Stempel Garamond Bold
	Stempel Garamond Bold Italic
	Symbol
	Tekton Regular
	Times Roman
	Times Italic
	Times Bold
	Times Bold Italic
	Times New Roman
	Times New Roman Italic
	Times New Roman Bold
	Times New Roman Bold Italic
	Univers 45 Light
	Univers 45 Light Oblique
	Univers 55
	Univers 55 Oblique
	Univers 65 Bold
	Univers 65 Bold Oblique
	Univers 57 Condensed
	Univers 57 Condensed Oblique
	Univers 67 Condensed Bold
	Univers 67 Condensed Bold Oblique
	Univers 53 Extended
	Univers 53 Extended Oblique
	Univers 63 Extended Bold
	Univers 63 Extended Bold Oblique
	Wingdings
	ITC Zapf Chancery Medium Italic
	ITC Zapf Dingbats

## Symbol Sets

A symbol set is the collection of alphabetic and numeric characters, punctuation, and special characters available in the font you select. Symbol sets support the requirements for different languages or specific applications, such as math symbols used for scientific text.

In PCL 5/PCL 6, a symbol set also defines which character will print for each key on the keyboard (or more specifically, for each *code point*). Some applications require different characters at some code points. To support multiple applications and languages, your printer has 36 symbol sets for the resident PCL 5/PCL 6 fonts.

### Symbol Sets for PCL 5/PCL 6

Not all font names support all of the symbol sets listed.


Roman 8 (Default)	ISO 8859-1 Latin 1	ISO 8859-2 Latin 2
ISO 8859-9 Latin 5	ISO 8859-10 Latin 6	PC-8
PC-8 DN	PC-775 Baltic	PC-850 Multilingual
PC-852 Latin 2	PC-1004 OS/2	PC Turkish
Windows 3.1 Latin 1	Windows 3.1 Latin 2	Windows 3.1 Latin 5
DeskTop	PS Text	MC Text
Microsoft Publishing	Math 8	PS Math
Pi Font	Legal	ISO 4 United Kingdom
ISO 6 ASCII	ISO 11 Swedish:names	ISO 15 Italian
ISO 17 Spanish	ISO 21 German	ISO 60 Norwegian v1
ISO 69 French	Windows 3.0 Latin 1	Windows Baltic
Symbol	Wingdings	ITC ZapfDingbats MS




## Understanding Printer Messages

The touch panel displays error messages describing the current state of the printer and indicates possible printer problems you must resolve. This chapter provides a list of error codes or error messages, and informs you what you can do to clear error messages. When you contact customer support about an error, have the error codes and messages ready.

 **CAUTION:** When an error occurs, the print data remaining on the printer and the information accumulated in the memory of the printer may be corrupted.

 **NOTE:** An error code is listed in an error message.

 **NOTE:** For error codes that are not listed in this chapter, refer to instructions in each error messages.

### Error Codes

Error-Code	What you can do
004-310	Turn off the printer. Make sure that the tray is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
005-110	Open the DADF cover and remove the jammed documents.
005-121	
005-124	Open the DADF cover and remove all documents.
009-340	Turn off the printer. Clean the CTD sensor with a clean dry cotton swab, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated. For more information about cleaning the CTD sensor, see "Cleaning the CTD Sensor."
009-360	Turn off the printer. Make sure that the yellow toner cartridge is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
009-361	Turn off the printer. Make sure that the magenta toner cartridge is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
009-362	Turn off the printer. Make sure that the cyan toner cartridge is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
009-363	Turn off the printer. Make sure that the black toner cartridge is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
009-367	Turn off the printer. Make sure that the yellow toner cartridge is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
009-368	Turn off the printer. Make sure that the magenta toner cartridge is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
009-369	Turn off the printer. Make sure that the cyan toner cartridge is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
009-370	Turn off the printer. Make sure that the black toner cartridge is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."

<b>Error-Code</b>	<b>What you can do</b>
010-317	Turn off the printer, wait for 30 minutes to let the fusing unit cool, and then make sure that the fusing unit is fully installed. For more information about installing the fusing unit, see "Replacing the Fusing Unit."
010-351	Turn off the printer. Remove the used fusing unit, and install a new fusing unit. For more information about replacing the fusing unit, see "Replacing the Fusing Unit."
010-377	Turn off the printer. Confirm that the fusing unit is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated. For more information about installing the fusing unit, see "Replacing the Fusing Unit."
016-316	Turn off the printer. Remove the optional 512MB memory module from the slot, and then reattach it firmly. Turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
016-318	Remove the unsupported memory module. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
016-338	Turn off the printer, and turn it on again. If the error message remains on the touch panel, confirm that the wireless adapter is securely inserted. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
016-404	Contact your system administrator. For more information about digital certificate problems, see "Digital Certificate Problem."
016-405	Security setting mismatch. Initialize the security setting, and then restart the printer. Contact your system administrator for the security resetting.
016-503	Unable to resolve the e-mail SMTP server hostname. Select <b>Close</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if SMTP server and DNS server are set correctly.
016-504	Unable to resolve the e-mail POP3 server hostname. Select <b>Close</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if user name and password for POP3 server and DNS server are set correctly.
016-505	E-mail POP3 server login error. Select <b>Close</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if user name and password used for POP3 server are set correctly.
016-506	SMTP server is not configured. Select <b>Close</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if SMTP server or POP server is set.
016-507	E-mail SMTP server login error. Select <b>Close</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if user name and password used for SMTP server are set correctly.
016-520	IPsec certificate error. (Certificate error of the printer.) The certificate of the printer is invalid. Contact your system administrator. Reset the certificate from other connectable clients with <b>Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool</b> . If no device can be connected, disconnect Ethernet cable, turn off the IPsec, and then reset the certificate with <b>Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool</b> .
016-521	IPsec certificate error. (Remote device certification verification error.) The certificate of the destination client is invalid. Contact your system administrator. Confirm the certificate of the destination client and reset.
016-522	LDAP certificate error. (No client certificate exists.) The SSL client certificate is requested by the LDAP server. Set the SSL client certificate to the device. Contact your system administrator.
016-523	LDAP certificate error. (Server certificate verification error.) The SSL certificate of the LDAP server is not trusted by the device. Register the root certificate of the SSL certificate of the LDAP server with the device.
016-524	LDAP certificate error. (No server certificate exists.) Change the SSL certificate of the LDAP server to a valid SSL certificate.
016-527	LDAP certificate error. (SSL authentication internal error.) The error has occurred inside the program. Contact your system administrator.
016-534	The LDAP server information setting for ColorTrack PRO is invalid. Check the LDAP server setting of the printer.
016-541	A wireless certificate (server or client) cannot be correctly referenced while using Wireless LAN WPA-Enterprise or WPA2-Enterprise. Ask your system administrator to connect the printer with a wired network, initialize the wireless settings, import the wireless certificate, and set WPA-Enterprise or WPA2-Enterprise again.

<b>Error-Code</b>	<b>What you can do</b>
016-542	A server certificate error has occurred when acquiring the certificate with the operation of WPA-Enterprise or WPA2-Enterprise. This is a problem in the server certificate, such as the validity period has expired for the server certificate being used with the Radius server. Ask your system administrator to confirm the server certificate being used with the Radius server.
016-543	A wireless certificate (server or client) corruption error has occurred while using the Wireless LAN WPA-Enterprise or WPA2-Enterprise. Ask your system administrator to connect the printer with a wired network, initialize the wireless settings, import the wireless certificate, and set WPA-Enterprise or WPA2-Enterprise again.
016-720	Error relating to PDL emulation problems has occurred. Change the <b>Print Mode</b> setting in the <b>Graphics</b> tab of the printer driver. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
016-756	Printing in the prohibited time. Contact your system administrator.
016-757	The account is not registered. Contact your system administrator.
016-758	The function cannot be used. Contact your system administrator.
016-759	Printable page limit is exceeded. Contact your system administrator.
016-764	An error occurs when the printer connected to the SMTP server. Select <b>C</b> lose, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check the SMTP server settings or contact the SMTP server administrator.
016-765	The capacity of the SMTP server is not enough. Select <b>C</b> lose, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Contact the SMTP server administrator.
016-766	The e-mail exceeds the SMTP server size restriction. Select <b>C</b> lose, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Contact the SMTP server administrator.
016-767	The e-mail address of the recipient is incorrect. Select <b>C</b> lose, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check e-mail address, and try scanning again.
016-768	The e-mail address of the sender is incorrect. Select <b>C</b> lose, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check e-mail address, and try scanning again.
016-786	A timeout error occurs when sending or receiving scanned data. Select <b>C</b> lose, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the Ethernet cable is connected properly. If there is no problem with the Ethernet cable, contact server administrator.
016-790	Network connection error. (IP address is not determined.) Select <b>C</b> lose, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the Ethernet cable is connected properly. If there is no problem with the Ethernet cable, contact server administrator.
016-799	Select <b>C</b> lose to clear the message and cancel the current print job. Confirm the configuration of the printer on the printer driver.
016-930	The device is not supported. Remove it from the front USB port.
016-931	The USB hub is not supported. Remove it from the front USB port.
016-985	Select <b>C</b> lose, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Retry scanning by lowering the resolution setting or changing the file format of the scanned image.
016-986	
024-920	Remove the paper from the output tray.
024-927	Check the toner gauge on the touch panel for an empty toner cartridge. Remove the empty toner cartridge, and install a new cartridge. For more information about replacing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
024-965	Confirm that the size and type specified in the tray settings matches the size and type of paper loaded in the tray.
024-966	
024-969	
026-721	Check your USB memory: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the file size or the number of files exceeds the limit of your USB memory.</li> <li>• If your USB memory is write-protected.</li> </ul>

<b>Error-Code</b>	<b>What you can do</b>
027-446	Change the IPv6 address to avoid duplication. Turn off the printer, and turn it on again.
027-452	Change the IPv4 address to avoid duplication. Turn off the printer, and turn it on again.
031-521	SMB server login error. Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Confirm login-able computer with your system administrator.
031-522	SMB server login error. Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if login name (domain name and user name) and password are correct.
031-523	Invalid SMB share name. Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check the share name you specified.
031-524	Exceeded the SMB server user account limit. Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check the number of users who use the server at the same time is not exceeding the upper limit.
031-525	SMB destination client permission error. Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the specified user can read and write file at the storage location.
031-526	Unable to resolve the SMB server hostname. Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check DNS connection, or check if forwarding destination server is registered with DNS.
031-527	Unable to resolve the SMB server hostname. Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Set DNS address, or set forwarding destination server address as IP address.
031-528	<p>Unable to connect to the SMB server. Select <b>C</b>l<b>o</b>s<b>e</b>, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the printer can communicate via network with the forwarding destination SMB server. For example, check the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Connection of an Ethernet cable</li> <li>• TCP/IP setting</li> <li>• Communication with Port 137 (UDP), 138 (UDP), and 139 (TCP).</li> </ul> <p>For communication beyond the subnet, contact your system administrator.</p>
031-529	SMB server login error. (Invalid password.) Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if password is correct.
031-530	<p>The SMB share folder was not found on the specified SMB server. Select <b>C</b>l<b>o</b>s<b>e</b>, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check if the storage location is correct.</li> <li>• Check if the file name you specified can be used when creating a file on the SMB server.</li> <li>• Have your system administrator check the DFS setting, and directly specify the SMB server, share name, and storage location according to the checked settings.</li> </ul>
031-531	Unable to get a file or folder name on the SMB server. Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check access right of the folder you specified.
031-532	SMB scan file or folder name limit exceeded. Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Change file name and forwarding destination folder, or move or delete file in forwarding destination folder.
031-533	<p>Unable to write a file in the SMB server. Select <b>C</b>l<b>o</b>s<b>e</b>, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the file name you specified is not used by other users.</li> <li>• If file or folder that has the same name as the one you specified already exists.</li> </ul>
031-534	<p>Unable to create a folder on the SMB server. Select <b>C</b>l<b>o</b>s<b>e</b>, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the file name you specified is not used by other users.</li> <li>• If file or folder that has the same name as the one you specified already exists.</li> </ul>

<b>Error-Code</b>	<b>What you can do</b>
031-535	Unable to delete a file on the SMB server. Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if other user is not operating file in storage location you specified.
031-536	Unable to delete a folder on the SMB server. Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if other user is not operating file in storage location you specified.
031-537	SMB server capacity exceeded. Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if storage location has free space.
031-539	The specified SMB server is invalid. Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if server name is correct.
031-540	The specified domain name is invalid. Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if domain name is correct.
031-541	Invalid user name specified for SMB server. Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if login name (user name) is correct.
031-542	TCP/IP not initialized. Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Wait for a while and try the same operation again. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
031-543	SMB server login error. Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check login permitted time with your system administrator.
031-544	SMB server login error. (Expired password.) Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check the password valid period with your system administrator.
031-545	SMB server login error. (Password change required.) Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check necessity of password change with your system administrator.
031-546	SMB server login error. (Invalid user is specified.) Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Contact your system administrator for the destination server settings.
031-547	SMB server login error. (The specified user is restricted from accessing the SMB server.) Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Contact your system administrator for the destination server settings.
031-548	SMB server login error. (Logon time of SMB destination expired.) Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Contact your system administrator for the destination server settings.
031-549	SMB server login error. Specified user is restricted, and a null password is prohibited. Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. On server security settings, check access permission of null password user.
031-550	Append command not supported by SMB server. Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the printer has access rights to append data to the SMB server. Check if server supports SMB append command.
031-551	Rename command not supported by SMB server. Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the printer has access rights to rename data on the SMB server. Check if server supports SMB append command.
031-552	Job canceled. Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Change the file name that already exists on FTP server.
031-574	Unable to resolve the FTP server hostname. Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check DNS connection, or check if name of forwarding destination server is registered with DNS.
031-575	Unable to resolve the FTP server hostname. Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Set DNS address, or set forwarding destination server address as IP address.
031-576	Unable to connect to the FTP server. Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the printer communicates with forwarding destination FTP server. For example, check connection of Ethernet cable and if the IP address of the server is correct.
031-578	FTP server login error. Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if login name (user name) and password are correct.

<b>Error-Code</b>	<b>What you can do</b>
031-579	Invalid FTP subdirectory path. Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if storage location is correct.
031-580	Failed to obtain a file or folder name of the FTP server. Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check server access right.
031-581	FTP scan file or folder name limit exceeded. Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Change file name and forwarding destination folder, or move or delete file in forwarding destination folder.
031-582	Unable to write a scan file to the FTP server location. Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the file name you specified can be created in storage location. Check if storage location has free space.
031-584	Unable to create a scan folder on the FTP server. Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the folder name you specified can be created in storage location. Check if the folder that has the same name as the one you specified already exists.
031-585	Unable to delete a file on the FTP server. (DEL command failure.) Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check server access rights.
031-587	Unable to delete a folder on the FTP server. (RMD command failure.) Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check server access rights.
031-588	Unable to write a file to the FTP server location. Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if storage location has free space.
031-590	Job canceled. Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Change the file name that already exists on FTP server.
031-594	FTP transfer type error. (TYPE command failure.) Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Try the same operation again. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
031-595	FTP data port error. (PORT command failure.) Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Try the same operation again. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
031-598	FTP append data error. (APPE command failure.) Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the printer has access rights to append data to the FTP server. Check if server supports FTP append command.
031-599	FTP rename file error. (RNFR command failure.) Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the printer has access rights to rename data on the FTP server. Check if server supports FTP rename command.
033-513	Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Print the received fax, or wait for a while until sending a fax is completed.</li> <li>• Print the fax job stored using the Secure Receive feature.</li> </ul> For more information about the Secure Receive feature, see "Using the Secure Receiving Mode."
033-527	Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Wait for a while until the printer is not busy, and try again.
033-528	Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check the available time period for the FAX, and try again.
033-762	Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. The printer rejects faxes sent from unwanted numbers. For more information, see "Junk Fax Setup."
033-788	Select <b>C</b> l <b>o</b> s <b>e</b> , or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Remove the received fax, or wait for a while until sending a fax is completed.</li> <li>• Print the fax job stored using the Secure Receive feature.</li> </ul> For more information about the Secure Receive feature, see "Using the Secure Receiving Mode."

<b>Error-Code</b>	<b>What you can do</b>
034-515	Select <b>C</b> lose, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Try the same operation.</li> <li>• Check the printer or remote machine if the memory is full.</li> </ul>
034-791	Select <b>C</b> lose, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the telephone line cord is connected properly. If the line connection is correct, check the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If Tone/Pulse setting is correct. For more information about Tone/Pulse setting, see "Tone / Pulse."</li> </ul> If Tone/Pulse setting is correct, check the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the remote machine can receive a fax.</li> </ul>
035-701	Select <b>C</b> lose, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Status of the remote machine</li> <li>• Tone/Pulse setting</li> </ul> For more information about Tone/Pulse setting, see "Tone / Pulse."
035-708	Select <b>C</b> lose, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Try the same operation.</li> <li>• Reduce the modem speed.</li> </ul> For more information about modem speed, see "Modem Speed."
035-717	Select <b>C</b> lose, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Reduce the modem speed. For more information about modem speed, see "Modem Speed."
035-718	Select <b>C</b> lose, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check the status of the remote machine.
035-720	Select <b>C</b> lose, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check the features of the remote machine.
035-781	Select <b>C</b> lose, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the remote machine is busy.
042-700	Wait for a while until the printer cools down. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
075-910	Make sure that the multipurpose feeder (MPF) is fully installed.
077-300	Close the front cover.
077-301	Close the right side cover.
077-302	Close the rear cover.
091-911	Remove the used waste toner box, and install a new toner box. For more information about replacing the waste toner box, see "Replacing the Waste Toner Box."
091-914	Reinsert the black drum cartridge. If the message remains, replace the cartridge. For more information about reinserting the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
091-917	Reinsert the yellow drum cartridge. If the message remains, replace the cartridge. For more information about reinserting the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
091-918	Reinsert the magenta drum cartridge. If the message remains, replace the cartridge. For more information about reinserting the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
091-919	Reinsert the cyan drum cartridge. If the message remains, replace the cartridge. For more information about reinserting the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
091-921	Make sure that the black drum cartridge is fully installed. For more information about installing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
091-922	Make sure that the yellow drum cartridge is fully installed. For more information about installing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
091-923	Make sure that the magenta drum cartridge is fully installed. For more information about installing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."

<b>Error-Code</b>	<b>What you can do</b>
091-924	Make sure that the cyan drum cartridge is fully installed. For more information about installing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
091-931	Remove the used black drum cartridge, and install a new cartridge. For more information about replacing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
091-932	Remove the used yellow drum cartridge, and install a new cartridge. For more information about replacing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
091-933	Remove the used magenta drum cartridge, and install a new cartridge. For more information about replacing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
091-934	Remove the used cyan drum cartridge, and install a new cartridge. For more information about replacing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
091-942	Reinsert the black drum cartridge. If the message remains, replace the cartridge. For more information about replacing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
091-943	Reinsert the yellow drum cartridge. If the message remains, replace the cartridge. For more information about replacing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
091-944	Reinsert the magenta drum cartridge. If the message remains, replace the cartridge. For more information about replacing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
091-945	Reinsert the cyan drum cartridge. If the message remains, replace the cartridge. For more information about replacing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
091-960	Remove the unsupported yellow drum cartridge, and install a supported drum cartridge. For more information about installing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
091-961	Remove the unsupported magenta drum cartridge, and install a supported drum cartridge. For more information about installing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
091-962	Remove the unsupported cyan drum cartridge, and install a supported drum cartridge. For more information about installing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
091-963	Remove the unsupported black drum cartridge, and install a supported drum cartridge. For more information about installing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
092-651	Clean the CTD sensor with a clean dry cotton swab. For more information about cleaning the CTD sensor, see "Cleaning the CTD Sensor."
093-930	Remove the used yellow toner cartridge, and install a new cartridge. For more information about replacing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
093-931	Remove the used magenta toner cartridge, and install a new cartridge. For more information about replacing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
093-932	Remove the used cyan toner cartridge, and install a new cartridge. For more information about replacing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
093-933	Remove the used black toner cartridge, and install a new cartridge. For more information about replacing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
093-960	Remove the unsupported yellow toner cartridge, and install a supported toner cartridge. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
093-961	Remove the unsupported magenta toner cartridge, and install a supported toner cartridge. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
093-962	Remove the unsupported cyan toner cartridge, and install a supported toner cartridge. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
093-963	Remove the unsupported black toner cartridge, and install a supported toner cartridge. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
093-970	Make sure that the yellow toner cartridge is fully installed. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."

<b>Error-Code</b>	<b>What you can do</b>
093-971	Make sure that the magenta toner cartridge is fully installed. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
093-972	Make sure that the cyan toner cartridge is fully installed. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
093-973	Make sure that the black toner cartridge is fully installed. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
094-422	Remove the used transfer belt unit, and install a new transfer belt unit. For more information about replacing the transfer belt unit, see "Replacing the Transfer Belt Unit, the 2nd Belt Transfer Roller (2nd BTR), and the Retard Roller."
094-910	Make sure that the transfer belt unit is fully installed. For more information about installing the transfer belt unit, see "Replacing the Transfer Belt Unit, the 2nd Belt Transfer Roller (2nd BTR), and the Retard Roller."
094-911	Remove the used transfer belt unit, and install a new transfer belt unit. For more information about replacing the transfer belt unit, see "Replacing the Transfer Belt Unit, the 2nd Belt Transfer Roller (2nd BTR), and the Retard Roller."
116-722	Select <b>C</b> lose for the printer to recover. Check the WSD scan address and the destination computer, and then try scanning again. Contact your system administrator.
193-700	When genuine toner cartridges are installed, change the Non-Dell Toner setting to disable using the <b>Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool</b> or the <b>Tool Box</b> .

## Error Messages

<b>Message</b>	<b>Cause</b>	<b>Action</b>
Cannot access the LDAP address book. Consult your network administrator if this error persists.	The printer fails to authenticate against an authentication server.	Check the server settings. If the error persists, consult your network administrator.
	An SSL authentication error on connection to the LDAP server; an SSL authentication internal error occurs.	If the error persists, consult your network administrator.
Cannot access the LDAP address book. The LDAPS server certificate is not correct.	An SSL authentication error on connection to the LDAP server; the server certificate data is incorrect.	Check the root certificate of the LDAP server SSL certificate on the printer.
Cannot access the LDAP address book. The LDAPS SSL client certificate is not set.	An SSL authentication error on connection to the LDAP server; the LDAP server cannot acquire an SSL client certificate.	Check that an SSL client certificate is correctly imported into the printer.
Cannot access the LDAP address book. The server names of LDAPS and the SSL certificate do not match.	An SSL authentication error on connection to the LDAP server; the server certificate for the LDAP server is not yet valid or has expired.	Change to a valid LDAP server SSL certificate.
	An SSL authentication error on connection to the LDAP server; the LDAP server name does not match the certificate.	Set the LDAP server address on the printer to match the address on the LDAP server SSL certificate.
Cannot access the LDAP address book. The time settings of the printer and the Kerberos server do not match.	The printer and the Kerberos server clocks have a time difference that exceeds the Kerberos server clock skew value.	Check that the printer and the Kerberos server clocks have the correct time.

<b>Message</b>	<b>Cause</b>	<b>Action</b>
Cannot connect to server. Check the server settings.	The specified server settings such as IP address and realm/domain name are incorrect.	Make sure that the correct IP address/host name, port number, realm/domain name, and search directory root are specified in <b>IP Address / Host Name &amp; Port, Domain Name, and Search Directory Root</b> on the <b>Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool</b> . (See "Kerberos Server" and "LDAP Server.")
	The LDAP or Kerberos version on the server is not compatible with the printer.	Consult your network administrator.
	The server is down.	Check that the server is functioning normally.
Change the server settings and confirm the server connection.	The printer cannot search for destinations within the specified time.	Increase the time setting for <b>Search Time-Out</b> on the <b>Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool</b> . (See "Authentication System" and "LDAP Server.")
		Check that the printer and the server are properly connected with an Ethernet cable. If there are not any problems with the connection and the error persists, the server settings may have been changed. Consult your network administrator.
Check the authentication settings.	The login name and password for access to an authentication server are incorrect.	Make sure that the correct login name and password are specified in <b>Login Name and Password</b> on the <b>Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool</b> . (See "Kerberos Server" and "LDAP Server.")
Invalid search characters or LDAP User Mapping incorrectly configured for Configuration Web Tool.	The LDAP search filter fails to work properly as special characters are used in your search condition or on the <b>LDAP User Mapping</b> page on the <b>Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool</b> .	Remove special characters, and then search again. (See "LDAP User Mapping.")
Network connection is not ready. Try again later.	You have started searching for destinations before the IP address is set for the printer.	Wait for a while, and then search again.
No attribute or invalid name. Confirm address info. on server.	The address information on the server contain incorrect data or are insufficient to get your search request.	Check the address information registered on the server or consult your network administrator.
No Entries.	The printer cannot find any destinations that meet your search condition.	Select <b>OK</b> to return to the <b>Search Network Address Book</b> screen, and then specify a new condition to search again.
Search Directory Root incorrectly configured for Configuration Web Tool.	The directories that do not exist in the LDAP server are specified or an invalid DN syntax is specified.	Make sure that valid values are specified in <b>Search Directory Root</b> on the <b>Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool</b> . (See "LDAP Server.") Specify the origin of the search with the correct DN syntax, as shown in the following example:  dc=w2008ad,dc=addressbook,dc=net
Too many search results. Only a maximum of 50 search scan be displayed. Please refine your search if needed.	The number of search results has exceeded the limits (50 search results) the printer can display.	Select <b>Close</b> to display the search results. If you cannot find your desired destination on the result list, specify a new condition to search again.

---

<b>Message</b>	<b>Cause</b>	<b>Action</b>
Certificate Error 016-530 Job canceled. Restart the printer.	Some other error occurs regarding the LDAP server address book.	Turn off the printer, and turn it on again. If the error persists, consult your network administrator.

---



# Specifications

## Operating System Compatibility

Your Dell™ C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer is compatible with Microsoft® Windows® XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server® 2003, Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2 64-bit Edition, Windows Vista®, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2012, Mac OS X 10.3.9, 10.4.11, 10.5, 10.6, 10.7, 10.8, Red Hat® Enterprise Linux® 5/6 Desktop (x86), and SUSE® Linux Enterprise Desktop 10/11 (x86).

## Power Supply

<b>Rated voltage</b>	220 VAC - 240 VAC	110 VAC - 127 VAC
<b>Frequency</b>	50/60 Hz	50/60 Hz
<b>Current</b>	5 A or less	9 A or less
<b>Power consumption</b>	78.0 W (Ready)	82.0 W (Ready)
	19.5 W (Sleep)	19.5 W (Sleep)
	5.5 W (Deep Sleep)	5.5 W (Deep Sleep)
	0 W (Offline)	0 W (Offline)
<b>TEC value</b>	3.0 kWh	3.0 kWh

## Dimensions

Height: 558 mm (21.97 inches) Width: 530 mm (20.87 inches) Depth: 530 mm (20.87 inches)

Weight (including toner cartridges and drum cartridges): 32.7 kg (72.09 lb)

## Memory

<b>Base memory</b>	512 MB
<b>Maximum memory</b>	1024 MB (512 MB + 512 MB)
<b>Connector</b>	144 pin EP2-2100 DDR2 SDRAM 32b-SO-DIMM
<b>DIMM size</b>	512 MB
<b>Speed</b>	EP2-2100

## Page Description Language (PDL)/Emulation, Operating System, and Interface

<b>PDL/Emulations</b>	PCL 6, PCL5e, PostScript, HBPL, XPS (Host Based)
-----------------------	--

<b>Operating systems</b>	Microsoft Windows XP/XP x64/Server 2003/Server 2003 x64/Server 2008/Server 2008 x64/Server 2008 R2 x64/Vista/Vista x64/7/7 x64/8/8 x64/Server 2012, Mac OS X (10.3.9/10.4.11/10.5/10.6/10.7/10.8), Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5/6 Desktop (x86), and SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10/11 (x86)	
<b>Interfaces</b>	Standard local:	USB 2.0
	Standard network:	10Base-T/100Base-TX/ 1000Base-T Ethernet
	Optional network:	IEEE 802.11b/802.11g/802.11n (Wireless)

## MIB Compatibility

Management Information Base (MIB) is a database containing information about network devices (such as adapters, bridges, routers, or computers). This information helps network administrators manage the network (analyze performance, traffic, errors, and so on). Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer complies with standard industry MIB specifications, allowing the printer to be recognized and managed by various printer and network management software systems.

## Environment

### Operation

<b>Temperature</b>	10 °C - 32 °C
<b>Relative humidity</b>	10 % - 85 % RH (no condensation)

### Print Quality Guarantee

<b>Temperature</b>	15 °C - 28 °C
<b>Relative humidity</b>	20 % - 70 % RH (no condensation)

### Storage


<b>Temperature range</b>	-20 °C to 40 °C (0 °F to 104 °F)
<b>Storage humidity range</b>	5 % - 85 % RH (no condensation)





### Altitude

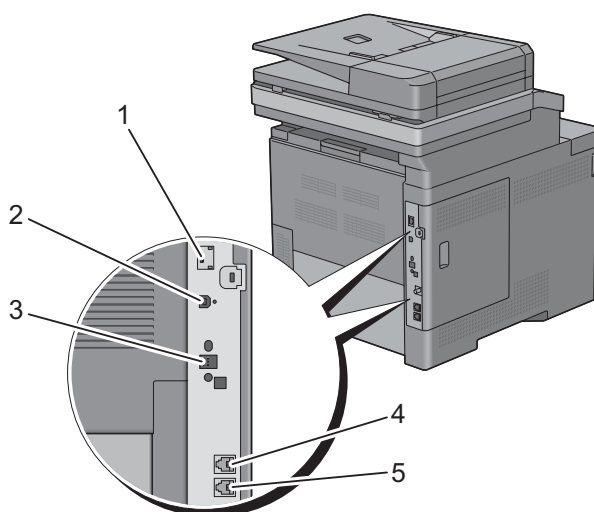
<b>Operating</b>	Up to 3,100 m (10,170 feet)
<b>Storage</b>	Up to 3,100 m (10,170 feet)

## Cables

Your interconnection cable must meet the following requirements:

	<b>Connection type</b>	<b>Connection specifications and symbols</b>	
1	<b>Ethernet</b>	10Base-T/100Base-TX/ 1000Base-T	

	Connection type	Connection specifications and symbols
2	<b>USB</b>	USB 2.0 
3	<b>Wireless adapter socket</b>	IEEE 802.11b/802.11g/802.11n 
4	<b>Phone connector</b>	PHONE 
5	<b>Wall jack connector</b>	LINE 



## Copier Specifications

Item	Description
<b>Copy resolution</b>	Optical: 600 dpi x 600 dpi
<b>Copy speed</b>	Color 35 cpm or more, Black & White 35 cpm or more (When using the document glass to make sequential copies of a document with pages scanned one by one.) Simplex: Color 13 cpm or more, Black & White 22 cpm or more Duplex: Color 4 cpm or more, Black & White 7 cpm or more (When using the Duplex Automatic Document Feeder (DADF) to make sequential copies of multiple documents.)
<b>Paper size</b>	A4, B5, A5, Letter, Executive, Folio (8.5" x 13"), Legal, Envelope #10, Monarch, DL, C5
<b>Zoom rate</b>	Document glass: 25 % - 400 %, DADF: 25 % - 400 %

Item	Description
Multiple copies	1 - 99 pages
Copy mode (=Original type)	Text, Text & Photo, Photo
Scanning method	Document glass: Document-fixed flatbed scanning DADF: Carriage-fixed, document-feeding scanning (2- side scanning)

## Scanner Specifications

Item	Description
Compatibility	TWAIN, TWAIN-Net, Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) <sup>*1</sup> , Scan Service for WSD <sup>*2</sup>
Scan resolution	Optical: 600 dpi x 300 dpi (Color only), 600 dpi x 400 dpi, 600 dpi x 600 dpi, 1,200 dpi, x 1,200 dpi Enhanced (Pull Scan): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• TWAIN – 50 x 50 to 9,600 x 9,600 dots/25.4 mm</li> <li>• WIA – 75/100/150/200/300/400/600 dots/25.4 mm</li> </ul> Enhanced (Push Scan): 200(Default)/300/400/600 dots/25.4 mm
Color bit depth	24 bit
Mono bit depth	1 bit for Line art. 8 bit for Gray scale
Effective scanning length	Document glass: 297 mm. DADF: 355.6 mm
Effective scanning width	215.9 mm
Scan speed (Text mode)	Monochrome: 665 $\mu$ s/line (600 dpi), 1330 $\mu$ s/line (1200 dpi) Color: 1330 $\mu$ s/line (600 dpi), 2660 $\mu$ s/line (1200 dpi)

\*1 : Windows OS only

\*2 : Windows Vista/7/8 only

## Facsimile Specifications

Item	Description
Compatibility	ITU-T Super G3, ITU-T G3 ECM, ITU-T G3
Applicable line	Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN), Private Branch Exchange (PBX), or Leased line (3.4 KHz/2-wire)
Data coding	1bit/JBIG/MMR/MR/MH
Max modem speed	33.6 Kbps
Transmission speed	Approx. 3 seconds/page *Transmission time applies to memory transmission of text data scanned in Standard resolution with ECM using only ITU-T No.1 Chart.
Scanning speed	Document glass: approx. 3 seconds/A4 (at standard fax resolution mode) DADF: approx. 5 seconds/Letter (at standard fax resolution mode), 7.5 seconds/Letter (at fine fax resolution mode)
Maximum document length	Document glass: 297 mm DADF: 355.6 mm
Paper size	Letter, A4 (depending on a country)

Item	Description
<b>Resolution</b>	Standard: R8 x 3.85 l/mm, Fine: R8 x 7.7 l/mm, Super Fine: 400 dpi x 400 dpi, Photo: R8 x 7.7 l/mm
<b>User memory</b>	4 MB (320 pages)
<b>Halftone</b>	256 levels

## Optional Wireless Adapter

Item	Description
<b>Connectivity technology</b>	Wireless
<b>Compliant standards</b>	IEEE 802.11b, 802.11g, and 802.11n
<b>Bandwidth</b>	2.4 GHz
<b>Data transfer rate</b>	IEEE 802.11n: 65 Mbps IEEE 802.11g: 54, 48, 36, 24, 18, 12, 9, and 6 Mbps IEEE 802.11b: 11, 5.5, 2, and 1 Mbps
<b>Security</b>	64 (40-bit key)/128 (104-bit key) WEP, WPA- PSK (TKIP, AES), WPA2-PSK (AES), WPA-Enterprise (TKIP, AES) <sup>*1*2</sup> , WPA2-Enterprise (AES) <sup>*1*2</sup>
<b>Wi-Fi Protected Setup<sup>®</sup> (WPS)<sup>*3</sup></b>	Push-Button Configuration (PBC), Personal Identification Number (PIN)

<sup>\*1</sup> This item is available only when the optional hard disk is installed.

<sup>\*2</sup> EAP method supports PEAPv0, EAP-TLS, EAP-TTLS PAP, and EAP-TTLS CHAP.

<sup>\*3</sup> WPS 2.0 compliant.



# Maintaining Your Printer

30 Maintaining Your Printer .....	463
31 Removing Options .....	503
32 Clearing Jams .....	513



## Maintaining Your Printer

You need to complete certain tasks to maintain optimum print quality.

### Determining the Status of Supplies

If your printer is connected to the network, the **Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool** can provide instant feedback on remaining toner levels. Type the printer's IP address in your web browser to view this information. To use the **E-Mail Alert Setup** feature that notifies you when the printer requires new supplies, type the desired e-mail address in the e-mail list box.

On the touch panel screen, you can also confirm the following:

- Any supply or maintenance items that require attention replacing (However, the printer can only display information about one item at a time).
- Amount of toner remaining in each toner cartridge.

### Conserving Supplies

You can change several settings in your printer driver to conserve toner cartridge and paper.


Supply	Setting	Function
Toner cartridge	Toner Saver in the <b>Others</b> tab	This check box allows the users to select a print mode that uses less toner. The image quality will be lower when this feature is used.
Print media	Multiple Up in the <b>Layout</b> tab	The printer prints two or more pages on one side of a sheet.
Print media	Duplex in the <b>General</b> tab	The printer prints on both sides of a sheet of paper.

### Ordering Supplies

You can order consumables (toner cartridges, drum cartridges, and waste toner box) from Dell on the Internet when using a networked printer. Type the IP address of your printer in your web browser, launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, and click the **Order Supplies at:** to order consumables for your printer.

You can also order consumables by the following method.

- 1 Click **Start**→**All Programs**→**Dell Printers**→**Additional Color Laser Software**→**Dell Supplies Management System**.  
The **Dell Supplies Management System** window appears.
- 2 Select your printer from the **Select Printer Model** list.
- 3 If ordering from the web:
  - a Select a URL from the **Select Reorder URL** list.
  - b Click **Visit Dell printer supplies ordering web site**.

 **NOTE:** When you cannot get information from the printer automatically by two-way communication, a window that prompts you to type the Service Tag appears. Type your Dell printer Service Tag in the field provided. Your Service Tag number is located inside the front cover of your printer.
- 4 If ordering by phone, call the number that appears under the **Order by Phone** heading.

## Storing Print Media

To avoid potential paper feeding problems and uneven print quality, there are several things you can do:

- To achieve the best possible print quality, store print media in an environment where the temperature is approximately 21 °C (70 °F) and the relative humidity is 40 %.
- Store cartons of print media on a pallet or shelf, rather than directly on the floor.
- If you store individual packages of print media out of the original carton, ensure that they rest on a flat surface so the edges do not buckle or curl.
- Do not place anything on top of the print media packages.

## Storing Consumables

Store consumables in their original packaging until you need to use them. Do not store consumables in:

- Temperatures greater than 40 °C (104 °F).
- An environment with extreme changes in humidity or temperature.
- Direct sunlight.
- Dusty places.
- A car for a long period of time.
- An environment where corrosive gases are present.
- A humid environment.

## Replacing the Toner Cartridges

**⚠ WARNING:** Before performing any of the following procedures, read and follow the safety instructions in the *Product Information Guide*.

Dell toner cartridges are available only through Dell. You can order cartridges online at <http://www.dell.com/supplies> or by phone. To order by phone, see "Contacting Dell."

It is recommended to use Dell toner cartridges for your printer. Dell does not provide warranty coverage for problems caused by using accessories, parts, or components not supplied by Dell.

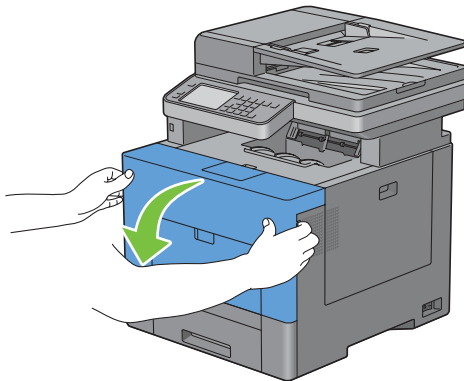
**⚠ WARNING:** Never throw used toner cartridges into fire. The residual toner could explode resulting in burns and injuries.

**⚠ WARNING:** Do not shake the used toner cartridge. This may cause toner spills.

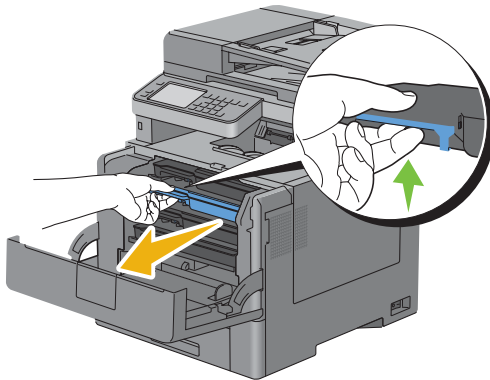
### Removing the Toner Cartridge

**✍ NOTE:** Ensure that you remove all the paper from the MPF and close the MPF cover before removing the toner cartridge.

- 1 Grasp the grips on both sides of the front cover, and then pull it down to open.



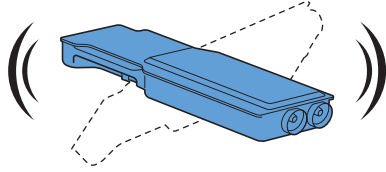
- 2 Grasp the handle on the toner cartridge that you want to replace, and then pull it out.



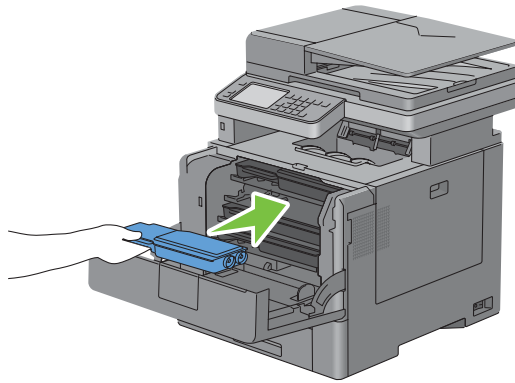
**⚠ WARNING:** Do not shake the toner cartridge as it may cause toner spills.

## Installing a Toner Cartridge

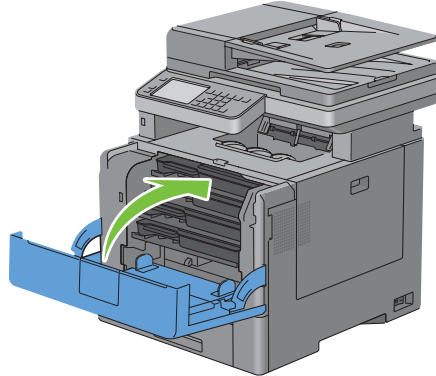
- 1 Unpack a new toner cartridge of the desired color.
- 2 Shake the new toner cartridge five or six times to distribute the toner evenly.



- 3 Insert the toner cartridge into the associated cartridge slot, and then push until it stops.



- 4 Close the front cover.



## Replacing the Drum Cartridges

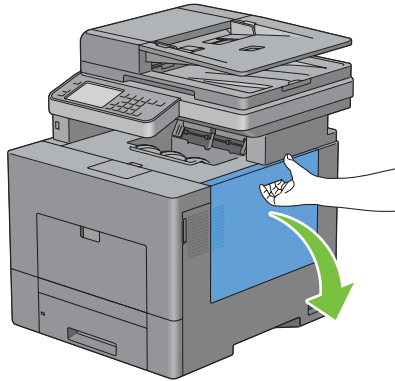
You need to replace all drum cartridges (yellow, magenta, cyan, and black) at a time.

**⚠ WARNING:** Before performing any of the following procedures, read and follow the safety instructions in the *Product Information Guide*.

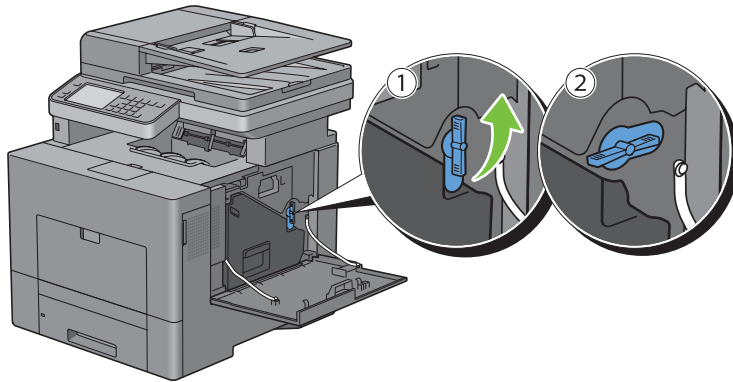
**⚠ CAUTION:** Protect the drum cartridges against bright light. If the right side cover remains open for more than three minutes, print quality may deteriorate.

### Removing the Drum Cartridge

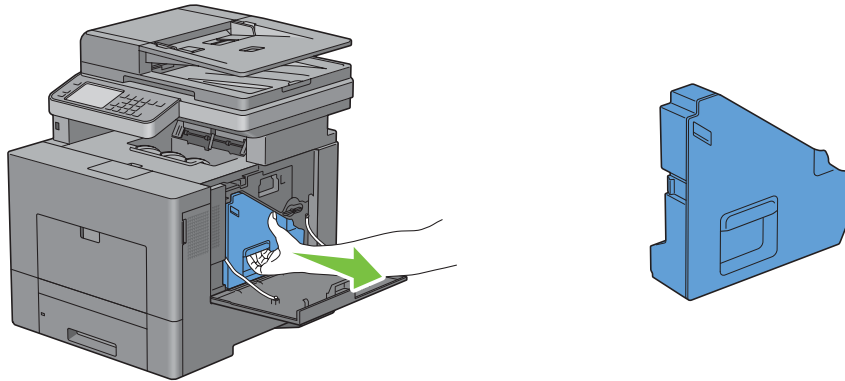
- 1 Open the right side cover.




- 2 Turn the waste toner box lock lever 90-degrees counterclockwise to unlock the waste toner box.

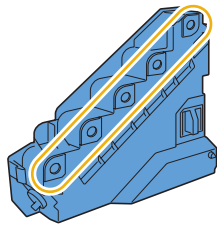


- 3 Grasp the handle on the waste toner box and pull it out making sure to hold it upright so that the waste toner does not spill out.

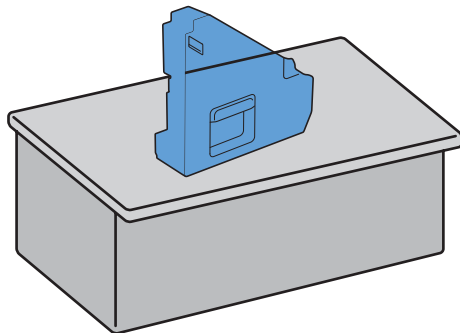


 **CAUTION:** Take care not to drop the waste toner box while you are removing it.

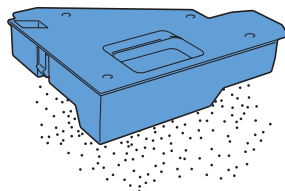
 **CAUTION:** After removing the waste toner box, do not touch the parts shown in the illustration. Toner can dirty or stain your hands.



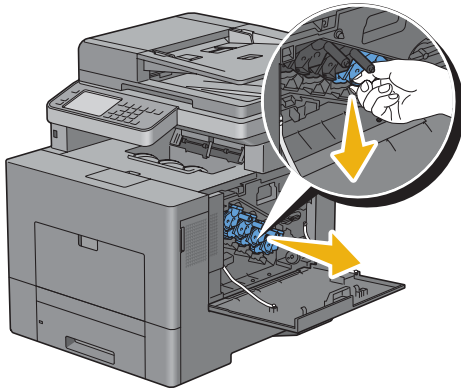
- 4 Stand the removed waste toner box upright on a level surface.



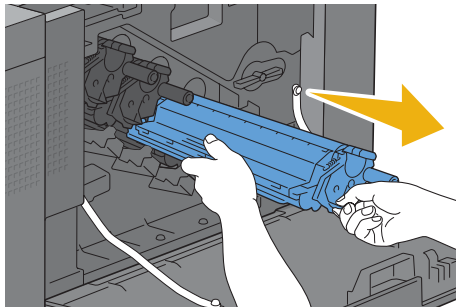
 **WARNING:** Never lay the waste toner box on its side as this may cause its malfunction or toner spills.



- 5 Slightly pressing down the tab on the drum cartridge that you want to replace, pull it out halfway with one hand.



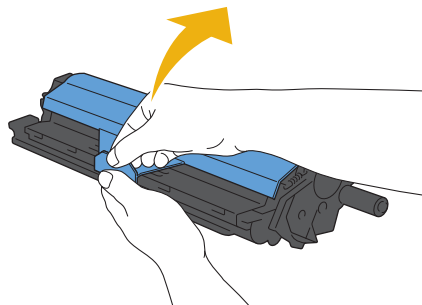
- 6 Support the drum cartridge with the other hand from underneath, and then pull it out completely.



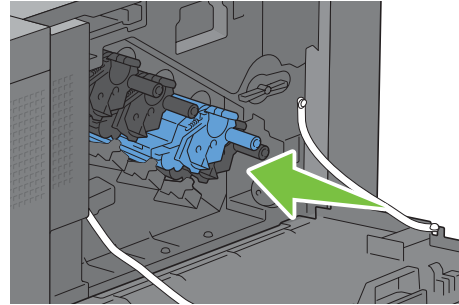
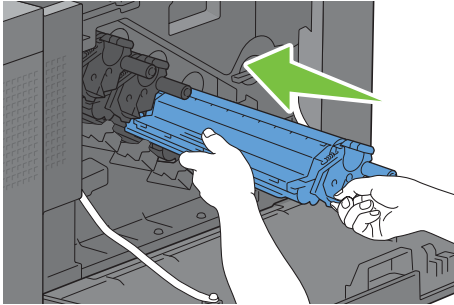
- 7 Repeat the steps 5 and 6 to remove the other three cartridges.

### Installing a Drum Cartridge

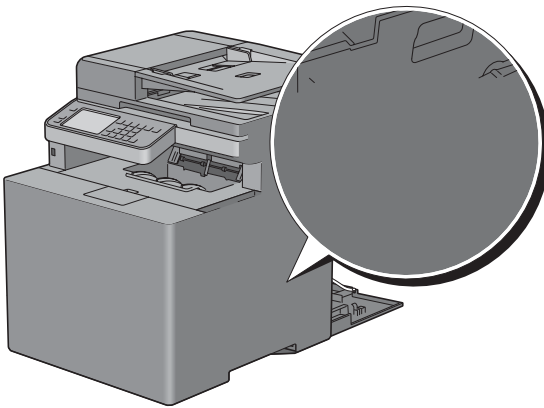
- 1 Unpack a new drum cartridge of the desired color.
- 2 Remove the orange protective cover from the drum cartridge.



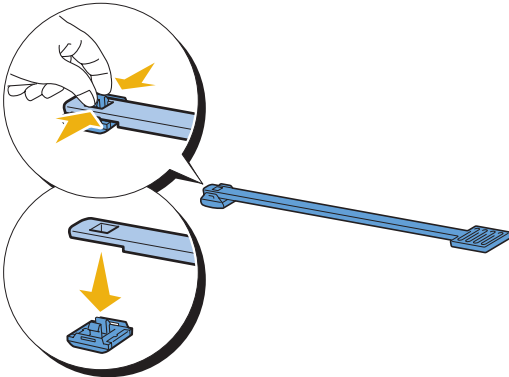
- 3 Insert the drum cartridge into the associated cartridge slot, and then push until it stops.



- 4 Repeat the steps 1 to 3 to insert the other three cartridges.  
5 Remove the cleaning rod from inside the printer.

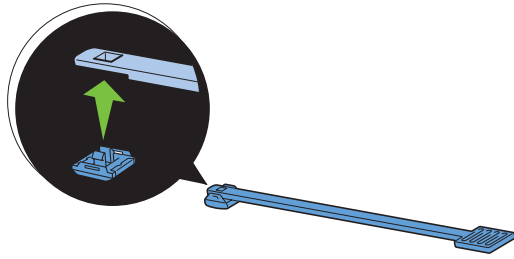


- 6 Remove the cleaning pad by pressing the white tabs between your thumb and index finger.

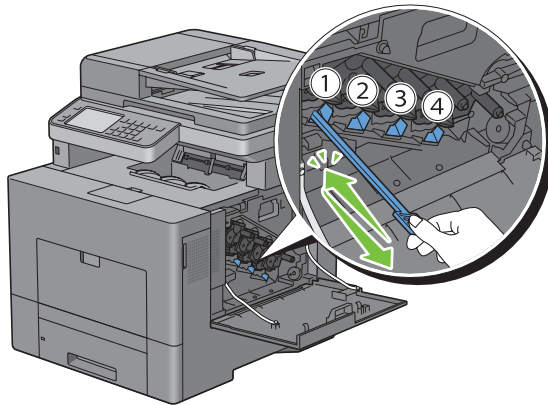


- 7 Unpack a new cleaning pad.

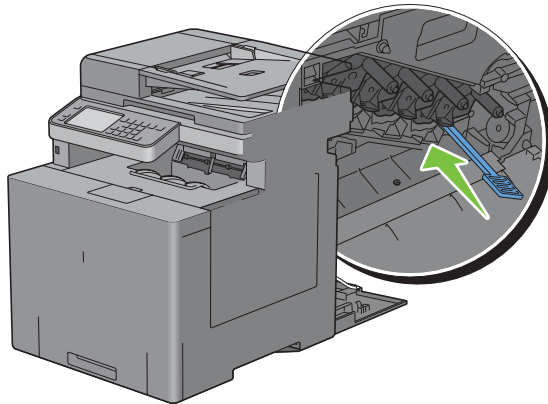
- 8** Attach the new cleaning pad to the cleaning rod.



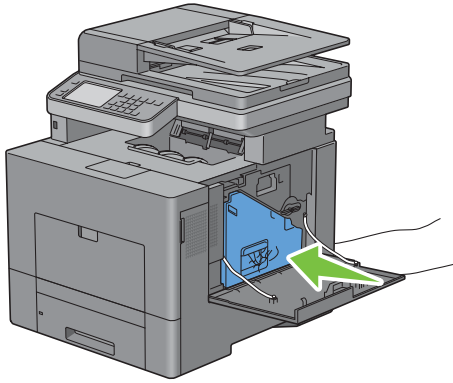
- 9** Insert the cleaning rod fully into one of the four holes until it clicks into the interior of the printer as illustrated below, and then pull it out.



- 10** Repeat step 9 also on the other three holes. One time insertion is enough for each hole.  
**11** Return the cleaning rod to its original location.

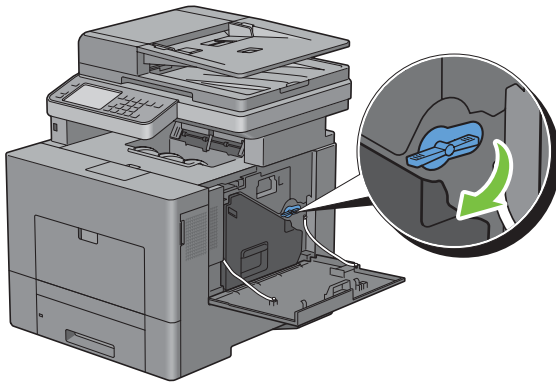


- 12 Reinsert the removed waste toner box.

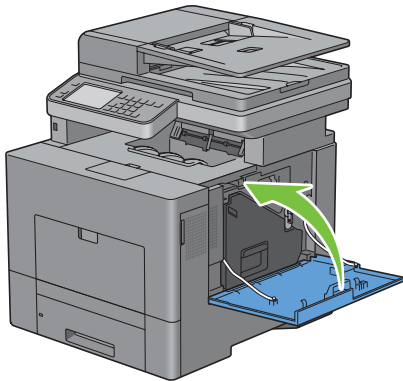


**CAUTION:** If the waste toner box does not fit into place properly, make sure that the drum cartridge is fully inserted in the previous step.

- 13 Turn the waste toner box lock lever 90-degrees clockwise to lock the waste toner box.



- 14 Close the right side cover.

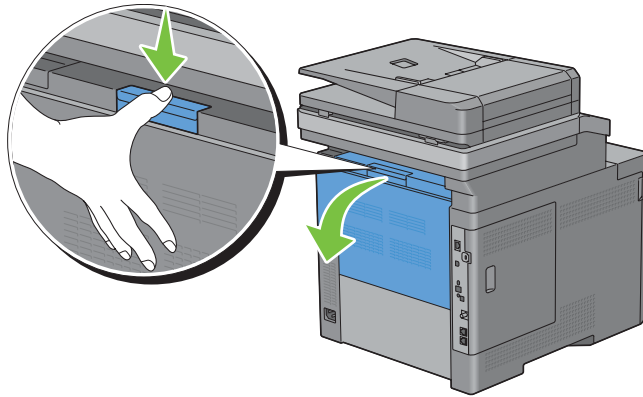


## Replacing the Fusing Unit

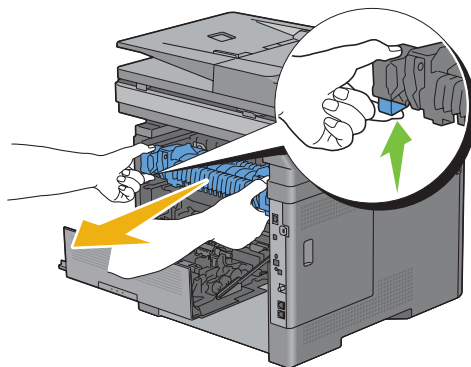
 **WARNING:** Before performing any of the following procedures, read and follow the safety instructions in the *Product Information Guide*.

### Removing the Fusing Unit

- 1 Turn off the printer and wait for 30 minutes.
- 2 Push down the latch to open the rear cover.

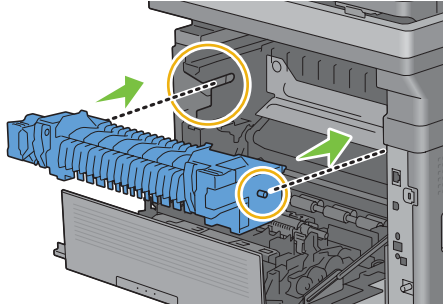


- 3 Grasp the grips on both sides of the fusing unit squeezing the lever under the left side grip, and then pull out the unit.

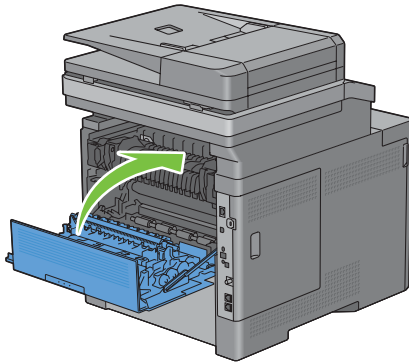



## Installing a Fusing Unit

- 1 Unpack a new fusing unit.
- 2 Make sure that the two tabs of the fusing unit align with the grooves on the printer, and then insert it into the printer until it clicks.



- 3 Close the rear cover.



 **NOTE:** After replacing the fusing unit, be sure to initialize its life counter by following the instructions in the accompanying manual.

## Replacing the Transfer Belt Unit, the 2nd Belt Transfer Roller (2nd BTR), and the Retard Roller

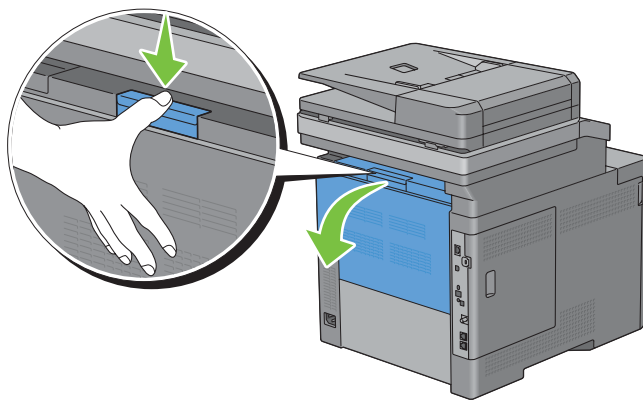
You need to replace all three parts (transfer belt unit, 2nd BTR, and retard roller) at a time. Both the 2nd BTR and the retard roller for replacement come with a new transfer belt unit.

**⚠ WARNING:** Before performing any of the following procedures, read and follow the safety instructions in the *Product Information Guide*.

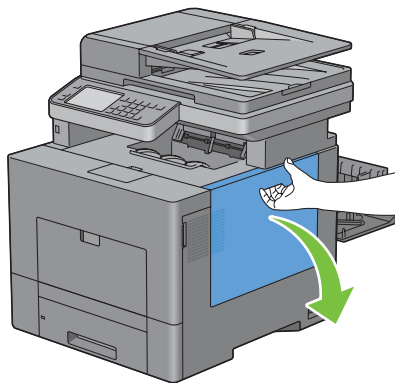
**⚠ CAUTION:** Ensure nothing touches or scratches the surface (black-colored film) of the transfer belt unit. Scratches, dirt, or oil from your hands on the film of the transfer belt unit may reduce print quality.

### Removing the Transfer Belt Unit

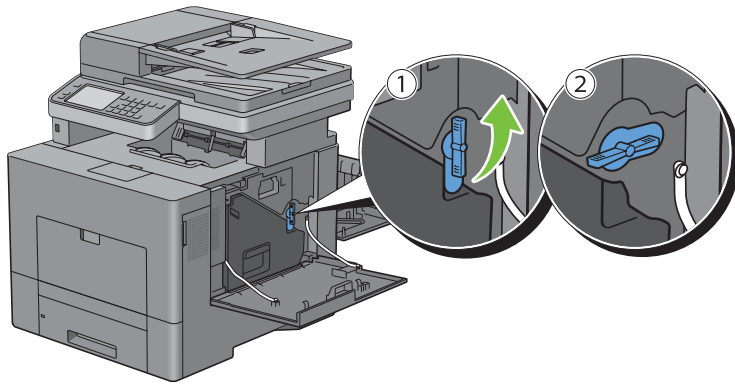
- 1 Push down the latch to open the rear cover.



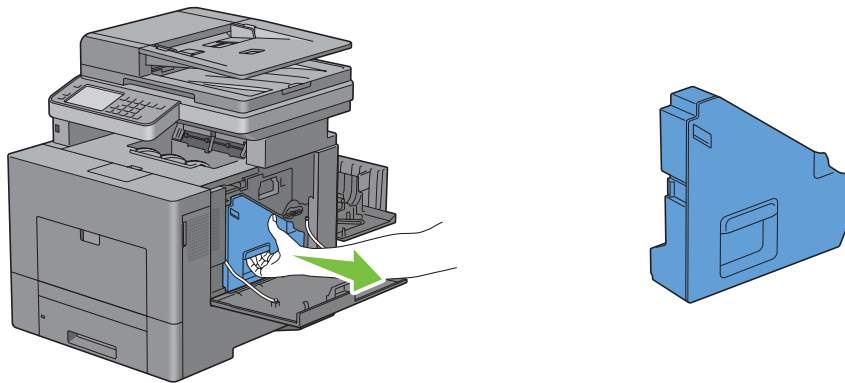
- 2 Open the right side cover.



- 3 Turn the waste toner box lock lever 90-degrees counterclockwise to unlock the waste toner box.

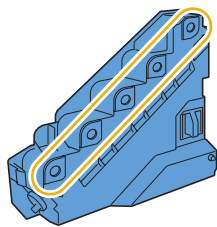


- 4 Grasp the handle on the waste toner box and pull it out making sure to hold it upright so that the waste toner does not spill out.

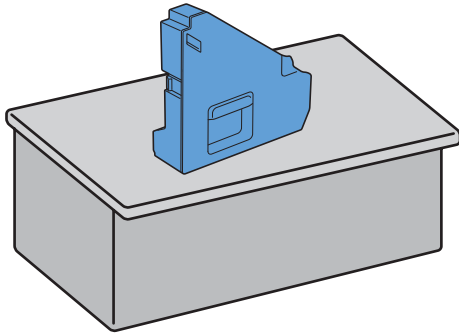


⚠ **CAUTION:** Take care not to drop the waste toner box while you are removing it.

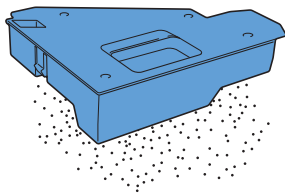
⚠ **CAUTION:** After removing the waste toner box, do not touch the parts shown in the illustration. Toner can dirty or stain your hands.



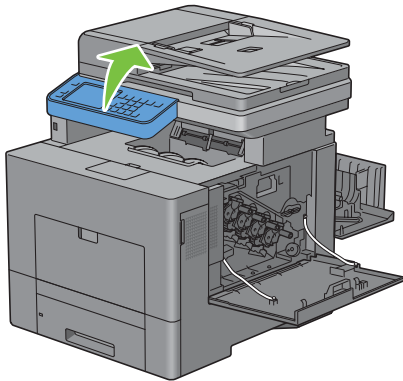
- 5 Stand the removed waste toner box upright on a level surface.



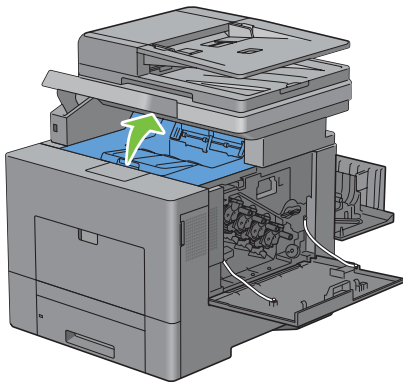
**⚠ WARNING:** Never lay the waste toner box on its side as this may cause its malfunction or toner spills.



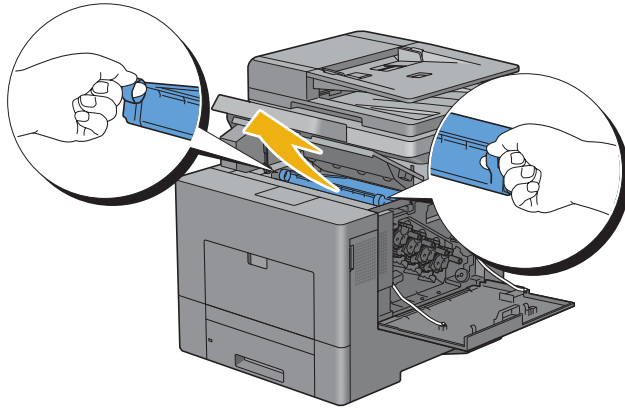
- 6 Lift the operator panel.



- 7 Open the top cover.

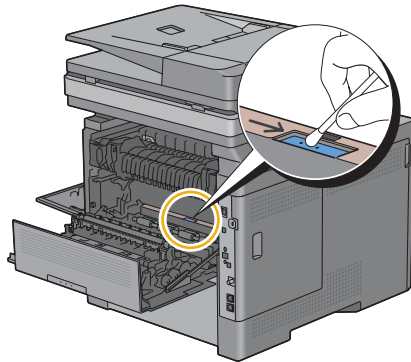


- 8 Put your fingers through the loops on both sides of the transfer belt unit, and then pull it out.



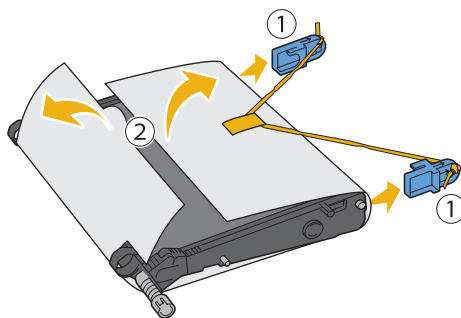
**CAUTION:** If you cannot pull out the unit from the printer, make sure that all of the above procedures are performed properly.

- 9 Clean the CTD sensor (as shown) with a clean, dry cotton swab.



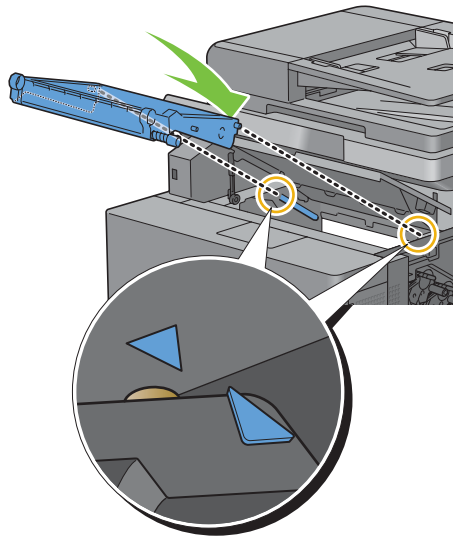
### Installing a Transfer Belt Unit

- 1 Unpack a new transfer belt unit.
- 2 Remove the two orange packing materials first, and then the protective sheet from the transfer belt unit.

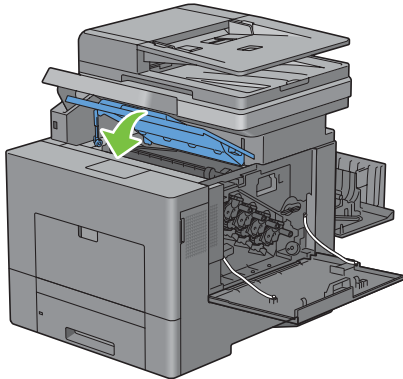


**CAUTION:** Ensure nothing touches or scratches the surface (black-colored film) of the transfer belt unit. Scratches, dirt, or oil from your hands on the film of the transfer belt unit may reduce print quality.

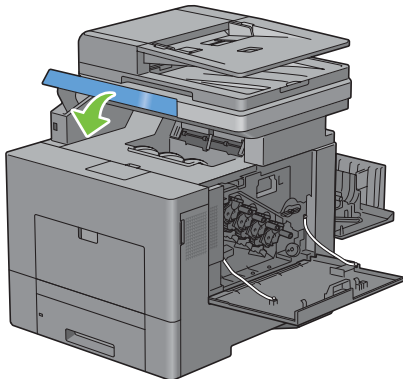
- 3** Make sure that the arrow marks on the transfer belt unit and the printer face each other, and then insert the unit into the printer until it clicks.



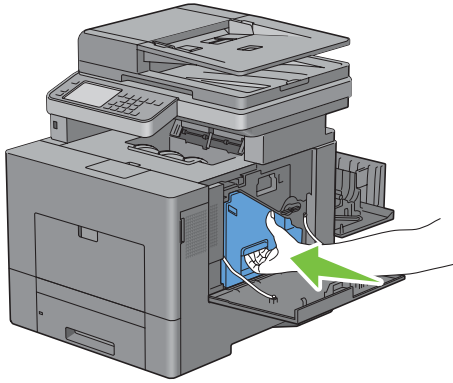
- 4** Close the top cover.



- 5** Lower the operator panel back in place.

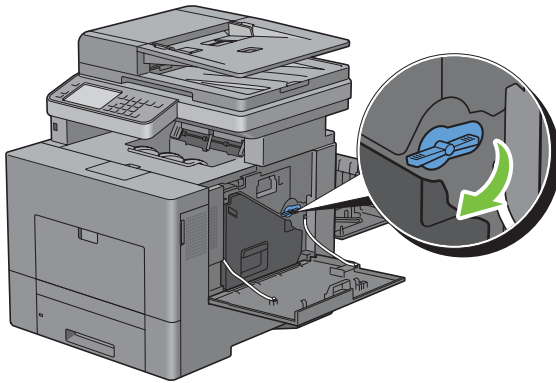


- 6 Reinsert the removed waste toner box.

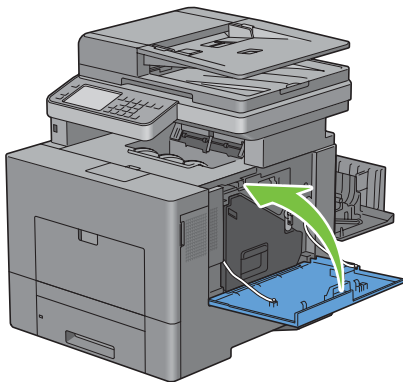


**CAUTION:** If the waste toner box does not fit into place properly, make sure that the transfer belt unit is fully inserted.

- 7 Turn the waste toner box lock lever 90-degrees clockwise to lock the waste toner box.



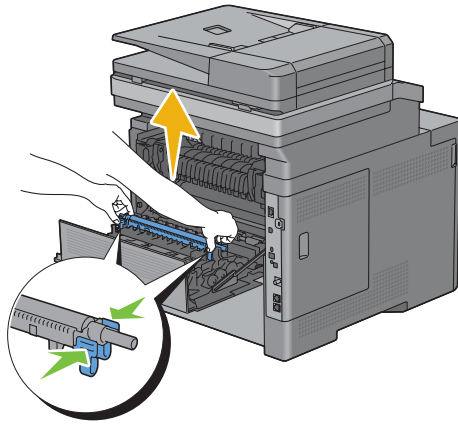
- 8 Close the right side cover.



**NOTE:** After replacing the transfer belt unit, be sure to initialize its life counter by following the instructions in the accompanying manual.

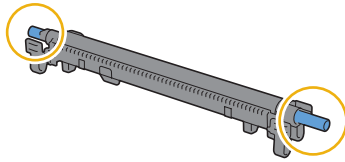
## Removing the 2nd BTR

- 1 Pinching the tabs on both sides of the 2nd BTR, lift it out of the printer.

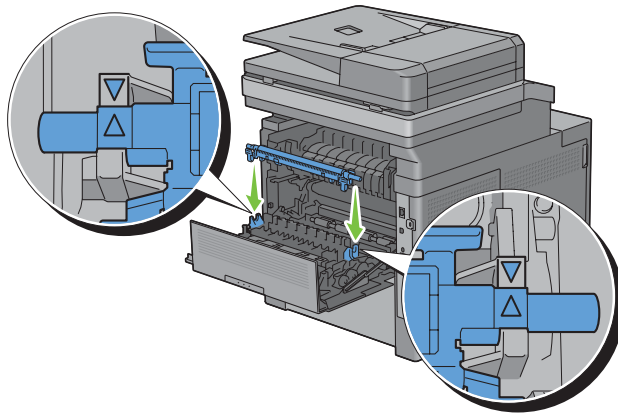


## Installing a 2nd BTR

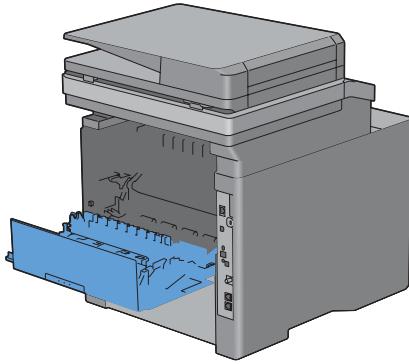
- 1 Unpack a new 2nd BTR.
- 2 Hold the 2nd BTR by both its ends.



- 3 Make sure that the arrow marks on the 2nd BTR and the printer face each other, and then press down the 2nd BTR until it clicks.

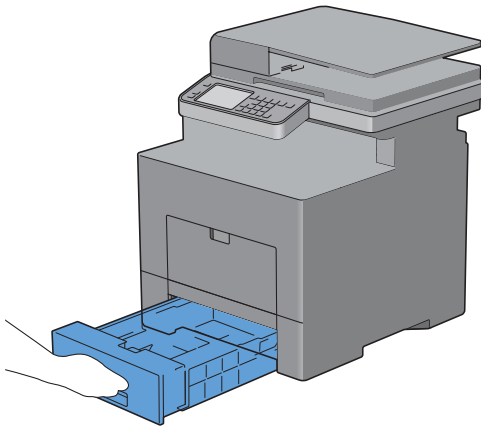


- 4 Close the rear cover.

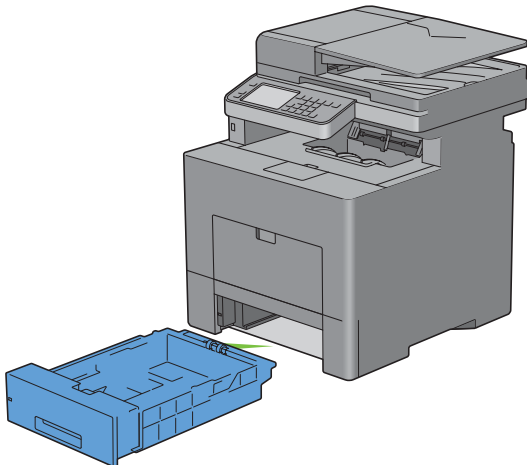



### Removing the Retard Roller in Tray1

- 1 Pull tray1 out of the printer about 200 mm.

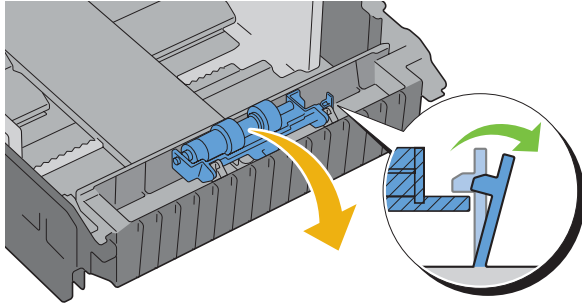


- 2 Hold tray1 with both hands, and remove it from the printer.

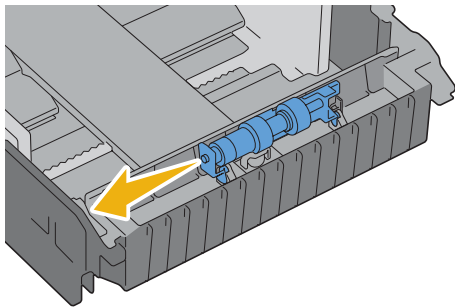


 **NOTE:** Ensure that you remove all the paper from tray1 before removing the retard roller.

- 3 Slightly pressing down the lock lever on tray 1 to the right with one hand, raise the retard roller with the other hand.

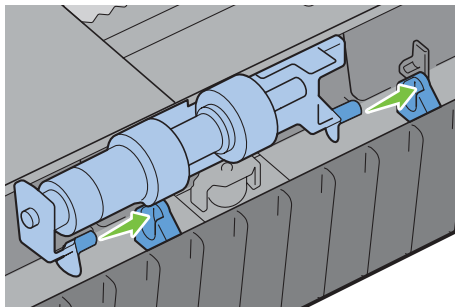


- 4 Slide the retard roller to the left to remove it from tray 1.

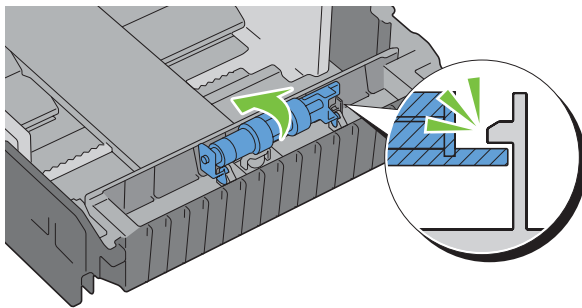


### Installing a Retard Roller in Tray 1

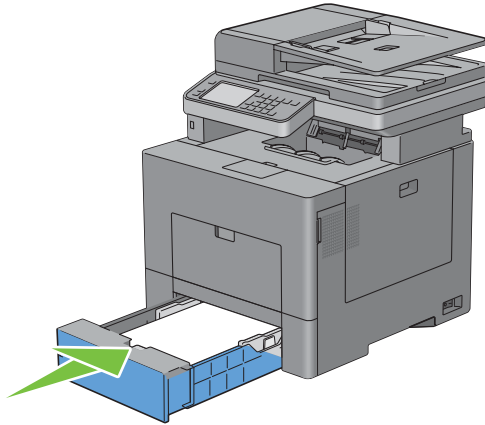
- 1 Slide the two axles of the retard roller into the holes on tray 1.



- 2 Press down the retard roller until it snaps.



- 3 Load paper in tray1, and then insert the tray into the printer and push until it stops.

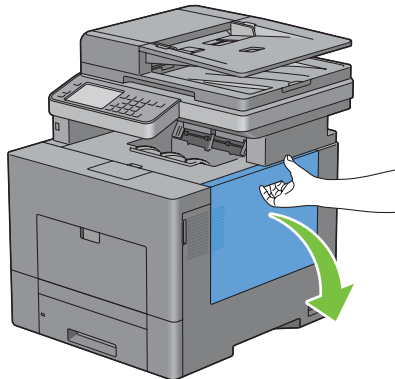


## Replacing the Waste Toner Box

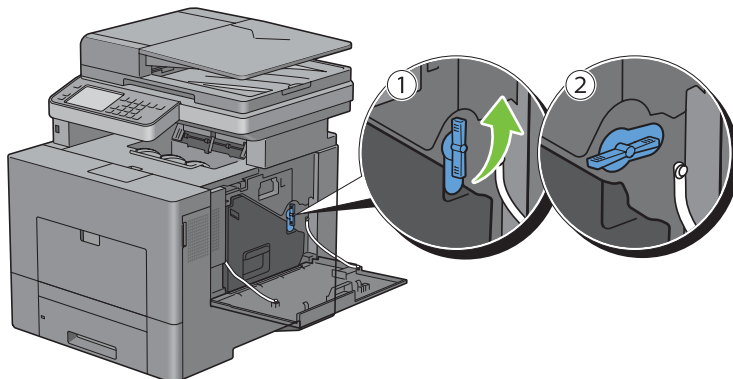
**⚠ WARNING:** Before performing any of the following procedures, read and follow the safety instructions in the *Product Information Guide*.

### Removing the Waste Toner Box

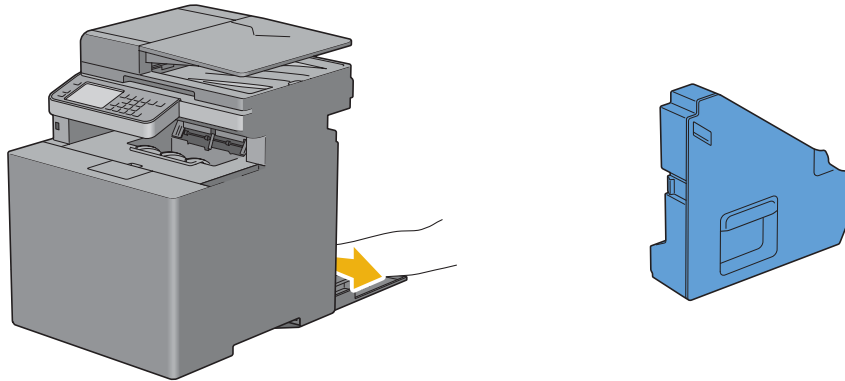
- 1 Open the right side cover.



- 2 Turn the waste toner box lock lever 90-degrees counterclockwise to unlock the waste toner box.

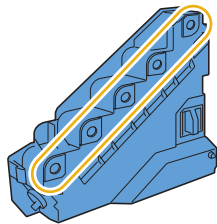


- 3 Grasp the handle on the waste toner box and pull it out making sure to hold it upright so that the waste toner does not spill out.



⚠ **CAUTION:** Take care not to drop the waste toner box while you are removing it.

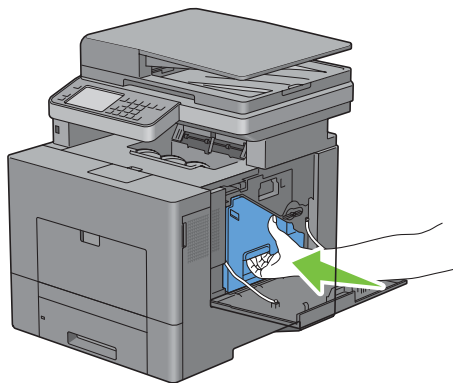
⚠ **CAUTION:** After removing the waste toner box, do not touch the parts shown in the illustration. Toner can dirty or stain your hands.



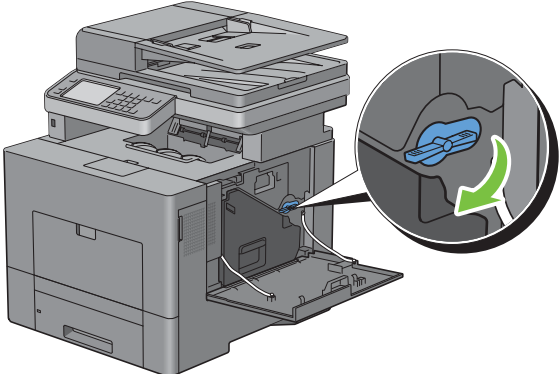
- 4 Insert the used waste toner box into the plastic bag that came with the new waste toner box and seal the bag.

### Installing a Waste Toner Box

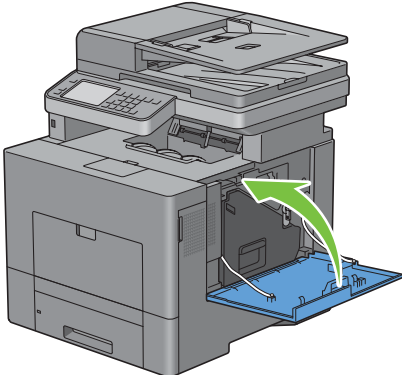
- 1 Unpack a new waste toner box.
- 2 Insert the waste toner box.



3 Turn the waste toner box lock lever 90-degrees clockwise to lock the waste toner box.



4 Close the right side cover.

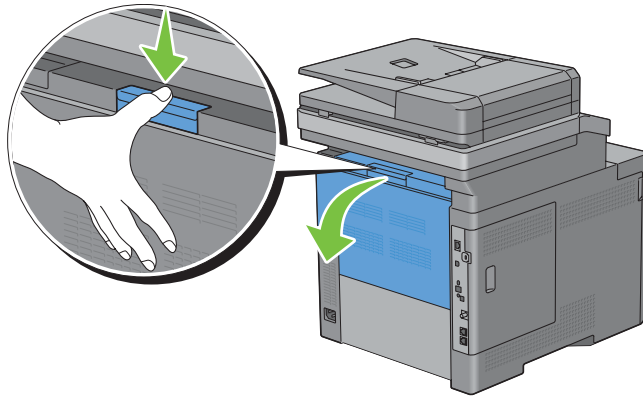


# Cleaning Inside the Printer

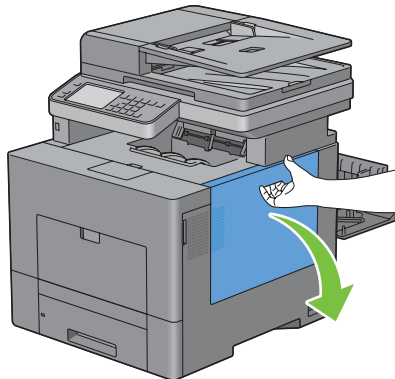
## Cleaning the CTD Sensor

Clean the Color Toner Density (CTD) sensor only when an alert for the CTD sensor is shown on the Status Monitor or touch panel screen.

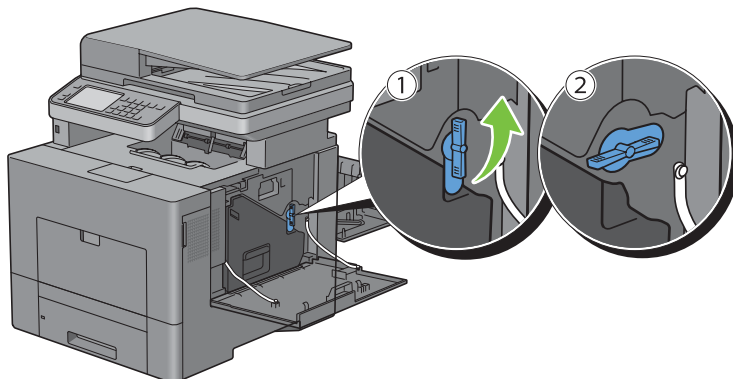
- 1 Ensure that the printer is turned off.
- 2 Push down the latch to open the rear cover.



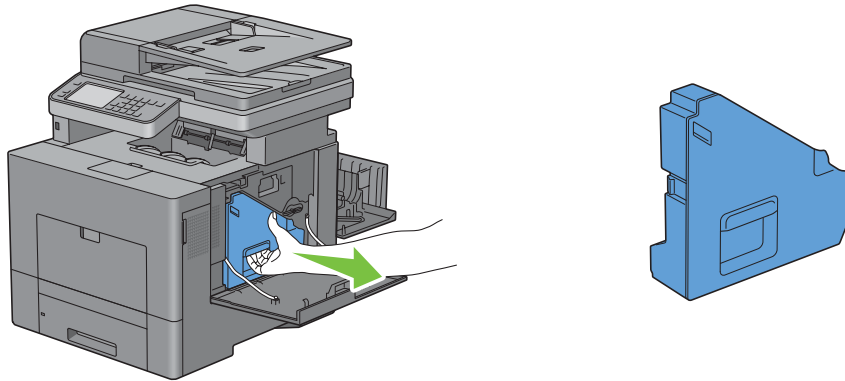
- 3 Open the right side cover.




- 4 Turn the waste toner box lock lever 90-degrees counterclockwise to unlock the waste toner box.

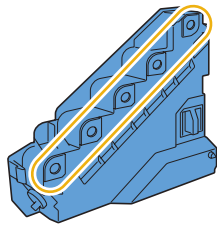


- 5 Grasp the handle on the waste toner box and pull it out making sure to hold it upright so that the waste toner does not spill out.

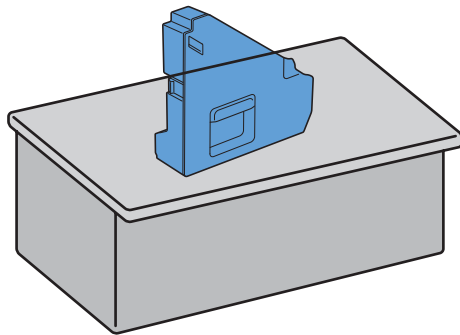


 **CAUTION:** Take care not to drop the waste toner box while you are removing it.

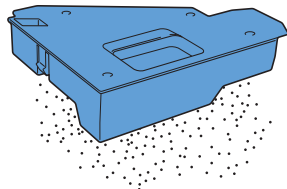
 **CAUTION:** After removing the waste toner box, do not touch the parts shown in the illustration. Toner can dirty or stain your hands.



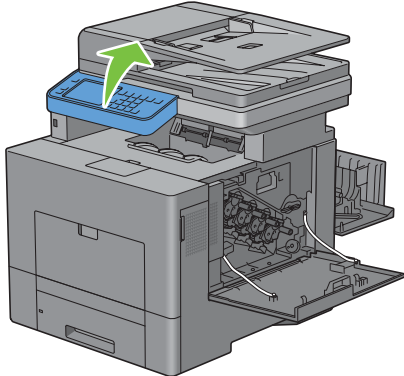
- 6 Stand the removed waste toner box upright on a level surface.



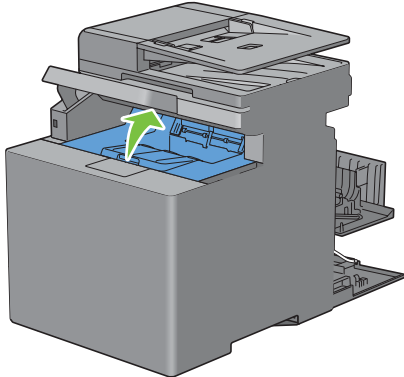
 **WARNING:** Never lay the waste toner box on its side as this may cause its malfunction or toner spills.



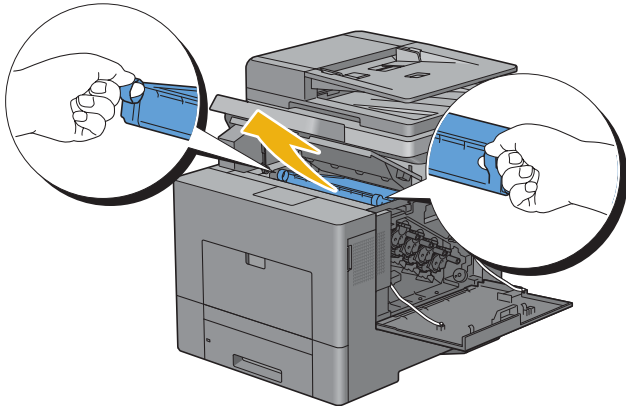
7 Lift the operator panel.



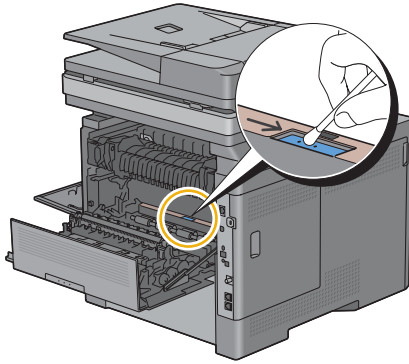
8 Open the top cover.



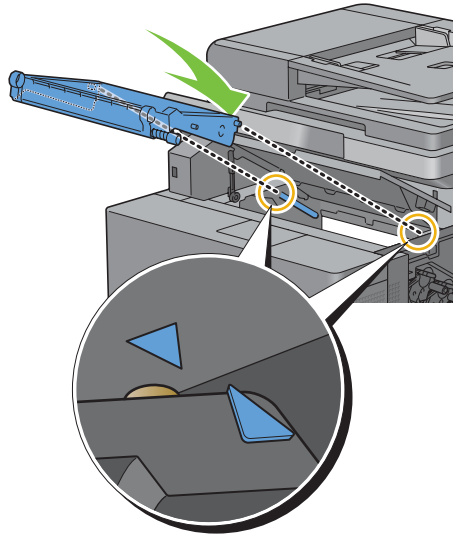
9 Put your fingers through the loops on both sides of the transfer belt unit, and then pull it out.



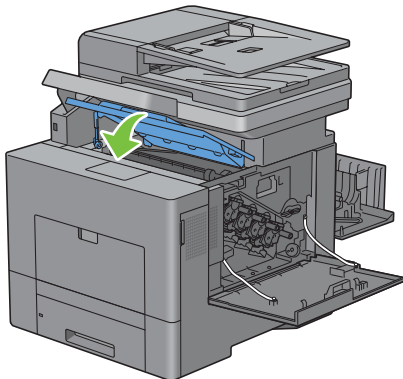
**10** Clean the CTD sensor (as shown) with a clean, dry cotton swab.



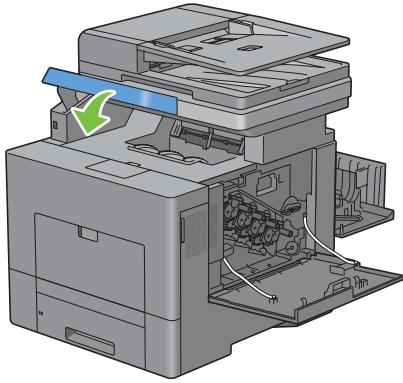
**11** Make sure that the arrow marks on the transfer belt unit and the printer face each other, and then insert the unit into the printer until it clicks.



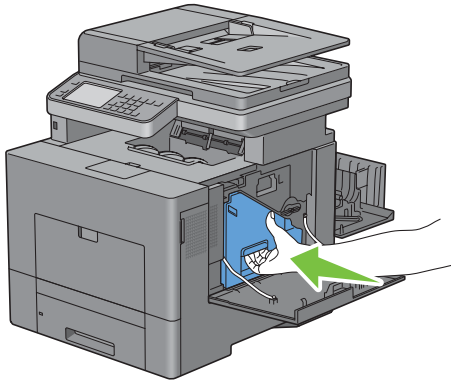
**12** Close the top cover.



- 13 Lower the operator panel back in place.

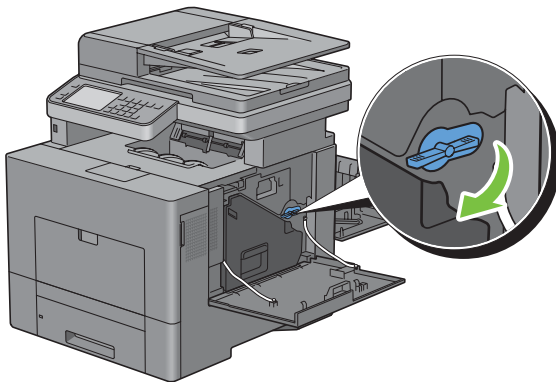


- 14 Reinsert the removed waste toner box.

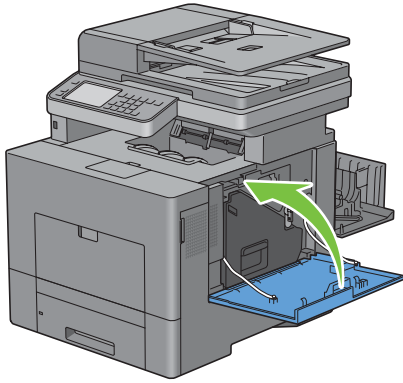


**⚠ CAUTION: If the waste toner box does not fit into place properly, make sure that the transfer belt unit is fully inserted.**

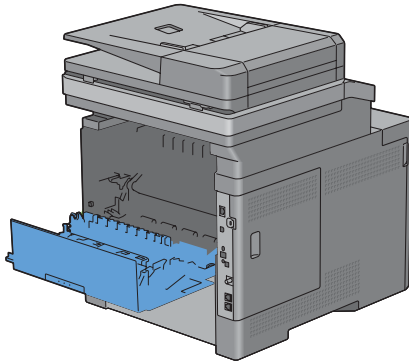
- 15 Turn the waste toner box lock lever 90-degrees clockwise to lock the waste toner box.



16 Close the right side cover.



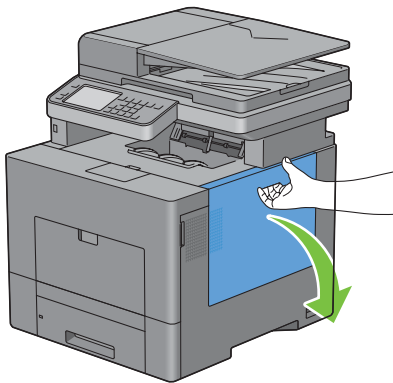
17 Close the rear cover.



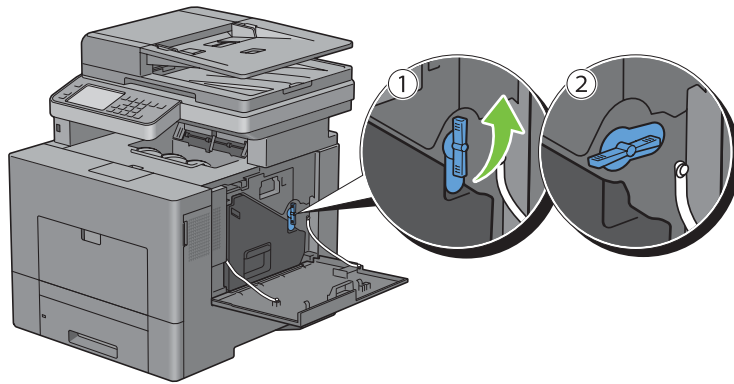
### **Cleaning the Raster Optical Scanner (ROS) Window**

To prevent deterioration of printing quality due to stains inside the printer, clean inside the printer regularly by using the cleaning rod whenever you replace drum cartridges.

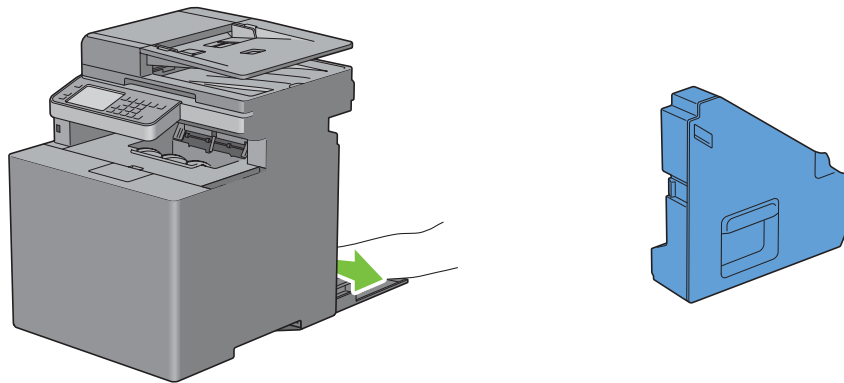
1 Open the right side cover.



- 2 Turn the waste toner box lock lever 90-degrees counterclockwise to unlock the waste toner box.

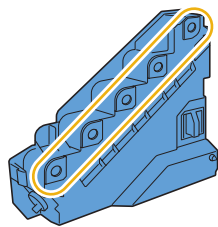


- 3 Grasp the handle on the waste toner box and pull it out making sure to hold it upright so that the waste toner does not spill out.

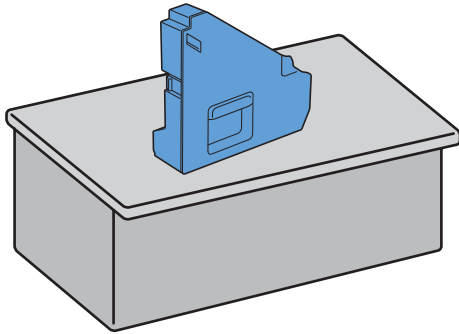


**CAUTION:** Take care not to drop the waste toner box while you are removing it.

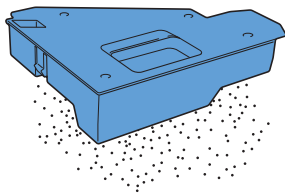
**CAUTION:** After removing the waste toner box, do not touch the parts shown in the illustration. Toner can dirty or stain your hands.



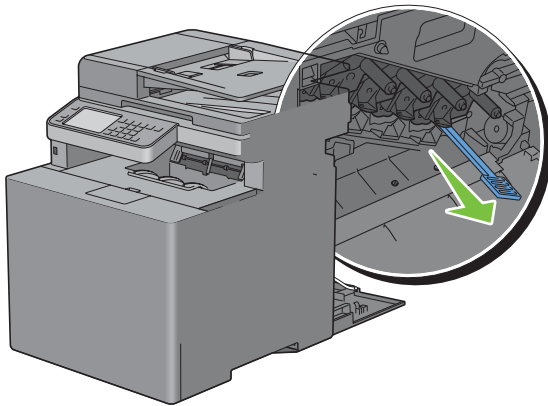
- 4 Stand the removed waste toner box upright on a level surface.



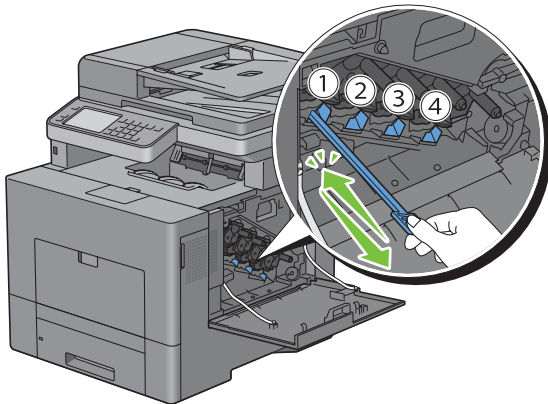
**⚠ WARNING:** Never lay the waste toner box on its side as this may cause its malfunction or toner spills.



- 5 Remove the cleaning rod from inside the printer.

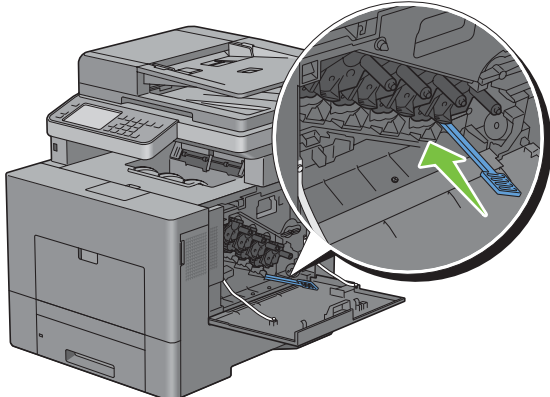


- 6 Insert the cleaning rod fully into one of the four holes until it clicks into the interior of the printer as illustrated below, and then pull it out.

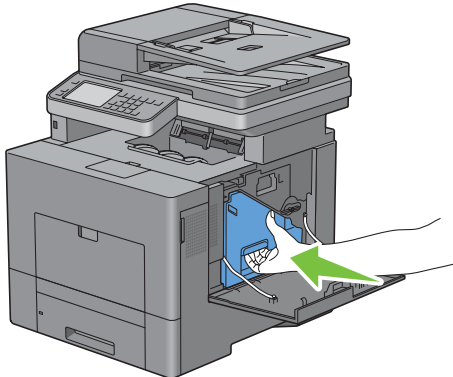


- 7 Repeat step 6 also on the other three holes. One time insertion is enough for each hole.

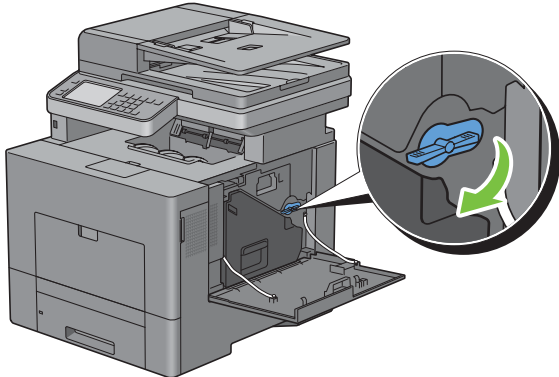
8 Return the cleaning rod to its original location.



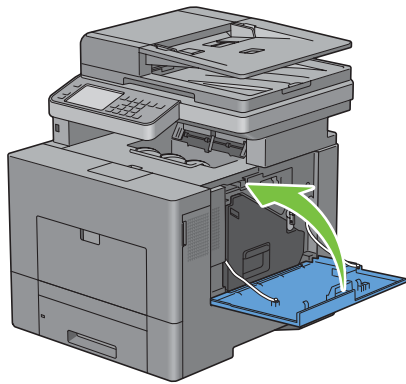
9 Reinsert the removed waste toner box.



10 Turn the waste toner box lock lever 90-degrees clockwise to lock the waste toner box.



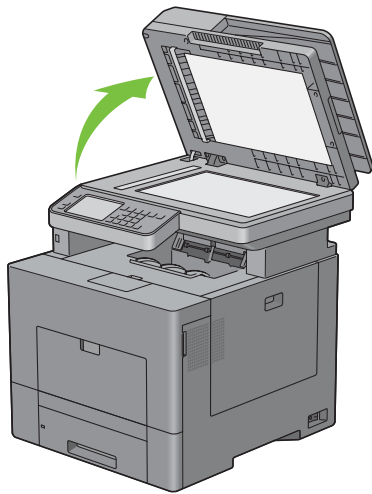
- 11 Close the right side cover.



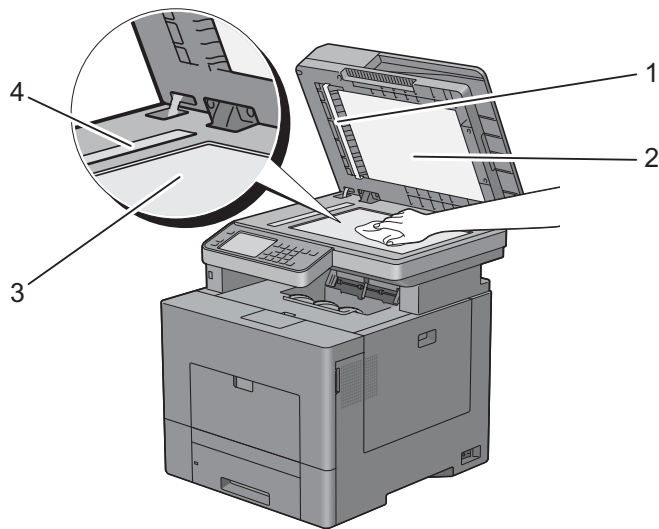
## Cleaning the Scanner

Keeping the scanner clean helps ensure the best possible copies. It is recommended to clean the scanner at the start of each day and during the day, as needed.

- 1 Slightly dampen a soft lint-free cloth or paper towel with water.
- 2 Open the document cover.



- 3 Wipe the surface of the document glass and DADF glass until it is clean and dry.



---

1 White Sheet

**NOTE:** Handle with care.

---

2 White Document Cover

---

3 Document Glass

---

4 DADF Glass

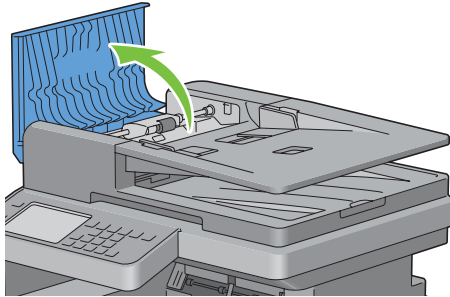
---

- 4 Wipe the underside of the white document cover and white sheet until it is clean and dry.
- 5 Close the document cover.

## Cleaning the DADF Feed Roller

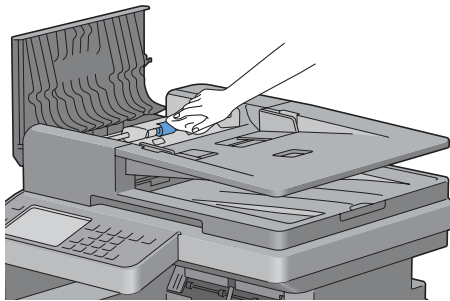
Keeping the DADF feed roller clean helps ensure the best possible copies. It is recommended to clean the DADF feed roller at regular intervals.

- 1 Open the DADF cover.



- 2 Wipe the DADF feed roller with a dry soft lint-free cloth or paper towel until it is clean.


If the DADF feed roller gets soiled with ink stains, paper from the DADF may also be soiled. In this case, slightly dampen a soft lint-free cloth or paper towel with a neutral detergent or water, and then remove the contamination from the DADF feed roller until it is clean and dry.



## Adjusting Color Registration



To adjust the color registration when you first install the printer or after moving it to a new location, follow the procedure below.

- Printing the Color Registration Chart
- Determining Values
- Entering Values

 **NOTE:** If the Panel Lock Control is set to Enable, you need to enter the four digit password to enter the Admin Settings menu.

### Printing the Color Registration Chart


#### When Using the Operator Panel

- 1 Press the  (Information) button.
- 2 Select the Tools tab, and then select Admin Settings.
- 3 Select Maintenance.
- 4 Select  until Color Reg Adjust appears, and then select Color Reg Adjust.

- 5 Select Color Regi Chart.
- 6 Select Print.  
The color registration chart is printed.

### When Using the Tool Box

- 1 Click Start→ All Programs→ Dell Printers→ Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer → Tool Box.

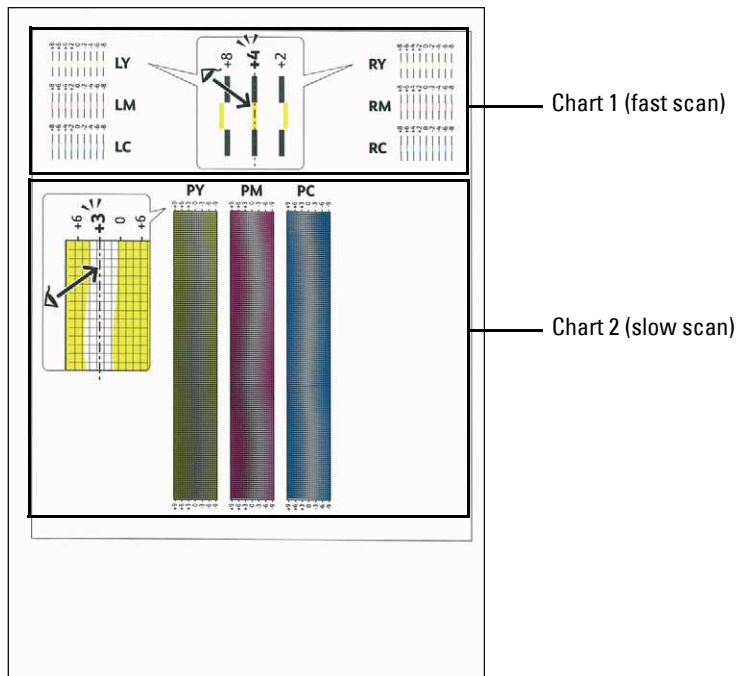
 **NOTE:** For details about starting the **Tool Box**, see "Starting the Tool Box."

The **Tool Box** opens.

- 2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.
- 3 Select **Service Tools** from the list at the left side of the page.  
The **Service Tools** page is displayed.
- 4 Click **Start** next to **Color Regi Chart** under **Color Registration Adjustments**.  
The color registration chart is printed.

### Determining Values

On the color registration chart, there are two types of charts: Chart 1 (fast scan) and Chart 2 (slow scan).



The Chart 1 is used to adjust the color registration for the fast scan direction, which is vertical to paper feed direction. The Chart 2 is used to adjust the color registration for the slow scan direction, which is horizontal to paper feed direction.

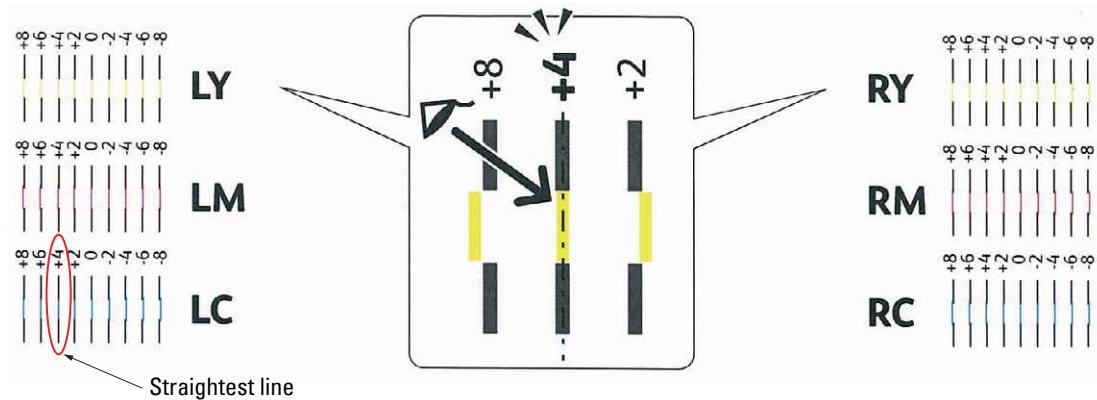
The following sections explain how to determine the adjustment values for the fast scan and the slow scan using Chart 1 and Chart 2.

### Fast Scan

On the Chart 1 of the color registration chart, find the straightest lines where the two black lines and the colored line are most closely aligned for each color (LY, LM, LC, RY, RM, and RC). If you find the straightest line, make a note of the value (-8 to +8) indicated by the straightest line for each color.

When the value is 0 for each color, you do not need to adjust the color registration for the fast scan.

When the value is not 0, enter the value using the procedure in "Entering Values."



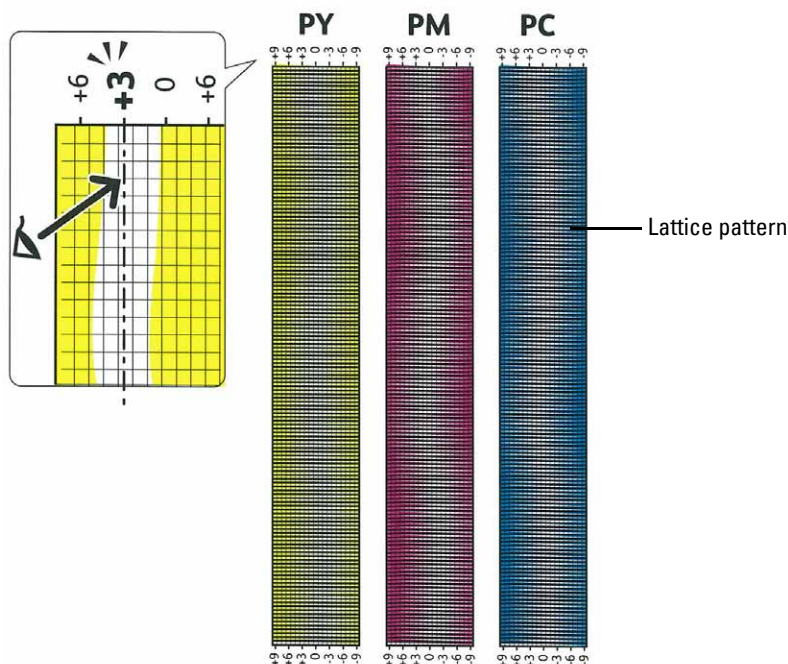
**NOTE:** If it is difficult to choose only one value, as in the case that there seem to be two values closest to a straight line, take the value between the two. For example, in the figure above, -6 and -8 are the values closest to a straight line, so you would enter the value -7.

### Slow Scan

On the Chart 2 of the color registration chart, find the medium line within the range of white area for each color pattern (PY, PM, and PC). If you find the medium line, make a note of the value (-9 to +9) indicated by the medium line for each color.

When the value is 0 for each color, you do not need to adjust the color registration for the slow scan.




When the value is not 0, enter the value using the procedure in "Entering Values."



## Entering Values

### When Using the Operator Panel

Using the operator panel, enter the values found in the color registration chart to make adjustments.

- 1 Press the  (Information) button.
  - 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Admin Settings**.
  - 3 Select **Maintenance**.
  - 4 Select  until **Color Reg Adjust** appears, and then select **Color Reg Adjust**.
  - 5 Select **Enter Number**.
  - 6 Select **-** or **+** to specify the values for left colors (LY, LM, and LC), and then select **Next**.
  - 7 Select **-** or **+** to specify the values for right colors (RY, RM, and RC), and then select **Next**.
  - 8 Select **-** or **+** to specify the values for process colors (PY, PM, and PC), and then select **OK**.
-  **NOTE:** The registration values are always shown as 0 the next time you enter the menu.
- 9 Select **Color Regi Chart**.
  - 10 Select **Print**.

The color registration chart with the new values is printed.

If the straightest line is not at the value of 0, adjust the values again. Checking the charts before and after the adjustments will help you to determine the values to enter.

## When Using the Tool Box

Using the **Tool Box**, enter the values that you found in the color registration chart to make adjustments.

- 1 Click **Start**→ **All Programs**→ **Dell Printers**→ **Dell C3765dnf Multifunction Color Laser Printer**→ **Tool Box**.



**NOTE:** For details about starting the **Tool Box**, see "Starting the Tool Box."

The **Tool Box** opens.

- 2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.
- 3 Select **Service Tools** from the list at the left side of the page.  
The **Service Tools** page is displayed.
- 4 Specify each value for process, left, and right colors in **Enter Number** under **Color Registration Adjustments**, and then click **Apply New Settings**.
- 5 Click **Start** next to **Color Regi Chart** under **Color Registration Adjustments**.  
The color registration chart is printed with the new values.
- 6 Adjust till all straight lines are at the value of 0. Show image of before and after adjustment will help.

After printing the color registration chart, do not turn off the printer until the printer motor has stopped running.



**NOTE:** If 0 is not next to the straightest lines, determine the values and adjust the printer again.

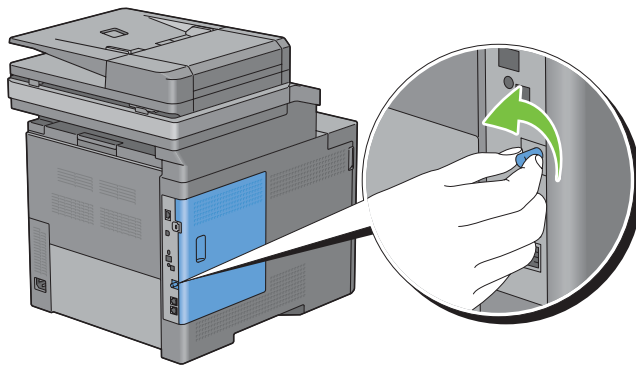
## Removing Options

If the printer location needs to change or the printer and print media handling options need to be shipped to a new location, all print media handling options must be removed from the printer. For shipping, pack the printer and print media handling options securely to avoid damage.

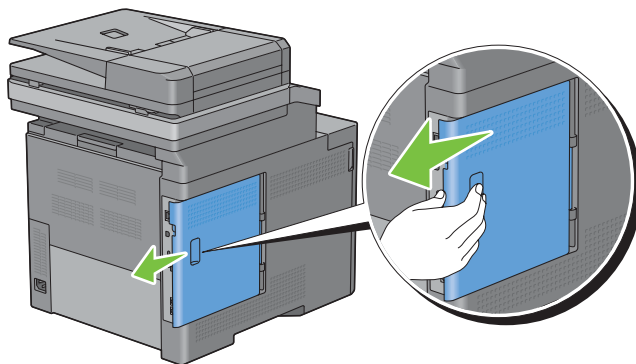
### Removing the Optional Memory Module

**⚠ WARNING:** When you remove the optional memory module, be sure to turn off the printer, unplug the power cable, and disconnect all cables from the back of the printer before starting these tasks.

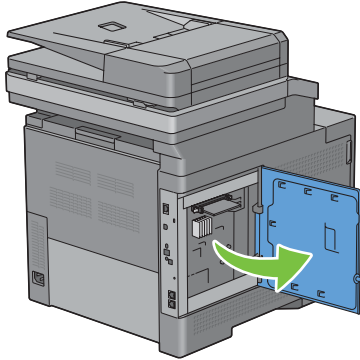
- 1 Ensure that the printer is turned off.
- 2 Turn the screw on the left side cover counterclockwise.



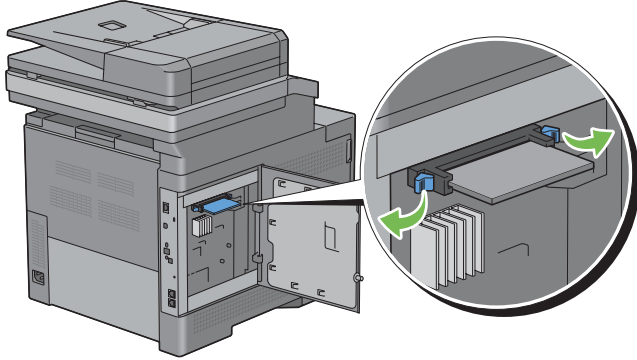
- 3 Slide the left side cover towards the back of the printer.



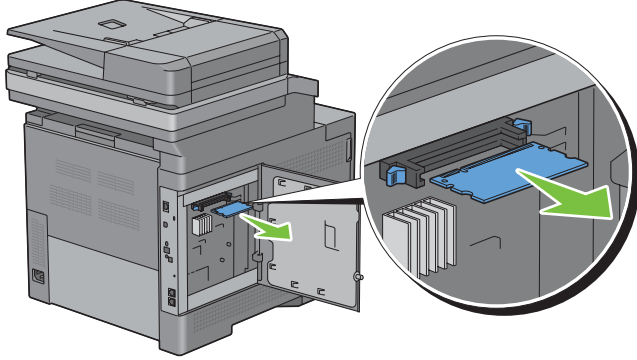
4 Open the left side cover completely.



5 Push the clips on both sides of the slot outward to raise the memory module up.



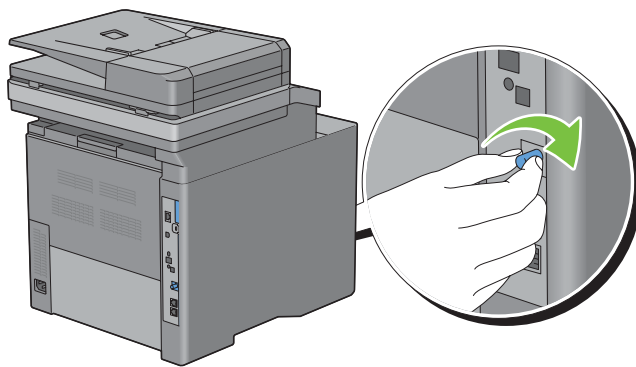
6 Hold the memory module and pull it straight out.



7 Close the left side cover, and then slide it towards the front of the printer.



8 Turn the screw clockwise.

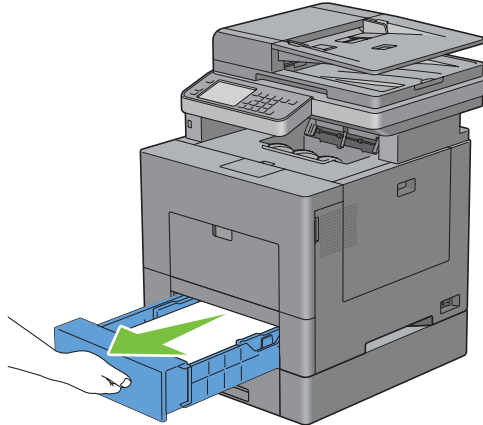


9 Turn on the printer.

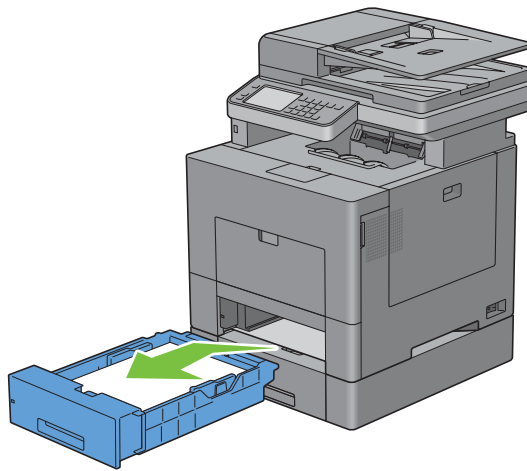
## Removing the Optional 550-Sheet Feeder

**⚠ WARNING:** When you remove the optional 550-sheet feeder (Tray2), be sure to turn off the printer, unplug the power cable, and disconnect all cables from the back of the printer before starting these tasks.

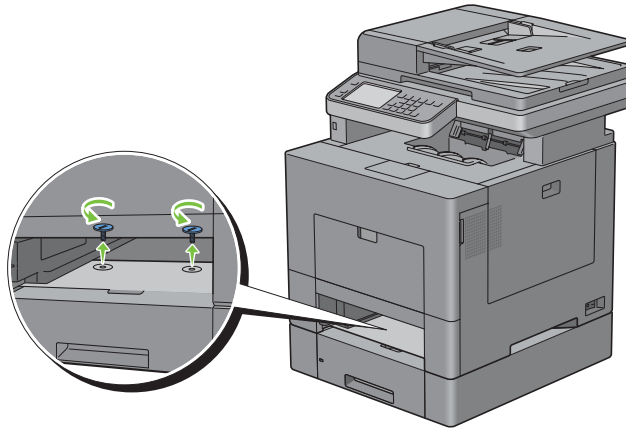
- 1 Ensure that the printer is turned off, and then disconnect all cables from the back of the printer.
- 2 Pull the tray1 out of the printer about 200 mm.



- 3 Hold tray1 with both hands, and remove it from the printer.

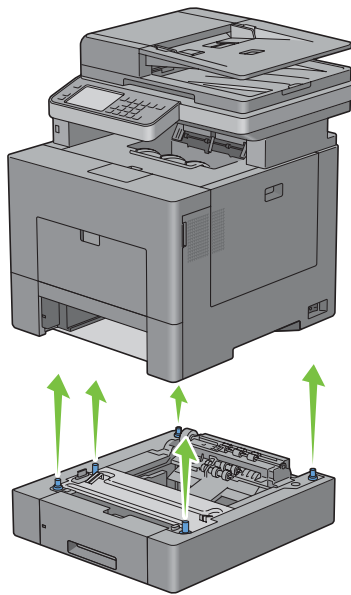


- 4 Remove the two screws joining the printer and the optional 550-sheet feeder by unscrewing them with a coin or similar object.

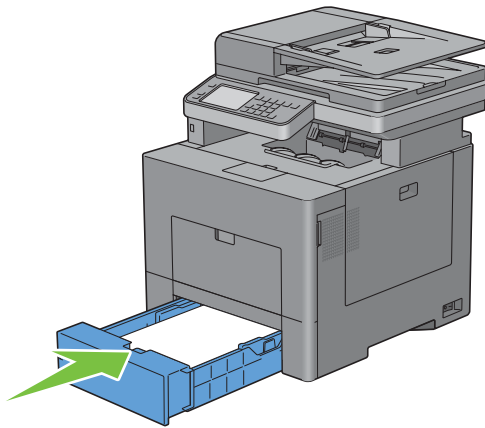


- 5 Gently lift the printer off the optional 550-sheet feeder, and place it on a level surface.

 **WARNING: Two people are required to lift the printer.**



6 Insert the tray into the printer, and push until it stops.



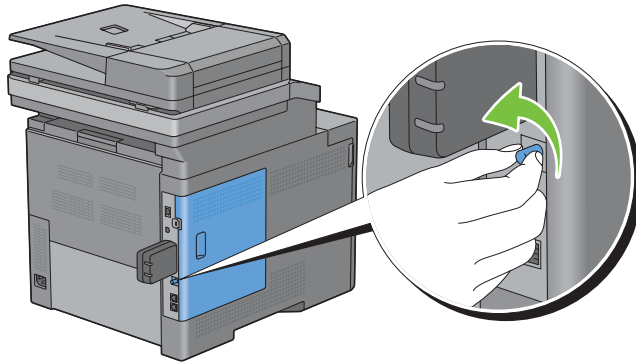
**⚠ CAUTION: Do not use excessive force on the tray. Doing so could damage the tray or the inside of the printer.**

7 Re-connect all cables into the back of the printer and turn on the printer.

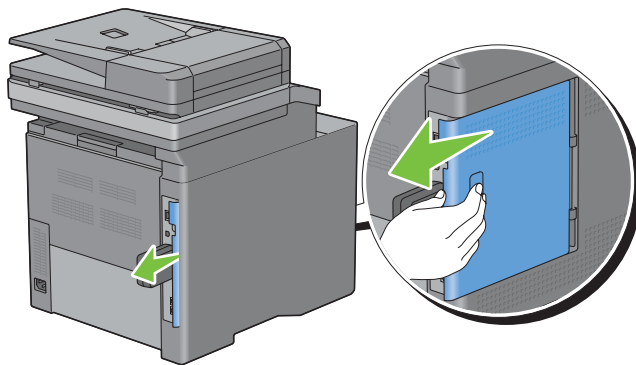
## Removing the Optional Wireless Adapter

**⚠ WARNING:** When you remove the optional wireless adapter, be sure to turn off the printer, unplug the power cable, and disconnect all cables from the back of the printer before starting these tasks.

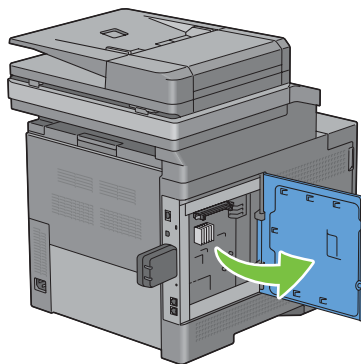
- 1 Ensure that the printer is turned off.
- 2 Turn the screw on the left side cover counterclockwise to remove it.



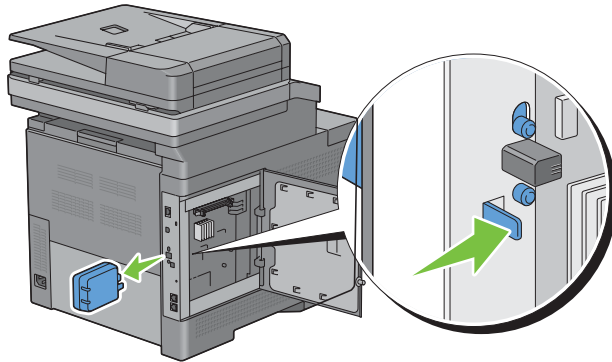
- 3 Slide the left side cover towards the back of the printer.



- 4 Open the left side cover completely.



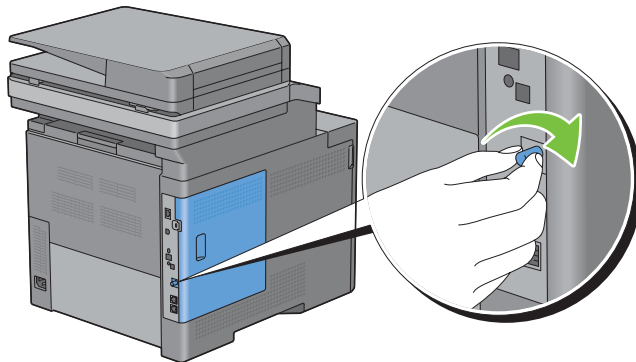
- 5 Remove the wireless adapter from the printer by releasing the adapter's hook while pushing the wireless adapter towards the front of the printer.



- 6 Close the left side cover, and then slide it towards the front of the printer.



- 7 Turn the screw clockwise.

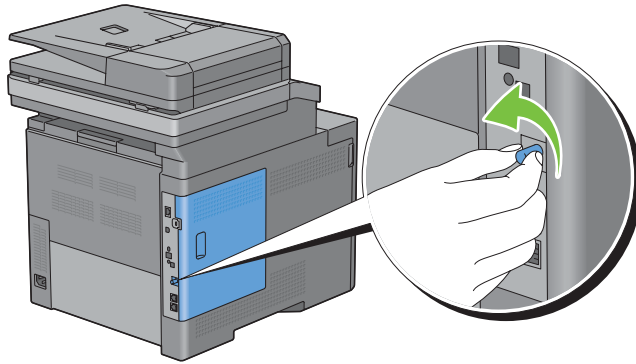


- 8 Turn on the printer.

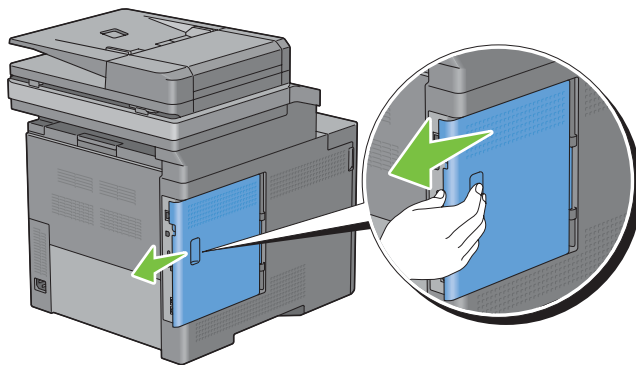
## Removing the Optional Hard Disk

**⚠ WARNING:** When you remove the optional wireless adapter, be sure to turn off the printer, unplug the power cable, and disconnect all cables from the back of the printer before starting these tasks.

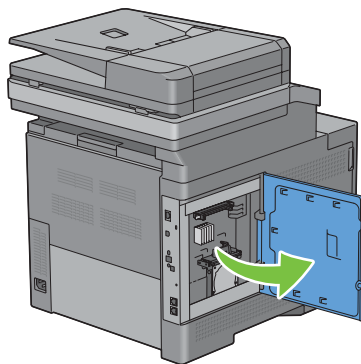
- 1 Ensure that the printer is turned off.
- 2 Turn the screw on the control board counterclockwise



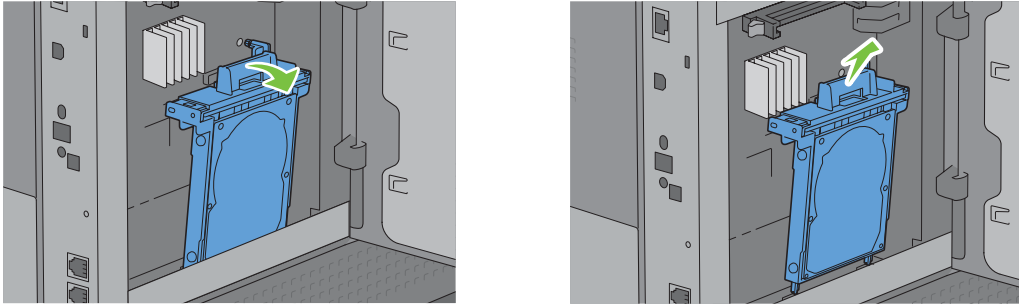
- 3 Slide the left side cover towards the back of the printer.



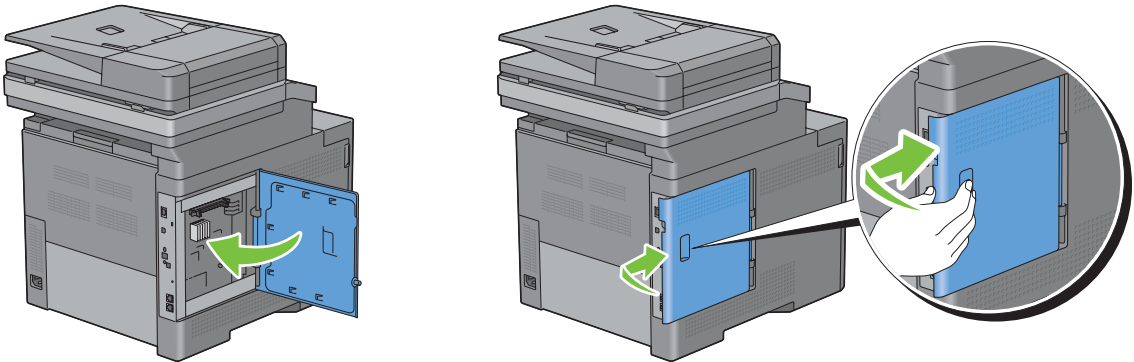
- 4 Open the left side cover completely.



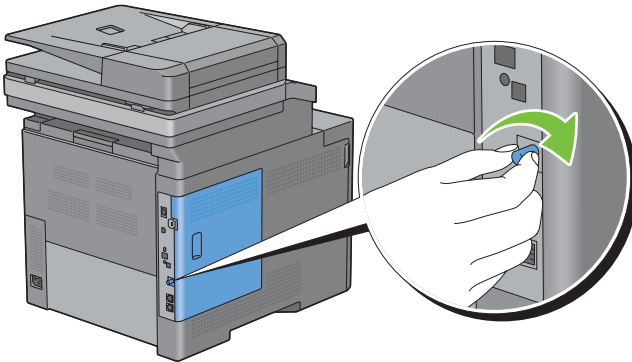
- 5 Remove the hard disk from the printer by releasing the hook of hard disk.



- 6 Close the left side cover, and then slide it towards the front of the printer.




- 7 Turn the screw clockwise.



- 8 Turn on the printer.

## Clearing Jams

Careful selection of appropriate print media and proper loading allow you to avoid paper jams. See "Print Media Guidelines" for more information.

 **NOTE:** Before buying large quantities of any print media, it is recommended to try a sample first.

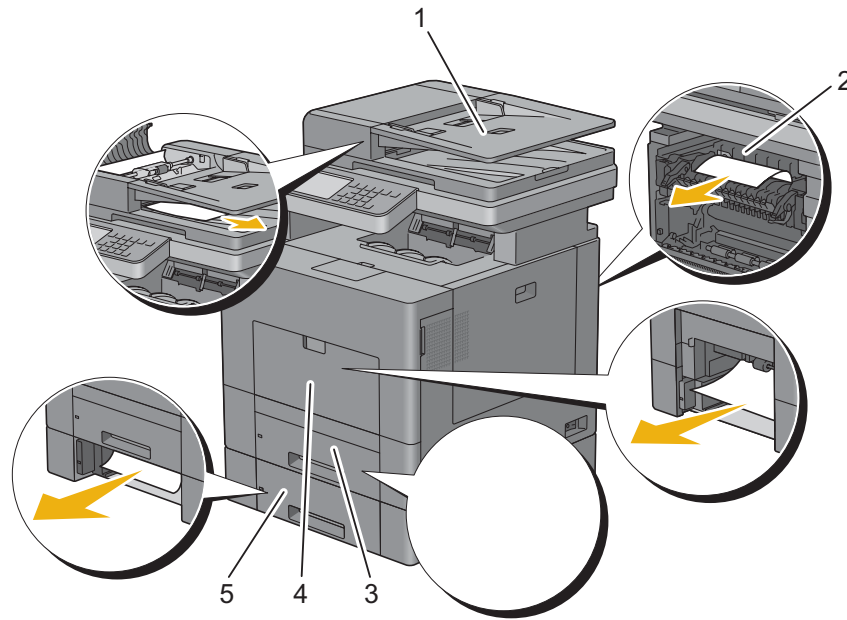
### Avoiding Jams

- Use only recommended print media. See "Print Media Guidelines" for more information.
- See "Loading Print Media in Tray1 and the Optional 550-Sheet Feeder" and "Loading Print Media in the MPF" to load print media properly.
- Do not overload the print media sources. Ensure that the print media stack height does not exceed the maximum height indicated by the load-line labels in the tray.
- Do not load wrinkled, creased, damp, or curled print media.
- Flex, fan, and straighten print media before you load it. If a jam occurs with print media, try feeding one sheet at a time through the multipurpose feeder (MPF).
- Do not use print media that you have cut or trimmed yourself.
- Do not mix print media sizes, weights, or types in the same print media source.
- Ensure that the recommended print side is face up when you insert the print media.
- Keep print media stored in an acceptable environment. For more information, see "Storing Print Media."
- Do not remove the feeding tray during a print job.
- Push tray1 or the optional 550-sheet feeder (tray2) in firmly after loading.
- Ensure that all cables that connect to the printer are correctly attached.
- Overtightening the guides may cause jams.
- Wipe the retard rollers in the tray or MPF with a cloth that is slightly dampened with water if jams caused by misfeeding paper occur frequently.

## Identifying the Location of Paper Jams

**⚠ WARNING:** Do not attempt to clear any jams using tools or instruments. This may permanently damage the printer.


The following illustration shows where paper jams may occur along the print media path.



1	Duplex Automatic Document Feeder (DADF)
2	Fusing Unit
3	Tray 1
4	MPF
5	Optional 550-Sheet Feeder

## Clearing Paper Jams From the DADF

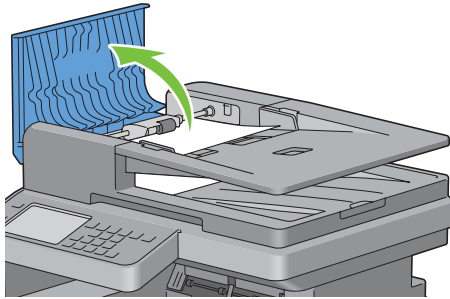
When a document jams while it passes through the DADF, remove the jam according to the following procedure.

 **NOTE:** To prevent document jams, use the document glass for thick, thin, or mixed documents.

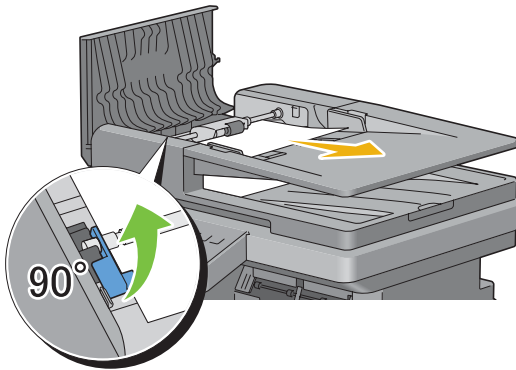
**1** Remove the remaining documents from the DADF.

If the document is jammed in the paper feed area:

**a** Open the DADF cover.

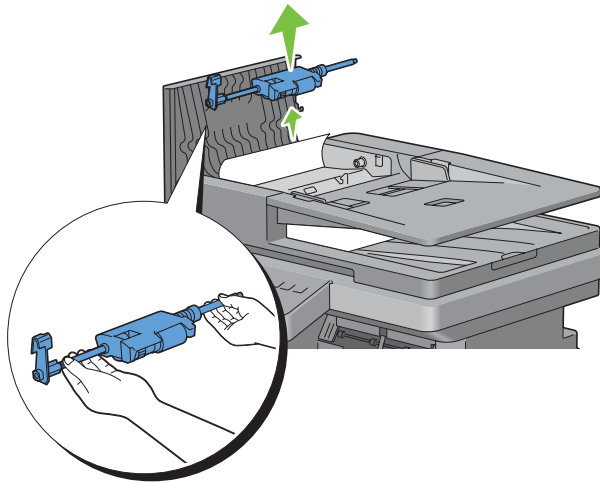


**b** Lift the release lever 90 degrees and remove the jammed document by carefully pulling it to the right.

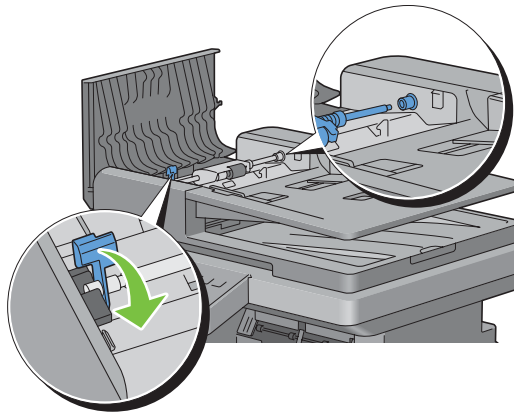


If you find it difficult to pull the document:

- c Remove the DADF feed roller assembly and remove the document by gently pulling it straight up.

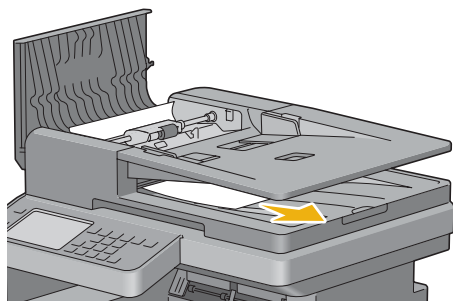


- d Insert the DADF feed roller assembly and press down the release lever.

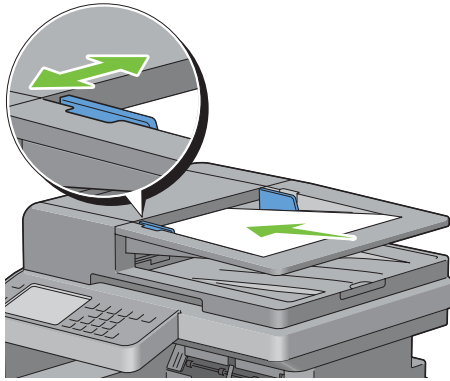


If the document is jammed in the paper exit area:

- e Remove the jammed document from the document output tray.



- f Close the DADF cover, and then load the documents back into the DADF.



**NOTE:** Ensure that you adjust the document guides before printing a Legal-size document.

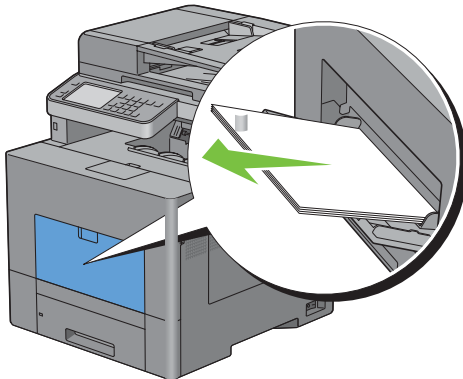
- 2 If you cannot see the jammed document or the jammed document do not move when you pulled, open the document cover.
- 3 Remove the document from the white sheet by carefully pulling it to the right.
- 4 Close the document cover, and then load the documents back into the DADF.
- 5 Press the **▶** (Start) button.

## Clearing Paper Jams From the MPF

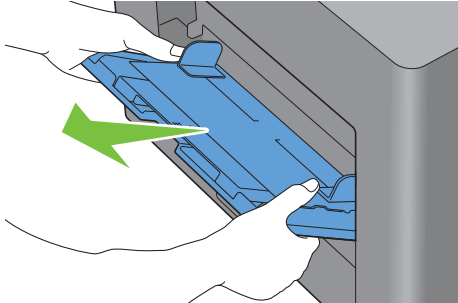
**NOTE:** To resolve the error displayed on the touch panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

**If error code: 050-112 appears:**

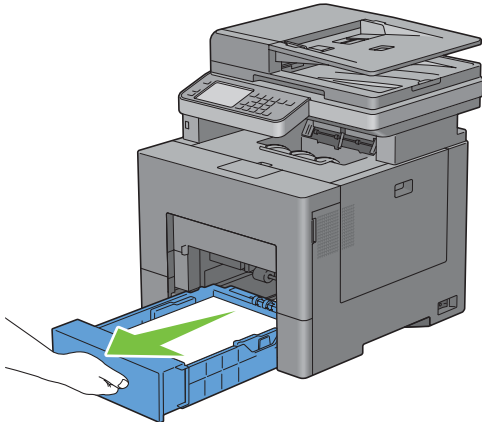
- 1 Remove any paper loaded on the MPF



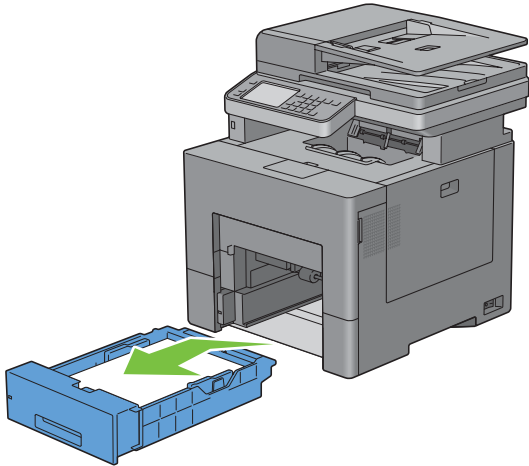
2 Grasp both sides of the MPF, and then pull it out of the printer.



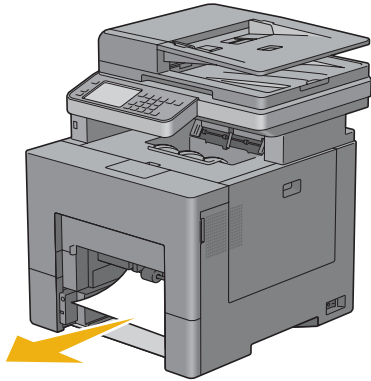
3 Pull tray1 out of the printer about 200 mm.



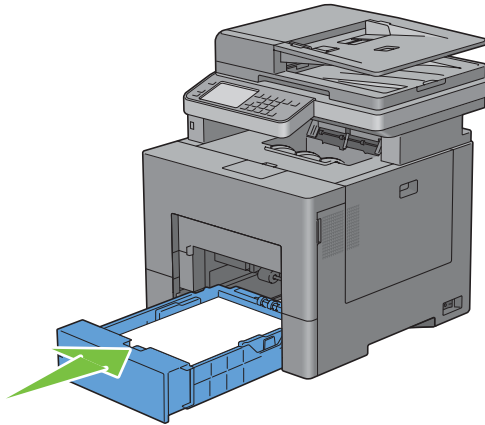
4 Hold tray with both hands, and remove it from the printer.



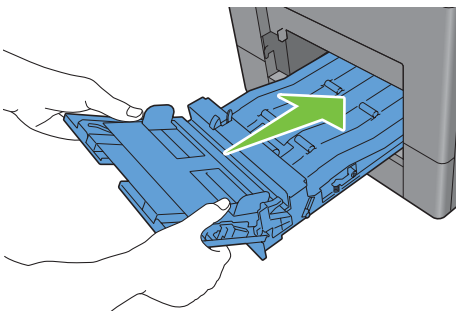
5 Remove the jammed paper.



6 Insert tray 1 into the printer, and push until it stops.




7 Insert the MPF into the printer.



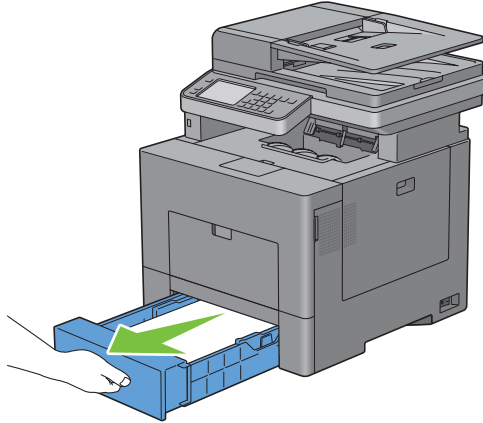
**If error code: 050-129 appears:**

Follow the instructions in "If error code: 050-129 appears:" to clear paper jams.

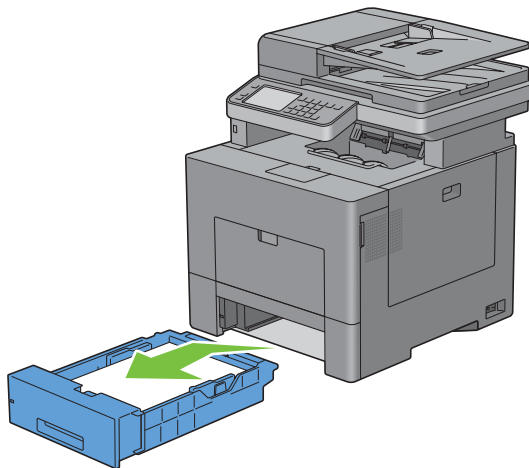
## Clearing Paper Jams From Tray1

 **NOTE:** To resolve the error displayed on the touch panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

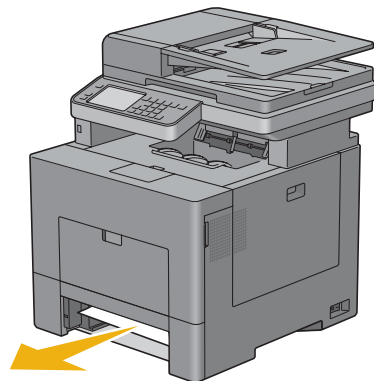
- 1 Pull tray1 out of the printer about 200 mm.



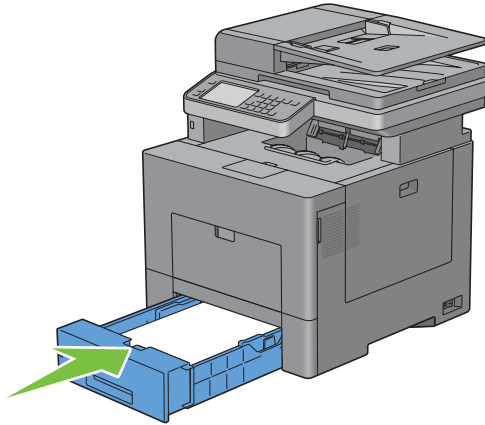
- 2 Hold tray1 with both hands, and remove it from the printer.



- 3 Remove the jammed paper.



- 4 Insert tray1 into the printer, and push until it stops.



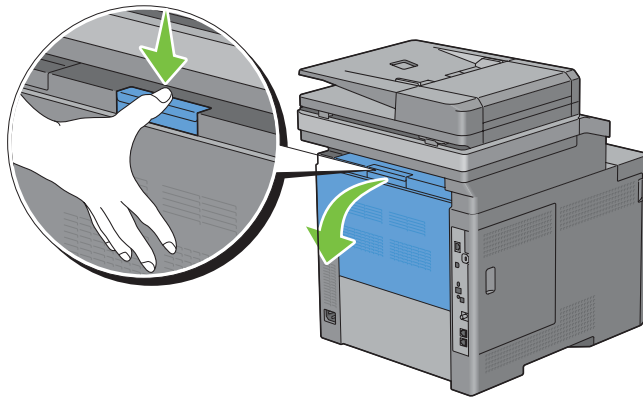
- 5 Press the ▶ (Start) button.

## Clearing Paper Jams From the Fusing Unit

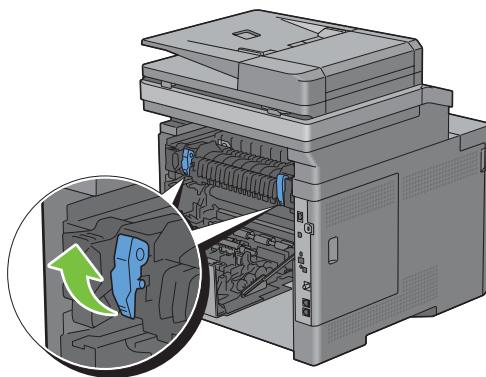
 **NOTE:** To resolve the error displayed on the touch panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

**If error code: 050-111 appears:**

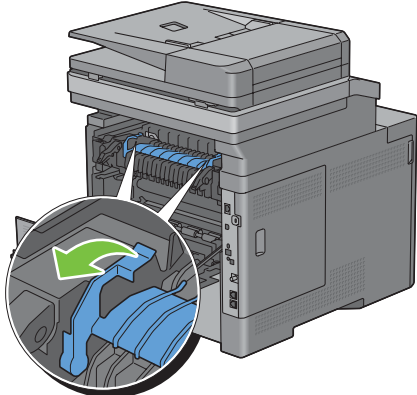
- 1 Push down the latch to open the rear cover.



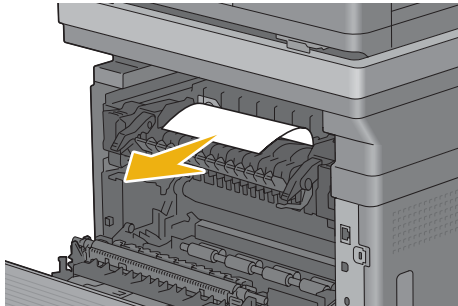
- 2 Lift the levers on both sides of the fusing unit.



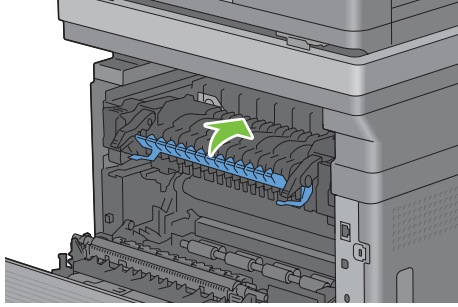
3 Hold and lower the tab to open the inner part.



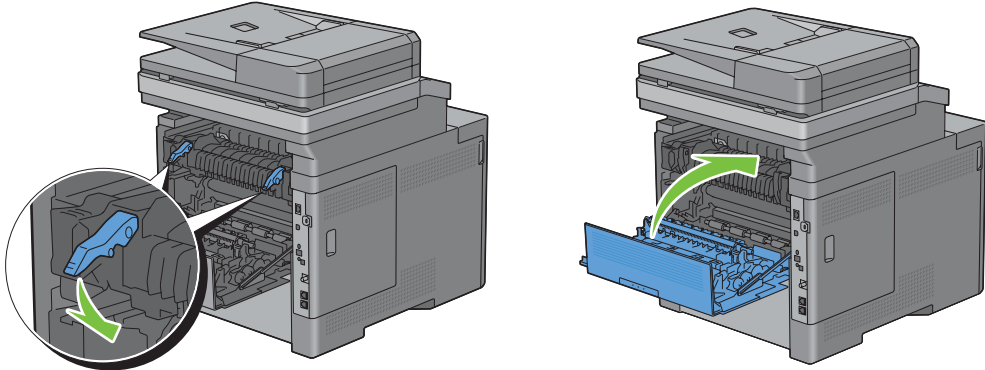
4 Remove the jammed paper.



5 Replace the inner part.

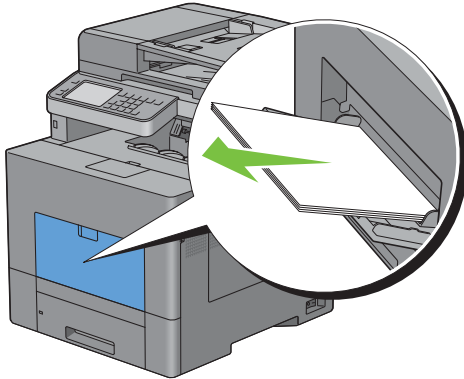


6 Press down the levers on both sides of the fusing unit, and then close the rear cover.

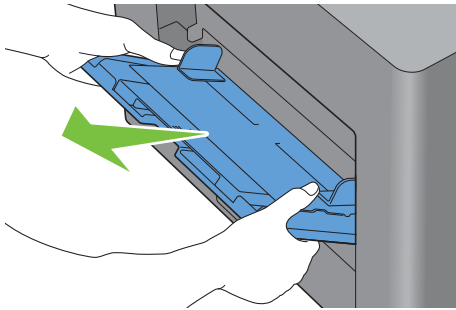


**If error code: 050-129 appears:**

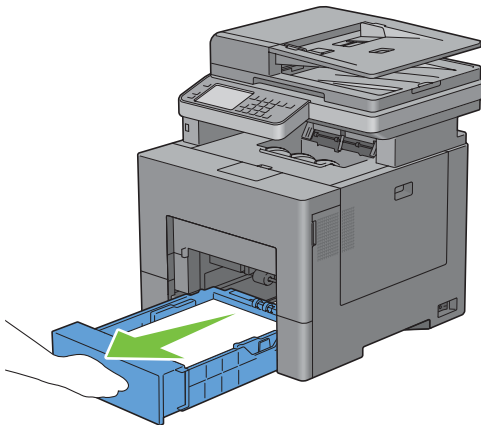
- 1 Remove any paper loaded on the MPF



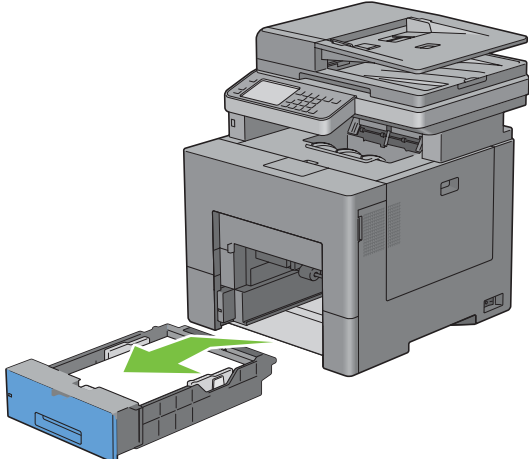
- 2 Grasp both sides of the MPF and then pull it out of the printer.



- 3 Pull tray1 out of the printer about 200 mm.

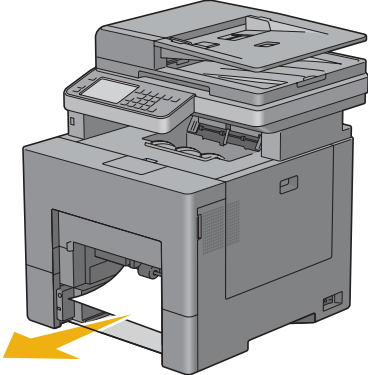


4 Hold tray with both hands, and remove it from the printer.

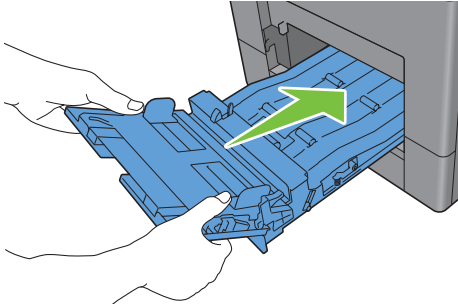
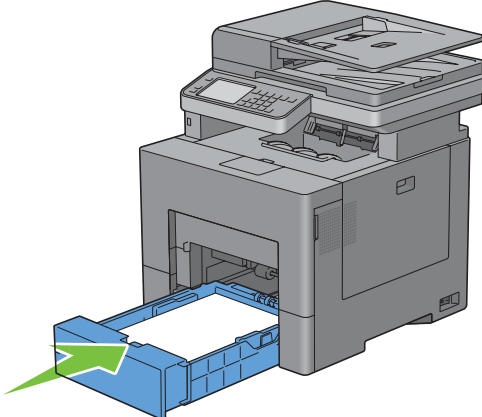


If you can see the jammed paper:

a Remove the jammed paper.



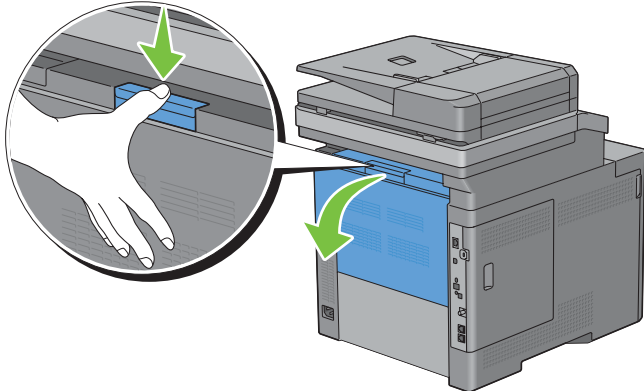
b Reinsert tray and the MPF into the printer.



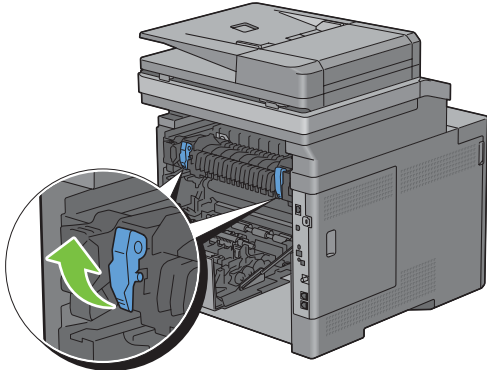
If you cannot see the jammed paper:

a Go to the next step.

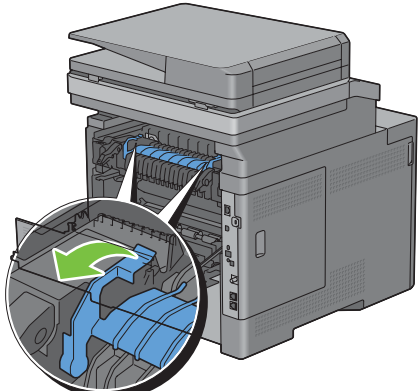
5 Push down the latch to open the rear cover.



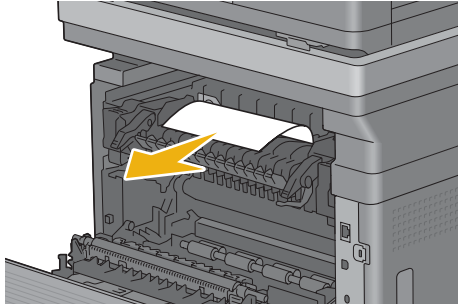
6 Lift the levers on both sides of the fusing unit.



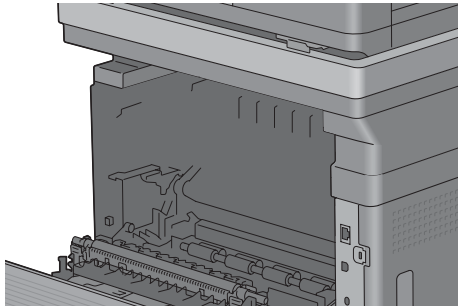
7 Hold and lower the tab to open the inner part.



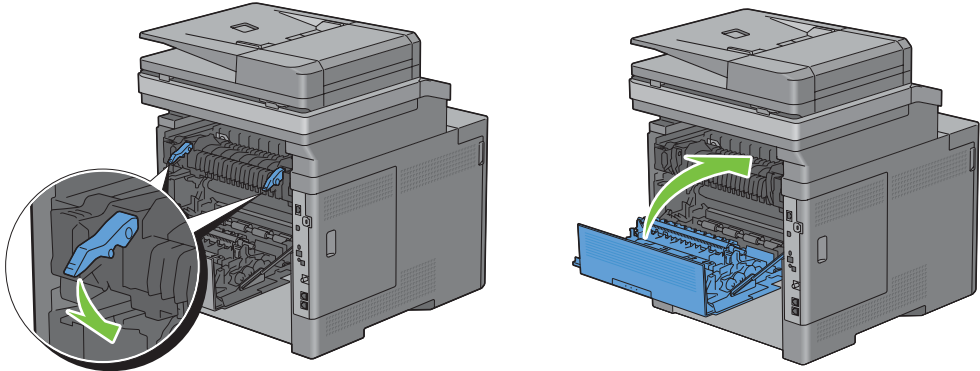
8 Remove the jammed paper.



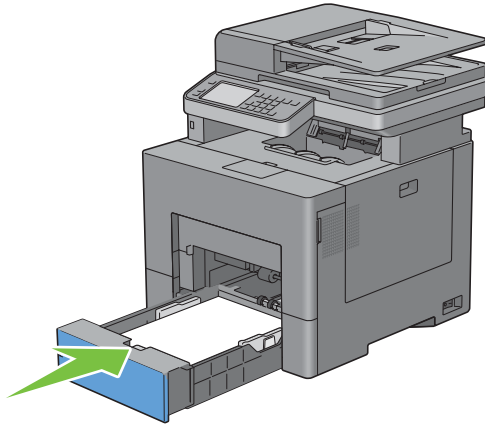
9 Replace the inner part.



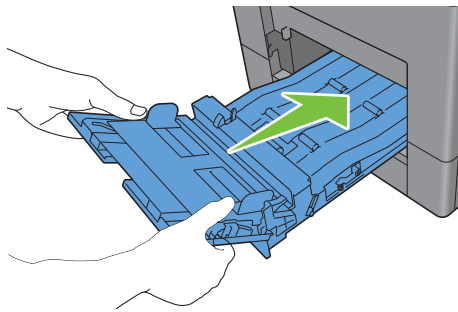
10 Press down the levers on both sides of the fusing unit, and then close the rear cover.



- 11 Insert tray1 into the printer, and push until it stops.



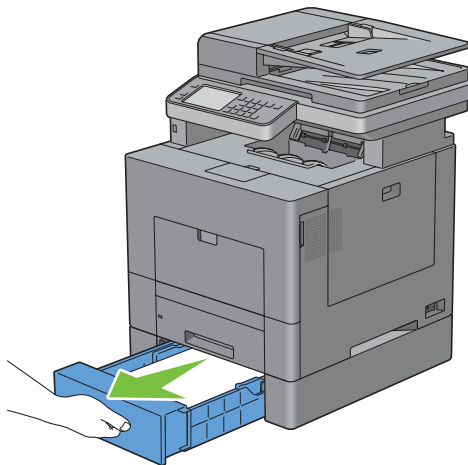
- 12 Insert the MPF into the printer.



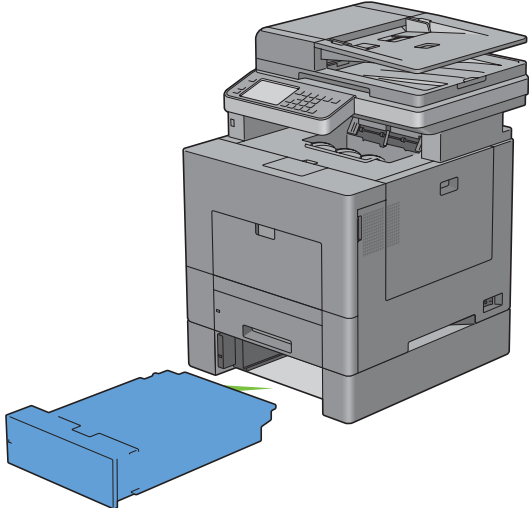
## Clearing Paper Jams From the Optional 550-Sheet Feeder

**NOTE:** To resolve the error displayed on the touch panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

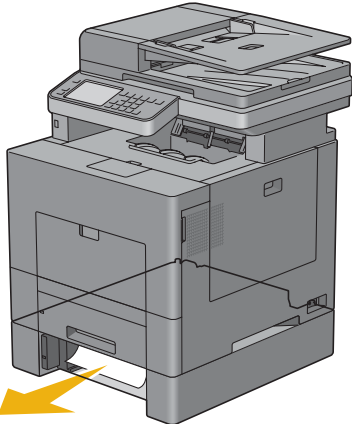
- 1 Pull the optional 550-sheet feeder out of the printer about 200 mm.



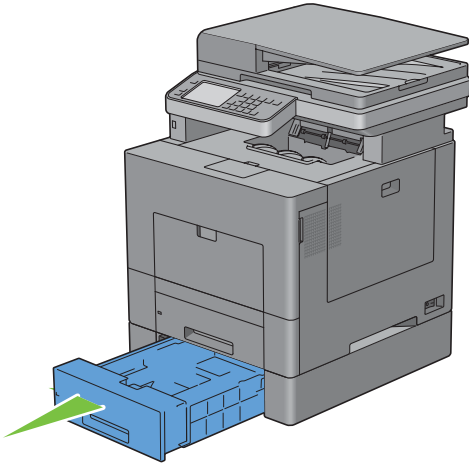
2 Hold the optional 550-sheet feeder with both hands, and remove it from the printer.



3 Remove the jammed paper.



4 Insert the optional 550-sheet feeder into the printer, and push until it stops.



# Troubleshooting

33 Troubleshooting Guide .....	531
--------------------------------	-----




# Troubleshooting Guide

## Basic Printer Problems

Some printer problems can be easily resolved. If a problem occurs with your printer, check each of the following:

- The power cable is plugged into the printer and a properly grounded electrical outlet.
- The printer is turned on.
- The electrical outlet is not turned off at any switch or breaker.
- Other electrical equipment plugged into the outlet is working.
- All options are properly installed.


If you have checked all of the above and still have a problem, turn off the printer, wait for 10 seconds, and then turn on the printer. This often fixes the problem.



 **NOTE:** If error messages are displayed on the touch panel or on your computer screen, follow the on-screen instructions to resolve the printer problems. For details about error messages and error codes, see "Understanding Printer Messages."

## Display Problems

Problem	Action
Menu settings changed from the operator panel have no effect.	Settings in the software program, the printer driver, or the printer utilities are overriding the settings made on the operator panel.


## Printing Problems

 **NOTE:** If Panel Lock Control is set to Enable, you need to enter the four digit password to enter the Admin Settings menu.

Problem	Action
Job did not print or incorrect characters printed.	Ensure that the top menu appears on the touch panel before you send a job to print. Press the  (Home) button to return to the top menu.
	Ensure that the print media is loaded in the printer. Press the  (Home) button to return to the top menu.
	Verify that the printer is using the correct page description language (PDL).
	Verify that you are using the correct printer driver.
	Ensure that the correct USB or Ethernet cable is securely connected to the printer.
	Verify that the correct print media size is selected.
	If you are using a print spooler, verify that the spooler has not stalled.
	Check the printer's interface from the Admin Settings.
	Determine the host interface you are using. Print a panel settings report to verify that the current interface settings are correct.

<b>Problem</b>	<b>Action</b>
Print media misfeeds or multiple feeds occur.	<p>Ensure that the print media you are using meets the specifications for your printer. See "Supported Paper Types" for more information.</p> <p>Fan the print media before loading it.</p> <p>Ensure that the print media is loaded correctly.</p> <p>Ensure that the width and length guides of the print media sources are adjusted correctly.</p> <p>Ensure that tray1, the optional 550-sheet feeder (tray2), or the multi-purpose feeder (MPF) unit is securely inserted.</p> <p>Do not overload tray1, the optional 550-sheet feeder, or the MPF.</p> <p>Do not force print media into the MPF when you load it; otherwise, it may skew or buckle.</p> <p>Ensure that the print media is not curled.</p> <p>Face the recommended print side up. See "Loading Print Media in Tray1 and the Optional 550-Sheet Feeder" for more information.</p> <p>Turn the print media over or around and try printing again to see if feeding improves.</p> <p>Do not mix print media types.</p> <p>Do not mix reams of print media.</p> <p>Remove the top and bottom curled sheets of a ream before loading the print media.</p> <p>Load print media only when tray1, the optional 550-sheet feeder, or the MPF is empty.</p> <p>Wipe the retard rollers in tray1, the optional 550-sheet feeder, or the MPF with a cloth moistened with water.</p>
The envelope is creased after printed.	Make sure that the envelope is loaded in the MPF as instructed in "Loading an Envelope in the MPF."
Page breaks in unexpected places.	Increase the value for <b>Time-Out</b> using the operator panel, the <b>Tool Box</b> , or <b>Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool</b> .
Print media does not stack neatly in the output tray.	Turn the print media stack over in tray1 or the MPF.
Cannot print from tray1 or the optional 550-sheet feeder because the print media in tray1 or the optional 550-sheet feeder is curled.	Load the print media into the MPF.

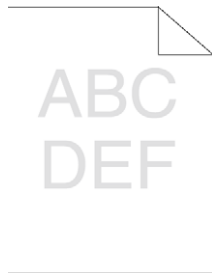
## Print Quality Problems

 **NOTE:** Some of the following procedures that use the **Tool Box** can also be performed using the operator panel or **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. For information on how to use the operator panel and **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, see "Understanding the Printer Menus" and "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."

- The output is too light
- Toner smears or print comes off
- Random spots/Blurred images
- The entire output is blank
- Streaks appear on the output
- Part or the entire output is black

- Pitched color dots
- Vertical blanks
- Ghosting
- Light-induced fatigue
- Fog
- Bead-Carry-Out (BCO)
- Jagged characters
- Banding
- Auger mark
- Wrinkled/Stained paper
- Damage on the leading edge of paper

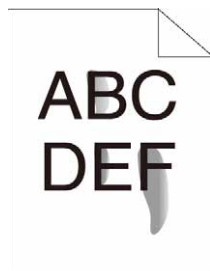
### The output is too light



Action	Yes	No
<p>1 The toner cartridges may be low or need to be replaced. Confirm the amount of toner left in each toner cartridge.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a Check the toner level in the <b>Status</b> tab in the Status Monitor.</li> <li>b Replace the toner cartridges as necessary.</li> </ul> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
<p>2 If you are using non-Dell brand toner cartridges, enable the <b>Non-Dell Toner</b> option.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a Launch the <b>Tool Box</b>, and click <b>Service Tools</b> on the <b>Printer Maintenance</b> tab.</li> <li>b Ensure that the <b>On</b> check box under <b>Non-Dell Toner</b> is selected.</li> </ul> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.
<p>3 Disable the <b>Toner Saver</b> in the printer driver.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a On the <b>Others</b> tab, ensure that <b>Off</b> is selected in the <b>Toner Saver</b> drop-down menu.</li> </ul> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 4.
<p>4 The print media surface may be uneven. Try changing the <b>Paper Type</b> setting in the printer driver. For example, change the plain paper to thick.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a On the <b>General</b> tab, change the <b>Paper Type</b> setting.</li> </ul> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 5.

Action	Yes	No
<p>5 Verify that the correct print media is being used. See "Supported Paper Types." If not, use the print media recommended for the printer.</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 6.
<p>6 Clean inside the printer by using the cleaning rod. See "Cleaning the Raster Optical Scanner (ROS) Window."</p> <p><b>a</b> After the cleaning is completed, click <b>Chart Print</b> on the <b>Diagnosis</b> tab.</p> <p><b>b</b> Click <b>Pitch Configuration Chart</b>.</p> <p>The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 7.
<p>7 Replace the drum cartridges.</p> <p><b>a</b> Replace the drum cartridges. See "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."</p> <p><b>b</b> After you replace the drum cartridges, click <b>Chart Print</b> on the <b>Diagnosis</b> tab.</p> <p><b>c</b> Click <b>4 Colors Configuration Chart</b>.</p> <p>The 4 Colors Configuration Chart is printed.</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

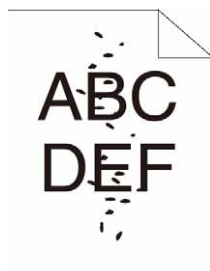
### Toner smears or print comes off



Action	Yes	No
<p>1 The print media surface may be uneven. Try changing the <b>Paper Type</b> setting in the printer driver. For example, change the plain paper to thick.</p> <p><b>a</b> On the <b>General</b> tab, change the <b>Paper Type</b> setting.</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
<p>2 Verify that the correct print media is being used. See "Supported Paper Types." If not, use the print media recommended for the printer.</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.
<p>3 Replace the drum cartridges.</p> <p><b>a</b> Replace the drum cartridges. See "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."</p> <p><b>b</b> After you replace the drum cartridges, test print your document again.</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 4.

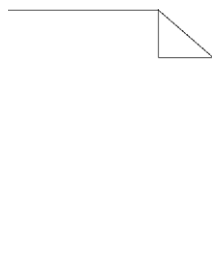
<b>Action</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>No</b>
<p>4 Replace the fusing unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a Replace the fusing unit. See "Replacing the Fusing Unit."</li> <li>b After you replace the fusing unit, click <b>Chart Print</b> on the <b>Diagnosis</b> tab.</li> <li>c Click <b>Pitch Configuration Chart</b>.</li> </ul> <p>The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 5.
<p>5 Replace the transfer belt unit, the 2nd Belt Transfer Roller (2nd BTR), and the retard roller.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a Replace the transfer belt unit, the 2nd BTR, and the retard roller. See "Replacing the Transfer Belt Unit, the 2nd Belt Transfer Roller (2nd BTR), and the Retard Roller."</li> <li>b After you replace the transfer belt unit, the 2nd BTR, and the retard roller, click <b>Chart Print</b> on the <b>Diagnosis</b> tab.</li> <li>c Click <b>Pitch Configuration Chart</b>.</li> </ul> <p>The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

### Random spots/Blurred images



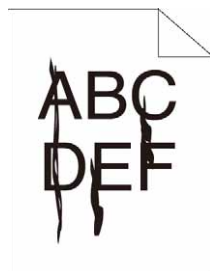
<b>Action</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>No</b>
<p>1 Ensure that the toner cartridges are installed correctly. See "Installing a Toner Cartridge."</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
<p>2 Ensure that the drum cartridges are installed correctly. See "Installing a Drum Cartridge."</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.
<p>3 Replace the drum cartridges.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a Replace the drum cartridges. See "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."</li> <li>b After you replace the drum cartridges, click <b>Chart Print</b> on the <b>Diagnosis</b> tab.</li> <li>c Click <b>Pitch Configuration Chart</b>.</li> </ul> <p>The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

## The entire output is blank



Action	Yes	No
<p>1 The toner cartridges may be low or need to be replaced. Confirm the amount of toner left in each toner cartridge.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a Check the toner level in the <b>Status</b> tab in the Status Monitor.</li> <li>b Replace the toner cartridges as necessary.</li> </ul> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
<p>2 If you are using non-Dell brand toner cartridges, enable the <b>Non-Dell Toner</b> option.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a Launch the <b>Tool Box</b>, and click <b>Service Tools</b> on the <b>Printer Maintenance</b> tab.</li> <li>b Ensure that the <b>On</b> check box under <b>Non-Dell Toner</b> is selected.</li> </ul> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.
<p>3 Disable the <b>Toner Saver</b> in the printer driver.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a On the <b>Others</b> tab, ensure that <b>Off</b> is selected in the <b>Toner Saver</b> drop-down menu.</li> </ul> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 4.
<p>4 The print media surface may be uneven. Try changing the <b>Paper Type</b> setting in the printer driver. For example, change the plain paper to thick.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a On the <b>General</b> tab, change the <b>Paper Type</b> setting.</li> </ul> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 5.
<p>5 Verify that the correct print media is being used. See "Supported Paper Types." If not, use the print media recommended for the printer.</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 6.
<p>6 Replace the drum cartridges.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a Replace the drum cartridges. See "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."</li> <li>b After you replace the drum cartridges, click <b>Chart Print</b> on the <b>Diagnosis</b> tab.</li> <li>c Click <b>4 Colors Configuration Chart</b>.</li> </ul> <p>The 4 Colors Configuration Chart is printed.</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

## Streaks appear on the output



Action	Yes	No
<p>1 The toner cartridges may be low or need to be replaced. Confirm the amount of toner left in each toner cartridge.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a Check the toner level in the <b>Status</b> tab in the Status Monitor.</li> <li>b Replace the toner cartridges as necessary.</li> </ul> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
<p>2 If you are using non-Dell brand toner cartridges, enable the <b>Non-Dell Toner</b> option.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a Launch the <b>Tool Box</b>, and click <b>Service Tools</b> on the <b>Printer Maintenance</b> tab.</li> <li>b Ensure that the <b>On</b> check box under <b>Non-Dell Toner</b> is selected.</li> </ul> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.
<p>3 Replace the drum cartridges.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a Replace the drum cartridges. See "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."</li> <li>b After you replace the drum cartridges, click <b>Chart Print</b> on the <b>Diagnosis</b> tab.</li> <li>c Click <b>4 Colors Configuration Chart</b>.</li> </ul> <p>The 4 Colors Configuration Chart is printed.</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

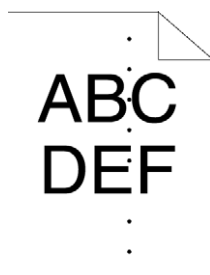
## Part or the entire output is black



Action	Yes	No
<p>1 Ensure that the drum cartridges are installed correctly. See "Installing a Drum Cartridge."</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.

Action	Yes	No
<p>2 Ensure <b>Output Color</b> is set to <b>Color</b> in the printer driver.</p> <p><b>a</b> On the <b>Graphics</b> tab, ensure that <b>Output Color</b> is set to <b>Color</b>.</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.
<p>3 Replace the drum cartridges.</p> <p><b>a</b> Replace the drum cartridges. See "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."</p> <p><b>b</b> After you replace the drum cartridges, click <b>Chart Print</b> on the <b>Diagnosis</b> tab.</p> <p><b>c</b> Click <b>4 Colors Configuration Chart</b>.</p> <p>The 4 Colors Configuration Chart is printed.</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

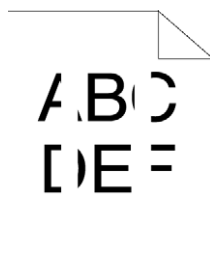
### Pitched color dots



Action	Yes	No
<p>1 Locate the cause of the problem using the Pitch Configuration Chart.</p> <p><b>a</b> Launch the <b>Tool Box</b>, and click <b>Chart Print</b> on the <b>Diagnosis</b> tab.</p> <p><b>b</b> Click <b>Pitch Configuration Chart</b>.</p> <p>The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.</p> <p><b>c</b> Compare the pitch of the color spots on your output with that on the Pitch Configuration Chart, and locate the cause of the problem.</p> <p>Is the cause of the problem located?</p>	<p>Proceed to the action corresponding to the location of the problem:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Drum cartridge - 2</li> <li>• Fusing unit - 3</li> <li>• Transfer belt unit - 4</li> </ul>	Contact Dell.
<p>2 Replace the drum cartridges.</p> <p><b>a</b> Replace the drum cartridges. See "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."</p> <p><b>b</b> After you replace the drum cartridges, click <b>Chart Print</b> on the <b>Diagnosis</b> tab.</p> <p><b>c</b> Click <b>Pitch Configuration Chart</b>.</p> <p>The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.
<p>3 Replace the fusing unit.</p> <p><b>a</b> Replace the fusing unit. See "Replacing the Fusing Unit."</p> <p><b>b</b> After you replace the fusing unit, click <b>Chart Print</b> on the <b>Diagnosis</b> tab.</p> <p><b>c</b> Click <b>Pitch Configuration Chart</b>.</p> <p>The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

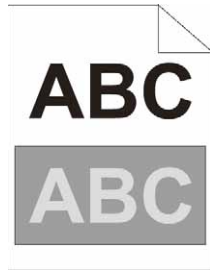
<b>Action</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>No</b>
<p>4 Replace the transfer belt unit, the 2nd BTR, and the retard roller.</p> <p><b>a</b> Replace the transfer belt unit, the 2nd BTR, and the retard roller. See "Replacing the Transfer Belt Unit, the 2nd Belt Transfer Roller (2nd BTR), and the Retard Roller."</p> <p><b>b</b> After you replace the transfer belt unit, the 2nd BTR, and the retard roller, click <b>Chart Print</b> on the <b>Diagnosis</b> tab.</p> <p><b>c</b> Click <b>Pitch Configuration Chart</b>.</p> <p>The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

## Vertical blanks



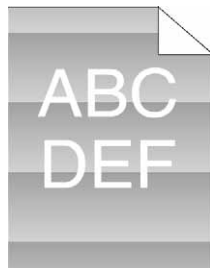
<b>Action</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>No</b>
<p>1 Clean inside the printer by using the cleaning rod. See "Cleaning the Raster Optical Scanner (ROS) Window."</p> <p><b>a</b> After the cleaning is completed, click <b>Chart Print</b> on the <b>Diagnosis</b> tab.</p> <p><b>b</b> Click <b>Pitch Configuration Chart</b>.</p> <p>The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
<p>2 Ensure the light path is not covered.</p> <p><b>a</b> Remove the drum cartridges, and keep them in the dark place. See "Removing the Drum Cartridge."</p> <p><b>b</b> Check the light path, and then remove the shielding.</p> <p><b>c</b> Re-install the drum cartridges. See "Installing a Drum Cartridge."</p> <p><b>d</b> Launch the <b>Tool Box</b>, and click <b>Chart Print</b> on the <b>Diagnosis</b> tab.</p> <p><b>e</b> Click <b>Pitch Configuration Chart</b>.</p> <p>The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.
<p>3 Replace the drum cartridges.</p> <p><b>a</b> Replace the drum cartridges. See "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."</p> <p><b>b</b> After you replace the drum cartridges, click <b>Chart Print</b> on the <b>Diagnosis</b> tab.</p> <p><b>c</b> Click <b>Pitch Configuration Chart</b>.</p> <p>The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

## Ghosting



Action	Yes	No
<p>1 Locate the cause of the problem using the Ghost Configuration Chart.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a Launch the <b>Tool Box</b>, and click <b>Chart Print</b> on the <b>Diagnosis</b> tab.</li> <li>b Click <b>Ghost Configuration Chart</b>.</li> </ul> <p>The Ghost Configuration Chart is printed.</p> <p>Is the type of the problem identified?</p>	<p>Proceed to the action corresponding to the type of ghosting.</p> <p>Positive ghost - 2a</p> <p>Negative ghost - 2b</p>	<p>Contact Dell.</p>
<p>2a Replace the drum cartridges.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a Replace the drum cartridges. See "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."</li> <li>b After you replace the drum cartridges, click <b>Chart Print</b> on the <b>Diagnosis</b> tab.</li> <li>c Click <b>Ghost Configuration Chart</b>.</li> </ul> <p>The Ghost Configuration Chart is printed.</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	<p>The task is complete.</p>	<p>Contact Dell.</p>
<p>2b If you are using non-recommended print media, use the print media recommended for the printer.</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	<p>The task is complete.</p>	<p>Go to action 3.</p>
<p>3 Adjust the transfer bias.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a On the operator panel, press the <b>i</b> (<b>Information</b>) button and select the <b>Tools</b> tab → select <b>Admin Settings</b> → <b>Maintenance</b> → <b>Adjust Transfer Belt Unit</b>.</li> <li>b Select <b>K Offset</b> or <b>YMC Offset</b>, and then decrease the value.</li> <li>c Launch the <b>Tool Box</b>, and click <b>Chart Print</b> on the <b>Diagnosis</b> tab.</li> <li>d Click <b>Ghost Configuration Chart</b>.</li> </ul> <p>The Ghost Configuration Chart is printed.</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	<p>The task is complete.</p>	<p>Contact Dell.</p>

## Light-induced fatigue



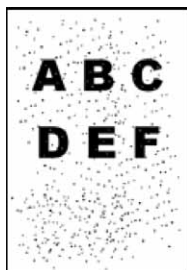
<b>Action</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>No</b>
1 Check the light fatigue pattern using the Pitch Configuration Chart. <b>a</b> Launch the <b>Tool Box</b> , and click <b>Chart Print</b> on the <b>Diagnosis</b> tab. <b>b</b> Click <b>Pitch Configuration Chart</b> . The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed. Does the pattern on the output match with that on the Pitch Configuration Chart?	Go to action 2.	Contact Dell.
2 Replace the drum cartridges. See "Replacing the Drum Cartridges." Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

## Fog



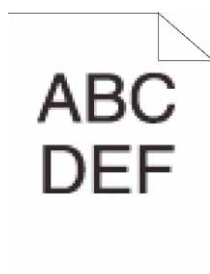
<b>Action</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>No</b>
1 Replace the drum cartridges. <b>a</b> Replace the drum cartridges. See "Replacing the Drum Cartridges." <b>b</b> After you replace the drum cartridges, click <b>Chart Print</b> on the <b>Diagnosis</b> tab. <b>c</b> Click <b>4 Colors Configuration Chart</b> . The 4 Colors Configuration Chart is printed. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

## Bead-Carry-Out (BCO)



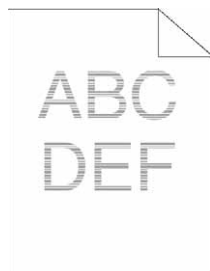
<b>Action</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>No</b>
<p>1 If the printer is installed in a high altitude location, set the altitude of the location.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a</b> Launch the <b>Tool Box</b>, and click <b>Service Tools</b> on the <b>Printer Maintenance</b> tab.</li> <li><b>b</b> Under <b>Adjust Altitude</b>, select the value close to the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.</li> </ul> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
<p>2 Replace the drum cartridges. See "Replacing the Drum Cartridges." Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

### Jagged characters



<b>Action</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>No</b>
<p>1 Set <b>Screen</b> to <b>Fineness</b> in the printer driver.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a</b> On the <b>Others</b> tab, set <b>Screen</b> under <b>Items:</b> to <b>Fineness</b>.</li> </ul> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
<p>2 Set <b>Print Mode</b> to <b>High Quality</b> in the printer driver.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a</b> On the <b>Graphics</b> tab, select <b>High Quality</b> from <b>Print Mode</b>.</li> </ul> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.
<p>3 Enable <b>Bitmap Smoothing</b> in the printer driver.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a</b> On the <b>Others</b> tab, set <b>Bitmap Smoothing</b> under <b>Items:</b> to <b>On</b>.</li> </ul> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 4.
<p>4 Enable <b>Print Page Mode</b> in the printer driver.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a</b> On the <b>Others</b> tab, set <b>Print Page Mode</b> under <b>Items:</b> to <b>On</b>.</li> </ul> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 5.
<p>5 If using a downloaded font, ensure that the font is recommended for the printer, operating system, and the application being used. Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

## Banding



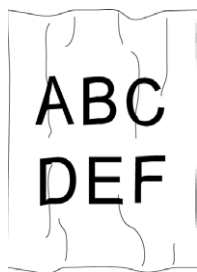
Action	Yes	No
<p>1 Locate the cause of the problem using the Pitch Configuration Chart.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a Launch the <b>Tool Box</b>, and click <b>Chart Print</b> on the <b>Diagnosis</b> tab.</li> <li>b Click <b>Pitch Configuration Chart</b>.</li> </ul> <p>The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.</p> <p>Is the cause of the problem located?</p>	<p>Proceed to the action corresponding to the location of the problem:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Drum cartridge - 2</li> <li>• Fusing unit - 3</li> <li>• Transfer belt unit - 4</li> </ul>	Contact Dell.
<p>2 Replace the drum cartridges.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a Replace the drum cartridges. See "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."</li> <li>b After you replace the drum cartridges, click <b>Chart Print</b> on the <b>Diagnosis</b> tab.</li> <li>c Click <b>Pitch Configuration Chart</b>.</li> </ul> <p>The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.
<p>3 Replace the fusing unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a Replace the fusing unit. See "Replacing the Fusing Unit."</li> <li>b After you replace the fusing unit, click <b>Chart Print</b> on the <b>Diagnosis</b> tab.</li> <li>c Click <b>Pitch Configuration Chart</b>.</li> </ul> <p>The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.
<p>4 Replace the transfer belt unit, the 2nd BTR, and the retard roller.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a Replace the transfer belt unit, the 2nd BTR, and the retard roller. See "Replacing the Transfer Belt Unit, the 2nd Belt Transfer Roller (2nd BTR), and the Retard Roller."</li> <li>b After you replace the transfer belt unit, the 2nd BTR, and the retard roller, click <b>Chart Print</b> on the <b>Diagnosis</b> tab.</li> <li>c Click <b>Pitch Configuration Chart</b>.</li> </ul> <p>The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

## Auger mark



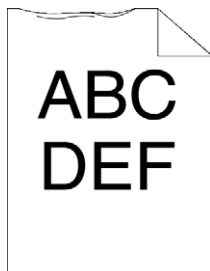
Action	Yes	No
<p>1 Locate the cause of the problem using the Pitch Configuration Chart.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a Launch the <b>Tool Box</b>, and click <b>Chart Print</b> on the <b>Diagnosis</b> tab.</li> <li>b Click <b>Pitch Configuration Chart</b>.</li> </ul> <p>The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.</p> <p>Does the output match with the pattern for auger mark?</p>	Go to action 2.	Contact Dell.
<p>2 Replace the drum cartridges. See "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

## Wrinkled/Stained paper



Action	Yes	No
<p>1 Verify that the correct print media is being used. See "Supported Paper Types." If not, use the print media recommended for the printer.</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	<p>If printing on an envelope, go to action 2.</p> <p>If printing on print media other than envelopes, contact Dell.</p>
<p>2 Check the wrinkle. Is the wrinkle within 30 mm of the four edges of the envelope?</p>	This type of wrinkle is considered normal. Your printer is not at fault.	Go to action 3.
<p>3 Load the envelopes in the MPF properly. For details, see "Loading an Envelope in the MPF."</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

## Damage on the leading edge of paper



Action	Yes	No
1 When you use the MPF, reverse the paper and then try again. When you use any of the trays, change the paper and then try again. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	(MPF) Go to action 2. (trays) Contact Dell.
2 Change the paper with another one and then try again. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.
3 Use any of the trays in place of the MPF. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

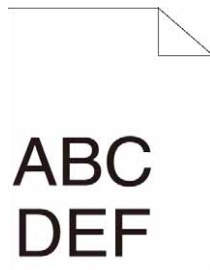
## Jam/Alignment Problems



**NOTE:** Some of the following procedures that use the **Tool Box** can also be performed using the operator panel or **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. For information on how to use the operator panel and **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, see "Understanding the Printer Menus" and "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."

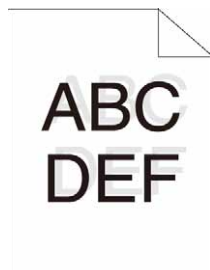
- The top and side margins are incorrect
- Color registration is out of alignment
- Images are skewed
- Tray1/Optional 550-Sheet Feeder Misfeed Jam
- MPF Misfeed Jam
- Regi Jam (Exit Sensor On JAM)
- Exit Jam (Exit Sensor Off JAM)
- Tray1/Optional 550-Sheet Feeder Multi-feed Jam
- MPF Multi-feed Jam

### The top and side margins are incorrect



Action	Yes	No
1 Ensure that the margins are set correctly on the application being used. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

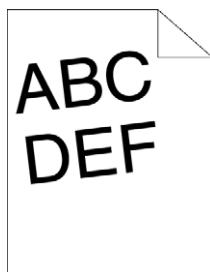
### Color registration is out of alignment



Action	Yes	No
1 Adjust the settings of the paper type on the printer driver to those of the tray. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
2 Execute auto color registration adjustment. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a On the operator panel, press the <b>■ (Information)</b> button and select the <b>Tools</b> tab → select <b>Admin Settings</b> → <b>Maintenance</b> → <b>Color Reg Adjust</b> → <b>Auto Correct</b> → <b>Start</b>.</li> </ul> OR <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a Launch the <b>Tool Box</b>, and click <b>Service Tools</b> on the <b>Printer Maintenance</b> tab.</li> <li>b Click <b>Start</b> under <b>Auto Correct</b> in <b>Color Registration Adjustments</b>.</li> </ul> Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.
3 Do you have spare drum cartridges?	Go to action 4a.	Go to action 4b.
4a Replace the drum cartridges. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a Replace the drum cartridges. See "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."</li> <li>b Launch the <b>Tool Box</b>, and click <b>Service Tools</b> on the <b>Printer Maintenance</b> tab.</li> <li>c Click <b>Start</b> under <b>Color Regi Chart</b> in <b>Color Registration Adjustments</b>.</li> </ul> The Color Regi Configuration Chart is printed. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Action	Yes	No
<p>4b Print the Color Regi Configuration Chart and manually correct the color registration.</p> <p><b>a</b> Launch the <b>Tool Box</b>, and click <b>Service Tools</b> on the <b>Printer Maintenance</b> tab.</p> <p><b>b</b> Click <b>Start</b> under <b>Color Regi Chart</b> in <b>Color Registration Adjustments</b>.</p> <p>The Color Regi Configuration Chart is printed.</p> <p><b>c</b> Identify the offset values from the chart and specify each value for process, left, and right colors in <b>Enter Number</b>. See "Adjusting Color Registration" for details.</p> <p><b>d</b> Click <b>Apply New Settings</b>.</p> <p><b>e</b> Click <b>Start</b> under <b>Color Regi Chart</b> to print the Color Regi Configuration Chart again.</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

### Images are skewed



Action	Yes	No
<p>1 Adjust the paper guides properly.</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
<p>2 Install the transfer belt unit according to an appropriate procedure. See "Installing a Transfer Belt Unit."</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

### Tray1/Optional 550-Sheet Feeder Misfeed Jam

Action	Yes	No
<p>1 Ensure that tray1 or the optional 550-sheet feeder is properly inserted.</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	<p>Proceed to the action corresponding to the type of the print media being used:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Thick - 2a</li> <li>• Thin - 2b</li> <li>• Coated - 2c</li> </ul> <p>If using paper other than the above, go to action 2d.</p>

<b>Action</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>No</b>
2a Use thick paper that is 216 g/m <sup>2</sup> or less. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3a.
2b Use thin paper that is 60 g/m <sup>2</sup> or more. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3a.
2c Load coated paper one sheet at a time. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3b.
2d Ensure that the print media is not curled. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3a.
2e Is the print media damp?	Go to action 3c.	Go to action 3a.
3a Fan the print media. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3b.
3b Wipe the retard roller in tray1 or the optional 550-sheet feeder with a cloth moistened with water. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 4b.
3c Turn over the print media. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 4a.
4a Use print media that is not damp. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3a.
4b Replace the drum cartridges. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

### MPF Misfeed Jam

<b>Action</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>No</b>
1 Ensure that the MPF is properly inserted. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Proceed to the action corresponding to the type of the print media being used: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Thick - 2a</li> <li>• Thin - 2b</li> <li>• Coated - 2c</li> <li>• Envelope - 2d</li> </ul> If using paper other than the above, go to action 2e.
2a Use thick paper that is 216 g/m <sup>2</sup> or less. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3a.
2b Use thin paper that is 60 g/m <sup>2</sup> or more. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3a.
2c Load coated paper one sheet at a time. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3b.

<b>Action</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>No</b>
2d Ensure that the envelope is properly loaded in the MPF as instructed in "Loading an Envelope in the MPF." Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3c.
2e Is the print media damp?	Go to action 3d.	Go to action 3a.
3a Fan the print media. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3b.
3b Wipe the retard roller in the MPF with a cloth moistened with water. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 4b.
3c If the envelope is deformed, correct it or use another envelope. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3a.
3d Turn over the print media. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 4a.
4a Use print media that is not damp. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3a.
4b Replace the drum cartridges. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

### **Regi Jam (Exit Sensor On JAM)**

<b>Action</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>No</b>
1 Ensure that the drum cartridges are installed correctly. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
2 Replace the drum cartridges. See "Replacing the Drum Cartridges." Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.
3 Ensure that the fusing unit is set properly. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 4.
4 Replace the fusing unit. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a Replace the fusing unit. See "Removing the Fusing Unit."</li> <li>b After you replace the fusing unit, click <b>Chart Print</b> on the <b>Diagnosis</b> tab.</li> <li>c Click <b>Pitch Configuration Chart</b>.</li> </ul> The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 5.
5 Ensure that the transfer belt unit is installed correctly. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 6.

<b>Action</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>No</b>
<p>6 Replace the transfer belt unit, the 2nd BTR, and the retard roller.</p> <p><b>a</b> Replace the transfer belt unit, the 2nd BTR, and the retard roller. See "Replacing the Transfer Belt Unit, the 2nd Belt Transfer Roller (2nd BTR), and the Retard Roller."</p> <p><b>b</b> After you replace the transfer belt unit, the 2nd BTR, and the retard roller, click <b>Chart Print</b> on the <b>Diagnosis</b> tab.</p> <p><b>c</b> Click <b>Pitch Configuration Chart</b>.</p> <p>The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

### Exit Jam (Exit Sensor Off JAM)

<b>Action</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>No</b>
<p>1 Ensure the fusing unit is installed correctly.</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
<p>2 Replace the fusing unit.</p> <p><b>a</b> Replace the fusing unit. See "Replacing the Fusing Unit."</p> <p><b>b</b> After you replace the fusing unit, click <b>Chart Print</b> on the <b>Diagnosis</b> tab.</p> <p><b>c</b> Click <b>Pitch Configuration Chart</b>.</p> <p>The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

### Tray1/Optional 550-Sheet Feeder Multi-feed Jam

<b>Action</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>No</b>
<p>1 Ensure that tray1 or the optional 550-sheet feeder is properly inserted.</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	<p>If using coated paper, go to action 2.</p> <p>If using other type of print media, go to action 3.</p>
<p>2 Load coated paper one sheet at a time.</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 4.
<p>3 Use print media that is not damp.</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 4.
<p>4 Fan the print media.</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 5.
<p>5 Wipe the retard roller in tray1 or the optional 550-sheet feeder where the multi-feed occurred with a cloth moistened with water.</p> <p>Does this solve your problem?</p>	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

## MPF Multi-feed Jam

1	Ensure the media type you are using. If using coated paper, go to action 2. If using other type of print media, go to action 3.	-	-
2	Load coated paper one sheet at a time. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 4.
3	Use print media that is not damp. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 4.
4	Fan the print media. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 5.
5	Wipe the retard roller in the MPF where the multi-feed occurred with a cloth moistened with water. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

## Noise

Action	Yes	No
1 To specify the cause of the noise, perform the Auto Registration Adjustment. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
2 Replace the transfer belt unit, the 2nd BTR, and the retard roller. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a Replace the transfer belt unit, the 2nd BTR, and the retard roller. See "Replacing the Transfer Belt Unit, the 2nd Belt Transfer Roller (2nd BTR), and the Retard Roller."</li> <li>b After you replace the transfer belt unit, the 2nd BTR, and the retard roller, click <b>Chart Print</b> on the <b>Diagnosis</b> tab.</li> <li>c Click <b>Pitch Configuration Chart</b>. The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.</li> </ul> Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.
3 Replace the fusing unit. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a Replace the fusing unit. See "Replacing the Fusing Unit."</li> <li>b After you replace the fusing unit, click <b>Chart Print</b> on the <b>Diagnosis</b> tab.</li> <li>c Click <b>Pitch Configuration Chart</b>. The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.</li> </ul> Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 4.
4 Replace the waste toner box. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 5.
5 Replace the drum cartridges. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 6.

6	Replace the toner cartridge (K). See "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."	The task is complete. (The toner cartridge (K) you are using has been damaged. Replace it with a new one.)	Go to action 7.
7	Replace the toner cartridge (Y). See "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."	The task is complete. (The toner cartridge (Y) you are using has been damaged. Replace it with a new one.)	Go to action 8.
8	Replace the toner cartridge (M). See "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."	The task is complete. (The toner cartridge (M) you are using has been damaged. Replace it with a new one.)	Go to action 9.
9	Replace the toner cartridge (C). See "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."	The task is complete. (The toner cartridge (C) you are using has been damaged. Replace it with a new one.)	Contact Dell.

## Copy Problem

Problem	Action
A document loaded in the DADF cannot be copied.	Ensure that the DADF cover is firmly closed. Ensure that the release lever is properly positioned.
Vertical blanks or streaks appear on the output when scanned using the DADF.	Clean the DADF glass. Clean inside the printer by using the cleaning rod. See "Cleaning the Raster Optical Scanner (ROS) Window."

## Fax Problems

Problem	Action
The printer is not working, there is no display and the buttons are not working.	Unplug the power cord and plug it in again. Ensure that there is power to the electrical receptacle.

No dial tone sounds.	<p>Check that the phone line is connected properly. See "Connecting the Telephone Line."</p> <p>Check that the phone socket in the wall is working by plugging in another phone.</p> <p>Diagnose the fax connection. See "Diagnosing the Fax Connection."</p>
The numbers stored in the memory do not dial correctly.	<p>Ensure that the numbers are stored in the memory correctly.</p> <p>Print a Phone Book list.</p>
The document does not feed into the printer.	<p>Ensure that the document is not wrinkled and you are putting it in correctly.</p> <p>Check that the document is of the right size, not too thick or thin.</p> <p>Ensure that the DADF cover is firmly closed.</p>
Faxes are not received automatically.	<p>The FAX mode should be selected.</p> <p>Ensure that there is paper in the paper tray.</p> <p>Check to see if the display shows MFP Memory Full.</p> <p>If the time interval specified for the following features is too long, change the time interval shorter such as 30 seconds.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auto Rec Fax</li> <li>• Auto Rec TEL/FAX</li> <li>• Auto Rec Ans/FAX</li> </ul> <p>Diagnose the fax connection. See "Diagnosing the Fax Connection."</p>
The printer does not send faxes.	<p>Sending Fax should show up on the display.</p> <p>Check the other fax machine you are sending to, to see if it can receive your fax.</p> <p>Check the dialing type for Tone or Pulse.</p> <p>Ensure that the document is loaded in the DADF or on the document glass.</p> <p>Diagnose the fax connection. See "Diagnosing the Fax Connection."</p>
The incoming fax has blank spaces or is received in poor quality.	<p>Check your printer by making a copy.</p> <p>The toner cartridge may be empty. Replace the toner cartridge. See "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."</p> <p>A noisy phone line can cause line errors. Set the fax modem speed to a slower speed.</p> <p>The fax machine sending you the fax may be faulty.</p>
Some of the words on an incoming fax are stretched.	<p>The fax machine sending you the fax had a temporary document jam.</p>
There are lines on the documents you send.	<p>Check the surface of the document glass and DADF glass for marks and clean it. See "Cleaning the Scanner."</p>
The printer dials a number, but the connection with another fax machine fails.	<p>The other fax machine may be turned off, out of paper, or cannot answer incoming calls. Speak with the other machine operator and ask her/him to sort out the problem.</p>
Documents are not stored in the memory.	<p>There may not be enough memory to store the document. If the display shows a MFP Memory Full message, delete any documents you no longer need from the memory and then restore the document, or wait for the job in progress (e.g., a fax transmission or reception) to complete.</p>
Blank areas appear at the bottom of each page or on other pages, with a small strip of text at the top.	<p>You may have chosen the wrong paper settings in the user option setting. See "Print Media Guidelines."</p>

The printer will not send or receive faxes.	<p>Ensure that the country code is set correctly. Press the <b>(Information)</b> button and select the <b>Tools</b> tab→select <b>Admin Settings</b>→<b>Fax Settings</b>→<b>Fax Line Settings</b>→<b>Country</b>.</p> <p>Check the dialing type for Tone or Pulse.</p> <p>Check that the cables are connected properly.</p> <p>If the telephone line cord is connected to the printer via any device such as an answering machine and a computer, remove the device and directly connect the telephone line cord to the printer.</p> <p>Ensure that <b>Junk Fax Setup</b> is set to off.</p>
An error often occurs during a fax transmission or reception.	<p>Reduce the modem speed. Press the <b>(i)</b> <b>(Information)</b> button and select the <b>Tools</b> tab→select <b>Admin Settings</b>→<b>Fax Settings</b>→<b>Transmission Defaults</b>→<b>Modem Speed</b>.</p>
The printer receive faxes, but it does not print.	<p>Check the toner level.</p> <p>Ensure that there is paper in the paper tray.</p> <p>Ensure that <b>Sent Fax Forward</b> is set to off.</p> <p>Check whether the printer is in the secure receiving mode. If this mode is turned on, enter the correct password or turn off this mode to print faxes in memory.</p>

## Scanning Problems

<b>Problem</b>	<b>Action</b>
The scanner does not work.	<p>Ensure that you place the document to be scanned facing down from the document glass, or facing up in the DADF.</p> <p>There may not be enough available memory to hold the document you want to scan. Lower the scan resolution rate and then try scanning again.</p> <p>Check that the USB or Ethernet cable is connected properly.</p> <p>Ensure that the USB or Ethernet cable is not defective. Switch the cable with a known good cable. If necessary, replace the cable.</p> <p>If using the network TWAIN (WIA) driver, check that the Ethernet cable is connected properly and the IP address of the printer is set correctly. To check the IP address, see "Verifying the IP Settings."</p> <p>Check that the scanner is configured correctly. Check the application you want to use to make certain that the scanner job is being sent to the correct port.</p> <p>Ensure that the scanner sharing feature is disabled when you use Mac OS X before you scan documents via an ICA compatible application such as Image Capture. The printer does not support the scanner sharing feature of Mac OS X. Select a printer which is directly connected to the computer via USB or wired /wireless LAN and scan documents.</p>
The printer scans very slowly.	<p>Graphics are scanned more slowly than text when using the <b>E-mail</b> or <b>Scan to Network</b> feature.</p> <p>Communication speed becomes slow in scan mode because of the large amount of memory required to analyze and reproduce the scanned image.</p> <p>Scanning images at a high resolution takes more time than scanning at a low resolution.</p>

Document misfeeds or multiple feeds occur in the DADF.	Check whether the DADF roller assembly is installed properly.
	Ensure the document's paper type meets the specifications for the printer. See "Supported Paper Types" for more information.
	Check whether the document is properly loaded in the DADF.
	Ensure that the document guides are adjusted properly.
	Ensure that the number of document sheets do not exceed the maximum capacity of the DADF.
	Ensure that the document is not curled.
Vertical blanks or streaks appear on the output when scanned using the DADF.	Fan the document well before loading it in the DADF.
	Clean the DADF glass.
A smear appears at the same location on the output when scanned using the document glass.	Clean inside the printer by using the cleaning rod. See "Cleaning the Raster Optical Scanner (ROS) Window."
	Clean the document glass.
Images are skewed.	Ensure that the document is loaded straight in the DADF or on the document glass.
Diagonal lines appear jagged when scanned using the DADF.	If the document uses thick media, try scanning it from the document glass.
Message appears on your computer screen:	There may be a copying or printing job in progress. When the current job is complete, try the job again.
	• "Device can't be set to the H/W mode you want."
	• "Port is being used by another program."
	• "Port is Disabled."
	• "Scanner is busy receiving or printing data. When the current job is completed, try again."
	• "Invalid handle."
• "Scanning has failed."	
The printer does not properly transfer scan data to a specified destination via the <b>E-mail</b> or <b>Scan to Network</b> feature.	The selected port is currently being used. Restart your computer and try again.
	The cable may be improperly connected or the printer may be turned off.
	The scanner driver is not installed or an operating environment is not set up properly.
	Ensure that the port is properly connected and the printer is turned on. Then restart your computer.
	Check that the USB or Ethernet cable is connected properly.
	Check if the following settings have been set correctly on the <b>Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool</b> .
	<b>Scan to Network</b>
	Check the following settings under <b>Address Book</b> → <b>Server Address</b> :
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Server Address</b></li> <li>• <b>Share Name</b></li> <li>• <b>Server Path</b></li> <li>• <b>Login Name</b></li> <li>• <b>Login Password</b></li> </ul>
	<b>E-mail</b>
	Check the following setting under <b>Address Book</b> → <b>E-Mail Address</b> :
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Address</b></li> </ul>

Cannot scan using WIA on a Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 computer.	<p>Enable WIA on the computer.</p> <p>To enable WIA:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Click <b>Start</b>, point to <b>Administrative Tools</b>, and then click <b>Services</b>.</li> <li>2 Right-click <b>Windows Image Acquisition (WIA)</b>, and then click <b>Start</b>.</li> </ol>
Cannot scan using TWAIN or WIA on a Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 R2 computer.	<p>Install the Desktop Experience feature on the computer.</p> <p>To install Desktop Experience:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Click <b>Start</b>, point to <b>Administrative Tools</b>, and then click <b>Server Manager</b>.</li> <li>2 Under <b>Features Summary</b>, click <b>Add Features</b>.</li> <li>3 Select the <b>Desktop Experience</b> check box, click <b>Next</b>, and then click <b>Install</b>.</li> <li>4 Restart the computer.</li> </ol>
Cannot scan using TWAIN or WIA on a Windows Server 2012 computer.	<p>Install the Desktop Experience feature on the computer.</p> <p>To install Desktop Experience:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Click <b>Server Manager</b> from the <b>Start</b> screen. The <b>Server Manager</b> screen appears.</li> <li>2 Under <b>Manage</b>, click <b>Add Roles and Features</b>. <b>Add Roles and Features Wizard</b> appears.</li> <li>3 Click <b>Next</b> to skip the <b>Before you begin</b> page.</li> <li>4 Ensure that <b>Role-based or feature-based installation</b> is selected, and then click <b>Next</b>.</li> <li>5 Ensure that <b>Select a server from the server pool</b> is selected, select the server under <b>Server Pool</b>, and then click <b>Next</b>.</li> <li>6 Click <b>Next</b> to skip the <b>Select server roles</b> page.</li> <li>7 Select the <b>Desktop Experience</b> check box under <b>User Interfaces and Infrastructure</b>, and then click <b>Next</b>.</li> <li>8 Click <b>Confirmation</b> from the list on the left.</li> <li>9 Select the <b>Restart the destination server automatically if required</b> check box, and then click <b>Install</b>.</li> <li>10 Restart the computer.</li> </ol>

## Digital Certificate Problem

Symptom	Cause	Action
The LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication setting and the Upload Signed Certificate button are not displayed.	The optional hard disk installed in the printer is not encrypted.	Confirm whether the optional hard disk is connected correctly, and confirm whether Data Encryption is enabled from the operator panel or <b>Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool</b> .
The certificate import button is disabled.	SSL communication is disabled.	Create a self-signed certificate and enable SSL.
The certificate details button is disabled.		

Symptom	Cause	Action
The certificate cannot be imported.	The time setting is incorrect.	Confirm validity period of the certificate as well as the time setting of the device.
	The certificate file is incorrect.	Confirm whether the password is correct.
		Confirm whether the file type is PKCS#7/#12 or x509CACert (extension: p7b/p12/pfx/cer/crt).
		Confirm whether the attribute information (key Usage/Extended key usage) of the certificate to be imported is set correctly.
	The browser is incorrect.	Use Internet Explorer.
016-404 is displayed when setting the encryption of the optional hard disk to Off.	The optional hard disk is formatted and the certificate data is deleted when setting encryption of the optional hard disk to Off. Since a certificate is required and the security function cannot be enabled when restarting the device afterward, 016-404 is displayed and the security setting must be initialized. The cause is the same when formatting or removing the optional hard disk.	After initializing, import the certificate and enable the security settings again. The action is the same when formatting the optional hard disk.
016-404 is displayed when formatting the optional hard disk.		
Security is set to Off when setting encryption of the optional hard disk to Off.		
Security is set to Off when formatting the optional hard disk.		
A certificate is deleted when setting encryption of the optional hard disk to Off.		
A certificate is deleted when formatting the optional hard disk.		
A certificate cannot be set with "Certificate Details".	The validity period is invalid.	The validity period of the certificate is invalid. Confirm whether the time setting of the machine is correct, and whether the validity period of the certificate has expired.
	The certificate path is invalid.	The certificate chain (path validation) of the imported certificate may not be correctly validated. Confirm whether all of the high-level certificates (Trusted/Intermediate) have been imported and are not deleted, and whether the validity period has expired.
Although a certificate was imported, it is not displayed when selecting with "Local Device".	The type of the certificate is incorrect.	To import a certificate for use with the device (own device), import the secret key and a certificate of the PKCS#12 (p12/pfx) format as a pair.
Server validation is not operating correctly.	The certificate chain is incorrect when importing.	Although importing a root certificate (Trusted) to use for server authentication, an Intermediate certificate may be required when validating the path.  When executing a certificate file with the certification authority, create the certificate with a format including all paths and then import that certificate.

Symptom	Cause	Action
Digital Signature cannot be selected with the IPsec setting.	The certificate cannot be associated.	Either the certificate has not been imported or the certificate has not been associated for use with Digital Signature of IPsec. Refer to "Setting the Certificate in the IPsec Digital Signature Mode" to set a certificate of IPsec.

## Problems With Installed Optional Accessories

If an option does not operate correctly following installation or stops working:

- Turn off the printer, wait for 10 seconds, and then turn on the printer. If this does not fix the problem, unplug the printer, and check the connection between the option and the printer.
- Print the system settings report to see if the option is listed in the Installed Options list. If the option is not listed, re-install it. See "Report / List."
- Ensure the option is selected in the printer driver you are using.

The following table lists printer's option and corrective action for related problem. If the suggested corrective action does not correct the problem, call customer service.

Problem	Action
550-sheet feeder	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ensure the 550-sheet feeder is correctly installed on the printer. Re-install the feeder. See "Removing the Optional 550-Sheet Feeder" and "Installing the Optional 550-Sheet Feeder."</li> <li>• Ensure the print media is loaded correctly. See "Loading Print Media in Tray1 and the Optional 550-Sheet Feeder" for more information.</li> </ul>
Memory module	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ensure the memory module is securely connected to the memory connector.</li> </ul>
Hard disk	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ensure the hard disk is securely inserted to the correct slot.</li> </ul>
Wireless adapter	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ensure the wireless adapter is securely inserted to the correct slot.</li> </ul>

## Scanner Driver/Printer Utility Problems

Problem	Action
Unable to retrieve the Address Book data from the printer on the Address Book Editor.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check that the USB or Ethernet cable is connected properly.</li> <li>Ensure that the printer is turned on.</li> <li>Ensure that the scanner driver is installed on your computer. (The Address Book Editor retrieves the Address Book data via the scanner driver when the printer is connected using a USB cable.)</li> </ul>
The TWAIN driver cannot connect to the printer.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check that the USB or Ethernet cable is connected properly.</li> <li>If using the network connection, check that IP address of the printer is set correctly. To check the IP address, see "Scanning Using the TWAIN Driver."</li> <li>Check whether the printer is turned on. If the printer is turned on, reboot it by turning off the printer and then on again.</li> <li>If a scan application is running, close the application once, restart the application, and then try scanning again.</li> </ul>
The scanner driver has not been registered on your computer and cannot be accessed from ScanButton Manager.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Install the scanner driver. If the scanner driver is installed, uninstall it and then re-install it again. After the installation of the scanner driver is completed, re-install the ScanButton Manager.</li> </ul>

<b>Problem</b>	<b>Action</b>
Failed to scan your document on the printer via ScanButton Manager.	<p>Ensure that your computer and the printer is properly connected with the USB cable.</p> <p>Check whether the printer is turned on. If the printer is turned on, reboot it by turning off the printer and then on again.</p> <p>If a scan application is running, close the application once, restart the application, and then try scanning again.</p> <p>Network connection cannot be used. Connect with the USB cable.</p> <p>Uninstall ScanButton Manager from <b>Control Panel</b>→ <b>Add or Remove Programs</b> (<b>Programs and Features</b> in Windows Vista® and Windows® 7) on your computer and then re-install it again.</p>
Failed to create an image file via ScanButton Manager.	<p>Ensure there is sufficient space in your hard disk.</p> <p>Uninstall ScanButton Manager from <b>Control Panel</b>→ <b>Add or Remove Programs</b> on your computer and then re-install it again.</p>
Failed to initialize ScanButton Manager.	Uninstall ScanButton Manager from <b>Control Panel</b> → <b>Add or Remove Programs</b> on your computer and then re-install it again.
Failed to execute ScanButton Manager.	Uninstall ScanButton Manager from <b>Control Panel</b> → <b>Add or Remove Programs</b> on your computer and then re-install it again.
An unexpected error occurred on ScanButton Manager.	Uninstall ScanButton Manager from <b>Control Panel</b> → <b>Add or Remove Programs</b> on your computer and then re-install it again.

## Other Problems

<b>Problem</b>	<b>Action</b>
Condensation has occurred inside the printer.	This usually occurs within several hours after you heat the room in winter. This also occurs when the printer is operating in a location where relative humidity reaches 85% or more. Adjust the humidity or relocate the printer to an appropriate environment.

## Contacting Service

When you call for printer service, be prepared to describe the problem you are experiencing or the error message that appears.

You need to know the model type and service tag of your printer. See the label located inside the front cover of your printer.



# Appendix

Appendix..... 561

Index..... 565



# Appendix

## Dell™ Technical Support Policy

Technician-assisted technical support requires the cooperation and participation of the customer in the troubleshooting process and provides for restoration of the operating system, software program and hardware drivers to the original default configuration as shipped from Dell, as well as the verification of appropriate functionality of the printer and all Dell-installed hardware. In addition to this technician assisted technical support, online technical support is available at Dell Support. Additional technical support options may be available for purchase.

Dell provides limited technical support for the printer and any Dell-installed software and peripherals. Support for third-party software and peripherals is provided by the original manufacturer, including those purchased and/or installed through Software & Peripherals (DellWare), ReadyWare, and Custom Factory Integration (CFI/DellPlus).

### Online Services

You can learn about Dell products and services on the following websites:

[www.dell.com](http://www.dell.com)

[www.dell.com/ap](http://www.dell.com/ap) (Asian/Pacific countries only)

[www.dell.com/jp](http://www.dell.com/jp) (Japan only)

[www.euro.dell.com](http://www.euro.dell.com) (Europe only)

[www.dell.com/la](http://www.dell.com/la) (Latin American and Caribbean countries)

[www.dell.ca](http://www.dell.ca) (Canada only)

You can access Dell Support through the following websites and e-mail addresses:

- Dell Support websites  
[support.dell.com](http://support.dell.com)  
[support.jp.dell.com](http://support.jp.dell.com) (Japan only)  
[support.euro.dell.com](http://support.euro.dell.com) (Europe only)
- Dell Support e-mail addresses  
[mobile\\_support@us.dell.com](mailto:mobile_support@us.dell.com)  
[support@us.dell.com](mailto:support@us.dell.com)  
[la-techsupport@dell.com](mailto:la-techsupport@dell.com) (Latin America and Caribbean countries only)  
[apsupport@dell.com](mailto:apsupport@dell.com) (Asian/Pacific countries only)
- Dell Marketing and Sales e-mail addresses  
[apmarketing@dell.com](mailto:apmarketing@dell.com) (Asian/Pacific countries only)  
[sales\\_canada@dell.com](mailto:sales_canada@dell.com) (Canada only)
- Anonymous file transfer protocol (FTP)  
[ftp.dell.com](ftp://ftp.dell.com)

Log in as user: anonymous, and use your e-mail address as your password.

## Warranty and Return Policy

Dell Computer Corporation ("Dell") manufactures its hardware products from parts and components that are new or equivalent to new in accordance with industry-standard practices. For information about the Dell warranty for your printer, see [support.dell.com](http://support.dell.com).

### Recycling Information

It is recommended that customers dispose of their used computer hardware, monitors, printers, and other peripherals in an environmentally sound manner. Potential methods include reuse of parts or whole products and recycling of products, components, and/or materials.

For specific information on Dell's worldwide recycling programs, see [www.dell.com/recyclingworldwide](http://www.dell.com/recyclingworldwide).

## Contacting Dell

You can access Dell Support at [support.dell.com](http://support.dell.com). Select your region on the WELCOME TO DELL SUPPORT page, and fill in the requested details to access help tools and information.

You can contact Dell electronically using the following addresses:

- World Wide Web

[www.dell.com](http://www.dell.com)

[www.dell.com/ap](http://www.dell.com/ap) (Asian/Pacific countries only)

[www.dell.com/jp](http://www.dell.com/jp) (Japan only)

[www.euro.dell.com](http://www.euro.dell.com) (Europe only)

[www.dell.com/la](http://www.dell.com/la) (Latin American and Caribbean countries)

[www.dell.ca](http://www.dell.ca) (Canada only)

- Anonymous file transfer protocol (FTP)

[ftp.dell.com](ftp://ftp.dell.com)

Log in as user: anonymous, and use your email address as your password.

- Electronic Support Service

[mobile\\_support@us.dell.com](mailto:mobile_support@us.dell.com)

[support@us.dell.com](mailto:support@us.dell.com)

[la-techsupport@dell.com](mailto:la-techsupport@dell.com) (Latin America and Caribbean countries only)

[apsupport@dell.com](mailto:apsupport@dell.com) (Asian/Pacific countries only)

[support.jp.dell.com](mailto:support.jp.dell.com) (Japan only)

[support.euro.dell.com](mailto:support.euro.dell.com) (Europe only)

- Electronic Quote Service

[apmarketing@dell.com](mailto:apmarketing@dell.com) (Asian/Pacific countries only)

[sales\\_canada@dell.com](mailto:sales_canada@dell.com) (Canada only)

# Index

## Symbols

(All Clear) button, 130  
(Cancel) button, 130  
(Delete) button, 129  
(Home) button, 129  
(Information) button, 130  
(Job Status) button, 130  
(Power Saver) button, 129  
(Redial / Pause) button, 129  
(Start) button, 129

## Numerics

1000Base-T Full-Duplex, 176  
100Base-TX Full-Duplex, 176  
100Base-TX Half-Duplex, 176  
10Base-T Full-Duplex, 176  
10Base-T Half-Duplex, 176  
2 Sided, 149  
2 Sided Copying, 151, 163, 208, 222  
2 Sided Print, 148  
2 Sided Printing, 152-153, 164, 209, 225, 227, 252  
2 Sided Scanning, 208-209, 223, 225  
2nd BTR, 34, 475  
2-Up, 151, 163, 208, 222, 288  
4 Colors Configuration Chart, 228  
802.1x, 174, 192

## A

A4, 305  
A4<>Letter Switch, 205, 214, 262  
A5, 305  
About printer, 33

Access List, 192  
Address Book, 139, 141, 156, 194, 399  
Address Book Editor, 399  
Ad-Hoc, 185  
Adjust 2nd BTR, 166  
Adjust Altitude, 154, 169, 205, 216  
Adjust Fusing Unit, 154, 167, 265  
Adjust Transfer Belt Unit, 166, 265  
Adjusting color registration, 498  
Admin Settings, 233  
Administrator Account, 184  
AirPrint, 173, 186, 325  
Alert Tone, 147, 156, 205, 212  
Alignment Chart, 228  
All Tones, 148, 157  
Altitude, 456  
Ans Machine/Fax, 164  
Appendix, 563  
Apply New Settings, 142  
Asset Tag Number, 135, 146  
Assigning IP address, 83  
Audio Tone, 204, 211  
Authenticate Error Trap, 183  
Authentication System, 414  
Auto Clear Alert Tone, 148, 157, 205, 212  
Auto Color To Mono Print, 264  
Auto Correct, 168, 215  
Auto Exposure, 150, 153, 162, 165, 208, 221, 224, 286, 291  
Auto Exposure Level, 150, 153, 162, 165, 208, 221, 224  
Auto Log Print, 148, 157, 204, 212, 258  
Auto Receive Ans/Fax, 209, 226  
Auto Receive Answer/Fax, 151, 164

Auto Receive Fax, 151, 164, 209, 226  
Auto Receive Tel/Fax, 151, 164, 209, 226  
Auto Reg Adjust, 266  
Auto Registration Adjustment, 154, 167, 205  
Auto Reset, 148, 157, 205, 213  
Avoiding paper jams, 315, 513

## **B**

B5, 305  
Banding Detection Chart, 228  
Banner Sheet Insert Position, 148, 157, 205, 214  
Banner Sheet Specify Tray, 148, 157, 205, 214  
Base memory, 455  
Basic Information, 175  
Basic printer problems, 531  
Bitmapped font, 436  
Blue plug, 34, 74  
Bonjour (mDNS), 173, 176

## **C**

C5, 305  
Cable, 456  
Canceling a print job, 316  
Canceling print job  
    From your computer, 316  
Carbonless copy paper, 302  
CCP, 302  
Changing printer settings, 142, 327  
Changing the Language, 133  
Clear Storage, 169  
Clearing paper jams, 513  
    From DADE, 515  
    From fusing unit, 521  
    From MPF, 517  
    From optional 550-sheet feeder, 527  
    From tray1, 520  
Clock Settings, 154

Coated, 153-154, 167, 265-266  
Coated Thick, 153-154, 167, 265-266  
Collation, 149-150, 162, 207, 209, 220, 226  
Color Balance, 208, 221  
Color Reg Adjust, 266  
Color Regi Chart, 168  
Color Registration Adjustments, 167-168, 215  
Color registration chart, 498  
Color Saturation, 150, 162, 208, 221, 286  
Color Test Page, 156, 206, 232  
ColorTrack, 413  
ColorTrack Error Report, 154, 414  
ColorTrack Mode, 154, 414  
ColorTrack Settings, 413  
Community Name, 183  
Completed Jobs, 138, 146  
Concurrent Jobs Feature, 134  
Configure 802.1x, 192  
Configuring wireless adapter, 57  
Connecting local printer, 72  
Connecting printer, 71  
Connecting to the network, 73  
Connection specification, 71, 456  
Connection Time-Out, 178  
Connection type, 71, 456  
Conserving supplies, 463  
Contact Dell Support at, 139, 141  
Contact Person, 140  
Contacting service, 559  
Contrast, 153, 165, 208, 224, 290  
Control board, 34  
Control Panel Tone, 156, 204, 211  
Copy Color Balance, 151, 162  
Copy Completed Tone, 147, 204, 212  
Copy Defaults, 150, 207  
Copy Printer Settings, 139, 141, 193  
Copy Printer Settings Report, 193

Copy Settings, 151  
Country, 151, 163, 209, 226, 248  
Cover, 145  
Covers, 153-154, 167, 265-266  
Covers Thick, 153-154, 167, 265-266  
Create Folder, 153, 166, 209, 224, 292  
Custom Paper Size - X, 148, 158  
Custom Paper Size - Y, 148, 158  
Custom Reduce / Enlarge, 162, 221

**D**

DADF cover, 35  
DADF feed roller, 35, 498  
DADF glass, 497  
Darken / Lighten, 150, 153, 162-163, 165, 207-209, 221, 223, 225, 284, 290, 294  
Data Encryption, 423  
Date & Time, 211  
Date Format, 154, 204, 211  
Default Color, 149, 158, 239  
Default Paper Size, 148, 157, 205, 214  
Default Setup, 195  
Delayed Send, 151, 163, 209, 225, 295  
Dell ColorTrack, 154, 193, 413  
Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool, 135  
    Page display format, 140  
Dell ScanCenter, 399  
Dell Service Tag Number, 146  
Dell Supplies Management System, 397  
Dell support website, 28  
Dell technical support policy, 563  
Details, 145  
Determining Values, 499  
Digital Certificates, 423  
Dimensions, 455  
DIMM size, 455  
Direct connection setup, 92

Direct Fax, 382  
Disabling Panel Lock, 299  
Discard Size, 152, 164, 210, 227, 252  
Display Manual Fax Recipients, 210, 228  
Display of Dell Configuration Web Tool, 220  
Display problems, 531  
DL, 305  
DNS, 171, 178  
Document feeder tray, 35  
Document glass, 35, 497  
Document guides, 35  
Draft Mode, 149, 158, 239  
Driver, 27  
DRPD, 164  
DRPD Pattern, 151, 164, 209, 226, 249  
Drum cartridge, 33, 467  
Duplex Automatic Document Feeder (DADF), 33, 514-515  
Duplex unit, 34

**E**

ECM, 152, 165, 210, 227, 254  
E-mail, 366  
E-Mail Address, 195  
Email Address Book, 206  
E-Mail Alert, 139, 141, 176, 180, 246  
E-Mail Alert Settings, 175, 181  
E-Mail Alert Setup, 135  
E-Mail Alert Setup Page, 174  
E-Mail Group, 195-196  
E-mail Server Address Book, 204, 213  
E-Mail Server Settings, 174, 180  
Emulations, 455  
Encryption, 185  
End Time, 161  
Entering Values, 501  
Envelope, 154, 167, 265-266, 303

Envelope #10, 305  
Environment, 456  
Error codes, 443  
Error History, 156, 206, 232  
Error messages, 451  
Ethernet, 170, 176, 456  
Ethernet port, 34, 71, 73  
Event Panel, 140  
EWS, 246  
EWS Settings, 175  
Executive, 305  
Expiration Mode, 161  
Expiration Time, 161  
Express Service Code, 146  
External Authentication, 413

## **F**

Fast scan, 500  
Fault Time-out, 148, 157, 205, 213  
Fault Tone, 147, 156, 204, 212  
Fax Activity, 152, 156, 165, 206, 210, 228, 254  
Fax Broadcast, 165, 210, 228, 255  
Fax Cover Page, 152, 165, 210, 227, 253, 295  
Fax Defaults, 151, 163, 209, 275  
Fax Forwarding Number, 209, 227  
FAX Group, 195, 200  
Fax Header, 152, 165, 210, 227, 253  
Fax Header Name, 151, 163, 209, 226, 248  
Fax Line Test, 269  
Fax Menu, 293  
Fax Number, 151, 163, 209, 226, 248  
Fax Pending, 156, 206  
Fax printer driver, 92, 95  
Fax Protocol, 165, 210, 228  
Fax Server Address Book, 204, 213  
Fax Settings, 151, 163  
FAX Speed Dial, 195, 201

Fax Transmit, 165, 210, 228  
File Format, 153, 165, 208, 223, 290  
File Naming Mode, 153, 166, 209, 224, 292  
Finding information, 27  
Firmware Version, 146  
Flip on Long Edge, 318  
Flip on Short Edge, 318  
Folio, 305  
Font, 149, 158, 435  
    PCL 5/PCL 6, 437  
    Pitch, 435  
    Point size, 435  
    PostScript 3, 437  
    Style, 435  
    Typefaces and fonts, 435  
    Weight, 435  
Font Pitch, 149, 158, 237  
Font Size, 149, 158, 237  
Form Line, 149, 158, 238  
Forwarding Number, 152, 164  
Front cover, 33  
Front USB port, 33  
FTP Client, 173, 184  
Function Enabled, 159, 269  
Function Enabled - Copy, 159  
Function Enabled - Fax, 159  
Fusing unit, 34, 473, 514, 521

## **G**

Gateway Address, 177, 206, 219  
Get Environment Sensor Info, 229  
Ghost Configuration Chart, 228  
Google Cloud Print, 173, 186, 325  
Group Dial, 233

## **H**

Hard disk, 64  
Hex Dump, 149, 158, 238

Host I/F, 146-147  
Host Name, 146-147, 182, 188  
How to install option, 43  
How to remove option, 503  
How to set up, 28  
How to use printer, 27  
HTTP, 172, 179  
HTTP-SSL/TLS Communication, 425

**I**

ID, 146  
ID Card Copy, 298, 338  
Identifying print media, 305  
Image Compression, 153, 166, 209, 224  
Image Enhance, 149, 158  
Impression Number, 147  
Infrastructure, 185  
Initialize NIC NVRAM Memory and restart printer, 187  
Initialize Print Meter, 215, 267  
Installing optional 550-Sheet Feeder, 48  
Installing optional accessories, 43  
Installing optional hard disk, 64  
Installing optional memory module, 43  
Installing optional wireless adapter, 53  
Interfaces, 456  
Interval of Redial, 152, 165, 210, 227  
Invalid Key Tone, 147, 156, 204, 211  
IP Address, 83, 135, 138, 140, 171, 177, 183, 188, 191-192, 206, 219, 417  
IP Address Mode, 206, 219  
IP Filter (IPv4), 174, 192  
IP filter setup, 179  
IPP, 172, 176, 178  
IPsec, 191, 428  
IPsec Settings, 174, 191  
IPv4, 183, 191

IPv6, 140, 171, 178, 183, 191

**J**

Job Completed Tone, 147, 156, 204, 212  
Job History, 156, 206, 231  
Job List, 138, 146  
Job Name, 146  
Job Status, 146  
Job Submitted Time, 146-147  
Job Time-out, 148, 157, 205, 213, 260  
Job Type, 146-147  
Junk Fax Setup, 151, 164, 209, 227, 251

**K**

Kerberos Server, 415

**L**

Label, 153-154, 167, 205, 215, 304  
Landscape, 235  
Layout, 149  
LDAP Authentication, 417  
LDAP Server, 188-189, 416-417  
LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication, 429-430  
Left frame, 141  
Left side cover, 34  
Legal, 305  
Letter, 305  
Letterhead 2 Sided, 148, 157, 205, 214  
Line Monitor, 151, 163, 209, 226, 249  
Line Termination, 149, 158, 239  
Line Type, 151, 163, 209, 226, 248  
Link Channel, 185  
Link Local Address, 206  
Link Quality, 185  
Loading letterhead, 307  
Loading paper, 87

Loading print media, 307  
MPF, 308  
Tray1 and optional 550-sheet feeder, 307  
Location, 140, 145  
Login Error, 161  
Low Toner Alert Message, 148, 157, 204, 212  
Low Toner Alert Tone, 147, 157, 205, 212  
LPD, 172, 176, 178, 246

## **M**

MAC Address, 185  
Machine Ready Tone, 147, 156, 204, 211  
Maintenance, 463  
Manual Address, 206  
Margin Left / Right, 151, 153, 163, 165, 208-209, 222, 224  
Margin Middle, 151, 153, 163, 165, 208-209, 222, 224  
Margin Top / Bottom, 151, 153, 163, 165, 208, 222, 224  
Max E-mail Size, 153, 166, 209, 224  
Maximum memory, 455  
Memory, 455  
Memory Capacity, 146  
Memory connector, 455  
Memory module, 43, 503  
Memory speed, 455  
Menu item, 142  
Menu Settings, 147  
MIB compatibility, 456  
mm / inch, 147, 156, 204, 211  
Modem Speed, 152, 165, 210, 228, 254  
Monarch, 305  
Monthly Settings, 161  
MPF, 514  
MPF Custom Paper Size - X, 155, 201  
MPF Custom Paper Size - Y, 155, 201  
MPF Custom Size - X, 207, 216

MPF Custom Size - Y, 207, 216  
MPF Display Tray Prompt, 155, 201, 207, 216  
MPF Paper Size, 155, 201, 207, 216  
MPF Paper Type, 155, 201, 207, 216  
MPF Use Driver Settings for Print Job, 155, 201, 207, 216  
MQ Chart, 228  
Multiple Up, 463  
Multiple-Up, 153, 209, 225, 297  
Multipurpose feeder (MPF), 33, 517

## **N**

NCR, 302  
Network, 73  
Network connection setup, 95  
Network Firmware Version, 146  
Network TWAIN, 172, 176, 179  
Network Type, 185  
New Password, 160  
No carbon required paper, 302  
No. of Sheets, 147  
Non Registered User, 154, 414  
Non-Dell Toner, 154, 205, 215, 268  
Notification Time-Out, 179  
Number pad, 129, 132

## **O**

OCR, 302  
OffHook Wake Up, 148, 157, 204, 212  
Online Help, 139, 141  
Operation, 456  
Operator panel, 33, 36  
Operator Panel Buttons, 129  
Optical character recognition, 302  
Optional 550-sheet feeder, 33, 514, 527  
Order Supplies at, 139, 141

Ordering supplies, 37, 463  
Orientation, 148, 158, 235  
Original Size, 150, 153, 162, 165, 207-208, 221, 223, 291, 336  
Original Type, 162, 207, 221, 285  
OS, 456  
OS compatibility, 455  
Other problems, 559  
Out of Paper Alert Tone, 205, 212  
Out of Paper Tone, 147, 157  
Output Color, 150, 153, 162, 165, 207-209, 220, 223, 225  
Output Result, 147  
Output Size, 149  
Output Tray, 145  
Output tray extension, 33  
Owner, 146

## **P**

Page display format, 140  
Page orientation, 308  
Panel Language, 148, 157, 210, 219, 280  
Panel Lock Control, 149, 159, 269  
Panel Settings, 155, 206, 231  
Panel Settings page, 155, 231  
Paper, 301  
    Characteristics, 301  
    Curl, 301  
    Fiber content, 302  
    Grain direction, 301  
    Moisture content, 301  
    Smoothness, 301  
    Weight, 301  
Paper Density, 153, 166, 205, 215, 264  
Paper jam location, 514  
Paper Size, 148, 158, 234  
Paper Tray, 148  
Paper Used, 193  
Parts name, 33

Password, 179, 184, 187-189, 192, 414, 417, 419  
PCL, 233  
    Font, 236  
PCL 5/PCL 6, 437  
PCL Fonts List, 155, 206, 231  
PCL Macros List, 155, 206, 231  
PCL printer driver, 92, 95  
PCL Settings, 148, 158  
PDF Fonts List, 156, 206  
PDL, 455  
Peer-to-Peer, 108  
Phone Book, 195, 233  
Phone connector, 34, 71, 74, 457  
Pitch Configuration Chart, 228  
Plain, 153-154, 167, 205, 215, 265-266  
Plain Thick, 153-154, 167, 265-266  
Point and Print, 105  
Polling Receive, 295  
Port Settings, 175  
Port Status, 176  
Port9100, 172, 176, 178, 246  
Portrait, 235  
PostScript 3, 437  
Power connector, 34  
Power On Wizard, 169  
Power Saver Time, 255  
Power Saver Time - Deep Sleep, 147, 156  
Power Saver Time - Sleep, 147, 156  
Power Saver Timer, 211  
Power Saver Timer - Deep Sleep, 204  
Power Saver Timer - Sleep, 204  
Power supply, 455  
Power switch, 33  
Prefix Dial, 152, 165, 210, 227  
Prefix Dial Number, 152, 165, 210, 227  
Prefix/Suffix String, 153, 166  
Premier, 154

Print Color Regi Chart, 215  
Print Drivers / Remote Client Account, 184  
Print ID, 148, 157, 205, 214, 260  
Print media, 301, 463  
    Source, 308  
Print Meter, 156, 206  
Print Mode, 149  
Print quality guarantee, 456  
Print Server Reports, 170  
Print Server Settings, 138, 141, 170, 175, 220  
Print Server Setup Page, 170  
Print side, 308  
Print Text, 148, 157, 205, 214, 261  
Print Volume, 139, 141, 193  
Printer driver, 117, 119, 418  
Printer Events, 145  
Printer Information, 139, 141, 146  
Printer Jobs, 138, 141, 146  
Printer Maintenance, 166  
Printer Page Count, 193  
Printer paper, 301  
Printer Revision Levels, 146  
Printer Serial Number, 146  
Printer Settings, 138, 147, 156  
Printer software, 397  
Printer specification, 455  
Printer Status, 138, 141, 145  
Printer Status Window, 397  
Printer Type, 145  
Printer utility software, 398  
Printing, 315  
Printing problems, 531  
Printing Speed, 145  
Private Mail Box Print, 280, 319-320  
Problems with Optional Accessories, 558  
Processor Speed, 146  
Product Information Guide, 28

Proof Print, 281, 320  
Protocol Monitor, 156, 206, 232  
Proxy Server, 173, 186  
PS Fonts List, 156, 206  
PS printer driver, 92, 95  
Public Mail Box Print, 281, 319-320

## **Q**

Quantity, 149, 158, 238  
Quick Launch Utility, 398  
Quick Reference Guide, 27

## **R**

RAM Disk, 148, 157, 204, 213  
Rear cover, 34  
Receive Mode, 151, 164, 209, 226, 250  
Receive Time-Out, 179  
Recommended paper, 302  
Recurrence, 161  
Recycled, 154, 167, 265-266  
Red Hat, 117  
Red Hat Enterprise Linux, 117, 455  
Redial Attempts, 152, 165, 210, 227  
Reduce / Enlarge, 150, 162, 207, 220  
Re-enter Password, 160  
Refresh, 142  
Registration Adjustments, 215  
Regular, 154  
Relative humidity, 456  
Remote Authentication, 414  
Remote Receive, 152, 164, 210, 227  
Remote Receive Tone, 152, 164, 210, 227  
Removing optional 550-sheet feeder, 506  
Removing optional hard disk, 511  
Removing optional memory module, 503  
Removing optional wireless adapter, 509

Removing options, 503  
Report 2 Sided Print, 205, 214  
Reports, 155, 233  
Resend Delay, 152, 165, 210, 227  
Reset Defaults, 169, 215  
Reset Print Server, 187  
Resident fonts, 437  
Resident scalable fonts, 437  
Resolution, 151, 153, 163, 165, 208-209,  
223-224, 289, 294  
Restore Settings, 142  
Retard roller, 475  
Return policy, 564  
Right frame, 141  
Right side cover, 33  
Ring Tone Volume, 151, 164, 209, 226, 250  
RSA BSAFE, 23

## **S**

Safety information, 28  
Scalable fonts, 436  
Scan Defaults, 153, 208  
Scan Settings Tool, 347  
Scan to Application, 343  
Scan to Network, 351  
Scan to USB Memory, 364  
ScanButton Manager, 399  
Search Time-Out, 188-189, 417  
Secure Print, 281, 319-320  
Secure Receive, 251, 392  
Secure Receive Set, 160  
Secure Settings, 149, 159  
Security, 187  
Security Settings, 185  
Select Reorder URL, 154  
Select Tray, 150, 153, 162, 207, 209, 220, 225  
Selecting letterhead, 303

Selecting paper, 302  
Selecting preprinted form, 303  
Selecting pre-punched paper, 303  
Sending print job, 315  
Sent Fax Forward, 151, 164, 209, 227  
Server Address, 156, 195, 198, 206  
Server address book, 421  
Server phone book, 421  
Server Response Time-Out, 415  
Service code, 28  
Service tag, 28  
Set Available Time, 161  
Set Date, 154, 204, 211  
Set Password, 139, 141, 187  
Set Time, 154, 204, 211  
Shared printing, 104  
Sharpness, 150, 153, 162, 165, 207-208, 221,  
223, 285, 290  
Slow scan, 499-500  
SMB, 172, 176  
SMB Client, 173, 184  
SNMP, 173, 176  
SNMP Configuration, 182  
SNMP UDP, 246  
Software and Documentation disc, 27  
Software update, 398  
Speed Dial, 156, 206  
SSID, 185  
SSL/TLS, 174, 189, 429  
Start Time, 161  
Status LED, 129  
Status Monitor Console, 397  
Status Monitor Console for Linux, 407  
Status Monitor Widget for Macintosh, 403  
Status of printer supplies, 463  
Status Window, 399  
Storage, 456

Storage humidity range, 456  
Stored Documents, 156, 206, 232  
Storing consumables, 464  
Storing print media, 305, 315, 464  
Straightest lines, 500  
Subnet Mask, 206, 219  
Substitute Tray, 148, 157, 205, 214, 261  
Supported paper sizes, 305  
Supported paper types, 306  
SUSE, 455  
SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10, 120  
SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11, 122  
Symbol Set, 149, 158, 236, 441  
System Settings, 147, 155-156, 175, 204, 206, 231  
System Settings Report, 155, 231

## T

TCP/IP, 176  
TCP/IP Settings, 171, 177  
Telephone, 164  
Telephone/Fax, 164  
Telnet, 173, 176, 179  
Temperature, 456  
TIFF File Format, 153, 165, 209, 224  
Time Format, 154, 204, 211  
Time Zone, 154, 204, 211  
Time Zone Settings, 211  
Tone/Pulse, 152, 165, 210, 227, 253  
Toner cartridge, 33, 465  
Toner cartridge level, 145  
Tool Box, 203, 399  
Top cover, 33  
Top frame, 140  
Touch panel, 129  
Transfer belt unit, 33  
Trap Notification, 183

Tray 1 Custom Paper Size - X, 155, 201  
Tray 1 Custom Paper Size - Y, 155, 201  
Tray 1 Custom Size - X, 207, 217  
Tray 1 Custom Size - Y, 207, 217  
Tray 1 Display Tray Prompt, 155, 202, 207, 217  
Tray 1 Paper Size, 155, 201, 207, 217  
Tray 1 Paper Type, 155, 201, 207, 217  
Tray 2 Custom Paper Size - X, 155, 202  
Tray 2 Custom Paper Size - Y, 155, 202  
Tray 2 Custom Size - X, 207, 218  
Tray 2 Custom Size - Y, 207, 218  
Tray 2 Display Tray Prompt, 155, 202, 207, 217  
Tray 2 Paper Size, 155, 202, 207, 218  
Tray 2 Paper Type, 155, 202, 207, 218  
Tray Management, 139, 141, 155, 201, 275  
Tray Priority, 207, 218  
Tray Settings, 207, 216  
Tray1, 33, 514, 520  
Troubleshooting, 399, 531  
Typeface, 435

## U

Unacceptable paper, 302  
UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT  
RESTRICTED RIGHTS, 23  
Update Address Book, 173, 176, 179  
Updater, 399  
USB, 457  
USB Direct Print, 159  
USB Direct Print Defaults, 153, 209  
USB port, 34, 71-72, 148, 158  
USB printing, 92  
Use Another Tray, 205, 214  
Use Manual Address, 206  
User Setup Disk Creating Tool, 397  
Using Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool, 138

## **V**

Verifying IP settings, 85

## **W**

Wall jack connector, 34, 71, 73, 457

Warranty, 564

Warranty information, 28

Waste toner box, 33, 484

Web Link Customization, 154, 170

Web services on devices, 323

Weekly Settings, 161

WEP, 185

White document cover, 497

White sheet, 497

Width guide, 88

WINS, 172, 178

Wired Network

- IP Filter, 247

- Protocol, 245

- Reset LAN, 247

Wireless Adapter, 53

Wireless adapter socket, 34

Wireless Settings, 171, 185

WPA-Enterprise, 430-431

WPA-PSK, 186

WPS-PBC, 61

WPS-PIN, 60

WSD, 172, 179, 323

WSD Scan, 292, 344

## **X**

XPS printer driver, 93, 96

## **Y**

Yellow terminator, 74

